

---

High School  
GERMAN GRAMMAR.

W. H. van der Smisssen, M. A.

AND

W. H. Fraser, B. A.

---

SEVENTY-FIVE CENTS.

AUTHORIZED BY THE EDUCATION DEPARTMENT OF ONTARIO.

Handwritten text, possibly a signature or name, written vertically along the right edge of the page.







# THE HIGH SCHOOL GERMAN GRAMMAR

*WITH APPENDICES, EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION  
AND VOCABULARIES*

BY

W. H. VAN DER SMISSEN, M. A.

LECTURER ON GERMAN, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, TORONTO,

AND

W. H. FRASER, B. A.

LECTURER ON ITALIAN AND SPANISH, UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, TORONTO; LATE FRENCH  
AND GERMAN MASTER, UPPER CANADA COLLEGE.

---

*Authorized by the Education Department of Ontario.*

---

TORONTO:  
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED.

1890.

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand eight hundred and eighty-eight, by THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LIMITED, in the Office of the Minister of Agriculture.

PRINTED BY  
THE COPP, CLARK COMPANY, LTD.  
TORONTO.

## PREFACE.

IN presenting this Grammar to the Public, the authors venture to express the hope that it will be found adapted to the wants, not only of High School teachers and pupils, but also to those of students of German in general.

The Lessons and Exercises have been made, as far as possible, strictly progressive, so that the beginner may not at the outset be overburdened and impeded by too copious vocabularies, or by too difficult exercises. At the same time each separate subject, as for instance the declension of substantives, is fully treated before being dismissed. Copious examples are given in illustration of each rule.

In the Exercises, especial care has been taken that no grammatical point shall occur in any sentence on which the pupil has not been previously instructed, and also that every Exercise shall contain thorough practice in applying the principles, not only of the corresponding lesson, but also of past lessons.

An oral exercise, consisting of questions, to which the pupil should be required to supply the answers, accompanies each lesson. These oral exercises may be extended at will by the teacher.

The supplementary lessons contain chiefly special cases in grammatical usage, and are mainly for reference. These lessons should be omitted by the elementary pupil, and should not in any case be taken up on the first reading.

The grammar of the substantive, the adjective, the verb (including the passive voice), the pronouns and the principal prepositions, is disposed of in the first twenty-two lessons, together with the fundamental principles of word order, so that, with the completion of Lesson XXII, the pupil will be fully equipped

for reading easy German texts. The Modal Auxiliaries, however, could not be introduced in their proper connection until the strong verbs had been disposed of, and where they occur in reading texts must be treated as anomalous forms until Lesson XXXIII is reached.

Special care has been taken to call attention to and explain those points in which German differs from English usage, particularly with regard to the prepositions and their puzzling idioms, the use of participles and the construction of participial clauses, the order of words and construction of sentences. The Historical Sketch in Lesson LII does not claim to be more than rudimentary, and such terms only are employed in explaining phonetic laws as are likely to be familiar to junior pupils.

In the Vocabulary, only such meanings of words are given as occur in the exercises; for the principal parts of strong and irregular verbs the pupil is referred to the proper section of the Grammar. Similar references are given under the prepositions and pronouns.

The Index has been made as full as possible, and it is hoped that it will be of no little assistance to both teacher and pupil.

In writing this Grammar, the authors have freely consulted, among others, the grammars of Heyse, Whitney and Brandt, Vernaleken's "Deutsche Syntax," and the various works of Sanders, especially his great "Dictionary," his "Sprachbriefe," and his "Satzbau und Wortfolge der deutschen Sprache." For some of the examples in Lesson XLIX, as well as the sentences in Exercise G, the authors are indebted to Buchheim's "German Prose Composition."

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE,  
Toronto, May, 1888.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
<b>PREFACE</b> . . . . .	iii
<b>INTRODUCTION.</b> — Alphabet . . . . .	I
“ Examples of Pronunciation . . . . .	6
“ General Remarks on Pronunciation . . . . .	8
“ Quantity of Vowels . . . . .	9
“ Accentuation . . . . .	10
“ Orthography . . . . .	11
“ German Script . . . . .	13

## PART I.

LESSON	PAGE	§§
I. Present Indicative of <b>haben, to have</b> . . . . .	17.	1, 2
II. Use of Cases. — Definite Article . . . . .	18.	3-5
III. <b>Dieser</b> Model. — Imperf. Indic. of <b>haben, to have</b> . . . . .	20.	6, 7
IV. <b>Mein</b> Model. — Indef. Article. — Present and Imperf. Indic. of <b>sein, to be</b> . . . . .	22.	8-15
V. Declension of Substantives: — <b>Walter</b> Model, or -l, -m, n, -r Stems . . . . .	25.	16-18
VI. Present and Imperfect of <b>werden, to become</b> . — Construction of Principal Sentences . . . . .	28.	19, 20
VII. Declension of Substantives: — <b>Sohn</b> Model. — Question Order . . . . .	32.	21-23
VIII. Conjugation of <b>haben, to have</b> . — Place of Participle and Infinitive . . . . .	36.	24-26
IX. Weak Conjugation: <b>loben</b> . Dependent Sentences. — Prepositions with Accusative only . . . . .	41.	27-28
X. Weak Verbs (continued). — Declension of Substantives: — <b>Dorf</b> Model, or Plural in -er . . . . .	47.	35-37

# CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE	§§
XI. Personal Pronouns . . . . .	52.	38-42
XII. Possessive Adjectives. — Use of Articles . . . . .	58.	43, 44
XIII. Construction of Sentences: — Place of Objects, Adverbs, etc. — Prepositions with Dative only . . . . .	64.	45, 46
A. Additional Remarks on Personal Pronouns and Prepositions . . . . .	70.	47-51
XIV. Conjugation of <b>sein</b> , to be. — Declension of Substantives: — Weak or -n Stems: <b>Knabe</b> Model . . . . .	72.	52-59
XV. Mixed Declension. — Double Plurals. — Prepositions governing Dative or Accusative . . . . .	80.	60-65
B. Anomalies of Declension . . . . .	87.	66-69
XVI. Declension of Substantives: Recapitulation. — Proper Names. — Prepositions with Genitive . . . . .	89.	70-75
C. Proper Names. — Foreign Substantives. . . . .	95.	76-78
XVII. Gender of Substantives. — Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives. — Indirect Statements and Questions . . . . .	97.	79-88
XVIII. Gender of Substantives (concluded). — General Remarks. — Double Gender . . . . .	105.	89-91
XIX. Relative Pronouns. — Irregular Weak Verbs . . . . .	111.	92-99
XX. Declension of Attributive Adjectives: Strong Form. — Conjugation of Strong Verbs . . . . .	118.	100-111
XXI. Passive Voice . . . . .	126.	112-114
XXII. Declension of Adjectives: Weak and Mixed. — Strong Verbs: <b>beißen</b> Model . . . . .	134.	115-118
XXIII. Possessive Pronouns. — Strong Verbs: <b>bleiben</b> Model . . . . .	142.	119, 120
XXIV. Declension of Adjectives (concluded): Table, General Remarks. — Strong Verbs: <b>schießen</b> and <b>schützen</b> Models . . . . .	147.	121-124
XXV. Comparison of Adjectives. — Strong Verbs: <b>frieren</b> Model . . . . .	154.	125-131
XXVI. Demonstrative Pronouns. — Strong Verbs: <b>singen</b> Model . . . . .	162.	132-144
XXVII. Indefinite Pronouns. — Strong Verbs: <b>spinnen</b> and <b>heilen</b> Models . . . . .	171.	145-159
D. On Certain Adjectives and Pronouns . . . . .	178.	160-162

# CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE	§§
XXVIII. Numerals: — Cardinals and Ordinals. — Strong Verbs: <i>sprechen</i> Model . . . . .	180.	163-16
XXIX. Indefinite Numerals. — Strong Verbs: <i>essen</i> Model . . . . .	189.	168-18
XXX. Derivative Numerals. — Time, Measure, Date. — Strong Verbs: <i>schlagen</i> Model . . . . .	196.	182-186
XXXI. Adverbs. — Strong Verbs: <i>fallen</i> Model . . . . .	204.	187, 188
XXXII. Adverbs (continued): Formation and Com- parison. — Table of Strong Verbs and General Remarks on the same . . . . .	210.	189-194
XXXIII. Adverbs (continued): Idioms. — Irregular Strong Verbs . . . . .	217.	195, 196
XXXIV. Modal Auxiliaries . . . . .	225.	197-199
XXXV. Modal Auxiliaries (continued): Idioms . . . . .	233.	200-202
XXXVI. Compound Verbs . . . . .	239.	203-208
E. On Certain Prefixes . . . . .	246.	209-213
XXXVII. Reflexive and Impersonal Verbs . . . . .	249.	214-220
XXXVIII. Prepositions governing the Genitive . . . . .	257.	221-224
XXXIX. Prepositions (continued): — Idioms . . . . .	264.	225-234
XL. Conjunctions. — Interjections . . . . .	273.	235-240
F. Conjunctions. — Additional Remarks . . . . .	282.	241

## PART II.

### SYNTAX.

XLI. Syntax of the Cases. — Nominative and Genitive . . . . .	286.	242-247
XLII. Syntax of the Cases. — Dative and Accusa- tive . . . . .	291.	248-255
XLIII. Indicative Mood: Syntax of its Tenses . . . . .	299.	256-262
XLIV. Subjunctive and Conditional Moods . . . . .	304.	263-268
XLV. Imperative and Infinitive Moods. . . . .	311.	269-272
XLVI. Infinitive Mood (continued) . . . . .	318.	273-278
XLVII. The Participles . . . . .	325.	279-284
XLVIII. Concord and Apposition . . . . .	334.	285-289
XLIX. Apposition (continued): Appositive Ad- jectives. — Syntax of the Preposition . . . . .	341.	290, 291
L. Word-Order. . . . .	348.	292-301
G. Complex Sentences — Clause-Order . . . . .	360.	302-306

# CONTENTS.

## PART III.

### WORD-FORMATION AND HISTORICAL SKETCH.

LESSON	PAGE	§§
LI. Word-Formation: — Derivation and Composition	364.	307-321
LII. Historical Sketch of the Language, Grimm's Law, Umlaut . . . . .	374.	322-326

### APPENDICES.

A. Substantives of <i>Maler</i> Model with Umlaut . . .	381.	17
B. Masculine Monosyllables of <i>Grund</i> Model . . .	381.	22
C. Feminines of <i>Zohn</i> Model . . . . .	382.	22
D. Irregular Foreign Substantives . . . . .	382.	22
E. Neuter Monosyllables of <i>Grund</i> Model . . .	382.	21
F. Weak Masculines not ending in <i>-e</i> . . . . .	383.	57
G. Substantives of Mixed Declension . . . . .	383.	61
G.* Double Plurals with Different Meaning . . .	384.	64
H. Plurals of Abstract Substantives . . . . .	384.	66
I. Exceptions to the Rules on Gender . . . . .	385.	80, 89, 90
J. Double Genders . . . . .	388.	91
K. Monosyllabic Adjectives without Umlaut in Com- parison . . . . .	389.	125
L. Strong Verbs not given in the Lists . . . . .	389.	192

	PAGE
EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION . . . . .	396
ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	404
VOCABULARY: { German-English . . . . .	405
{ English-German . . . . .	423
INDEX . . . . .	440



# INTRODUCTION.

(FOR REFERENCE ONLY.)

## THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

Characters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the difference between.
Ⓐ a	<i>ah</i>	like <i>a</i> in <i>father</i> ; never as in <i>ball</i> , <i>hat</i> , <i>care</i> .	Ⓐ and 11.
Ⓑ b	<i>bay</i>	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like <i>p</i> .	Ⓑ and Ⓑ; <i>b</i> , <i>b</i> , <i>v</i> and <i>p</i> .
Ⓒ c	<i>tsay</i>	before <i>ä</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> , and <i>y</i> , like <i>ts</i> ; otherwise like <i>k</i> ; in words from French, before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> , like <i>ss</i> .	Ⓒ and Ⓒ; <i>c</i> and <i>e</i> .
Ⓓ d	<i>day</i>	as in Eng., except at end of word or syll., when pron. like <i>t</i> .	Ⓓ and Ⓓ.
Ⓔ e	<i>ay</i>	long, like <i>a</i> in <i>game</i> ; short, like <i>e</i> in <i>pen</i> ; when final or in unaccented prefixes, like short <i>ä</i> in <i>Louisä</i> .	Ⓔ and Ⓔ; <i>e</i> and <i>e</i> .
Ⓕ f	<i>eff</i>	as in English.	Ⓕ and Ⓕ.
Ⓖ g	<i>gay</i>	always hard, before all vowels and before <i>l</i> , <i>m</i> , <i>n</i> , <i>r</i> , like <i>g</i> in <i>give</i> ; at end of words and sylls., or before other consonants, like Germ. <i>gh</i> ; in words from French, before <i>e</i> and <i>i</i> , like <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> .	Ⓖ and Ⓔ

Characters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the difference between
h h	hah	always aspirated before vowels, as in <i>hat</i> ; silent before consonants, after <i>t</i> , between vowels, and when final.	b, h, v and y.
i i	ee	long, like <i>e</i> in <i>he</i> ; short, like <i>i</i> in <i>skin</i> .	
j j	yot	like <i>y</i> in <i>yet</i> ; in words from French, like <i>s</i> in <i>pleasure</i> .	
k k	kah	as in English.	K and K.
l l	ell		
m m	em		M and M; m and m.
n n	en		N and N.
o o	o		
p p	pay		
q q	koo		
r r	err	like Eng. <i>r</i> with strong guttural roll; formed by making the tongue convex, and checking the breath by gently pressing the middle of the tongue against the roof of the mouth.	R and R; r and r.
s s	ess	before vowels, like <i>s</i> in <i>zone</i> , or <i>s</i> in <i>daisy</i> ; before consonants, and when final, like <i>s</i> in <i>yes</i> ; but see <i>sch</i> , <i>st</i> , <i>sp</i> , below. <i>ß</i> is used at the end of words, otherwise <i>f</i> .	f and f.

Characters.	Name.	Sound.	Observe the difference between
ŧ t	<i>tay</i>	as in Eng.; tþ also like <i>t</i> ; ti in foreign words, preceding another vowel, like <i>tse</i> .	
u u	<i>oo</i>	long, like <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> ; short, like <i>oo</i> in <i>foot</i> .	u and ũ.
v v	<i>fow</i>	like Eng. <i>f</i> in Germ. words; in foreign words, like Eng. <i>v</i> .	v and ʋ; v, b, h, y.
w w	<i>vay</i>	like Eng. <i>v</i> , except after jþ and ʒ, when pron. like Eng. <i>w</i> .	
x x	<i>iks</i>	like <i>ks</i> , even when initial.	x and r.
y y	<i>ypsilon</i>	like the Germ. vowel <i>i</i> ; or like <i>ü</i> .	
z z	<i>tset</i>	like <i>ts</i> .	

## MODIFIED VOWELS (UMLAUTS).

Characters.	Sound.
Ä (Ae) ä	like the Germ. vowel <i>e</i> . (The forms <i>Ae</i> , etc., are replaced by <i>Ä</i> , etc., in modern orthography.)
Ö (Oe) ö	about like <i>u</i> in <i>murder</i> ; nearly like French <i>eu</i> , but with lips rounded and nearly closed.
Ü (Ue) ü	nearly like French <i>u</i> ; there is no corresponding sound in Eng. Pronounced with lips rounded and pointed, as for whistling.

## DOUBLE VOWELS.

Characters.		Sound.
Aa	aa	like long a ( <i>a</i> in <i>farm</i> ).
Ee	ee	“ “ e ( <i>a</i> “ <i>care</i> ).
Oo	oo	“ “ o (never like Eng. <i>oo</i> ).

## DIPHTHONGS.

Characters.		Sound.
Äi	ai	} like <i>i</i> in <i>fire</i> .
Ëi	ei	
Äu	au	like <i>ou</i> in <i>hour</i> .
Äu (Äeu)	äu	} like <i>oy</i> in <i>joy</i> .
Eu	eu	
	ie	like <i>ie</i> in <i>field</i> (not found at the beginning of words); in the unaccented sylls. of foreign words, <i>i</i> and <i>e</i> are pronounced separately.

## CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

Characters.		Sound.
Ch	ch	after a, o, u, au, like <i>ch</i> in Scotch <i>loch</i> ; softer after ä, e, i, ö, ü, äu, eu; it does not occur at the beginning, except in foreign words, where it is pronounced like <i>k</i> before a, o, u, and like final <i>ch</i> before e, i. In French words it has the sound of <i>sh</i> , as in French; <i>ch</i> ̃ when in one syll. = <i>x</i> .

Characters.	Sound.	
ſſ	like Eng. <i>ck</i> ; when divided between two lines, is written f-f; not found at beginning.	
Pf	pf	pronounce both p and f distinctly.
Ph	ph	as in Eng.; in foreign words only.
Sch	sch	like <i>sh</i> in Eng.; but when the s is in a distinct syll., pron. separately.
Sp	sp	like soft <i>shp</i> in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like <i>sp</i> .
St	st	like soft <i>shst</i> in Eng. at the beginning; otherwise like <i>st</i> .
ff ß	like <i>ss</i> ; ß replaces ff after long vowels in the middle of a word, and always when final. Hence ſuß (long u), gen. ſußes; but ſluß (short u), gen. ſlußes; and beißen, biß, gebißen. Diphthongs are always followed by ß. Not found at the beginning.	
ß	like <i>ts</i> . It stands for ss. Not found at the beginning.	

## EXAMPLES OF PRONUNCIATION.

## SIMPLE VOWELS.

**A** long : gar, bat, fam ; short : kalt, Mann, Ramm.

**E** long : her, den, dem ; short : Herr, denn, Bett.

In formative sylls. foll. by a consonant shorter still:  
Fenster, haben, Esel.

In final syll. not foll. by a consonant, like *ä* in Louisä :  
Ende, Habe, Gabe. Also in prefixes, as in the first syll.  
of gehangen, gefallen, Gedanken, befallen, bedenken.

**I** long : mir, dir, Mine ; short : still, mit, bitten.

**O** long : Ton, loben, holen ; short : Tonne, kommen, soll.

**U** long : Hut, du, Blutes ; short : Mutter, dumm, unter.

**Y** long : Dynami't, Poly'p ; short : Myrte, Hyte'm.

## DOUBLE VOWELS (ALL LONG).

**aa** : Haar,aal, Staat. | **ee** : Alee, leer, Beet.

**oo** : Boot, Moos, Loos.

## MODIFIED VOWELS (UMLAUTS).

**Ä** long : Bär, käme, prägen ; short : hätte, Rämme, fällt.

**Ö** long : Öl, Töne, Ströme ; short : könnte, Götter, öffnen.

**Ü** long : Hüte, für, Übel ; short : Hütte, füllen, müssen.

## DIPHTHONGS (ALL LONG).

**ai** : Mai, Hain, Main.

**ei** : mein, heiter, bleiben.

**au** : Haut, Aue, blau.

**äu** : Häute, Bäume, läuten.

**eu** : heute, neu, Leute.

**ie** : die, hier, tief (in some foreign words, pronounced i-e : Familie, Spanien Linie).

## SIMPLE CONSONANTS.

<b>b</b> final (= <i>p</i> ) . . . . .	<b>ab</b> , <b>Grab</b> , <b>ob</b> .
<b>c</b> soft (= <i>ts</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Cäſar</b> , <b>Ceremonie</b> , <b>Cicero</b> .
<b>d</b> final (= <i>t</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Nad</b> , <b>Tod</b> , <b>Lied</b> .
<b>g</b> { (= <i>g</i> in <i>give</i> ) . . . . .	<b>geben</b> , <b>beginnen</b> , <b>Tageſ</b> .
{ (= <i>ch</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Tag</b> , <b>bog</b> , <b>gütig</b> , <b>Magd</b> .
{ (= <i>zh</i> in French words) . . . . .	<b>Genie</b> , <b>Gage</b> , <b>Page</b> .
<b>h</b> mute . . . . .	{ <b>Höhe</b> , <b>Lohe</b> , <b>Krähe</b> , <b>föhren</b> , <b>ſah</b> , <b>Bahn</b> , <b>Thüre</b> , <b>Thaler</b> , <b>Nat(h)</b> , <b>Mut(h)</b> .
<b>j</b> { (= <i>y</i> ) . . . . .	<b>jeder</b> , <b>jemand</b> , <b>Aſob</b> .
{ (= <i>zh</i> in French words) . . . . .	<b>Jaſouſie</b> , <b>Journal</b> .
<b>r</b> . . . . .	{ <b>rede</b> , <b>murren</b> , <b>Paar</b> , <b>Stern</b> , <b>Erde</b> , <b>Prediger</b> .
<b>ſ</b> initial and medial (= <i>s</i> in <i>daisy</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Sonne</b> , <b>dieſer</b> , <b>Sattel</b> , <b>Häuser</b> .
<b>ſ</b> final (= <i>s</i> in <i>yes</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Hauſ</b> , <b>dies</b> , <b>es</b> , <b>Laſter</b> , <b>leſbar</b> .
<b>t</b> in foreign words before <i>i</i> (= <i>ts</i> ) . . . . .	<b>national</b> , <b>Patient</b> .
<b>v</b> { in Germ. words (= <i>f</i> ) . . . . .	<b>von</b> , <b>Vater</b> , <b>Vetter</b> .
{ in foreign words (= <i>v</i> ) . . . . .	<b>November</b> , <b>dividieren</b> , <b>Adhofat</b> .
<b>w</b> { (= Eng. <i>v</i> ) . . . . .	<b>wenn</b> , <b>wer</b> , <b>wo</b> , <b>wie</b> .
{ (after <i>ſch</i> and <i>z</i> = Eng. <i>w</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Schwefter</b> , <b>ſchwer</b> , <b>zwei</b> , <b>Zweck</b> .
<b>x</b> initial (= <i>ks</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Kergeſ</b> , <b>Kenophen</b> .
<b>z</b> (= <i>ts</i> ) . . . . .	<b>Zierde</b> , <b>zu</b> , <b>zwanzig</b> , <b>Zorn</b> .

REMARK. — In the above list, only those consonants are given, which differ in pronunciation from their equivalents in English. Below are given also certain consonantal combinations, most of which do not occur in English.

## CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

ch	{	initial (= <i>k</i> ) . . . . .	Character, Chor, Christ.
		“ (= <i>ch</i> guttural) . . .	Chiru'rg, Chemie'.
		medial and final (guttural) {	acht, Loche's, hoch, Buch, Blech,
			bleich, ich, Löcher, Bücher.
	{	in French words (= <i>sh</i> ) .	Charlatan, Chicane.
		(in same syll. = <i>x</i> ) . . .	Dachs, Dchs, Lachs, Achse.
pf		. . . . .	Pferd, Pfennig, hüpfen.
sch	{	(= <i>sh</i> ) . . . . .	Schaf, Schnee, Schiff; but pron. <i>s</i> separately when it belongs to a different syll., as: Häus=chen, Gän=chen.
st		initial (= <i>st</i> softened) . .	Stand, stehen, Stengel, Stube.
sp		initial (= <i>shp</i> softened) . .	spüren, Sprüche, Sporn.
ff		(preceding vowel short) . .	müssen, füßen, lassen, Messe.
ß	{	medial (preceding vowel long)	größer, stoßen, fraßen.
		final (preceding vowel long)	Maß, groß, Fuß (gen. Fußes).
		final (preceding vowel short) {	Paß (gen. Passes), Roß (gen. Rosses), Fluß (gen. Flusses).

## A. GENERAL REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

1. The acquisition of a correct and pure pronunciation of the vowels is the most important point to be attended to; especially that of the vowel *a*, which must never have a shade of the sound of the Eng. *a* in *hat*, *ball*, or *came*. **Look after your vowels, and the consonants will look after themselves.**

2. The most difficult vowel-sounds are the *Umlauts*, or *modified vowels*, especially *ö* and *ü*, which must be learned from the teacher.



3. The only difficult consonant-sounds are :

**r**, with strong guttural roll.

**ʃ**, initial, and medial before vowels, which is like *s* in daisy, or *z* in zone.

**ʒ** final = *ss* in English.

**dh** (and **g** final), which must be learned from the teacher.

4. The pronunciation of the following consonants, though not difficult, differs from the English pronunciation :

**h** final = *ph*.

**c** before *ä, e, i* = *ts*.

**d** final = *t*.

**g** never like *g* in gesture.

**g** final see above.

**j** = *r* in yet.

**v** = *f* in Germ. words.

**w** = *τ*, except after **jh** and **ʒ**.

**ʒ** = *ts*.

5. There are no silent letters in German, except **h** before consonants, after **t** (see below), and between vowels; thus **c** is never silent. Hence *End-c*, *Gab-c* are dissylls.; and **g, f** in *Gnade*, *Knabe* must be heard.

## B. QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

**LONG:** Double vowels and diphthongs are always long. Simple vowels are long before a single consonant; before a consonant preceded by **h**; when not followed by a consonant; also before and after **th**.

**EXCEPTIONS:** Articles, pronouns, prepositions, and other unaccented monosylls., also unaccented prefixes, and inflexional sylls. in **e** and **i**, have the vowel short before a single consonant.

**SHORT:** Vowels followed by a double consonant (but see note 2 below), or by more than one consonant, vowels of unaccented words and prefixes, and of formative and terminal sylls., are short; also most vowels before **dh**, and all vowels before **jd**.

EXCEPTIONS: Long vowels before several consonants: Adler, eagle; erſt, 'first'; Geburt, 'birth'; Herd, 'hearth'; Herde, 'herd'; Huſten, 'cough'; Kloſter, 'convent'; Krebs, 'crab'; Magd, 'maid'; Mond, 'moon'; nebit, 'besides'; Obſt, 'fruit'; Oſt, 'east'; Oſtern, 'Easter'; Papſt, 'pope'; Pferd, 'horse'; Probſt, 'prebendary'; Schuſter, 'shoe-maker'; Schwert, 'sword'; ſtets, 'continually'; todt, 'dead' (now ſpelt tot): Troſt, 'consolation'; Vogt, 'governor'; Wüſte, 'desert'; also Stadt, 'town,' which has the vowel short in the ſing., lengthens it in the plur. Städte. Long vowels before *ch*: ſuchen, 'to curſe'; hoch, 'high' (but ſhort in Hochzeit, wedding); Schmach, 'disgrace'; Sprache, 'ſpeech.'

NOTES.—1. Long radical vowels remain long even before two or more conſonants; thus: haben, (du) lob-ſt, (er) lob-t, ge-lob-t, all with long vowel, according to the quantity of the ſtem.

2. Before *ff* all vowels are ſhort; before *ß* medial, long; before *ß* final, *a*, *o*, *u* are ſometimes long, ſometimes ſhort; *e* and *i* always ſhort.

3. The vowel *a* is always long before *r*.

## EXERCISE IN QUANTITY OF VOWELS.

(Accent on firſt ſyll. of diſſylls.)

Haare, Art, eſſen, loben, lobt, Art, Alee, Bier, thun, dumm, Moos, Nebel, ſen, ſen, öde, öfter, nett, näht, kann, loß, Rahn, Blätter, ähnlich, Liebe, über, dünn, Düne, Loos, dann, Täne, Ohr, geworden, Uhr, Beere, während, mehr, der, daß, eß, denn, Kern, gerne, munter, Stadt, Städte, Statt, Staat, Bett, Beet, müſſen, Füße, Flüſſe, hören, hehr, her, Heer, Rämme, käme.

## C. ACCENTUATION.

The principal accent is on the *radical* ſyll. in ſimple Germ. words, whether primitive or derived.

EXCEPTIONS:—1. Subſtantives in *-ei* have the principal accent on the termination.

2. The following adjectives are accented on the laſt ſyll. but one: lebendig, wahrhaftig, baſjamiſch, lutheriſch; also verbs in *-ieren*.

3. Moſt foreign ſubſtantives which have undergone a change of form are accented on the laſt ſyll., unleſs they end in *-e*, *-el*, *-er*, *-or*, when they are generally accented on the laſt ſyll. but one. Thoſe in *-ie* are accented on the laſt ſyll., except thoſe which, like Famili-e, Tragödi-e Komödi-e, Zini-e, are directly from the Latin, the *i-e* being pron. ſep-  
rately.

**NOTES. — 1.** With these few exceptions, formative sylls. are always unaccented.

2. In compound substantives, adjectives and verbs, the first component generally has the principal accent; in other compounds (prepositions, adverbial conjunctions, etc.), generally the last component.

3. The following prefixes are never accented: **be-**, **er-**, **emp-**, **ent-**, **ge-**, **ver-**, **zer-**.

### EXERCISES IN ACCENTUATION.

1. Simple words: Reinigung, Ehrlichkeit, Eiel, Finsternis, gütig, sparsam, Sparsamkeit, Heimat, Reichthum, reinlich, Keintlichkeit, Tugend, jugendhaft, Arznei.

2. Compound words: Ausgang, aufstehen, Augenblick, entgehen, Aufenthalt, aufbehalten, Verdienst, Geielle, Eisenhammer, merkwürdig, heraus, hineingehen, Schwarzwald, daher, anfänglich, Bettelstab, Montag, Mitleid, ausgegangen.

3. Foreign: Student, Professor, Professoren, Metodie, Familie, Instrument, Altar, Kardinal, Nation, national, Universität, Soldat, marschieren, religiös, Monument, monumental.

### D. ORTHOGRAPHY.

**Use of Capitals.** The following words are written with capital letters:

1. Words beginning a paragraph or sentence (after a period), and the first word of each line in poetry.

2. All substantives and words used as such, as: der Weise, 'the wise man'; das Sterben, 'dying,' etc.

**NOTE.** — Substantives used as adverbs are not written with capitals, as: morgens, abends.

3. The personal pronoun and possessive adjective of the third plur. when used in address.

**NOTE.** — The pronouns of the second person (sing. and plur.) are often written with a capital, and must be so in writing to persons.

4. Ordinal numeral; and pronouns in titles, as: Friedrich der Große, 'Frederick the Great'; Karl der Fünfte, 'Charles

the Fifth': Ihre Majestät, 'Her Majesty'; Seine Durchlaucht, 'His Serene Highness.'

5. Adjectives from names of persons, as: die Goethe'schen Gedichte, 'Goethe's poems.'

NOTES. — 1. Adjectives, with the above exceptions, are never written with capitals, as: preussisch, 'Prussian'; englisch, 'English.'

2. The numeral ein, 'one,' is sometimes spelt with a capital, to distinguish it from the indef. art. ein, 'a,' 'an.'

### E. RECENT CHANGES IN ORTHOGRAPHY.

These changes relate chiefly to the rejection of lengthening **h** after **t**, which takes place:

1. in derivative sylls.: Rönigkum, Ungetüm, etc.
2. after **t** medial and final: Item, Rat, rot, wert, etc.
3. before diphthongs: Tier, teuer, Teil, etc.
4. before short vowels: Turm, etc.

NOTE. — In the majority of text-books, the pupil will still meet with the old orthography; but in the High School German Reader, and in the present senior author's editions of texts, the **h** is invariably rejected after **t**.

### F. ADDITIONAL REMARKS.

1. The use of Italics being unknown in German print, an emphasized word is printed with larger spaces between the letters, as: ich habe nur einen Sohn, 'I have but *one* son.'

2. The double vowels never take Umlaut; hence: Boot, plur. Böte.

3. The modified vowels as capitals are always written **Ä**, **Ö**, **Ü**, not (as formerly) **Æ**, **Œ**, **Ū**.

# THE GERMAN SCRIPT.

## SIMPLE LETTERS.

A a	J j	P p
B b	Q q	T t
L l	S s	U u
D d	V v	W w
E e	U u	X x
F f	O o	Z z
G g	R r	
H h		
I i	R r	

## UMLAUTS.

Ä ä Ö ö Ü ü

## DOUBLE VOWELS.

Aa aa Eu eu Oo oo

## DIPHTHONGS.

Ai ai Ei ei Ii ii

Äi ai Öi öi Üi üi

## CONSONANTAL DIGRAPHS AND TRIGRAPHS.

Lf lf rk Pf pf

Pf pf Pf pf

tz tz tz tz

Observe carefully the Difference between :

## CAPITALS.

*A* and *U*; *L* and *P*; *G* and *G*;  
*R* " *R*

## SMALL LETTERS.

*a* and *i*; *n* and *u*; *y* and *y*; *z* and *z*; *u* and *u*

## SPECIMEN OF GERMAN SCRIPT.\*

1. *Ein Vater und sein Kind sind  
 jetzt hier.* 2. *Ein Mutter und ihr  
 Kind waren gestern hier.* 3. *Mein  
 Bruder hat sein Kind, aber es ist  
 nie hier.* 4. *Mein Bruder war  
 ein Tag hier.* 5. *Mein  
 Bruder ist ein Tag hier, und in  
 ein Mutter und sein Kind.* 6. *Ein  
 Kind ist ein Tag hier.* 7. *Mein*

\* These sentences, with the exception of the last two, are identical with those of Ex. IV, A.

Der Lufte ist nicht, denn kein Luft-  
 der sein Luft lügen. 8. Unser Kuch  
 ist sehr schön, aber sie ist nicht sehr  
 groß. 9. Die Jahre sind sehr glücklich  
 sind nur den Kindern immer  
 glücklich. 10. Die meisten Lin-  
 ge sind sehr schön.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the *angularity* of the small letters.

2. Observe the manner in which the letters are joined to each other.

3. The strokes connecting the different letters should be made longer than those connecting the different parts of the same letter. This is particularly necessary where several *ll* 's or *lll* 's follow each other.

4. Never omit the hook over *ll*, which alone distinguishes it from *ll*.

5. The most difficult letters to make neatly are

R, L, M, F, V, W;  
 n, k, x, v, w, p, β.



# GERMAN GRAMMAR.

## PART FIRST.

### LESSON I.

#### 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **haben**, to have.

<i>Sing.</i> ich <b>habe</b> , I have	<b>habe</b> ich, have I?
du <b>hast</b> , thou hast	<b>hast</b> du, hast thou
er <b>hat</b> , he has	<b>hat</b> er, has he
sie <b>hat</b> , she has	<b>hat</b> sie, has she
es <b>hat</b> , it has	<b>hat</b> es, has it
<i>Plur.</i> wir <b>haben</b> , we have	<b>haben</b> wir, have we
ihr <b>habt</b> , ye have	<b>habt</b> ihr, have ye
sie <b>haben</b> , they have	<b>haben</b> sie, have they

2. RULE 1. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person, as: ich **habe**, I have; er **hat**, he has; sie **haben**, they have.

2. Words used in a *partitive sense*, i. e., indicating only a *part*, not the whole, of anything, have no article before them in German, and the English *some* or *any* remains untranslated, as:

Has he ( <i>any</i> ) bread?	I have ( <i>some</i> ) gold.
<b>Hat</b> er Brot?	<b>Ich habe</b> Gold.

#### VOCABULARY

bread, Brot	silver, Silber	also, auch
meat, Fleisch	water, Wasser	what, was?
gold, Gold	wine, Wein	but, aber
flour, Mehl	and, und	yes, ja
milk, Milch	or, oder	no, nein
		not, nicht

## EXERCISE I.

*A.* 1. Hat er Brot? 2. Ja, er hat Brot, aber wir haben Fleisch. 3. Haben sie Milch? 4. Nein, aber sie haben Mehl. 5. Hat sie Gold? 6. Sie hat Gold und sie hat auch Silber. 7. Er hat Wasser, aber ich habe Wein.

*B.* 1. Have we any bread? 2. No, but she has some bread. 3. Have they any gold or silver? 4. They have some silver. 5. Has he water and wine? 6. He has only wine, he has not water. 7. I have milk and flour, but I have not meat.

## ORAL EXERCISE I.

(The pupils will supply the answer to each question, with books closed.)

1. Was hat er? 2. Was haben wir? 3. Was haben sie?
4. Was hat sie?

## LESSON II.

## USE OF CASES. — DEFINITE ARTICLE.

**3. Use of the Cases.**—Every declinable word in German has two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*, and in each number four cases, viz.: Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative.

The *Nominative* is the same as the English Nominative, or Subjective, and answers the question *who?* or *what?* as: *Who* (or *what*) is there? The boy (the book).

The *Genitive* corresponds to the English Possessive, or Objective with *of*, and answers to the question *whose?* or *whom?* or *of what?* as: *Whose* book? The boy's book, the book of the boy.

The *Dative* corresponds to the Indirect Object in English, and answers the question *to whom?* as: *To whom* does he give the book? He gives you (dat.) the book, he gives the boy (dat.) the book, he gives it to the boy (dat.).

The *Accusative* corresponds to the Direct Object in English, and answers the question *whom ?* or *what ?* as : *Whom (what) do you see ?* I see the man (the house).

#### 4. DECLENSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	der	die	das	die, the
Gen.	des	der	des	der, of the
Dat.	dem	der	dem	den, (to, for) the
Acc.	den	die	das	die, the

5. RULE 1. The Definite Article, like every determinative word, agrees with its substantive in Gender, Number, and Case, as : **der** Mann, 'the man' (masc.); **die** Frau, 'the woman' (fem.); **das** Kind, 'the child' (neuter).

2. Articles and other determinative words should be repeated before each substantive in the singular, as : **Der** Mann und **die** Frau ; **der** Lehrer und **der** Schüler.

#### VOCABULARY.\*

(N. B. Always learn the *definite article* with each German substantive.)

dog, <b>der</b> Hund	flower, <b>die</b> Blume
boy, <b>der</b> Knabe	horse, <b>das</b> Pferd
teacher, <b>der</b> Lehrer	book, <b>das</b> Buch
teachers, <b>die</b> Lehrer	girl, <b>das</b> Mädchen
scholar, pupil, <b>der</b> Schüler	girls, <b>die</b> Mädchen
scholars, pupils, <b>die</b> Schüler	knife, <b>das</b> Messer
stick, <b>der</b> Stof	knives, <b>die</b> Messer
mother, <b>die</b> Mutter	who, <b>wer ?</b>
pen, feather, <b>die</b> Feder	only, <b>nur</b>

\* The article is omitted in the English portions of all Vocabularies, being indeclinable.

## EXERCISE II.

A. 1. Hat sie das Buch oder die Feder? 2. Wir haben das Buch, aber sie hat die Feder. 3. Der Lehrer hat die Messer der Schüler. 4. Dem Lehrer der Mädchen. 5. Die Schüler haben den Hund, aber sie haben nicht das Pferd. 6. Ich habe den Stock, das Buch und die Feder; aber der Knabe hat nur das Buch und die Feder.

B. 1. Have we not the book of the mother? 2. We have the book of the mother. 3. Have the pupils the dog and the horse, or have they only the horse? 4. They have the horse, but they have not the dog. 5. Has the mother of the girls the flower? 6. She has not the flower, but she has the book of the girls, and they have the pen. 7. To the mother and to the teacher.

## ORAL EXERCISE II.

1. Was hat der Hund? 2. Wer hat den Hund? 3. Wer hat Schüler? 4. Was haben die Lehrer? 5. Was hat das Mädchen? 6. Hat er den Stock?

## LESSON III.

**Dieser** MODEL. — IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF **haben**, to have.

6. DECLENSION OF **dieser**, this, that.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<b>dieser</b>	<b>diese</b>	<b>dieses</b> , this	<b>diese</b> , these
Gen.	<b>dieses</b>	<b>dieser</b>	<b>dieses</b> , of this	<b>dieser</b> , of these
Dat.	<b>diesem</b>	<b>dieser</b>	<b>diesem</b> , (to, for) this	<b>diesen</b> , (to, for) these
Acc.	<b>diesen</b>	<b>diese</b>	<b>dieses</b> , this	<b>diese</b> , these

In the same way decline **jener**, that; **jeder**, every; **welcher**, which?

REMARK. — The accusative of declinable words differs in form from the nominative in the *masculine singular* only.

### 7. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF *haben*, to have.

<i>Sing.</i> ich hatte, I had	hatte ich, had I?
du hatteſt, thou hadst	hatteſt du, hadst thou
er hatte, he had	hatte er, had he
ſie hatte, she had	hatte ſie, had she
eſ hatte, it had	hatte eſ, had it
<i>Plur.</i> wir hatten, we had	hatten wir, had we
ihr hattet, ye had	hattet ihr, had ye
ſie hatten, they had	hatten ſie, had they

### VOCABULARY.

brother, <b>der</b> Bruder	woman, <b>die</b> Frau
garden, <b>der</b> Garten	sister, <b>die</b> Schweſter
gardens, <b>die</b> Gärten	daughter, <b>die</b> Tochter
bone, <b>der</b> Knochen	daughters, <b>die</b> Töchter
bones, <b>die</b> Knochen	newspaper, <b>die</b> Zeitung
reader, <b>der</b> Leſer	house, <b>das</b> Haus
readers, <b>die</b> Leſer	two, <b>zwei</b>
man, <b>der</b> Mann	three, <b>drei</b>
son, <b>der</b> Sohn	four, <b>vier</b>
father, <b>der</b> Vater	

### EXERCISE III.

*A.* 1. Ich hatte dieſe Zeitung. 2. Dieſer Hund hatte Knochen. 3. Dieſer Lehrer hat vier Schüler, aber jener Lehrer hat nur drei. 4. Der Bruder dieſer Frau hatte jenes Haus, und er hatte auch jene Gärten. 5. Jedes Buch hat Leſer. 6. Welches Buch hatten dieſe Mädchen? 7. Der Schweſter und dem Bruder.

*B.* 1. Which newspaper had the father of theſe girls? 2. The dog had theſe bones, but he had not this ſtick. 3. Which ſtick has this man? 4. Which man has this ſtick? 5. This father had three daughters, but that woman had only

two. 6. The son of that woman had this dog and horse. 7. We had the book of those pupils. 8. To the brother of those girls.

#### ORAL EXERCISE III.

1. Welches Mädchen hatte die Zeitung? 2. Welches Buch hatten die Mädchen? 3. Wer hatte das Buch dieser Schüler? 4. Welche Feder hatte dieser Knabe? 5. Welchen Hund hatte jener Mann? 6. Was hat dieser Lehrer?

### LESSON IV.

#### Mein MODEL.—INDEFINITE ARTICLE.—PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF *sein*, to be.

##### 8. DECLENSION OF *mein*, my.

###### *Singular.*

###### *Plural.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	mein	meine	mein	meine, my
Gen.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner, of my
Dat.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen, (to, for) my
Acc.	meinen	meine	mein	meine, my

9. The following words are declined like *mein*: *kein*, 'no'; *sein*, 'his, its'; *ihr*, 'her, its, their'; *unser*, 'our.'

The indefinite article *ein*, *eine*, *ein* is also declined in the same way, but has no plural, thus:

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	ein	eine	ein
Gen.	eines	einer	eines
Dat.	einem	einer	einem
Acc.	einen	eine	ein

REMARK. — This model differs from the *dießer* model only in having no distinctive ending in the nom. sing. masc. and neuter, or in the acc. neuter. Thus, while we say *dießer*

Mann, but dieses Buch, we say *ein* (*sein*, *mein*, etc.) Mann, and also *ein* (*sein*, etc.) Buch.

# 10. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF *sein*, to be.

## *Present.*

*Sing.* *ich* bin, I am  
*du* bist, thou art  
*er* ist, he is  
*sie* ist, she is  
*es* ist, it is

*Plur.* *wir* sind, we are  
*ihr* seid, ye are  
*sie* sind, they are  
*bin ich*, am I? etc.

## *Imperfect.*

*ich* war, I was  
*du* warst, thou wast  
*er* war, he was  
*sie* war, she was  
*es* war, it was

*wir* waren, we were  
*ihr* wart, ye were  
*sie* waren, they were  
*war ich*, was I? etc.

**11. Time before Place.** RULE. — In German sentences, expressions of *time* always precede those of *place*, as :

This man was here *to-day*.

Dieser Mann war *heute* hier.

**12. Place of the Negative *nicht*.** RULE. — The negative *nicht* precedes that member of the sentence which it negatives. Hence :

Er war gestern *nicht* hier, he was not here yesterday.

**13. Agreement of Pronouns.** RULE. — Pronouns agree in gender, number and person with the substantive to which they refer, as :

Der Hut (masc.) ist nicht groß, *er* ist klein,  
 the hat is not large, *it* is small; but

die Zeitung (fem.) ist nicht groß, *sie* ist klein,  
 the newspaper is not large, *it* is small.

The English pronoun *it* must therefore be rendered by *er* when it refers to a masc. substantive, by *sie* when it refers to a fem., and by *es* when it refers to a neuter.

**14.** OBSERVE: In the sentence 'the boy is good,' *good* is a *predicative* adjective.

**RULE.** — *Predicative* Adjectives are not declined.

**15.** A substantive following the verb *to be* is of course *subject*, not *object*, and must therefore be put in the *nominative*, and not in the *accusative*, as: Er ist ein (not einen) Mann, he is a man.

#### VOCABULARY.

friend, der Freund	pretty, hübsch
gentleman, der Herr	cold, kalt
bird, der Vogel	small, little, klein
carriage, } der Wagen	tired, müde
wagon, }	beautiful, fine, schön
carriages, die Wagen	strong, stark
city, die Stadt	idle, träge
dress, }	warm, warm
garment, }	windy, windig
weather, das Wetter	very, very much, sehr
old, alt	yesterday, gestern
pleasant, agreeable, angenehm	to-day, heute
great, large, big, tall, groß	still, yet, noch (referring to time)
	for, denn

#### EXERCISE IV.

A. 1. Ein Vater und sein Kind sind jetzt hier.\* 2. Eine Mutter und ihr Kind waren gestern hier. 3. Mein Bruder hat kein Buch, aber er hat ein Messer. 4. Unser Freund war der Lehrer dieser Schüler. 5. Diese Frau ist meine Schwester, und sie ist auch die Mutter dieser Mädchen. 6. Wir sind klein, aber sie sind groß. 7. Unser Lehrer ist müde, denn seine Schüler waren sehr träge. 8. Unsere Stadt ist sehr schön, aber sie ist nicht sehr groß. 9. Meinem Vater und meiner Mutter.



*B.* 1. I am the sister of those girls. 2. Where are my books and newspaper? 3. Our brother and his dog are big and strong, but our sister and her bird are small and pretty. 4. Which gentleman was here yesterday? 5. The friend of our brothers was here to-day, but he was not here yesterday. 6. My sister had her book, but she had not her pen. 7. Our father and mother have still their carriage, but they have no horse. 8. The weather was cold and windy, but it is now warm and pleasant. 9. To my brother and sister.

#### ORAL EXERCISE IV.

1. Wo ist unsere Mutter? 2. Wann war sie hier? 3. Wer war gestern hier? 4. Was ist sein Vater? 5. Wer ist die Mutter dieser Schüler? 6. Wer sind diese Mädchen?

### LESSON V.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES: — *Malcr* MODEL,

OR -*I*, -*III*, -*II*, -*r* STEMS.

#### 16. DECLENSION OF *der Malcr*, the painter.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

Nom. <i>der Malcr</i> , the painter	<i>die Malcr</i> , the painters
Gen. <i>des Malers</i> , the painter's, of the painter	<i>der Malcr</i> , the painters', of the painters
Dat. <i>dem Malcr</i> , (to, for) the painter	<i>den Malern</i> , (to, for) the painters
Acc. <i>den Malcr</i> , the painter	<i>die Malcr</i> , the painters

OBSERVE: The only changes are additional -*s* in the gen. sing., and -*II* in the dat. pl.

#### 17. In the same way are declined :

1. Masc. and neuter substantives ending in **-el**, **-en**, **-en**, **-er**, and diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein** (these last being always neuter).

2. Neuters beginning with **Ge-** and ending in **-e**, as: *das Gemälde*, the painting.

3. Two feminines: *die Mutter*, the mother. and *die Tochter*, the daughter.

4. *Der Käse*, the cheese.

(a) But many masculines with **a**, **o**, **u** in the root, the two feminines *Mutter* and *Tochter*, and one neuter, *das Kloster*, 'the convent,' take also Umlaut (modified vowel) in the plural, as: —

*Sing.* N. D. A. *Bruder*, G. *Bruders*; *Plur.* N. G. A. *Brüder*, D. *Brüdern*.

(b) Substantives in **-u** do not add **u** in the dat. plur., as:

*Sing.* N. D. A. *Mädchen*, G. *Mädchens*; *Plur.* N. G. D. A. *Mädchen*.

(c) In feminine substantives all cases are alike in the sing. Hence, *Mutter* and *Tochter* are thus declined:

*Sing.* N. G. D. A. *Mutter*; *Plur.* N. G. A. *Mütter*, D. *Müttern*.  
*Sing.* N. G. D. A. *Tochter*; *Plur.* N. G. A. *Töchter*, D. *Töchtern*.

Further examples:

*Der Vogel*, the bird: *Sing.* N. D. A. *Vogel*, G. *Vogels*; *Plur.* N. G. A. *Vögel*, D. *Vögeln*.

*Der Wagen*, the carriage: *Sing.* N. D. A. *Wagen*, G. *Wagens*; *Plur.* N. G. D. A. *Wagen*.

*Das Fenster*, the window: *Sing.* N. D. A. *Fenster*, G. *Fensters*; *Plur.* N. G. A. *Fenster*, D. *Fenstern*.

*Das Gemälde*, the painting: *Sing.* N. D. A. *Gemälde*, G. *Gemäldes*; *Plur.* N. G. A. *Gemälde*, D. *Gemälden*.

*Decline with Umlaut:* der Vater, the father; der Schwager, the brother-in-law; der Apfel, the apple; der Garten, the garden; der Mantel, the cloak.

NOTE. — For a complete list of Substantives of this declension that take Umlaut in the plur., see App. A.

*Decline without Umlaut:* der Lehrer, the teacher; der Schüler, the scholar; der Adler, the eagle; das Messer, the knife; der Sommer, the summer; der Winter, the winter; der Onkel, the uncle.

NOTE. — The preposition *in* is contracted with the dat. sing. masc. and neut. of the def. art., when not emphasized, thus: *in dem* = *im*; *in dem Garten*, contr. *im Garten*; *in dem Wasser*, contr. *im Wasser*.

**18. RULE OF CONSTRUCTION.** — If the verb is in a simple tense, the predicate adjective comes at the end.

#### VOCABULARY.

tree, der Baum	ripe, reif
fire, das Feuer	weak, schwach
spring, der Frühling	satisfied, } zufrieden
autumn, der Herbst	contented, }
stove, der Ofen	quickly, schnell
diligent, industrious, fleißig	not at all, gar nicht
poor, arm	not yet, noch nicht
hot, heiß	with, mit (gov. dat.)
ill, krank	in, in (gov. dat.)
rich, reich	whose, wessen?

#### EXERCISE V.

A. 1. Die Väter dieser Mädchen waren mude. 2. Es war gestern kalt, aber wir hatten kein Feuer im Ofen. 3. Die Gemälde dieses Malers sind gar nicht schön. 4. Unsere Gärten sind schön, denn das Wetter ist warm. 5. Die Mutter dieser Schüler war arm. 6. Mit den Flügeln dieser Vögel. 7. Die Schüler

dieses Lehrers waren krank. 8. Die Mäntel meiner Töchter sind alt. 9. Die Gärten in dieser Stadt sind sehr schön.

B. 1. The father of this girl was my teacher. 2. Our father and mother are old and weak. 3. The gardens of my brother-in-law are very beautiful, but his carriages are not at all beautiful. 4. My uncle is not at all satisfied with his daughters. 5. These apples are not yet ripe. 6. The teacher of these pupils was not very rich. 7. With the wings of this bird. 8. The weather is hot in the summer, but it is cold in the winter. 9. The eagle is a bird.

#### ORAL EXERCISE V.

1. Wann ist das Wetter kalt? 2. Mit welchen Schülern sind die Lehrer zufrieden? 3. In wessen Haus sind die Brüder dieses Mädchens? 4. Wo waren sie im Herbst? 5. Sind diese Mädchen träge oder fleiszig? 6. Ist die Blume schön?

### LESSON VI.

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT OF *werden*, to become. — CONSTRUCTION OF PRINCIPAL SENTENCES.

#### 19. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT OF *werden*, to become.

##### *Present Indicative.*

*Sing.* ich *werde*, I become  
 du *wirst*, thou becomest  
 er *wird*, he becomes  
*Plur.* wir *werden*, we become  
 ihr *werdet*, ye become  
 sie *werden*, they become

##### *Present Subjunctive.*

ich *werde*  
 du *werdest*  
 er *werde*  
 wir *werden*  
 ihr *werdet*  
 sie *werden*

*Imperfect Indicative.**Imperfect Subjunctive.*

<i>Sing.</i> ich <b>wurde</b> or <b>ward</b> , I became	<sup>Quar</sup> ich <b>würde</b>
du <b>wurdest</b> or <b>wardst</b> , thou becamest	du <b>würdest</b>
er <b>wurde</b> or <b>ward</b> , he became	er <b>würde</b>
<i>Plur.</i> wir <b>wurden</b> , we became	wir <b>würden</b>
ihr <b>wurdet</b> , ye became	ihr <b>würdet</b>
sie <b>wurden</b> , they became	sie <b>würden</b>

- OBSERVE: 1. the **persistent t** in the subjunctive endings;  
 2. the **Umlaut** in the imperfect subjunctive;  
 3. the second form (**ward**, etc.) in the *singular only* of the imperfect indicative.

## 20. CONSTRUCTION OF PRINCIPAL SENTENCES. — PLACE OF VERB AND SUBJECT.

RULE. — In principal sentences containing a statement, the **verb** is the **second idea** in the sentence, as :

SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.
Ich	<b>bin</b>	hier.	Er	<b>ist</b>	krank.
I	am	here.	He	is	ill.

OBSERVE: 1. The verb is the second *idea*, not necessarily the second *word*, in the sentence. Thus the subject with its attributes and enlargements constitutes but one idea, as :

1	2	3
SUBJECT AND ATTRIBUTE.	VERB.	ADVERB.
Der Vater dieses Lehrers	<b>war</b>	hier.

2. The *subject* (or subjects) with attributes and enlargements may come either in the first or in the third place, as :

SUBJECT.	VERB.	ADVERB.	ADVERB.	VERB.	SUBJECT.
Ich	<b>bin</b>	hier;	or:	Hier	<b>bin</b> ich.

3. The *predicate adjective* is placed last, when the verb is in a *simple* tense, as :

I am satisfied with my daughters.

Ich bin mit meinen Töchtern zufrieden.

REMARKS. — 1. Any other member of the sentence may occupy the first place, but in that case the subject is thrown *after* the verb, which still occupies the second place. Thus :

ADV. PHRASE.	VERB.	SUBJECT.	PREDICATE.
Im Frühling	sind	die Gärten	schön.

2. In English, on the contrary, the subject precedes the verb, which is, in such cases, in the *third* place, as :

ADV. PHRASE.	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PREDICATE.
In the spring	the gardens	are	beautiful.

3. *This fixed position of the verb as the second idea in every German principal sentence should never be forgotten.*

4. The conjunctions *und*, *aber*, *oder*, *denn* do not count as members of the sentence.

#### VOCABULARY.

sleigh, der Schlitten	dissatisfied, unzufrieden
thunder-storm, das Gewitter	after, nach (with dat.)
attentive, aufmerksam	therefore, on that account,
green, grün	desßhalb
new, neu	never, nie
young, jung	so, so
inattentive, unaufmerksam	why, warum ?
unpleasant, ) unangenehm	again, wieder
disagreeable, )	well, wohl

#### EXERCISE VI.

A. 1. Nach dem Gewitter wurde das Wetter schön und warm.  
 2. Gestern wurden meine Mutter und ihre Schwester krank, aber jetzt sind sie wohl. 3. Sein Vater hat ein Haus und einen Garten und er hat auch Wagen und Schlitten. 4. Das Wetter

ward gestern unangenehm und windig; aber es ist heute wieder ganz schön und warm. 5. Der Lehrer wird unzufrieden, denn seine Schüler werden unaufmerksam. 6. Warum wird unser Vater jetzt so schwach? 7. Er wird sehr alt, und wird deshalb auch schwach. 8. Unsere Mutter ist nicht jung, aber sie ist noch schön. 9. Waren die Brüder dieser Lehrer in Berlin oder in Hamburg? 10. Sie waren in Hamburg, aber sie waren nie in Berlin.

*B.* 1. The brother of these pupils became our teacher. 2. Teachers often become dissatisfied with their pupils. 3. In the spring our garden becomes beautiful. 4. Our brothers-in-law were in Paris; they are now in London. 5. This tree becomes green very quickly. 6. The pupils of this teacher became very attentive. 7. My daughters are not contented with their cloaks. 8. In the autumn (the)\* apples become ripe. 9. The father of these girls becomes old and weak. 10. With the feathers of an eagle. 11. We became rich, but he became poor. 12. The eagle is a bird; it is large and strong. 13. The cloaks of those girls were new, but now they are getting (say: become) old.

#### ORAL EXERCISE VI.

1. Wer ist in dem Schlitten? 2. Wer hat das Messer ihres Onkels? 3. Wann waren seine Brüder in Hamburg? 4. Wann werden die Äpfel reif? 5. Wird der Baum im Sommer grün? 6. Wann wird das Wetter kalt?

---

\* Words in ( ) are omitted in English, but not in German; words in [ ] are omitted in German, but not in English.

## LESSON VII.

DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:—**Sohn** MODEL.—  
QUESTION ORDER.**21.** DECLENSION OF ( **der Sohn**, the son;  
( **der Hund**, the dog.

(a) With Umlaut in the plural:

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom.	der Sohn, the son	die Söhne, the sons
Gen.	des Sohn(e)s, the son's. of the son	der Söhne, the sons', of the sons
Dat.	dem Sohn(e), (to. for) the son	den Söhnen, (to, for) the sons
Acc.	den Sohn, the son	die Söhne, the sons

OBSERVE: 1. The **-es** of the gen., and **-e** of dat. sing.2. The Umlaut and **-e** of the plur.3. The additional **-n** of the dat. plur.4. The **-e** may be dropped in the dat. sing., and (except after sibilants) in the gen. sing., but is usually retained in monosyllables.

(b) Without Umlaut:

*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom.	der Hund, the dog	die Hunde, the dogs
Gen.	des Hund(e)s, the dog's, of the dog	der Hunde, the dogs', of the dogs
Dat.	dem Hund(e), to the dog	den Hunden, (to, for) the dogs
Acc.	den Hund, the dog	die Hunde, the dogs

**22.** In this way are declined:1. Most masculine monosyllables: *generally* add Umlaut (see App. B.)



2. Masculines in **-at**, **-id**, **-ig**, **-ing**, **-ling**: *never* add Umlaut.

3. Many feminine monosyllables with **a**, **u**, or **au** in the root: *always* add Umlaut (for list, see App. C.)

4. Substantives in **-nis** and **-sal**: *never* add Umlaut.

5. Many neuter monosyllables (all those in **-r**): *never* add Umlaut, except **Äpfel**, **Äser**, **Beet** (**Bete** or **Beete**) App. E.

6. Foreign masculines, with accent on last syll., in **-at**, **-an**, **-ar**: *generally* without Umlaut; in **-ist**, with Umlaut; in **-ier**, **-on**, **-or**, and foreign neuters in **-at**: *never* with Umlaut (for exceptions, see App. D.)

Further examples:

Die **Hand**, the hand: *Sing.* N. G. D. A. **Hand**; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Hände**, D. **Händen**.

(Observe again: Feminines have all cases of the sing. alike.)

Das **Begräbnis**, the burial, funeral: *Sing.* N. A. **Begräbnis**, G. **Begräbnisses**, D. **Begräbnisse**; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Begräbnisse**, D. **Begräbnissen**.

(Observe the doubling of the final **s** when a termination is added.)

Der **Monat**, the month: *Sing.* N. A. **Monat**, G. **Monates**, D. **Monats**; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Monate**, D. **Monaten**.

Das **Jahr**, the year: *Sing.* N. A. **Jahr**, G. **Jahres**, D. **Jahres**; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Jahre**, D. **Jahren**.

Der **Apfelbaum**, the apple-tree: *Sing.* N. A. **Apfelbaum**, G. **Apfelbaums**, D. **Apfelbaums**; *Plur.* N. G. A. **Apfelbäume**, D. **Apfelbäumen**.

(Observe that in compounds only the last component is varied, and is declined as when standing alone).

## 23.

## CONSTRUCTION OF DIRECT QUESTIONS.

### Examples:

- |                       |   |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|-----------------------|---|
| 1                     | 2 | 1                     | 2 |
| 1. Has the dog meat?  |   | 2. Which man is old?  |   |
| Hat der Hund Fleisch? |   | Welcher Mann ist alt? |   |

- |        |     |                |         |     |              |
|--------|-----|----------------|---------|-----|--------------|
| 1      | 2   |                | 1       | 2   | 3            |
| 3. Who | is  | in the garden? | 5. What | has | the teacher? |
| Wer    | ist | in dem Garten? | Was     | hat | der Lehrer?  |

- |          |     |             |         |     |                   |
|----------|-----|-------------|---------|-----|-------------------|
| 1        | 2   | 3           | 1       | 2   | 3                 |
| 4. Where | is  | my father?  | 6. When | was | the pupil here?   |
| Wo       | ist | mein Vater? | Wann    | war | der Schüler hier? |

OBSERVE from these examples :

1. That the construction of Direct Interrogative Sentences is exactly the same in German as in English, as far as the position of Verb and Subject is concerned.

2. That in both languages the question-word always begins the sentence.

#### VOCABULARY.

(An Asterisk (\*) after a word signifies that the plural has Umlaut.)

Tuesday, Dienſ'tag	marsh, swamp, der Sumpf *
enemy, der Feind	day, der Tag
finger, der Finger	carpet, der Teppich
Friday, Frei'tag	curtain, der Vorhang *
foot, der Fuß *	week, die Woche
general, der General'	room, das Zimmer
young man, youth, der Jüng'ling	thirty, dreißig
emperor, der Kaiser	five, fünf
acquirements, die Kenntniſſe	long, lang
king, der König	new, neu
Wednesday, der Mitt'woch	magnificent, prächtig
Monday, der Mon'tag	red, rot
officer (military) der Offizier'	seven, ſieben
town, city, die Stadt *	white, weiß
Sunday, der Sonn'tag	where, wo?
Saturday, ( der Sonn'abend,	twelve, zwölf
( or Samſ'tag	

## EXERCISE VII.

*A.* 1. Ein Jahr hat zwölf Monate und in jedem Monat sind dreißig Tage. 2. Die Hände dieser Mädchen sind klein. 3. Die Gärten in diesen Städten wurden im Frühling schön. 4. Die Tage sind im Sommer lang, aber im Winter werden sie kurz und kalt. 5. Die Mutter meines Freundes war gestern in der Stadt. 6. Die Kenntnisse des Lehrers sind groß. 7. Die Vorhänge dieses Zimmers sind weiß, aber die Teppiche sind rot. 8. Die Schwäger dieser Offiziere sind Generale.

*B.* 1. The horses and dogs of this young man are handsome. 2. We have two feet and two hands, and each hand has five fingers. 3. The emperor and the king were enemies, but now they are friends. 4. These trees are old, but they are still beautiful. 5. The curtains and carpets in this room are new and magnificent. 6. Every week has seven days: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday. 7. The sons are tall, but the father is not quite so tall. 8. The funeral of the king was magnificent. 9. My father has two apple-trees in his garden. 10. Where are the frogs? In the spring they are in the marshes.

## ORAL EXERCISE VII.

1. Wo waren die Brüder seiner Mutter gestern? 2. Sind die Vorhänge weiß oder rot? 3. Was hat sein Vater im Garten? 4. Wer war gestern in der Stadt? 5. Wessen Schwäger sind Offiziere? 6. Welche sind die Tage der Woche?

## LESSON VIII.

CONJUGATION OF *haben*, to have. — PLACE OF  
PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE.

24. PARADIGM OF *haben*, to have.

## Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. *haben* IMPF. INDIC. *hatte* PAST PART. *gehabt*

## Indicative.

## PRESENT.

## Subjunctive.

*ich habe*, I have  
*du hast*, thou hast  
*er hat*, he has  
*wir haben*, we have  
*ihr habt*, ye have  
*sie haben*, they have

*ich habe*, I (may) have, etc.  
*du habest*  
*er habe*  
*wir haben*  
*ihr habet*  
*sie haben*

## IMPERFECT.

*ich hatte*, I had  
*du hatteſt*, thou hadst  
*er hatte*, he had  
*wir hatten*, we had  
*ihr hättet*, ye had  
*sie hatten*, they had

*ich hätte*, I had (might have),  
*du hättest* [etc.  
*er hätte*  
*wir hätten*  
*ihr hättet*  
*sie hätten*

## PERFECT.

(Pres. of *haben* + P. Part.)

I have had, etc.

*ich habe*  
*du hast*  
*er hat*  
*wir haben*  
*ihr habt*  
*sie haben* } *gehabt*

I (may) have had, etc.

*ich habe*  
*du habest*  
*er habe*  
*wir haben*  
*ihr habet*  
*sie haben* } *gehabt*

## Indicative.

## PLUPERFECT.

## Subjunctive.

(Imperf. of *haben* + P. Part.)

I had had, etc.		I had (might have) had, etc.	
ich <i>hätte</i>	} <i>gehabt</i>	ich <i>hätte</i>	} <i>gehabt</i>
du <i>hättest</i>		du <i>hättest</i>	
er <i>hätte</i>		er <i>hätte</i>	
wir <i>hätten</i>		wir <i>hätten</i>	
ihr <i>hättet</i>		ihr <i>hättet</i>	
sie <i>hätten</i>		sie <i>hätten</i>	

## FUTURE.

(Pres. of *werden* + Infin. of *haben*.)

I shall have, etc.		I shall have, etc.	
ich <i>werde</i>	} <i>haben</i>	ich <i>werde</i>	} <i>haben</i>
du <i>wirst</i>		du <i>werdest</i>	
er <i>wird</i>		er <i>werde</i>	
wir <i>werden</i>		wir <i>werden</i>	
ihr <i>werdet</i>		ihr <i>werdet</i>	
sie <i>werden</i>		sie <i>werden</i>	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of *haben* + P. Part.)

I shall have had, etc.		I shall have had, etc.	
ich <i>werde</i>	} <i>gehabt haben</i>	ich <i>werde</i>	} <i>gehabt haben</i>
du <i>wirst</i>		du <i>werdest</i>	
er <i>wird</i>		er <i>werde</i>	
wir <i>werden</i>		wir <i>werden</i>	
ihr <i>werdet</i>		ihr <i>werdet</i>	
sie <i>werden</i>		sie <i>werden</i>	

## Conditional.

## SIMPLE.

## COMPOUND.

(Imperf. Subj. of *werden* + Infin. of *haben*.)(Simple Cond. of *haben* + Past Part.)

I should have, etc.

I should have had, etc.

ich <i>würde</i>	} <i>haben</i>
du <i>würdest</i>	

ich <i>würde</i>	} <i>gehabt haben</i>
du <i>würdest</i>	

## Conditional.

er würde }  
 wir würden } **haben**  
 ihr würdet }  
 sie würden }

er würde }  
 wir würden } **gehabt haben**  
 ihr würdet }  
 sie würden }

## Imperative.

**habe** (du), have (thou)  
**habt** (ihr), have (ye)

## Infinitive.

(zu) **haben**, (to) have  
**gehabt** (zu) **haben**, (to) have  
 had

## Participles.

**PRES. habend**, having

**PAST. gehabt**, had.

**25. Use of Auxiliaries of Tense.** — 1. **Haben** forms the perfect tenses of all transitive and most intransitive verbs precisely as above.

In any verb not conjugated with *sein* (see 4, below):

The **Present** of **haben** + **P. Part.** of any verb form the **Perfect** of that verb.

The **Imperfect** of **haben** + **P. Part.** of any verb form the **Pluperfect** of that verb.

2. **Werden** forms the **Future** and **Simple Conditional** thus:

The **Present** of **werden** + **Infin.** of any verb form the **Future**.

The **Imperf. Subj.** of **werden** + **Infin.** of any verb form the **Simple Conditional**.

3. The **Future** of **haben** + **P. Part.** of any verb (not conjugated with *sein*) form the **Future Perfect**.

The **Simple Conditional** of **haben** + **P. Part.** of any verb (not conjugated with *sein*) form the **Compound Conditional**.

4. **Sein** replaces **haben** in the Perfect Tenses of many Intransitive Verbs. (See § 53.) Compare the English 'He is come.'

## 26. CONSTRUCTION OF COMPOUND TENSES. — PLACE OF PARTICIPLE AND INFINITIVE.

*Rule of Construction.* — In every principal sentence the Participle and Infinitive come at the end; but if both be present, the Participle precedes the Infinitive, which is always last, as :

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	PART.	OBJECT.
(Engl.)	My teacher	has	had	money.

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	PART.
(Germ.)	Mein Lehrer	hat	Geld	gehabt.

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	INFIN.	OBJECT.
(Engl.)	We	shall	have	a storm.

	1	2	3	4
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	INFIN.
(Germ.)	Wir	werden	einen Sturm	haben.

	1	2	3	4	5
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	INFIN.	PART.	OBJECT.
(Engl.)	The beggars	would	have	had	no shoes.

	1	2	3	4	5
	SUBJECT.	VERB.	OBJECT.	PART.	INFIN.
(Germ.)	Die Bettler	würden	keine Schuhe	gehabt	haben.

REMEMBER: In compound tenses, the auxiliary is the verb, and occupies the second place in a principal sentence (see § 20, Rule 1, above).

### VOCABULARY.

evening, der Abend  
 beggar, der Bettler  
 holiday, der Feiertag  
 fish, der Fisch  
 fruit, die Frucht \*  
 fox, der Fuchs \*

money, das Geld  
 guest, der Gast \*  
 harbour, der Hafen \*  
 glove, der Handschuh  
 basket, der Korb \*  
 nut, die Nuß \*

to be right, Recht haben	out of, aus (gov. dat.)
sailing-ship, das Ze'gelschiff	to become of, aus... werden
chair, der Stuhl *	poor, arm
storm, der Sturm *	bad, schlecht
stocking, der Strumpf *	to-morrow, morgen
shoe, der Schuh	the day after to-morrow, ü'ber-
table, der Tisch	morgen
animal, das Tier	much, viel
to be wrong, Unrecht haben	already, schon
pleasure, das Vergnügen	when, wann ?
wolf, der Wolf *	

## EXERCISE VIII.

*A.* 1. Ich habe viel Geld gehabt, aber jetzt bin ich arm. 2. Die Früchte werden im Herbst reif. 3. Wird der Knabe einen Tisch und Stühle in seinem Zimmer haben? 4. Ihre Handschuhe wurden schlecht, denn sie waren schon alt. 5. Es ist angenehm, Freunde zu haben. 6. Was wurde aus dem Sohne des Lehrers? Er wurde auch Lehrer. 7. Ich werde Feinde und auch Freunde haben. 8. Die Gäste in unserer Stadt wurden müde, denn das Wetter war sehr heiß. 9. Werden wir Teppiche und Vorhänge in unserm Zimmer haben? 10. Er hatte Freunde gehabt. 11. Sie werden in diesem Jahre viel Vergnügen gehabt haben. 12. Die Söhne des Königs haben Pferde und Wagen, aber die Töchter des Bettlers haben keine Schuhe und keine Strümpfe. 13. Wir hatten Recht gehabt, aber er hatte Unrecht gehabt. 14. Mit meinen Freunden habe ich viel Vergnügen gehabt. 15. Unsere Freunde werden gestern viel Vergnügen gehabt haben, denn das Wetter war schön und warm.

*B.* 1. The sailing-ships are in the harbour. 2. We had thirty fishes in our baskets. 3. He would have friends. 4. The evening was fine, but the weather became cold. 5. We have had two storms. 6. Where are our guests? They became tired and are now in the garden. 7. To-morrow we shall have



a holiday, for it is Saturday. 8. We were in the garden yesterday, and the trees are already green. 9. What has he had? He has had apples and nuts. 10. Dogs, wolves, and foxes are animals.

#### ORAL EXERCISE VIII.

1. Wer hatte Recht und wer hatte Unrecht? 2. Wann werden wir einen Feiertag haben? 3. Wo sind die Segelschiffe? 4. Wessen Söhne haben Wagen und Pferde? 5. Warum wurden die Gäste müde? 6. Welche Gemälde sind schön?

### LESSON IX.

WEAK CONJUGATION: *loben*. — DEPENDENT SENTENCES. — PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

**27.** The **stem** of a verb is what is left when the termination of the Present Infinitive (**-en** or **-n**) is dropped, as: *hab-en*, stem *hab*; *lob-en*, stem *lob*.

**28.** The **Principal Parts** of a verb are the **Present Infinitive**, **Imperfect Indicative**, and **Past Participle**.

**29.** Any verb, when these principal parts are given, may be conjugated throughout, by using the auxiliaries, precisely as in the paradigm of *haben* in Less. VIII.

**30.** **Weak verbs** are those which form the Imperfect by adding **-te**, and the Past Participle by prefixing **ge-** and adding **-t** to the stem, as: *lob-en*, to praise (stem *lob*), Imperfect *lob-te*, P. Part. *ge-lob-t*; *tadel-n*, to blame (stem *tadel*), Imperf. *tadel-te*, P. Part. *ge-tadel-t*.

NOTE. — Weak verbs are also called *Regular* or *Modern*.

**31.** PARADIGM OF *loben*, to praise.

Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. *loben* IMPF. INDIC. *lobte* PAST PART. *gelobt*

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

## PRESENT.

ich **lobe**, I praise (am praising, do praise)      ich **lobe**, I (may) praise

du **lobest**, thou praisest, etc.      du **lobest**, thou (mayest) praise

er **lobet**, he praises      er **lobe**, he (may) praise

wir **loben**, we praise      wir **loben**, we (may) praise

ihr **lobet**, ye praise      ihr **lobet**, ye (may) praise

sie **loben**, they praise      sie **loben**, they (may) praise

## IMPERFECT.

(Same form for both moods.)

ich **lobte**, I praised (was praising, etc.)

du **lobtest**, thou praisedst

er **lobte**, he praised

wir **lobten**, we praised

ihr **lobtet**, ye praised

sie **lobten**, they praised

## PERFECT.

(Pres. of **haben** + P. Part of **loben**.)

ich **habe gelobt**, I have praised (been praising)      ich **habe gelobt**

du **hast gelobt**, thou hast praised, etc.      du **habeſt gelobt**, 2c.

## PLUPERFECT.

(Imperf. of **haben** + P. Part. **loben**.)

ich **hatte gelobt**, I had praised (been praising), etc.      ich **hätte gelobt**, 2c.

## FUTURE.

(Present of **werden** + Infin. of **loben**.)

ich **werde loben**, I shall praise (be praising)      ich **werde loben**

du **wirſt loben**, thou wilt praise, etc.      du **werdeſt loben**, 2c.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of *haben* + P. Part. of *loben*.)ich werde **gelobt** haben, I shall have  
praisedich werde **gelobt** habendu wirst **gelobt** haben, thou wilt have  
praised, etc.du werdest **gelobt**  
haben, etc.

## Conditional.

## SIMPLE.

## COMPOUND.

(Impf. Subj. of *werden* + Infin.  
of *loben*.)(Simple Cond. of *haben* + P. Part.  
of *loben*.)ich würde **loben**, I should  
praise (be praising) etc.ich würde **gelobt** haben, I should  
have praised, etc.

## Imperative.

## Infinitive.

lobe (du), praise (thou)

(zu) **loben**, (to) praise.

lobe er, let him praise

**gelobt** (zu) haben, (to) have  
praised

loben wir, let us praise

lobt (ihr), praise (ye)

loben sie, let them praise

## Participles.

*Pres.* **lobend**, praising*Past.* **gelobt**, praised

REMARKS. — 1. **c** is sometimes found in the terminations of the following parts : Pres. Ind. du lob(**c**)st, er lob(**c**)t, ihr lob(**c**)t; Impf. (Ind. and Subj.) ich lob(**c**)te, etc.; P. Part. gelob(**c**)t, etc.; and is always retained in certain verbs. (See § 35, Rem. 2, below.)

2. Note again the persistent **c** of the Pres. Subj.

3. English periphrastic forms of the verb are to be avoided in German; thus :

I praise	}	ich lobe	}	(praise I?)	}	lobe ich?
I am praising		am I praising?				
I do praise		do I praise?				

(he praised not)	} er lobte nicht	(praised he not?)	} lobte er nicht?
he was not praising		was he not praising?	
he did not praise		did he not praise?	

I have been praising, etc., ich habe gelobt, etc.

Had I been praising? hatte ich gelobt?

4. The only true Imperative forms are those of the 2. sing. and 2. plur., *lobe, lobt*. For the other persons, the pres. subj. is used, as: *lobe er*, let him praise: *loben wir*, let us praise; *loben sie*, let them praise;—the verb preceding the pronoun.

#### CONSTRUCTION OF DEPENDENT SENTENCES.

**32.** The **Verb** in a Dependent Sentence comes *last*, as:

Ich glaube, daß er Geld **hat**,  
I believe that he **has** money.

REMEMBER: that the **auxiliary is the verb** in compound tenses.

**33.** In compound tenses the Participle and Infinitive immediately precede the verb; if both be present, the Participle precedes, as in principal sentences, thus:

Ich glaube, daß er Geld **gehabt hat**,  
I believe, that he has *had* money.  
Ich glaube, daß er Geld **haben wird**,  
I believe that he will *have* money.  
Ich glaube, daß er Geld **gehabt haben wird**,  
I believe that he will have *had* money.

NOTE.—The place of the Subject, in a Dependent Sentence, is usually the same as in English.

**34.** PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE ONLY.

**Bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, wider.**

**bis**, (1) till, until (*time*), as: I shall not come **until** tomorrow (**bis** morgen).

(2) up to, as far as (*place*), as: He travelled with us  
as far as (**bis**) Montreal.

**durch**, through; as: He rode **through** the forest (**durch**  
den Wald).

**für**, for; as: That is **for** my friend (**für** meinen Freund);  
the scissors are not a toy **for** children (**für** Kinder).

**gegen**, towards, against (not necessarily denoting hos-  
tility), as: The enemy advanced **towards** (or  
**against**) the bridge (**gegen** die Brücke).

**ohne**, without; as: We cannot travel **without** money (**ohne**  
Geld).

**um**, (1) around, about; as: We drove **around** the town  
(**um** die Stadt).

(2) at, about (*time*), as: He came **at** four o'clock  
(**um** vier Uhr; it happened **at** (or **about**)  
Christmas (**um** Weihnachten).

**wider**, against (*opposition, hostility*), as: He swam **against**  
the stream (**wider** den Strom; the soldiers were fighting  
**against** the enemy (**wider** den Feind).

REMARK. — *Durch*, *für*, and *um* are generally contracted  
with the Neuter of the unemphasized Definite Article, thus:

*durch* das = **durchs** (*durch's*)

*für* das = **fürs** (*für's*)

*um* das = **ums** (*um's*)

#### VOCABULARY.

believe, glauben

hope, hoffen

buy, kaufen

laugh, lachen

live, leben

learn, lernen

love, lieben

make, do, machen

say, sagen

send, schicken

play, spielen

sell, verkaufen

weep, cry, weinen	place, square, der Platz *
bishop, der Bischof *	ring, der Ring
German, Deutsch	walk, der Spaziergang *
servant, der Diener	time, die Zeit
industry, diligence, der Fleiß	good, kind, gut
young lady, Miss, das Fräulein	merry, merrily, lustig
cardinal, der Kardinal	sad, traurig
noise, der Lärm	that (conj.), daß
Latin, das Latein	because, weil
palace, der Palaß *	if, wenn
pope, der Papst *	why, warum?

*Idiom:* to take a walk, einen Spaziergang machen.

NOTE. — A past tense after wenn ('if') is put in the subj. mood.

#### EXERCISE IX.

*A.* 1. Die Kardinale und Bischöfe waren gestern im Palaste des Papstes. 2. Das Fräulein wird diese Ringe kaufen, denn sie sind schön. 3. Der Maler würde dieses Gemälde nicht verkaufen. 4. Ich würde diesen Ring kaufen, wenn ich reich wäre. 5. Hat er es geglaubt? Er hat es geglaubt, weil sein Vater es gesagt hat. 6. Die Schüler haben viel Lärm gemacht. 7. Wir loben den Jüngling, weil er fleißig ist. 8. Der König wird seine Generale gegen den Feind schicken. 9. Meine Schwester wird Handschuhe kaufen, denn ihre Handschuhe sind schlecht. 10. Wir würden heute einen Spaziergang durch die Stadt machen, wenn das Wetter schön wäre. 11. Sie würden auch einen Spaziergang gemacht haben, wenn sie Zeit gehabt hätten. 12. Sie wird sagen, daß ich Recht habe. 13. Ich habe immer gehofft, daß er lernen würde. 14. Sie liebt ihren Vater und ihre Mutter, denn sie sind gut. 15. Er würde das Gemälde nicht gelobt haben, denn es war nicht schön.

*B.* 1. What were they doing yesterday? They were playing in the garden. 2. This gentleman will praise his servants, for they are industrious. 3. We have taken a walk about

the town. 4. The squares in those cities are very fine. 5. Where were the daughters of the officers? They were living in a convent. 6. Without industry we shall not learn much. 7. The boy was playing with the dog. 8. The gentleman has sold his horses and carriages. 9. What are the young ladies doing now? 10. Why was she crying? She was crying because she was sad. 11. They are laughing because they are merry. 12. We shall have learned much in a week. 13. I am laughing because the child is playing so merrily. 14. To-day we are learning German, to-morrow we shall learn Latin. 15. We have bought shoes and stockings for the beggars.

#### ORAL EXERCISE IX.

1. Weshalb hat sie gelacht? 2. Wer machte so viel Lärm? 3. Wo haben die Fräulein einen Spaziergang gemacht? 4. Was hat die Frau gekauft? 5. Weshalb hat seine Schwester Handschuhe gekauft? 6. Was werden wir morgen machen?

### LESSON X.

WEAK VERBS (continued). DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES :  
— **Darf** MODEL, OR PLURAL IN **-er**.

#### 35. ENDINGS OF WEAK VERBS IN SIMPLE TENSES.

INDICATIVE.	Present.		Imperfect.	Imperative.
	SUBJUNCT.		IND. AND SUBJ.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. — <b>e</b>	— <b>e</b>		—( <b>e</b> ) <b>te</b>	<i>Sing.</i> 2. — <b>e</b>
2. —( <b>e</b> ) <b>st</b>	— <b>e</b> <b>st</b>		—( <b>e</b> ) <b>test</b>	<i>Plur.</i> 2. —( <b>e</b> ) <b>t</b>
3. —( <b>e</b> ) <b>t</b>	— <b>e</b>		—( <b>e</b> ) <b>te</b>	Infinitive.
<i>Plur.</i> 1. — <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>		—( <b>e</b> ) <b>ten</b>	— <b>en</b>
2. —( <b>e</b> ) <b>t</b>	— <b>et</b>		—( <b>e</b> ) <b>tet</b>	Participles.
3. — <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>		( <b>e</b> ) <b>ten</b>	<i>Pres.</i> — <b>end</b>
				<i>Past.</i> ge <b>e</b> t

REMARKS. — 1. Observe the following endings :

(a) Final **-t** of the 3. sing. occurs *only* in the **Pres. Indic.**

(b) The 2. sing. has **-st** *except* in the **Imperative.**

(c) The 2. plur. has **-t** *throughout.*

2. Verb-Stems in **-d** or **-t** (**th**), or in **-m** or **-n** preceded by another consonant, retain **-c** *throughout after* the stem, as :

### reden, to speak.

PRES. IND.	IMPERFECT.	IMPERATIVE.
<i>Sing.</i> 2. du rede <b>st</b>	<i>Sing.</i> 1. ich redete	<i>Plur.</i> 2. redet ( <i>ihr</i> )
3. er redet	2. du redetest	
<i>Plur.</i> 2. <i>ihr</i> redet	etc.	

Thus : arbeiten, to work : ich arbeitete ; atmen, to breathe : du atme**st** ; regnen, to rain : es regnet.

3. Verb-Stems in a sibilant (**s**, **sch**, **ß**, **x**, **z**) retain **-c** in the 2. sing. Pres. Ind. and Subj. only, as :

tanzen, to dance : du tanze**st** ; reisen, to travel : du reise**st**.

4. Verb-Stems in **-el** and **-er** drop **c** of the stem before terminations in **-c** (i. e. in 1. sing. Pres. Ind., 1. and 3. sing. Pres. Subj., and 2. sing. Imper.), and, *except in the Subjunctive*, never insert **c** *after l* or *n*, as :

### tadeln, to blame.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERFECT.
ich tad <b>le</b>	tad <b>le</b>	ich tadelte, etc.
du tadel <b>st</b>	tadel <b>st</b>	IMPERATIVE.
er tadel <b>t</b>	tad <b>le</b>	tad <b>le</b>
wir tadel <b>n</b>	tad <b>len</b>	tadel <b>t</b>
ihr tadel <b>t</b>	tad <b>let</b>	P. PART.
sie tadel <b>n</b>	tad <b>len</b>	getadel <b>t</b>

5. Foreign verbs in **-ieren** (**-iren**) do not take the prefix **ge-** in the P. Part., as : stud-ieren, to study : P. Part. studi**ert**



(not *ge-studiert*); bombardieren, to bombard : P. Part. *bombardiert*.

6. Verbs with the prefixes *be-*, *er-*, *emp-*, *ent-*, *ge-*, *ver-*, *zer-* also omit the prefix *ge-* in the P. Part., as : *bezahlen*, P. Part. *bezahlt*; *verschwenden*, *verschwendet*.

### 36. DECLENSION OF *das Dorf*, the village.

#### *Singular.*

#### *Plural.*

Nom. <i>das Dorf</i> , the village	<i>die Dörfer</i> , the villages
Gen. <i>des Dorf(e)s</i> , of the village	<i>der Dörfer</i> , of the villages
Dat. <i>dem Dorf(e)</i> , (to, for) the village	<i>den Dörfern</i> , (to, for) the villages
Acc. <i>das Dorf</i> , the village	<i>die Dörfer</i> , the villages

REMARKS. — 1. The Singular is formed precisely as in the *Sohn* model. (See § 21.)

2. Observe *-er* of the Plural, with the additional *-n* of the Dative.

3. All Substantives of this Declension with *a*, *e*, *u* or *au* in the stem take **Umlaut**.

37. In this way are declined :

1. Most neuter monosyllables (exceptions in App. E. .

2. Substantives ending in *-thum*.

3. *Five* neuters with prefix *Ge-*, viz. :

<i>das Gemach</i> , the apartment	<i>das Gespenst</i> , the spectre
<i>das Gemüt</i> , the temper, disposition	<i>das Gewand</i> , the garment (also <i>Gesicht</i> ; see § 64)
<i>das Geschlecht</i> , the sex	

4. Two foreign neuters, viz. : *das Regiment*, the regiment; *das Hospital* (or *Spital*), the hospital.

5. The following *nine* masculines :

der Böfewicht, the villain	der Rand, the edge, margin
der Geist, the spirit	der Vormund, the guardian
der Gott, the God	der Wald, the forest
der Leib, the body	der Wurm, the worm
der Mann, the man, husband (Lat. <i>vir</i> )	(also <i>Dorn</i> , <i>Ort</i> ; see App. E.)

Further examples (Sing. like *Sohn*) :

Das Schloß, the castle, palace: *Plur.* N. G. A. *Schlösser*,  
D. *Schlössern*.

Das Buch, the book: *Plur.* N. G. A. *Bücher*, D. *Büchern*.

Der Mann, the man, husband: *Plur.* N. G. A. *Männer*, D  
*Männern*.

Das Kind, the child: *Plur.* N. G. A. *Kinder*, D. *Kindern*.

Das Haus, the house: *Plur.* N. G. A. *Häuser*, D. *Häusern*.

## VOCABULARY.

to row, rudern	child, das Kind
shake, schütteln	dress, das Kleid
waste, verschwenden	clothes, pl. of Kleid
exercise, task, die Aufgabe	song, das Lied
leaf, das Blatt	courage, spirit, der Mut
egg, das Ei	woman, wife, das Weib
possession, property, das Eigentum	yellow, gelb
earth, die Erde	enough, genug
gardener, der Gärtner	well (adv.), gut
fowl, das Huhn	a long while, lange
	too, zu

## EXERCISE X.

A. 1. Im Herbst werden die Blätter gelb, denn das Wetter ist kalt. 2. Ich tadle diese Mädchen, weil sie ihre Aufgabe nicht studiert haben. 3. Im Winter studierten die Jünglinge; im

Sommer arbeiteten sie. 4. „Du ruderst nicht schnell genug, mein Bruder,“ sagte ich. 5. Diese Männer lieben ihre Weiber und Kinder. 6. Der Lehrer sagte, daß die Kinder zu viel Lärm machten. 7. Der König redete mit den Generalen, und lobte den Mut ihrer Regimenter. 8. Die Vormünder dieser Kinder sind Bösewichter, denn sie haben das Eigentum der Kinder verschwendet. 9. Die Würmer leben in der Erde, aber die Fische leben im Wasser. 10. Wo sind die Eier der Hühner? Sie sind in unseren Körben. 11. Ich werde müde, weil ich gegen den Strom rudre. 12. Der Kaiser hat die Generale getadelt, aber ihre Regimenter hat er gelobt.

*B.* 1. The general has bombarded the town. 2. The woman was buying books and clothes for her children. 3. The gardener is shaking the apple-tree. 4. The children were learning songs. 5. The boy is industrious; he has studied well. 6. The apartments of the palaces are magnificent. 7. It rained yesterday, but it will not rain to-day. 8. We have rowed a long while against the stream. 9. These men travelled through towns and villages. 10. The hospitals in London are large and fine. 11. The leaves of these trees are large and beautiful. 12. This gentleman would buy my houses, if he had money enough.

#### ORAL EXERCISE X.

1. Weshalb werden die Blätter gelb? 2. Wessen Regimenter hat der König getadelt? 3. Was sagte der Lehrer? 4. Wo leben die Würmer? 5. Was lernten die Kinder? 6. Würde dieser Herr das Haus kaufen?

## LESSON XI.

## PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## 38. DECLENSION OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

## First Person.

*Sing.* N. *ich*, IG. *meiner* (*mein*), of meD. *mir*, (to, for) meA. *mit*, me*Plur.* N. *wir*, weG. *unſer* (*unſrer*), of usD. *uſ*, (to, for) usA. *unſ*, us

## Second Person.

*du*, thou*deiner* (*dein*), of thee*dir*, (to, for) thee*di*, thee*ihr*, ye, you*euer* (*eurer*), of you*euch*, (to, for) you*euch*, you

## Third Person.

*Singular.*

MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	REFLEXIVE (ALL GENDERS).
N. <i>er</i> , he	<i>ſie</i> , she	<i>eſ</i> , it	
G. <i>ſeiner</i> ( <i>ſein</i> ), of him	<i>ihrer</i> ( <i>ihr</i> ), of her	<i>ſeiner</i> ( <i>ſein</i> , <i>eſ</i> ), of it	
D. <i>ih</i> , (to, for) him	<i>ihr</i> , (to, for) her	<i>ih</i> , (to, for) it	<i>ſich</i> , (to, for) himself, herself, itself
A. <i>ih</i> , him	<i>ſie</i> , her	<i>eſ</i> , it	<i>ſich</i> , himself, herself, itself

*Plural.*

N. <i>ſie</i> , they	} FOR ALL GENDERS	<i>ſich</i> , (to, for) them- selves
G. <i>ihrer</i> ( <i>ihr</i> ), of them		
D. <i>ihnen</i> , (to, for) them		
A. <i>ſie</i> , them		

REMARKS. — 1. The forms *mein*, *dein*, *ſein*, *ihr*, *unſrer*, *eurer* are poetical or archaic.

2 The form *eſ* of the 3. sing. gen. neuter is only used in certain phrases, as: *Ich bin eſ m*de, I am tired of it.

3. The gen. and dat. of the 3. sing. neuter do not occur, except when referring to *persons* (e. g. Mädchen, Fräulein).

4. The Pronouns of the 3. sing. must agree in gender with the substantive to which they refer, as :

Hast du <b>den</b> Hut?	Ja, ich habe <b>ihn</b> .
Hast thou the hat?	Yes, I have <b>it</b> .
Hast du <b>die</b> Blume?	Nein, ich habe <b>sie</b> nicht.
Hast thou the flower?	No, I have <b>it</b> not.
Wo ist <b>das</b> Mädchen?	<b>Es</b> ist im Garten.
Where is the girl?	<i>She</i> is in the garden.

5. The Pronouns of the 3. person are *not used after Prepositions, when referring to inanimate objects*, but are replaced by the adverb **da(r)**, *there*, before the Preposition, the *r* being inserted if the Preposition begins with a vowel, as :

Bist du mit **diesem** Buche zufrieden? Ja, ich bin **damit** zufrieden. Art thou satisfied with this book? Yes, I am satisfied **with it** (*therewith*).

How much did you pay for this hat? I paid two dollars **for it**, **dafür** (*therefor*).

What have you in your purse? I have money **in it** (**darin**, *therein*).

### 39.

#### IDOMATIC USES OF *es*.

1. Before the verb, representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as :

Who is it? **It** is my cousin; it is my cousins.

Wer ist **es**? **Es** ist mein Vetter; **es** sind meine Vettern.

**Es** leuchtet die Sonne, the sun shines, i. e., it is the sun that shines.

**Es** leuchten die Sterne, (it is) the stars (that) shine.

REMARK. — *Es* in this construction is often rendered by 'there' in English, as :

**There** is a bird in this cage.

*Es* ist ein Vogel in diesem Bauer.

**There** are three books on this table.

*Es* sind drei Bücher auf diesem Tisch.

(See also *es* giebt, Less. XXXVII.)

2. When the real subject represented by *es* is a personal pronoun, with the verb *to be*, *es* follows the verb, which agrees with the real subject in person and number, as :

It is I,	<i>Ich</i> bin <i>es</i> .
It is you,	<i>Du</i> bist <i>es</i> .
	<i>Ihr</i> seid <i>es</i> .
	<i>Sie</i> sind <i>es</i> .
It is we,	<i>wir</i> sind <i>es</i> .
It is they,	<i>sie</i> sind <i>es</i> .
Is it you?	sind <i>Sie</i> <i>es</i> ?

3. After the verb, representing a predicate or a clause, and corresponding to the English 'one' or 'so,' as :

Is your father a soldier? Yes, he is **one** (*es*).

We are free, and you shall be **so** (*es*) too.

#### 40. USE OF PRONOUNS IN ADDRESS.

1. *Du* is used only in addressing persons with whom we are very intimate, or towards whom we use no ceremony; also in addressing the Supreme Being, as :

Wo bist *du*, lieber Freund?

Where are you, dear friend?

Was machst *du*, mein Kind?

What are you doing, my child?

Wir loben *Sich*, o Gott! We praise Thee, o God!

2. **Ihr** (plur. of **du**) is used in addressing a number of persons, each of whom we should address by **du**, as :

Was macht **ihr**, Kinder?

What are you doing, children?

3. In all other cases we use for 'you' in German, whether sing. or plur., the pronoun of the **Third Plural** : **Sie**, **Ihrer**, **Ihnen**, **Sie**, distinguished by a *capital letter*. (See also § 43.)

#### 41. PARADIGM OF **loben** WITH REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

##### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. ich lobe <b>midh</b> ,	I praise <b>myself</b>
2. du lobst <b>didh</b> ,	thou praisest <b>thysself</b>
3. er } sie } lobt <b>sich</b> , es }	he } she } praises { <b>himself</b> it } { <b>herself</b> { <b>itself</b>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. wir loben <b>uns</b> ,	we praise <b>ourselves</b>
2. ihr lobt <b>euch</b> ,	ye praise <b>yourselves</b>
3. sie loben <b>sich</b> ,	they praise <b>themselves</b>

So throughout the verb, as :

PERFECT : Ich habe mich gelobt, du hast dich gelobt, er hat sich gelobt, etc.

#### 42. REFLEXIVE AND RECIPROCAL PRONOUNS — **sich**.

1. The Pronouns of the First and Second Persons express *reflexive* action without a special form, as shown by the above paradigm, but those of the Third Person have the form **sich**.

2. These pronouns are also used in the Plural to express *reciprocal* action, as :

**We** met **each other** ; **they** will see **each other** again

**Wir** begegneten **uns** ; **sie** werden **sich** wiedersehen.

But when, to prevent ambiguity, it is necessary to distinguish reciprocal from reflexive action, we use **einander** as the reciprocal pronoun for all persons, thus :

We love each other (one another), **Wir lieben einander.**

(**Wir lieben uns** might mean 'we love *ourselves*.')

3. To emphasize and strengthen the reflexive pronouns, and give them an *exclusive* sense, as well as further to distinguish them from reciprocal pronouns, the indeclinable word **selbst** (or **selber**) is used, as :

Know yourselves, **Erkennt euch selbst.**

(**Erkennt euch** might mean 'know *one another*.')

He has injured himself, **Er hat sich selbst beschädigt.**

REMARK. — This word **selbst** is in apposition to the subject (or object, as the case may be), as :

**Der König selbst** ist nicht immer glücklich.

The king **himself** is not always happy.

It is also used adverbially (= Eng. 'even'), as

**Even** the king is not always happy.

**Selbst** der König ist nicht immer glücklich.

#### VOCABULARY.

behave one's self properly (of children), artig sein	seat one's self (sit down), <b>sich</b> setzen
meet, begegnen (dat.)	punish, <b>strafen</b>
visit, besuchen	work, labour, <b>die Arbeit</b>
pay, bezahlen	parents, <b>die Eltern</b> (no sing.)
have finished (with), fertig sein mit	patience, <b>die Geduld</b>
belong (to), gehören (dat.)	gentleman, master, Mr., <b>der</b> hat, bonnet, <b>der Hut</b> * [ <b>Herr</b>
be ashamed of, <b>sich</b> schämen (gen.)	John, <b>Johann</b>
	Charles, <b>Karl</b>



artist, der Künstler  
 Mary, Marie  
 uncle, der Oheim  
 dollar, der Thaler

away, gone, fort  
 here, hier  
 ever, at any time, je, jemals  
 never, nie, niemals

## EXERCISE XI.

A. 1. Sei artig Karl, du machst zu viel Lärm. 2. Jene Männer sind sehr reich, denn diese Häuser gehören ihnen. 3. Gehört das Pferd Ihnen? Nein, es gehört mir nicht, es gehört dem Offizier. 4. Unser Oheim hat uns Bücher gekauft. 5. Habt Geduld, Kinder, ich werde euch morgen Äpfel und Nüsse kaufen. 6. Ich werde morgen einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen. 7. Er glaubt, daß ich mir das Pferd gekauft habe. 8. Morgen werden wir einen Feiertag haben, und wir werden unsere Eltern besuchen. 9. Ich werde ihr sagen, daß ihre Mutter fort ist. 10. Waren Sie jemals in dieser Kirche? Ich war nie darin. 11. Karl und Johann begegneten sich gestern im Walde. 12. Ist Ihr Vater noch krank? Nein, mein Vater ist jetzt wohl. 13. Marie, liebst du deine Eltern? Ja, und sie lieben mich auch. 14. Ich würde einen Spaziergang mit Ihnen machen, wenn ich Zeit hätte. 15. Hat der Lehrer Marie getadelt? Ja, er hat sie getadelt. 16. Die Schüler loben sich selbst, weil sie ihre Aufgabe so schnell gemacht haben. 17. Wir würden uns selbst auch loben, wenn wir unsere Aufgabe gemacht hätten. 18. Er würde sich schämen, wenn er mit seiner Aufgabe nicht fertig wäre. 19. Weshalb loben diese Künstler einander? Sie loben einander, weil ihre Gemälde schön sind. 20. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden? Nein, ich bin nicht damit zufrieden.

B. 1. Is the table large? No, it is small. 2. Her father has bought her a ring. 3. Were the fishes in your basket? Yes, they were in it. 4. Who has told it [to] her? 5. John, have you my shoes? No, I have them not. 6. We sit down because we are tired. 7. Even the beggars of this city have shoes and stockings. 8. Who has bought this hat? 9. I bought it myself in the city, and paid four dollars for it. 10.

Charles and his teacher love each other very much. 11. Mother, have you bought me apples or nuts? 12. Mr. A., here is a chair for you; sit down. 13. Has the teacher blamed him? Yes, he had not done his exercise. 14. Do you believe that this milk is good? Yes, it is very good. 15. The teacher is ashamed of her, because she has not finished (with) her work.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XI.

1. Würden sie einen Spaziergang mit mir machen? 2. Weshalb loben Sie sich so viel? 3. Was sagten Sie mir? 4. Sind Sie mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden? 5. Was werden wir morgen machen? 6. Werden Sie morgen Ihre Eltern besuchen?

### LESSON XII.

#### POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES. — USE OF ARTICLES.

#### 43. POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES.

First Person.

*Sing.* *mein*, my

*Plur.* *unser*, our

Second Person.

*dein*, thy

*euer*, your

Third Person.

MASC.

FEM.

NEUTER.

ALL GENDERS.

*Sing.* *sein*, his (its) *ihr*, her (its) *sein*, its *Plur.* *ihr*, their

Poss. Adj. of Polite Address: *Ihr*.

REMARKS. — 1. The Possessive Adjectives are the Genitive Cases of the respective Personal Pronouns, declined after the *mein* Model. (See § 8, above.)

2. *Unser* and *euer* may drop *e* of the stem when inflected; or they may drop *e* of the termination, unless the termination is *-e* or *-er*, as: *unsere* or *unsre*; *unsere's*, *unsre's* or *unsers*.

3. Observe the correlatives of the Pronouns of Address:

*du* — *dein*

*ihr* — *euer*

*Sie* — *Ihr*

Thus we say :

<b>du</b>	hast	<b>deine</b>	Aufgabe	gelernt,	} you have learnt your lesson
<b>ihr</b>	habt	<b>eure</b>	"	"	
<b>Sie</b>	haben	<b>Ihre</b>	"	"	

NOTE. — The last example shows the use of the Pers. Pron. and Poss. Adj. of *Third Plural* as Pronoun of Address.

4. Observe also the correlatives of the Third Person :

Referring to subst.	<i>masc. sing.</i>	<b>sein</b>	} whether animate or inanimate		
"	"	"		<i>fem. "</i>	<b>ihr</b>
"	"	"		<i>neuter "</i>	<b>sein</b>
"	to substs. plur. (all genders)			<b>ihr</b>	

Thus we say :

**Der** Hund hat **seinen** Knochen verloren (lost)  
**Die** Blume " **ihre** Blätter "  
**Das** Buch " **seine** " "

5. The possessive adjectives agree in gender with both the possessor and the thing possessed. The *termination* will depend on the gender (number and case) of the substantive they qualify (the *thing possessed*) ; the *stem* (as above) on the gender of the substantive to which they refer (the *possessor*).

NOTE. — Feminine diminutives, such as : Mädchen, girl, Fräulein, young lady, generally take the possessive adjective referring to them in the **feminine**, agreeing with the sex rather than the gender, as :

Das Mädchen liebt **ihre** Mutter.  
 The girl loves **her** mother.

For Possessive Pronouns, see LESS. XXIII.

#### 44. USE OF THE ARTICLES.

The **Definite Article** is required in German, contrary to English usage, in the following cases :

1. Before all substantives used in the full extent of their signification (i. e. in a *general* as well as in a *particular* sense); hence :

(a) Before nouns (sing. or plur.) denoting a **whole class**, as :

**Der Mensch** ist sterblich, **Man** is mortal;  
**Die Vögel** haben Nester, **Birds** have nests.

(b) Before names of **materials**, **abstract nouns**, etc., used in their *unlimited* sense, not partitively, as :

**Das Glas** ist durchsichtig,  
**Glass** is transparent;  
**Das Gold** ist wertvoller als **das Silber**,  
**Gold** is more valuable than **silver** ; but :  
**Gold und Silber** habe ich nicht,  
**Gold and silver** I have not (have none of).  
**Die Not** ist die Mutter **der** Erfindung,  
**Necessity** is the mother of invention;  
**Die Musik** ist eine Kunst,  
**Music** is an art ; but :  
**Er studiert Musik**,  
**He studies music** (limited sense).

NOTE. — In Proverbs and Enumerations this article is omitted, as :

**Not** kennt kein Gebot,  
**Necessity** knows no law;  
**Musik und Malerei** sind schöne Künste,  
**Music and painting** are fine arts.

2. Before names of **mountains**, **lakes**, **seas**, **rivers**, **forests**, **streets**, **seasons**, **months** and **days** of the week, as :

**Der Vesuv**, **Mount Vesuvius**.  
**Der Ontario**, **Lake Ontario**.  
**Die Themse**, the **Thames**.  
**Der Speßart**, the (forest of) **Spessart**.  
**Die Friedrichstraße**, **Frederick Street**.

**Im** Frühling, in spring.  
**Der** Januar ist kalt, January is cold.  
**Am** Montag, on Monday.

Also before Himmel, Erde, Hölle, as :

**Im** Himmel, in heaven ;  
**Zur** Erde, to earth ;

and before places of public resort, as :

**Zur** Schule gehen, to go to school.  
**Ich** war in **der** Kirche, I was at church.

3. Before names of countries when not neuter, or when preceded by an adjective, as :

**Die** Schweiz, Switzerland.  
**Das** schöne Frankreich, fair France.

NOTE. — Further information on the article with Proper Names is given in §§ 73, 74, 76.

4. The English *Indefinite* Article is replaced by the *Definite* Article in German when used distributively (= each), as :

**Zweimal des** Jahres, twice a year.  
**Drei Thaler die** Elle, three dollars a yard.

5. The Indefinite Article is omitted before the unqualified predicate after sein or werden; as :

**Er** ist (wurde) Soldat, he is (became) a soldier ;  
 but :  
**Er** ist ein tapferer Soldat, he is a brave soldier.

6. (a) The Definite Article replaces the Possessive Adjective when no ambiguity would result as to the possessor, as :

**Er** steckte **die** Hand in die Tasche,  
 He put his hand into his pocket ;  
**Er** schüttelt **den** Kopf,  
 He shakes his head.

Geben Sie mir **die** Hand, Give me **your** hand.

(b) With parts of the person, clothing, etc., the **Dative** of the **Personal Pronoun** + **Definite Article** replace the **Possessive Adjective**, as :

Ein Stein fiel **ihm** auf **den** Kopf,

A stone fell on **his** head;

Ein Nagel hat **mir** **den** Rock zerrissen,

A nail has torn **my** coat.

NOTE.—If the *subject* is the possessor, the *reflexive* pronoun is used, as :

Er hat **sich** in den Finger geschnitten, **He** has cut **his** finger.

#### VOCABULARY.

to cost, kosten	master, der Meister
hurt, wound, verletzen	Mont Blanc, der Mont Blanc
cry, weep, weinen	music, die Musik
draw, zeichnen	coat, der Rock *
doctor, physician, der Arzt *	Schiller-street, die Schiller-
axe, die Axt *	straße
mountain, hill, der Berg	tailor, der Schneider
lead-pencil, der Bleistift	cloth, das Tuch
iron, das Eisen	exercise, practice, die Übung
window, das Fenster	hot, heiß
wing, der Flügel	light, leicht
purse, der Geldbeutel	dear, teuer
hope, die Hoffnung	as, when, als
merchant, der Kaufmann	often, oft
farewell, (das) Lebewohl	

#### EXERCISE XII.

A. 1. Übung macht den Meister. 2. Die Musik und die Malerei sind Künste. 3. Kinder, habt ihr eure Aufgaben gemacht? Ja, wir haben sie gemacht. 4. Der Mont Blanc ist ein Berg in der Schweiz. 5. Ist dieses Tuch teuer? Ja, es kostet drei Thaler

*fael*  
 die Elle. 6. Die Mutter schickt ihre Kinder zur Schule. 7. Haben Sie Gold in Ihrem Geldbeutel? Ich habe kein Gold, aber ich habe Silber. 8. Was lernt das Mädchen? Sie lernt ihre Aufgabe. 9. Der Vater schüttelte seinem Sohne die Hand und sagte ihm Lebewohl. 10. Die Flügel der Vögel sind sehr leicht und stark. 11. Hat der Schneider Ihren Rock nach Hause geschickt? 12. Nein, er hat ihn noch nicht geschickt, aber er wird ihn morgen schicken. 13. Unsere Eltern reisten in Deutschland und in der Schweiz. 14. Im Juli ist das Wetter oft sehr heiß. 15. Das Eisen wird rot, wenn es heiß wird. 16. Glauben Sie, daß ich Recht habe? 17. Karl verletzete sich die Hand, als er mit einer Art arbeitete. 18. Ich würde Soldat werden, wenn ich alt genug wäre. 19. Wir würden Freunde gehabt haben, wenn wir reich gewesen wären.

B. 1. Gold is yellow, but silver is white. 2. Mary is studying music and painting. 3. Are your parents still living in Frederick-Street? 4. No, they are now living in Schiller-Street. 5. Mont Blanc is a mountain in Switzerland. 6. The girl is crying: she has hurt her hand. 7. Is your father a doctor? No, he is a merchant. 8. Glass is transparent, and we make windows of it. 9. What are you doing with your lead-pencil? I am drawing a flower with it. 10. The emperor is satisfied with his generals. 11. I blame you, because you are not industrious. 12. What are you drawing now? I am drawing a bird. 13. Why are you crying, my child? 14. The doctor shook his head, for he had no hope. 15. Would you buy a horse, if you were rich? 16. Miss B. has sent her mother a present. 17. The girl will visit her parents.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XII.

1. Ist das Gold weisz? 2. Weshalb weint das Mädchen? 3. Werden Sie sich ein Haus kaufen? 4. Sind Sie Soldat? 5. Wo wohnen Sie jetzt? 6. Was machen Sie mit Ihrem Gelde?

## LESSON XIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF SENTENCES: PLACE OF OBJECTS, AD-  
VERBS, etc. — INDIRECT NARRATION. — PREPOSITIONS  
GOVERNING THE DATIVE ONLY.

## 45. RULES FOR POSITION OF OBJECTS, ADVERBS, etc.

RULE 1. (a) **Pronouns** first of all, unless governed by a preposition, when they come after all other objects, adverbs, etc.

(b) Adverbs or Adverbial Expressions of **Time** precede everything except Pronouns without Prepositions, thus:

(Germ.) Ich schickte ihm gestern (diese Woche) einen Brief,

(Engl.) I sent him a letter yesterday (this week);

but:

(Germ.) Ich schickte gestern einen Brief an ihn,

(Engl.) I sent a letter to him yesterday;

(Germ.) Ich habe es heute meiner Schwester geschickt,

(Engl.) I have sent it to my sister to-day.

RULE 2. Of **Nouns**, *persons* (unless governed by prepositions) before *things*. as:

(Germ.) Ich schickte gestern meinem Vater einen Brief,

(Engl.) I sent my father a letter yesterday;

but:

(Germ.) Ich schickte gestern einen Brief an meinen Vater,

(Engl.) I sent a letter to my father yesterday.



RULE 3. Of **Pronouns**, *Personal* before all other Pronouns, as :

Ich habe ihm das (Demonstr. Pron.) gegeben,  
I have given him that.

RULE 4. Of **Personal Pronouns**, *Direct Object* before Indirect Object, as :

1 2 3 4 5  
(Germ.) Ich habe es ihm gegeben,

1 2 3 4 5  
(Engl.) I have given it to him.

RULE 5. Adverbs of *place*, *cause* and *manner* follow objects in the order named, as :

1 2 3 4 5 6 7  
(Germ.) Er hat das Buch zu Hause sehr fleißig studiert,

1 2 3 4 5 6  
(Engl.) He has studied the book very diligently

7  
at home.

REMEMBER : 1. That in compound tenses all these objects, adverbs, etc., come between the auxiliary and the participle or infinitive.

2. That any of these members of a sentence may occupy the *first* place instead of the subject, especially an adverb of time, etc., and that the subject (see § 20, Obs. 2) is then thrown *after* the verb, as :

1 2 3 4 5  
Gestern schickte ich ihm einen Brief.

1 2 3 4 5  
Diese Woche schickte ich einen Brief an ihn.

#### 46. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE ONLY.

Aus, außer, bei, mit, nach, seit, von, zu } govern the Dative Case.

aus, (1) out of (*motion*), as : He came out of the house aus dem Hause).

(2) of (*made of*), as: This house is built **of** wood (**aus** Holz).

(3) from (*origin*), as: He comes **from** England (**aus** England); from the town (**aus der** Stadt).

(4) from (*cause*), as: I did it **from** fear (**aus** Furcht).

**außer**, (1) outside of (*rest*), as: The table is standing **outside of** the room (**außer dem** Zimmer).

(2) except, besides, but, as: I had nothing **except** (**besides, but**) my stick (**außer meinem** Stöcke).

**bei**, (1) (near) by, as: The chair stands (**near**) **by** the table (**bei dem** or **beim** Tische).

(2) at (the *house*, etc., of, = Fr. *chez*), with, as: He lives **at the house of** (or: **with**) his uncle (or: **at** his uncle's), er wohnt **bei** seinem Onkel.

(3) about (one's *person*), with, as: I have no money **about** (**with**) me (**bei** mir).

**mit**, with, as: He is coming **with** (**along with**) his friend (**mit** seinem Freunde); he struck the dog **with** a stick (**mit** einem Stöcke).

**nach**, (1) after (*time, order*), as: He arrived **after** his brother (**nach** seinem Bruder).

(2) to (with *names of places*), as: He is going **to** Quebec (**nach** Quebec); **to** England (**nach** England); home-wards) (**nach** Hause).

(3) according to (often *follows* its case in this sense), as: This is wrong **according to** my opinion (**nach** meiner Meinung, or meiner Meinung **nach**).

**seit**, since, as: He has not been here **since** the war (**seit dem** Kriege); **seit** hundert Jahren, **for the last** hundred years.

**von**, (1) from, as: He has just come **from** dinner (**von dem, vom Mittagessen**).

(2) of, as: We were speaking **of** our mother (**von unserer Mutter**).

(3) by (with *personal agent after the passive voice*), as: Children are loved **by** their parents (**von ihren Eltern**).

**zu**, (1) to (*persons*), as: He went **to** his friend, or **to** his friend's (**zu seinem Freunde**): he spoke **to** me (**zu mir**).

(2) to (*places, if not proper names; see nach, above*), as: He was going **to** the town (**zu der, or zur Stadt**).

(3) at (with proper names of *towns* only), as: He lives **at** Ottawa (**zu Ottawa**); **at** home (**zu Hause**).

REMARKS. — 1. Bei, von and zu (and sometimes außer) are contracted with the Dative Sing. Masc. and Neuter of the *unemphasized* Definite Article, thus: bei dem = beim, von dem = vom, zu dem = zum; zu is also contracted with the Dat. Sing. Fem., thus: zu der = zur.

2. The -e of the Dat. Sing. is never used when a preposition (except zu) stands before a substantive without an article, pronoun or adjective preceding, as: aus Holz, of wood; mit Fleiß, on purpose; but nach Hause, home; zu Hause, at home.

3. Observe the following:

(Germ.) Der Brief meines Onkels,

(Engl.) The letter of my uncle = My uncle's letter.

(Germ.) Der Brief von meinem Onkel,

(Engl.) The letter from my uncle.

The English preposition of with a substantive must generally be rendered in German by a *Genitive case without preposition*, whenever it can be turned into the English Possessive case, as above; otherwise by von, as:

He was speaking of his mother (*von seiner Mutter*).

4. Observe also the following :

(*Engl.*) Show the book **to** me = Show me the book,

(*Germ.*) Zeigen Sie **mir** das Buch (*Dat. without Preposition*).

The English preposition **to** with a substantive must be rendered in German by the *Dative without a preposition* whenever the subst. can be turned into the English Indirect Objective, as above ; otherwise (generally) by the preposition *zu*, as :

He spoke **to** me (*zu mir*).

### VOCABULARY.

to answer, antworten	dinner, das Mit'tagseſſen
honour, ehren	journey, die Reife
show, zeigen	Roman, der R��mer
picture, das Bild	aunt, die Tante
letter, der Brief	thankful, grateful, dankbar
Germany, Deutschland	(gov. dat.)
present, das Geſchenk	ready, finished, fertig
glass, das Glas	quiet, still, ſtill
war, der Krieg	there, da

*Idiom : It is I, Ich bin es.*

### EXERCISE XIII.

A. 1. Seit dem Kriege ſind meine Schw  ger ſehr arm. 2. Wir haben uns zwei H  user in der Stadt gekauft. 3. Wo iſt deine Aufgabe? Hier iſt ſie. 4. Wir machten nach dem Mittagseſſen einen Spaziergang mit unſeren G  ſten. 5. Mein Vater hat mir ein Geſchenk geſchickt und ich bin ihm daf  r ſehr dankbar. 6. Biſt du mit deiner Arbeit fertig? Nein, ich bin noch nicht damit fertig. 7. Wir werden morgen mit Ihnen nach Montreal reiſen. 8. Karl lernt ſeit vier Monaten Deutſch. 9. „Seht euch und ſeid ſtill,“ ſagte die Mutter zu ihren T  chtern. 10. W  rden Sie viel f  r dieſe B  cher bezahlen? Ich w  rde f  nf Thaler daf  r bezahlen. 11.

Sind die Mädchen zu Hause? Ja, ihre Mutter schickte sie um fünf Uhr nach Hause. 12. Ehre deinen Vater und deine Mutter. 13. Bei meinem Onkel redeten wir immer viel vom Kriege. 14. Sind Sie es, Herr Schmidt? Ja, ich bin es. 15. Haben Sie in Deutschland viel Vergnügen gehabt? Sie sagen nicht viel von Ihrer Reise. 16. Bei Ihnen haben wir immer viel Vergnügen. 17. Dieser Mann lobt sich zu viel. 18. Meine Tante ist jetzt bei mir; ich werde ihr die Stadt zeigen. 19. Mein Bruder und meine Schwester sind zu Hause. 20. Was würden Sie für diese Gläser bezahlen? Ich würde nicht viel dafür bezahlen.

*B.* 1. Here is my uncle's letter. 2. Is he for me or against me? 3. Our servant is from Germany. 4. 'Buy me an apple,' said the child to its mother. 5. Have you sold your horses? 6. The teacher speaks of the gods of the Romans. 7. Charles, you have answered well, sit down. 8. My son always sends me the newspaper from Chicago. 9. My friend showed me his pictures. 10. Buy me this ring; it is magnificent. 11. Who is in the garden? It is she. 12. I believe that Charles has bought himself a hat. 13. Here is the letter from my uncle. 14. I am ashamed of you, because you are not industrious. 15. My father would send me to the city, if I were old enough.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XIII.

1. Weshalb schämen Sie sich meiner? 2. Ist es Karl oder sein Bruder? 3. Seit wann lernen Sie Deutsch? 4. Wer hat mir diese Zeitung geschickt? 5. Was machte ich nach dem Mittagessen? 6. Wo hat mein Vater dieses Buch gekauft?

## SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON A.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND  
PREPOSITIONS.

## 47. PRONOUNS IN ADDRESS.

1. The pronouns **du** and **ihr** are the usual pronouns of address in *poetry* and the *drama*, **ihr** being used for one person or more, as :

Der Becher ist **dein**,  
Und diesen Ring noch bestimm' ich **dir**,  
The goblet is **thine**,  
And this ring too I'll keep for **thee**.

(SCHILLER, „Der Taucher.“)

Läßt, Vater, genug sein das grausame Spiel.  
Er hat **euch** bestanden, was keiner besteht,  
Und könnt **ihr** des Herzens Gelüsten nicht zähmen, u. s. w.,  
Enough, father, of this cruel sport.  
He has ventured for **you** what none will venture,  
And if **you** cannot subdue the desire of **your** heart, etc. (*Ibid.*)

2. **Er** and **Sie** (3. sing.) were formerly regularly used as pronouns of address towards inferiors, with the verb agreeing in 3. sing., and they are often found so used in the classics, being spelt with a capital. Their use *may* imply contempt; so Faust says to his servant Wagner, who is otherwise addressed as „ihr“ :

**Sei** **Er** kein schellenlauter Thor,  
Don't be a jingling fool. (GOETHE, „Faust.“)

3. **Er** and **Sie**, also **ihr**, are still used in *complimentary* address, corresponding to the polite use of **Sie** (3. plur.), by people of the lower orders.

48. The forms **meinesgleichen**, **deinesgleichen**, etc., = ‘a person, or persons. like me, you,’ etc. (vulg. ‘the like of me’), are used as indeclinable substantives, either as object or as predicate, as :

Wir werden **seinesgleichen** nie wieder sehen,  
We ne'er shall look upon **his** like again.  
**Du** bist nicht **meinesgleichen**,  
You are not (a person) like me (my equal).

(For the use of **desgleichen**, **dergleichen**, see §§ 97, 139.)

49. In addressing persons of rank, the proper title, as : **Ihre Gnaden**, ‘Your Honour’; **Eure** (abbrev. **Eu.**) **Excellen**, ‘Your Excellency’; **Eure**

Durchlaucht, 'Your Serene Highness'; Eure Majestät, 'Your Majesty,' etc., is used, also without the poss. adj., and with the verb in the plur. It was this plur. use of complimentary titles that gave rise to the use of Sie as the pronoun of polite address. The old forms Ihro, Eero, are now obsolete.

## 50. PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE.

1. The preposition **fonder** takes the accusative, but is of rare occurrence.
2. Gegen has an obsolete form **gen**, now used only in certain phrases, as: **gen Himmel**, heavenwards; **gen Norden**, northwards, etc.
3. **Thue** has a dative in the phrase **ohne dem**, 'at any rate.'
4. **Bis** may be followed by another preposition, indicating motion or direction to (nach, zu, an, auf, etc.); if this preposition is one governing dat. or acc., it will always take the accusative when combined with bis, as:  
Er ging **bis an's Thor**, he went as far as the gate.

## 51. PREPOSITIONS WITH DATIVE.

The following additional prepositions take the Dative only:

1. **Binnen**, within (of time), as: **Binnen zwei Tagen**, within two days.

NOTES. — 1. **Binnen** sometimes governs the *genitive*.

2. **Binnen** is used of time only; **innerhalb** (see § ) of *space* and time.

2. **Entge'gen** { Contrary to, as: { **Meiner Neigung entgegen** (zuwider),
3. **Zuwi'der** { **contrary to my inclination.**

4. **Gegenüber**, opposite (to), follows the case, as:

**Dem Thore gegenüber**, opposite the gate.

NOTE. — The case is sometimes placed between the two parts of the preposition, as: **gegen dem Thore über**; but this is not to be imitated.

5. **Gemäß**, according to, agreeably to, precedes or follows its case as:

**Seinem Wunsche gemäß** (or **gemäß seinem Wunsche**),  
**Agreeably to his desire.**

6. **Gleich**, like, precedes or follows its case, as:

**Sie lächelte gleich einem Engel** (einem Engel gleich),  
**She smiled like an angel.**

7. **Nächst**, or { next to (1) of *proximity* (= neben), as:  
**Zunächst** }

Er saß nächst mir (or mir zunächst),  
He sat next to me.

(2) of *succession*, as :

Nächst dem Leben liebt er die Ehre,  
Next to life he loves honour.

NOTE. — Zunächst usually follows its case; nächst is the commoner of the two as preposition, especially in the senses under (2).

8. Nebst } together with, along with, as :  
9. Samt }

Der Herr kam nebst seinem Freunde,  
The gentleman came along with his friend.

Der Vater samt seinen Kindern,  
The father together with his children.

NOTE 1. Distinguish nebst, along with, and neben (alongside of, near).

2. Samt is used of objects naturally belonging together, as above.

10. Ob is poetical and obsolete for über, and denotes :

(1) above (of *position*), as : Ob dem Altare, above the altar.

(2) about, concerning, as : Entrüftet ob diesem Frevel, indignant about (at) this outrage.

NOTE. — In the latter sense it also takes a genitive.

## LESSON XIV.

CONJUGATION OF *sein*, to be. — DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES. — WEAK OR -n STEMS: — *Knabe* MODEL.

52. PARADIGM OF *sein*, to be.

### Principal Parts.

PRES. INFIN. *sein* IMPF. INDIC. *war* PAST PART. *gewesen*

Indicative.

PRESENT.

Subjunctive.

ich bin, I am  
du bist, thou art  
er ist, he is  
wir sind, we are  
ihr seid, ye are  
sie sind, they are

ich sei, I (may) be, etc.  
du seiest  
er sei  
wir seien  
ihr seiet  
sie seien



## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

## IMPERFECT.

ich **war**, I wasich **wäre**, (if) I were (might be), etc.du **warst**, thou wastdu **wärest**, thou werter **war**, he waser **wäre**, he werewir **waren**, we werewir **wären**, we wereihr **waret**, ye wereihr **wäret**, ye weresie **waren**, they weresie **wären**, they were

## PERFECT.

(Pres. of *sein* + P. Part.)I **have** been, etc.I (may) **have** been, etc.ich **bin**ich **sei**du **bißt**du **seiest**er **ist**er **sei**wir **sind**wir **seien**ihr **seid**ihr **seiet**sie **sind**sie **seien**} **gewesen**} **gewesen**

## PLUPERFECT.

(Imperf. of *sein* + P. Part.)I **had** been, etc.I **had** (might have) been, [etc.]ich **war**ich **wäre**du **warst**du **wärest**er **war**er **wäre**wir **waren**wir **wären**ihr **waret**ihr **wäret**sie **waren**sie **wären**} **gewesen**} **gewesen**

## FUTURE.

(Pres. of *werden* + Infin. of *sein*.)I **shall** be, etc.I **shall** be, etc.ich **werde**ich **werde**du **wirßt**du **werdest**} **sein**} **sein**

Indicative.		Subjunctive.	
er wird	} <b>sein</b>	er werde	} <b>sein</b>
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

## FUTURE PERFECT.

(Future of **sein** + P. Part.)

I shall have been, etc.		I shall have been, etc.	
ich werde	} <b>gewesen sein</b>	ich werde	} <b>gewesen sein</b>
du wirst		du werdest	
er wird		er werde	
wir werden		wir werden	
ihr werdet		ihr werdet	
sie werden		sie werden	

## Conditional.

## SIMPLE.

## COMPOUND.

(Impf. Subj. of **werden** + Infin.  
of **sein**.)(Simple Cond. of **sein** + Past  
Part.)

I should be, etc.		I should have been, etc.	
ich würde	} <b>sein</b>	ich würde	} <b>gewesen sein</b>
du würdest		du würdest	
er würde		er würde	
wir würden		wir würden	
ihr würdet		ihr würdet	
sie würden		sie würden	

## Imperative.

## Indicative.

**sei** (du), be (thou)  
**seid** (ihr), be (ye)

(zu) **sein**, (to) be  
**gewesen** (zu) **sein**, to have been.

## Participles.

*Pres.* **seiend**, being*Past.* **gewesen**, been

REMARKS. — I. Observe the absence of the Subjunctive **se** in the 1. and 3. sing. Pres.

2. The above paradigm shows the use of *sein* in forming its own perfect tenses, in precisely the same way as *haben* is used with most verbs. *Sein* is used in the same way with the verbs mentioned in the following Section.

### 53. USE OF *sein* AS AUXILIARY OF TENSE.

*Sein* replaces *haben* as auxiliary of the perfect tenses with the following **neuter** verbs :

(a) With those expressing a **change of condition**, as :

sterben, die	wachsen, grow
genesen, recover (from illness)	werden, become.

(b) With **neuter verbs of motion** when a **change of place** is specified or implied, as :

fahren, drive, go (in a conveyance)	kommen, come
gehen, go, walk	ziehen, move, go, proceed.

(c) *Sein*, to be; bleiben, to remain: begegnen, to meet; folgen, to follow.

(d) The impersonal verbs: gelingen, glücken, to succeed; geschehen, to happen.

REMARKS.—1. The proper auxiliary to use with such verbs is always given in the dictionary.

2. Other verbs of this sort only take *sein* when the change of place is **specified**.

3. Most of them (except *kommen*) take *haben* when they denote an *action* merely, and not a specific change of place, as :

Er hat viel gereist, he has travelled a great deal.

4. Compounds do not necessarily take the same auxiliary as the simple verb. Thus, *begeben*, being transitive, takes *haben*, the prefix changing the nature of the verb.

**54.** DECLENSION OF *der Knabe*, the boy.*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. <i>der Knabe</i> , the boy	<i>die Knaben</i> , the boys
Gen. <i>des Knaben</i> , the boy's, of the boy	<i>der Knaben</i> , the boys', of the boys
Dat. <i>dem Knaben</i> , (to, for) the boy	<i>den Knaben</i> , (to, for) the boys
Acc. <i>den Knaben</i> , the boy	<i>die Knaben</i> , the boys

OBSERVE: 1. All cases end in **-n**, except Nom. Sing.

2. No Umlaut added in Plural.

3. The only change is the addition of **-n**.

REMARK. — The Plural **ox-en** is a remnant of the **-n** declension in English.

**55.** Substantives ending in a consonant add **-en**, as:*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. <i>der Graf</i> , the count	<i>die Grafen</i> , the counts
Gen. <i>des Grafen</i> , of the count	<i>der Grafen</i> , of the counts
Dat. <i>dem Grafen</i> , (to, for) the count	<i>den Grafen</i> , (to, for) the counts
Acc. <i>den Grafen</i> , the count	<i>die Grafen</i> , the counts

**56.** Feminines do not vary in the singular, as:*Singular.**Plural.*

Nom. <i>die Blume</i> , the flower	<i>die Blumen</i> , the flowers
Gen. <i>der Blume</i> , of the flower	<i>der Blumen</i> , of the flowers
Dat. <i>der Blume</i> , (to, for) the flower	<i>den Blumen</i> , (to, for) the flowers
Acc. <i>die Blume</i> , the flower	<i>die Blumen</i> , the flowers.

**57.** In this way are declined:

1. All masculines ending in **-e**, except *der Käse*, cheese (see § 17), and the doubtful ones in § 61.

2. Certain masculines which have dropped the final *-e*, as:

der Bär, bear	der Held, hero
der Bauer, peasant	der Herr, gentleman, master
der Christ, christian	der Hirt(e), herdsman, shepherd
der Gesell(e), fellow, companion,	herd
journeyman	der Mensch, man (human being = Lat. <i>homo</i> )
der Graf, count	

✓ A full List of these Substantives is given in App. F.

3. All **feminines**, except Mutter, Tochter (§ 17, 3), the monosyllables under § 22, 3, and those in *-nis* and *-jal* (22, 4).

4. **No Neuters** (but see §§ 62, 63).

5. Foreign Masculines accented on the last syllable, except those in *-al*, *-an*, *-ar*, etc. (§ 22, 6).

Further Examples :

Like *Rnabe* :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
N. der Bote, messenger	G. D. A. Boten	N. G. D. A. Boten
der Hase, hare	Hasen	Hasen
der Riese, giant	Riesen	Riesen
der Russe, Russian	Russen	Russen

Like *Graf* :

N. der Bär, bear	G. D. A. Bären	N. G. D. A. Bären
der Fürst, prince	Fürsten	Fürsten
der Held, hero	Helden	Helden
der Mensch, man	Menschen	Menschen
der Student', student	Studenten	Studenten
der Soldat', soldier	Soldaten	Soldaten

REMARK I. Der Herr, gentleman, master, lord, adds *-n* only in the sing., but *-en* in plur.

## Like Blume :

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. G. D. A. Blume

N. G. D. A. Blumen

Kirche

Kirchen

Schönheit

Schönheiten

That

Thaten

Wissenschaft

Wissenschaften

REMARK 2. Feminines in **-el**, **-er** add **-n** only in the Plur., as:*Sing.* die Feder, pen*Plur.* Federn

die Gabel, fork

Gabeln

die Schwester, sister

Schwestern

REMARK 3. Feminines in **-in** double the **n** in the plur., as:*Sing.* die Gräfin, countess*Plur.* Gräfinnen

## VOCABULARY.

admire, bewundern

monarch, der Monarch'

hasten, eilen

news, die Nachricht

hunt, jagen

nephew, der Nefte

dwell, reside, live, wohnen

planet, der Planet'

astrologer, der Astrolog'

Prussian, der Preuße

lady, die Dame

raven, der Rabe

influence, der Einfluß \*

valley, das Thal

heathen, der Heide -

happy, glücklich

comet, der Komet'

when, als, wenn

landscape, die Landschaft

when? wann?

**58. When = wenn** *always* with Present, Perfect and Future; and also with Imperfect and Pluperfect, of a *habitual* or *repeated* occurrence (= whenever), as:

I *always* rose, **when** (i. e. whenever, **wenn**) the sun rose.

**When = als** with Imperfect and Pluperfect *only*, of a *single*, *definite* occurrence, as:

I rose *yesterday*, **when** (**als**) the sun rose.

**When?** interrogative = **wann?** as:

**When** was your father here?

**Wann** war Ihr Vater hier?

NOTE. — Remember that **wenn** also = "if."

**59.** When a conditional or "if" sentence precedes the principal sentence on which it depends, the principal sentence is usually introduced by the particle **so**, which is not to be translated into English, or counted as a member of the sent.

NOTE. A principal sentence preceded by a subordinate clause has the subject after the verb, the subord. clause being reckoned as a single idea (see § 20), as: Wenn ich Geld hätte, so würde ich Freunde haben.

#### EXERCISE XIV.

- A. 1. Wir werden morgen zu unserer Tante in Ottawa reisen.
2. Die Boten des Monarchen sind mit der Nachricht nach Paris geeilt.
3. Die Arme eines Kiesen sind sehr lang und stark.
4. Die Bäume in diesen Wäldern sind sehr schön gewesen, aber jetzt sind die Blätter gelb geworden.
5. Der Vater ist in der Stadt gewesen und hat seinen Knaben Bücher gekauft.
6. Ich bewundere die Schönheit dieser Landschaften.
7. Die Schüler und ihr Lehrer redeten viel von den Thaten der Helden.
8. Die Schüler werden glücklich sein, wenn sie mit ihrer Arbeit fertig sind.
9. Sind die Russen Heiden? Nein, sie sind Christen.
10. Mein Nefse war lange in Berlin gewesen und hatte dort die Wissenschaften studiert.
11. Meine Schwester war mit ihrer Arbeit nicht fertig, als ich gestern bei ihr war.
12. Die Astrologen redeten viel vom Einfluß der Kometen und Planeten.
13. Der Lehrer lobte seine Schüler und sagte zu ihnen: „Ihr seid fleißig gewesen.“
14. Wenn ich nach Deutschland reise, werde ich meine Oheime und meine Tanten besuchen.
15. Die Knaben hatten viel Vergnügen, als sie die Hasen und Füchse durch Wälder und Thäler jagten.
16. Die Gräfinnen waren sehr glücklich, als sie die Nachricht von ihrem Vater hörten.
17. Diese Herren werden arm werden, wenn sie ihr

Geld so verschwenden. 18. Unsere Neffen sind lange bei uns gewesen.

.B. 1. The castles of the count are magnificent. 2. The churches of this city are large and beautiful. 3. When will your brother be at home? 4. Are these soldiers Prussians? No, they are Russians. 5. The bears live in the forests. 6. The boys have two ravens and three hares. 7. The ladies have been in the church, but they are now at home. 8. Who was right? 9. For a boy of (von) five years he is very large. 10. I should be happy, if I were rich. 11. He has not been at home to-day. 12. When she was in the city she lived at her aunt's. 13. Would the girl be contented, if she were with her mother? 14. The students became tired, because they had studied too much.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XIV.

1. Was hat Ihr Neffe in Berlin gemacht? 2. Hatte ich Recht? 3. Wer eilte mit der Nachricht nach Paris? 4. Haben Sie jemals Hasen oder Füchse gejagt? 5. Wann wird mein Bruder zu Hause sein? 6. Würde ich glücklich sein, wenn ich reich wäre?

### LESSON XV.

MIXED DECLENSION. — DOUBLE PLURALS. — PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.

#### 60. DECLENSION OF *der Name*, the name.

*Singular.*

*Plural.*

Nom. <i>der Name</i> , the name	<i>die Namen</i> , the names
Gen. <i>des Namens</i> , of the name	<i>der Namen</i> , of the names
Dat. <i>dem Namen</i> , (to, for) the name	<i>den Namen</i> , (to, for) the names
Acc. <i>den Namen</i> , the name	<i>die Namen</i> , the names



- OBSERVE: 1. **-e** in the Nom. Sing. and **-ens** in Gen. Sing.  
 2. **-en** all other cases.  
 3. No Umlaut, except in *Zehe* (see below).

NOTE. — The Nom. Sing. sometimes has **n**.

**61.** In this way are declined the following masculines :

der Buchstabe, letter (of the Alphabet)	der Gedanke, thought, idea
der Friede, peace	der Haufe, heap
der Funke, spark	der Same, seed
der Glaube, faith, belief, creed	der Schade, harm, injury [pl. Schäden]
	der Wille, will

Also one neuter: *das Herz*, the heart (Acc. Sing. *Herz*).

**62.** Some masculine and neuter substantives follow the model of **Maler** (§ 16) or **Sohn** (§ 21) in the singular, and that of **Knabe** (§ 54) or **Graf** (§ 55) in the plural, as :

*Der Nachbar*, the neighbour: *Sing.* N. D. A. *Nachbar*, G. *Nachbars*; *Plur.* *Nachbarn*.

*Das Ohr*, the ear: *Sing.* N. A. *Ohr*, G. *Ohr(e)s*, D. *Ohr(e)*; *Plur.* *Ohren*.

**63.** In this way decline also :

1. Certain masculines, as :

der Staat, state	der Vetter, (male) cousin
der Strahl, beam, ray	

2. Certain neuters, as :

das Auge, eye	das Ende, end
das Bett, bed	

(A full List of these substantives will be found in App. G.)

3. Foreign (Latin) masculines in unaccented **-or**, as :

*der Professor*, the professor: G. *Professors*; *Plur.* *Professo'ren*.  
*der Doktor*, the doctor: G. *Doktors*; *Plur.* *Dokto'ren*.

**64. SUBSTANTIVES WITH DOUBLE PLURAL.**

The following have double forms of the Plural, with a different meaning for each :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
das Band, ribbon	Bänder
das Band, tie, bond	Bande
( <b>der</b> Band, volume	Bände)
die Bank, bank (commercial)	Banken
die Bank, bench	Bänke
das Gesicht, face, countenance	Gesichter
das Gesicht, vision	Gesichte
der Laden, shop	Läden
der Laden, shutter	Laden
das Land, land, country	Länder
das Land, province	Lande
das Wort, {	Wörter, words considered <i>separately</i>
word {	Worte, words considered <i>connectedly</i>
	(as making <i>sense</i> )

REMARK. — The plural *Lande* is also used in poetical language ; and in the compound *die Niederlande*, the Netherlands (= Lower Provinces).

**65. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE OR ACCUSATIVE.**

The following nine prepositions govern the **Dative** when they indicate *locality* merely, or answer the question ‘where?’ or ‘**in** what place?’; the **Accusative** when they imply *motion*, *direction* or *tendency* (figurative action) **towards**, or answer the question ‘whither?’ or ‘**to** what place or person?’ :

<b>an,</b>	<b>auf,</b>	<b>hinter,</b>	<b>in,</b>	<b>neben,</b>
<b>über,</b>	<b>unter,</b>	<b>vor</b>	and	<b>zwischen.</b>

**an**, 1. (of *place*):

- |  |   |   |
|--|---|---|
| <p>(a) With DAT., on, upon (adjacent to), as:<br/>The picture <i>hangs on</i> the wall (<b>an</b><br/><b>der Wand</b>).</p> <p>(b) With ACC., to, towards, on, as:<br/>I <i>hang</i> the picture <b>on</b> the wall (<b>an</b><br/><b>die Wand</b>).</p> | } | <p>surface<br/>non-<br/>horizontal.</p> |
|--|---|---|

2. (of *time, date*) with DAT. ONLY, on, upon, as:

I was born **on** the eighteenth of August (**am**  
achtzehnten August).

He will arrive **on** Monday (**am** Montag).

OBSERVE: that in this use the Prep. and Article are *always*  
*contracted*.

**auf**, (of *place*):

- |   |   |                               |
|---|---|-------------------------------|
| <p>(a) With DAT., on, upon (<i>on top of</i>), as:<br/>The book <i>lies on</i> the table (<b>auf</b><br/><b>dem Tisch</b>).</p> <p>(b) With ACC., to, towards, on, as:<br/>I <i>lay</i> the book <b>on</b> the table (<b>auf</b><br/><b>den Tisch</b>).</p> | } | <p>surface<br/>horizontal</p> |
|---|---|-------------------------------|

**hinter**, behind:

- (a) With DAT., as: The dog *lies* **behind** the stove  
(**hinter dem Ofen**).
- (b) With ACC., as: The dog *goes* **behind** the stove  
(**hinter den Ofen**).

**in**, 1. (of *place*):

- (a) With DAT., in, as: The gardener *is* **in** the garden  
(**im Garten**).
- (b) With ACC., into, as: The gardener *goes* **into** the  
garden (**in den Garten**).

2. (of *time*) in (with DAT. ONLY), as: God made the world in six days (**in sechs Tagen**).

**neben**, near, alongside of, by:

- (a) With DAT., as: The chair *stands* **near** (by) the table (**neben dem Tische**).  
 (b) With ACC., as: I *place* the chair **near** the table (**neben den Tisch**).

**über**, 1. (of *place*) over, above:

- (a) With DAT., as: The bridge *is* **over** the river (**über dem Fluße**).  
 (b) With ACC., as: I *go* **over** the river (**über den Fluß**).  
 2. (of *excess*) over, above (with ACC. ONLY), as: He remained **over** (more than) two days (**über zwei Tage**).

3. about, concerning (with ACC. ONLY), as: He spoke with me **about** his journey (**über seine Reise**).

**unter**, 1. (of *place*), under, beneath, below:

- (a) With DAT., as: The cat *lies* **under** the chair (**unter dem Stuhle**).  
 (b) With ACC., as: The cat *creeps* **under** the chair (**unter den Stuhl**).

2. (of *number*) among:

- (a) With DAT., as: The wolf *is* **among** the sheep (**unter den Schafen**).  
 (b) With ACC., as: The wolf *mingles* **among** the sheep (**unter die Schafe**).

**vor**, 1. (of *place*) before, in front of:

- (a) With DAT., as: The chair *stands* **before** the window (**vor dem Fenster**).

(b) With ACC., as: *Place* the chair **before** the window (**vors** Fenster).

2. (of *order*) before (with DAT. ONLY), as: He came **before** me (**vor** mir).

3. (of *time*) before, ago (with DAT. ONLY), as:  
He came **before** two o'clock (**vor** zwei Uhr).  
He came two hours **ago** (**vor** zwei Stunden).

**zwischen**, between (of two objects):

(a) With DAT., as: The chair *stands* **between** the door and the window (**zwischen** der Thüre und dem Fenster).

(b) With ACC., as: *Put* the chair **between** the door and the window (**zwischen** die Thüre und das Fenster).

REMARK. — Observe the following contractions with the unemphasized Definite Article:

an dem = **am**

in dem = **im**

an das = **ans**

in das = **ins**

auf das = **aufs**

Also the following, which are of less frequent occurrence:

hinter dem = **hintern**

unter dem = **unterm**

hinter das = **hinters**

unter das = **unters**

über dem = **überm**

vor dem = **vorm**

über das = **übers**

vor das = **vors**

#### VOCABULARY.

please, lit., (I) beg, (I) pray,

lay, legen

(ich) bitte

put, place, set (down), setzen

hang (trans.), hängen

put, place, set (upright),

fetch, bring, get, holen

stellen

hear, hören

seek, look for, suchen

hunt, chase, pursue, jagen

kill, töten

wait (for), warten (auf + acc.)	open, öffnen
strawberry, die Erdbeere	heavy, hard, schwer
fire, das Feuer	ten, zehn
Netherlands, die Niederlande	thereupon, on it, etc., darauf
philosophy, die Philosophie	first, not before, erst
stove, der Ofen*	if you please, gefälligst
school, die Schule	no longer (lit., not more),
door, die Thür e)	nicht mehr.
difference, der Unterschied	where, wo
university, die Universität	in order to, um (foll. by infin.
dictionary, das Wörterbuch	with zu at end of clause)

## EXERCISE XV.

4. 1. Jener Mann setzte sich gegen meinen Willen auf die Bank. 2. Der Neffe des Professors war lange Student, aber er ist jetzt Doktor der Philosophie. 3. Warum haben meine Vettern über (at) mich gelacht? 4. Mein Vater wird uns am Montag oder (am) Dienstag in die Schule schicken. 5. Der Sohn und die Tochter unser(e)s Nachbarn suchten Blumen und Erdbeeren im Walde. 6. Mein Vater und meine Mutter sind seit drei Wochen auf dem Lande. 7. Die Banken werden erst morgen um zehn Uhr offen sein. 8. Legen Sie gefälligst diese Bände neben mich auf die Bank. 9. Der König der Niederlande reiste durch seine Staaten unter dem Namen eines Grafen. 10. Der Friede des Herrn sei mit euch. 11. Der Graf schickte seinen Sohn auf die Universität. 12. Das Kind ist sehr krank und die Mutter hat zwei Doktoren geholt. 13. Weshalb warten Sie so lange vor der Thüre? 14. Die Herren jagten den Bären hinter den Wald, wo sie ihn töteten. 15. Im Winter setzen wir uns oft vor das Feuer und bewundern die Funken. 16. Unsere Herzen werden immer traurig, wenn wir Nachricht vom Kriege hören. 17. Was ist der Unterschied zwischen den Wörtern Banken und Bänke? 18. Die Augen des Studenten sind schwach, weil er zu viel studiert hat. 19. Setzen Sie sich auf diesen Stuhl, denn Sie sind müde. 20.

Bitte, stellen Sie mir diesen Stuhl hinter den Ofen. 21. Die Studenten lernen vom Professor die Namen der Götter der Römer.

*B.* 1. The children were playing before the house. 2. What is the name of this professor? His name is Schmidt. 3. Hang the picture of my father over the door. 4. Every human being has two eyes and two ears. 5. Why do the professors praise their students? 6. The professors praise the diligence of their students. 7. The difference between my brother and me is not great. 8. I laid the pens upon the table, but they are no longer there. 9. Our neighbours sent their children into the wood to search for flowers. 10. Our cousin lived happy and in peace with his neighbours. 11. The pupils would look for the words in a dictionary, if they had time. 12. Your eyes are tired, because you have studied too much. 13. These words are hard to learn, for every word has ten letters. 14. Place this chair, if you please, behind the stove for me. 15. If Charles is not ready, we shall go (reisen) without him to Germany.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XV.

1. Wann wird Ihr Vater Sie auf die Universität schicken? 2. Weshalb hat die Mutter die Doktoren geholt? 3. Was lernten die Studenten von den Professoren? 4. Werden Sie ohne mich nach Chicago reisen? 5. Wo reiste der König der Niederlande? 6. Wann werden die Kirchen offen sein?

### SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON B.

#### ANOMALIES OF DECLENSION.

#### 66.

#### SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT PLURAL.

The following classes of substantives are used in the singular only :

1. Proper names, unless they denote a class (as: die *Maracie*, painters like Raphael), or several individuals of the same name (as: die vier ersten *Heinriche*, the first four Henries, i. e., kings of that name).

2. Names of materials, etc., unless they denote different *kinds* of the same material (as: *Gräser*, *Salze*, different *kinds* of grass, salt), or when they have a special meaning (as: *Gelder*, *sums* of money; *Papiere*, documents).

3. Abstract Substantives, unless they have a concrete (*particular*) meaning, as: *Tugenden*, virtues; *Schönheiten*, beauties, etc.

NOTE. — Many nouns of this sort, when used in a concrete sense, use the plurals of other words, generally compound, as: *der Tod*, death; *die Todesfälle*, deaths (i. e. **cases** of death).

A list of these is given in App. H.

For the plural of nouns of measure, etc., see Less. XXX.

## 67. SUBSTANTIVES WITHOUT SINGULAR.

The following classes of substantives are used in the plural only:

1. Names of certain *diseases*: *Die Blattern*, the small-pox; *die Mäfern* or *Möckeln*, the measles.

2. The following names of festivals, etc.: *Weihnachten*, Christmas, *Fasten*, Lent; *Ostern*, Easter; *Pfingsten*, Pentecost (Whitsuntide).

3. Those plural by meaning, viz.: *Alpen*, Alps; *Beinkleider*, trousers; *Briefschaften*, documents; *Einkünfte*, income, revenue; *Eltern*, parents; *Ferien*, holidays; *Gliedmaßen*, limbs; *Heien*, dregs, yeast; *Kosten*, *Unkosten*, expenses; *Leute*, people; *Molken*, curds.

**68. Irregular Compounds.** 1. Substantives having **-mann** as the last component form the plural:

(a) Regularly, when denoting *male individuals* or *occupations*, as: *Ehemänner*, husbands; *Ehrenmänner*, men of honour; *Staatsmänner*, statesmen.

(b) By changing **-mann** into **-leute**, when used *collectively* or in a *general* sense, or to include both sexes, as: *Arbeitsleute*, working-people; *Eheleute*, married people; *Handelsleute*, trades-people; *Landleute*, country-people; *Landesleute*, people of the same country; *Mietleute*, lodgers (male and female).

NOTES. — 1. With words of common occurrence, such as *Kaufmann*, merchant, *Hofmann*, courtier, the plur. with **-leute** only is used.

2. The form with **-leute** is the plur. of the fem. compound with **-frau** (e. g. *Ehefrau*, married woman), as well as of that with **-mann**.

2. *Die Ohnmacht*, the fainting-fit, and *die Vollmacht*, the power-of-attorney (from *Macht*, pl. *Mächte*), have the pl. **-machten**; *die Antwort*, the answer (from *das Wort*, pl. *Worte* and *Wörter*), has pl. **-en**.



**69. Special Cases.** I. A few substantives in *m*, viz.: *Atem*, *Edem*, *Brodem*, breath; *Broiam*, crumb; *Eidam*, son-in-law, follow the *Maler* model (§ 16) in the sing. The plur., if it occurs, ends in *-e* *Stund* model, § 21, *b*, no Umlaut, except *Broiam*, which is more commonly *weak* in the plur. (*-en*).

2. Weak feminines are often found with the old weak gen. and dat. in *-en*, especially when used without article after a preposition, as: *auf Erden*, on earth (but *auf der Erde*, on the earth); *zu Ehren*, in honour of; in *Gnaden*, in mercy, etc.

## LESSON XVI.

### DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES:—RECAPITULATION.—PROPER NAMES.—PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

#### 70. SUMMARY OF DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The following tables show the endings of the various forms of Substantive Declension:

#### A. Strong Declension.

I. <i>Maler</i> Model. (Contracted FORM.)		II. <i>Zeßn</i> Model. (Primary FORM.)		III. <i>Derf</i> Model. (Enlarged FORM.)	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. —	—	—	— <i>e</i>	—	— <i>er</i>
Gen. — <i>s</i>	—	—( <i>e</i> ) <i>s</i>	— <i>e</i>	—( <i>e</i> ) <i>s</i>	— <i>er</i>
Dat. —	—( <i>n</i> )	—( <i>e</i> )	— <i>en</i>	—( <i>e</i> )	— <i>er</i> <i>n</i>
Acc. —	—	—	— <i>e</i>	—	— <i>er</i>

REMARKS.—1. The term 'Strong Declension' is applicable to all the three forms given above.

2. The *Zeßn* Model is sometimes called the **Primary** Form of the Strong Declension, and shows the *-s* of Gen. Sing. and *-e* of the Plur. From this are derived the other two forms, viz.:

3. By *contraction* (dropping **-e** of the termination), the **Waler Model**, hence called also the **Contracted Form** of the Strong Declension; and

4. By *enlargement* (adding **-r** in the Plur., the Sing. remaining the same), the **Dorf Model**, hence also called the **Enlarged Form** of the Strong Declension.

5. Feminines remain unchanged in the Sing.

6. The Umlaut may occur in any of these forms, viz.: *generally* in masc. monosyllables, *regularly* in feminines and in Enlarged Form; *never* in neuter monosyllables of Primary Form. (See Lists, App. A., B., C., E.)

### B. Weak Declension.

Änabe, Graf, Blume Model.

<i>Sing.</i> Nom. — <b>(e)</b>	<i>Plur.</i> — <b>(e)n</b>
Gen. — <b>(e)n</b>	— <b>(e)n</b>
Dat. — <b>(e)n</b>	— <b>(e)n</b>
Acc. — <b>(e)n</b>	— <b>(e)n</b>

OBSERVE: 1. The persistent **-n**. 2. The absence of Umlaut. 3. Uniformity of Cases. 4. Feminines unchanged in Sing.

### C. Mixed Declension.

I. Name Model.		II. Nachbar, Dorf Model.	
<i>Sing.</i> N. — <b>e</b>	<i>Plur.</i> — <b>n</b>	<i>Sing.</i> —	<i>Plur.</i> — <b>(e)n</b>
G. — <b>n</b> s	— <b>n</b>	— <b>(e)s</b>	— <b>(e)n</b>
D. — <b>n</b>	— <b>n</b>	— <b>(e)</b>	— <b>(e)n</b>
A. — <b>n</b>	— <b>n</b>	—	— <b>(e)n</b>

REMARKS. — 1. All three follow the Änabe Model in the Plur.

2. The Name Model is a Mixture of the Waler and Änabe models in the Sing., usually taking **-s** in the Gen., sometimes **-n** in the Nom.

3. The Nachbar Model follows the Vater Model in the Sing.

4. The Ohr Model follows the Sohn Model in the Sing.

**71.** The **Essential Parts** for the Declension of a Substantive are :

The **Nominative Singular**,  
The **Genitive Singular**, and  
The **Nominative Plural**.

These being given, the remaining cases of the noun can be formed from the above Tables, with the assistance of the following :

REMARKS. — 1. All Feminines are unchanged in the Sing.

2. The **Nom.** and **Acc. Sing.** are always alike, except in the Weak Declension (Knabe, Graf and Name models).

3. The **Gen. Sing.** ends in **-s** in Masculines (except in the Weak Declension) and in *all* Neuters.

4. The **Nom., Gen.** and **Acc. Plur.** are *always* alike.

5. The **Dat. Plur.** *always* ends in **-n**.

Decline the following substantives throughout :

Das Buch, die Schönheit, der Sturm, die Tochter, der Schwager, der Vetter, das Regiment, die Stadt, das Auge, der Mann, der Menich, der Palast, der Planet, der Spaziergang, das Schaf, die Frau, das Fräulein, der Feiertag, die Schwester, der Glaube.

## DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

### **72.** Geographical Proper Names :

1. If *never* used without an article, etc. (see § 44, 2, 3), are declined like common nouns, as : der Rhein, G. des Rheins, D. dem Rhein; die Schweiz, G. der Schweiz, D. der Schweiz, etc.

2. If *not generally* used with an article, etc., they take no ending except **-s** in the Gen. Sing. (unless they end in a

sibilant), as: Deutschland, Germany, G. Deutschlands; Frankreich, France, G. Frankreichs; Rom, Rome, G. Roms.

3. If they end in a *sibilant* (*s, ſch, z, ſ, x*), the Gen. is replaced by the preposition **von**, as: Die Befestigungen **von** Paris', the fortifications of Paris.

4. **Von** may replace the Gen. with other names also, and is always used after titles, as: Die Königin **von** England, the Queen of England; der Bürgermeister **von** Toronto, the Mayor of Toronto.

5. When the Name of a Place is preceded by a common noun, they are in apposition to each other, but the proper name is not inflected, as: Die Stadt **London** (not **von London**), the City of London, G. **der** Stadt London. Das Königreich **Preußen**, the Kingdom of Prussia, G. **des** Königreichs Preußen.

6. Proper Names of Places are not used in the Plural.

**73.** Proper Names of **Persons** are now inflected in the Gen. Sing. only, as follows:

1. If preceded by an article, etc. (which shows the case) they remain unchanged, as: The letters of Cicero, die Briefe **des** Cicero.

2. If not preceded by an article showing case, etc., those ending in a sibilant, and Feminines in **-e**, add **-(e)ns** in the Gen.; all others add **-s** only, as: Max, G. **Maxens**; Louise, G. **Louiseus**; Karl, G. **Karls**.

REMARK. — Surnames and classical names in a sibilant now commonly take an apostrophe instead of **-ens**, as: Opitz' Werke, Opitz's works.

**74.** Family Names are used in the Plural with added **-s**, as in English, but without article, as: the Schmidts, **Schmidts** (meaning the members of the Schmidt family).

Further Remarks on the Declension of Proper Names and of Foreign Substantives will be found in Supp. Less. C., below.

## 75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE.

1. **Wegen**, on account of, on behalf of, for the sake of (sometimes *follows* its case), as: I remained at home **on account of** (for the sake of) my child. **wegen** meines Kindes).

NOTE. — **Wegen** always *follows* the Gen. of the Pers. Prons., which are then written in one word with the preposition, and have special forms ending in **t**, as: **meinetwegen**, for my sake; **ihretwegen**, for her (their) sake; **unseretwegen**, for our sake, etc.; also with the Relative and Demonstr. **der**: **dere(n)wegen** (Sing. Fem. and Plur. = 'for the sake of whom, which, that,' etc.).

2. **Während**, during, as: We went out walking **during** the rain (**während des Regens**).

3. **Statt**, or **anstatt**, instead of, as: He will come **instead** of his friend (**statt**, or **anstatt** seines Freundes).

The other PREPS. with GEN. will be found in Lesson XXXVIII.

## VOCABULARY.

give, present, make a present	Henry, Heinrich
of (foll. by dat. of person	Ireland, (das) Irland
and acc. of thing), schenken	Margaret, Margarete
library, die Bibliothek	speech, oration, die Rede
bookseller, der Buch'händler	St. Lawrence, der St. (Sanct)
cousin (fem.), die Cousine	Zö'ren;
Elizabeth, Elisabeth	Sarah, Sara
Europe, Euro'pa	Scotchman, der Schotte
festivity, die Festlichkeit	street, die Straße
Frederick, Friedrich	Thames, die Themse
Fred, Freddy, Fritz	work, das Werk
poem, das Gedicht	William, Wilhelm
George, Georg	broad, wide, breit
Greece, (das) Griechenland	high, hoch
capital (city), die Hauptstadt	clear, klar

turbid, muddy (of water),	soon, bald
trübe	everywhere, überall'

*Idioms:* to be on a visit at (any one's), auf Besuch sein bei; as a birthday present, zum Geburtstag.

#### EXERCISE XVI.

A. 1. Der Kaiser von Deutschland ist auch König von Preußen. 2. Die Berge Englands und Irlands sind nicht hoch, aber die Berge der Schweiz sind hoch und prächtig. 3. Wir studieren die Briefe des Cicero. 4. Saras Cousine war bei ihr auf Besuch, aber jetzt ist sie fort. 5. Müllers waren gestern bei uns, aber wir waren nicht zu Hause. 6. Was ist der Name des Bürgermeisters von London? 7. Mein Vater hat mir Lessings Werke und Heines Lieder zum Geburtstag geschenkt. 8. Auf meiner Reise besuchte ich die Städte London, Paris, Berlin und Rom. 9. Die Flüsse Canadas sind groß, aber die Flüsse Griechenlands sind klein und kurz. 10. Wir werden die Blumen für Sophie auf den Tisch stellen. 11. Friedrichs Mutter schenkt ihm Klopstocks Werke, denn heute ist sein Geburtstag. 12. Das Wasser des Sanet Lorenz ist klar, aber das Wasser der Themse ist trübe. 13. Louise, hole Sophie und Elisabeth und wir werden einen Spaziergang im Walde machen. 14. Dieser Schotte redet viel von Burns' Gedichten. 15. Heinrichs Freunde werden bald nach England reisen, und sie werden auch Frankreich besuchen. 16. Die Straßen Torontos waren während der Festlichkeiten sehr schön. 17. Weshalb studieren Sie die Reden des Demosthenes? 18. Am Freitag oder Sonnabend werden wir nach Kingston reisen um Louise und Margarete zu besuchen. 19. Georg ist jetzt bei seinem Better Fritz auf Besuch. 20. Am Sonntag waren wir wegen des Sturmes zu Hause. 21. Ich habe in der Schweiz nicht viel Vergnügen gehabt, weil ich auf der Reise krank war.

B. 1. Charles, bring Freddy and Max, and we shall play in the garden. 2. We have looked for William's book everywhere. 3. The streets of Paris are wide and beautiful. 4.

Who has bought these gloves for Emma? 5. The city of Ottawa is the capital of Canada. 6. We live in Canada, but our parents live in Germany. 7. We have presented flowers to Elizabeth and Mary. 8. You have Goethe's works in your library. 9. I bought Schiller's *William Tell* at (bei) a bookseller's in Hamilton. 10. We learn in this book the names of the gods of the Romans. 11. The Schmidts visited us yesterday. 12. What is the capital of Switzerland? 13. My father sent me instead of Max, because Max was too tired. 14. The city of Berlin is the capital of the kingdom of Prussia. 15. Would you be happy, if you were rich?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XVI.

1. Wer ist König von Preussen? 2. Wo war Saras Cousine? 3. Was hat Ihr Vater Ihnen zum Geburtstag geschenkt? 4. Sind die Strassen Torontos immer schön? 5. Weshalb waren wir am Sonntag zu Hause? 6. Was ist die Hauptstadt Canadas?

### SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON C.

#### PROPER NAMES. — FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

#### 76. FURTHER REMARKS ON DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

1. Proper names of towns, governed by a preposition in the genitive, do not take *-s*, as: *unweit Hamburg*, not far from Hamburg.

2. Names of persons, even if preceded by an article, etc., take *-s* in the genitive *before* a governing noun, as: *des kleinen Karls Bücher* (but *die Bücher des kleinen Karl*).

3. Feminine names frequently take *-(e)n* in the dat. and acc., especially if they end in *-e*, as: *Yonlie*, D. A. *Yontien*.

4. Family names (and even Christian names) formerly added *-en* in the dat. and acc., and are usually so found in the classics, as:

Goethe,	D. A. Goethen
Schiller,	" Schillern
Karl,	" Karl'n
Zeßing,	" Zeßingen

NOTE. — This inflection is now obsolete and not to be imitated.

5. In the case of proper names in the *genitive*, preceded by a common noun as *title* :

(a) If the governing word *follows*, the proper name takes the genitive ending, the title remaining undeclined and having no article, as: *König Heinrichs Söhne*, King Henry's sons.

(b) If the governing word *precedes*, the title has the article and the genitive ending, the proper name remaining undeclined, as: *die Söhne des Königs Heinrich*.

NOTE. — The title *Herr* takes *-n* in the genitive in both these cases, as: *Herrn Schmidts Haus*, or *das Haus des Herrn Schmidt*.

6. In the case of a Christian name without article, connected with a family name preceded by *von* (indicating noble rank) :

(a) When the governing word *follows*, the family name only is declined, as: *Friedrich von Schillers Gedichte*.

(b) When the governing word *precedes*, only the Christian name is declined, as: *Die Gedichte Friedrichs von Schiller*.

7. The names of the Saviour, *Jesus Christus*, usually both follow the Latin declension, thus: N. *Jesus Christus*, G. *Jesus Christi*, D. *Jesus Christo*, A. *Jesus Christum*, Voc. *Jesus Christe*.

NOTE. — Other biblical names, if without article, also follow the Latin inflection, especially in the gen., as: *Das Evangelium St. Matthäi*, the Gospel of St. Matthew.

## 77. DECLENSION OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

1. Most foreign substantives follow one or other of the regular forms of declension, *all* feminines being *weak*.

2. Most masculines and neuters from the Latin, ending in *-us*, have the classical plural, but with no case-inflection in either number, as: *der Modus*, the mood: N. G. D. A. *Sing. Modus*, *Plur. Modi*; *der Kasus*, the case: N. G. D. A. *Sing. Kasus*, *Plur. Kasus*; *das Tempus*, the tense: N. G. D. A. *Sing. Tempus*, *Plur. Tempora*.

NOTES. — 1. Others change *-us* to *-en* in the plur., as: *Globus*, *Plur. Globen* (such forms as *Globusse* should be avoided as barbarous).

2. *Der Atlas* has pl. *die Atlanten*.

3. The Hebrew words *Cherub* and *Seraph* have the Hebr. Pl. in *-im* and take *-s* in the gen. sing.

3. Neuters in *-a* from the Greek, and in *-um* from the Latin, take *-s* in the gen. sing., and change *-a* or *-um* into *en* in the plur., as: *das Drama*, the drama, G. *Sing. Drama*, *Plur. Dramen*; *das Thema*, the



theme, *Plur.* Themen; das Individuum, the individual, *G. Sing.* Individuum, *Plur.* Individuen; das Verbum, the verb, *Plur.* die Verben.

NOTE. — Das Klima, the climate, has pl. Klimata or Klimaten.

4. Neuters from Latin Substantives with plur. in *-ia* add *-s* in the gen. sing., often dropping the Latin sing. termination, and form the plur. in *-ien*, as: das Adverb(ium), the adverb, *G. Sing.* Adverb(ium)s, *Plur.* Adverbien; das Particip(ium), the participle, *G. Sing.* Particip(ium)s, *Plur.* Participien; das Fossil, the fossil, *Plur.* Fossilien; das Mineral, the mineral, *Plur.* Mineralien.

NOTES. — 1. These words formerly followed the full forms of Latin declension, *grammatical* terms (e. g. Verbum, etc.) retaining these forms longest.

2. The German word das Meinod, the jewel, has *Plur.* Meinedien as well as the regular *Plur.* Meinode.

5. Masculines and neuters of recent introduction from *modern* languages take *-s* in the gen. sing., and add *-s* to form the plur., as: Vord*s*, Club*s*, Zof*s*, Banquier*s*, Portrait*s*, Zof*s*, etc.

NOTE. — Italian words are also found with their proper foreign plur., as Zoti, Conti.

## 78. THE ARTICLE WITH NAMES OF PERSONS.

Besides the cases specified in § 73, 1, above, the article is used with names of persons:

1. *Colloquially* and *familiarly*, as: **der** Karl, **die** Louise.

2. When they denote a *class*, as: **ein** Wellington, a (*man like*) Wellington.

3. Before names of paintings, etc., named from a pers., etc, as: **ein** Rafael, a (*painting by*) Rafael; **die** Venus von Milo, the (*statue of*) Venus of Milo.

## LESSON XVII.

### GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES. — INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

79. The Gender of Substantives is determined in German:

- I. by Meaning; or
- II. by Form (Ending, etc.).

80. I. GENDER AS DETERMINED BY MEANING.

1. **Masculine** are names of:

(a) *Males*, as: **der** Mann, the man; **der** Held, the hero.

REMARK: But diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein** are neuter, as: **das Männlein** or **Männchen**.

(b) *Seasons, months and days*, as: **der Herbst**, the autumn; **der Januar**, January; **der Mittwoch**, Wednesday.

(c) *Points of the compass*, as: **der Nord(en)**, the north.

(d) *Precious stones and mountains*, as: **der Diamant**, the diamond; **der Brocken**, the Brocken.

## 2. Feminine are names of:

(a) *Females*, as: **die Frau**, the woman; **die Tochter**, the daughter.

REMARK: But **das Weib**, the woman, is neuter; also diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein**, as: **das Töchterchen**, the little daughter; **das Mädchen**, the girl; **das Fräulein**, the young lady.

(b) *Trees, plants, fruits and flowers* generally, as: **die Eiche**, the oak; **die Nessel**, the nettle; **die Birne**, the pear (but **der Apfel**, the apple); **die Rose**, the rose.

(c) *Cardinal Numerals* used as substantives, as: **die Eins**, the (number or figure) one; **die Sechs**, the six (at dice, etc.).

## 3. Neuter are names of:

(a) *Metals* almost always, as: **das Blei**, lead; **das Eisen**, iron.

NOTE. — **Der Stahl**, steel, is Masc.

(b) *Collectives* almost always, as: **das Volk**, the people; **das Heer**, the army; especially when beginning with **Ge-**, as: **das Gebirge**, the mountain-chain.

(c) *Countries and provinces* almost always, as: (**das**) **Europa**, Europe; (**das**) **Canada**; islands, cities, towns, villages, etc., *always*, as: (**das**) **Hamburg**; (**das**) **Rom**, Rome.

REMARKS. — 1. Names of countries and provinces in **-ei**, **-au** and **-z** are feminine, as: **die Türkei**, Turkey; **die Schweiz**, Switzerland.

2. Names of countries, etc., when not neuter, *always* have the definite article (see § 44, 3).

(*d*) Infinitives, letters of the alphabet, and other parts of speech (except Adjectives used of persons, and Cardinal Numerals; see 2, *c*, above), used as Substantives, as: **das** Lachen, the (act of) laughing; **das** A, the (letter) A; **das** Ich, the I; **das** Wenn und **das** Aber, (the) 'if' and (the) 'but.'

Give the gender of the following Substantives, assigning the rule in each case: April, Gold, Erdbeere, Tochter, Europa, Bischof, Vondon, Jura, Rubin (ruby), Wallachei (Wallachia), Unrecht, Süden (South), Geld, Kaufen, Sommer.

## 81. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

The Interrogative Pronouns are :

1. **welcher?** which? — DEFINITE.

2. **wer?** who? ) — INDEFINITE.

3. **was?** what? )

**82. Welcher?** is declined after the *dieser* Model, but, as *Pronoun*, lacks the Gen., thus:

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche, which
Gen.	—	—	—	— —
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen, (to, for) which
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche, which

REMARKS. — 1. **Welcher?** asks 'which of a number?' of persons or things, and agrees in gender with the noun following it, as:

**Welcher** von diesen Männern ist hier gewesen?

Which of these men has been here?

**Welches** von diesen Büchern haben Sie gehabt?

Which of these books have you had?

2. The neuter sing. **welches** is used before the verb 'to be,' irrespectively of the gender or number of the subject (compare the similar use of **es**, § 39. 1), as:

Which is your sister (brother)?

**Welches** ist Ihre Schwester (Ihr Bruder)?

Which are the children of the count?

**Welches** sind die Kinder des Grafen?

**83. Wer?** and **was?** are used in the Sing. only, and are declined as follows:

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	wer, who?	was, what?
Gen.	weßten (or weß), whose, of whom	weßten (or weß), of what
Dat.	wem, (to, for) whom	—
Acc.	wen, whom	was, what

REMARKS. — 1. **Wer** is used of persons only, for all genders and both numbers, as:

*Sing.* M. **Wer** ist dieser **Mann**? F. jene **Frau**? N. dieses **Kind**?

*Plur.* **Wer** sind diese **Männer**? etc.

2. **Was** is not used of persons.

3. **Was** is **never** used in the Dative. In the Dat. or Acc. with prepositions, **was** is replaced by **wo** (**wer** before vowels), placed *before* the preposition (compare § 38. Rem. 5, for similar use of **da**), as:

**Vor**auf sitzen Sie? On what (whereon) are you sitting?

**Wovon** sprechen Sie? Of what (whereof) are you speaking?

NOTE. — **W**arum? = for what, wherefore, why? not **w**arum.

4. With prepositions governing the Gen., **wes** is used before the preposition, as: **wes**halb, **wes**wegen? on what account, wherefore, why?

5. The *neuter* Gen. **weßten**? is rarely used, except as above.

6. **Was** is sometimes used (as interrog. *adv.*) for *warum*, why? (For the use of *was* for *etwas*, see under *etwas*, § 149. 1.)

**84.** The Interrogative Adjectives are :

1. **welcher, welche, welches?** which? what? — DEFINITE.

2. **was für ein, was für eine, was für ein?** { what kind of?  
*Plur. was für?* } — INDEFINITE.

**85.** **Welcher**, as Interrogative Adjective, follows the *dieser* Model throughout, as :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	welcher	welche	welches	welche, which
Gen.	welches	welcher	welches	welcher, of which
Dat.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen, (to, for which)
Acc.	welchen	welche	welches	welche, which

EXAMPLES :

**Which** man was here?

**Welcher** Mann war hier?

**What** books have you?

**Welche** Bücher haben Sie?

REMARKS. — 1. **Welcher** is also used in exclamatory sentences (= **what!**), sometimes without termination, as :

**Welch(es)** Vergnügen! What pleasure!

2. The stem *welch* is also followed by *ein*, and is uninflected, as :

**Welch** ein Sturm! What a storm!

**86.** In declining **was für ein**, **was** remains unchanged, while **ein** agrees with the substantive, as :

N. M. **Was für ein** Hut? A. **Was für einen** Hut? What kind of (a) hat? D. **Was für einem** Hut? To what kind of a hat?

G. F. Was für einer Blume? Of what kind of (a) flower, etc.

In the Plur. **was für** is used without article, as :

N. A. Was für Kinder? What kind (sort) of children?

D. Was für Kindern? To what kind of children?

The **ein** is also omitted before names of materials and other words used partitively, as :

Was für Holz?

What kind of wood?

Was für Wetter?

What sort of weather?

## 87.

### INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

#### Direct Statement or Quotation :

He said : '**I** am tired.'

#### Indirect Statement or Quotation :

He said (**that**) **he was** tired.

1. An Indirect Statement is always a *subordinate* clause.

2. In Indirect Statements, the Verb is usually in the Subjunctive (especially if the verb of the principal clause be in the Impf.), and has the same *tense* which it would have, if statement were made *directly*, as :

Sie sagten, daß es wahr **sei** (i. e., sie sagten : „Es **ist** wahr," *pres.*), They said that it **was** true.

Er antwortete, daß er gestern angekommen **sei** (i. e., er antwortete : „Ich **bin** gestern angekommen," *perf.*), He answered, that he **had** arrived yesterday.

NOTE.—In English, on the other hand, a past tense is always followed by a past tense, as in the above examples.

3. The conjunction **daß** may be omitted in such clauses, which then have the construction of a principal sentence (i. e., verb in *second* place), as :

Er sagte, **er sei** gestern angekommen.

## 88.

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

## Direct Question :

Who is there ?

## Indirect Question :

He asked who **was** there ?

1. In **Indirect** (or **Dependent**) **Questions** the construction is that of a *dependent* clause (verb *last*).

2. If the verb of the principal sentence be in the Impf., that of the question will be in the *subjunctive*, and have the same *tense* which it would have in the direct question, as :

Sagen Sie mir gefälligst, wo jener Herr wohnt (Dir. Qu. : Wo wohnt jener Herr? *pres.*), Tell me, if you please, where that gentleman lives ?

Er fragte mich, welcher von diesen Herren mein Bruder **sei**, He asked me which of those gentlemen was my brother (Dir. Qu. : Welcher, etc., **ist** Ihr Bruder? *pres.*)

## VOCABULARY.

\* \* \* The article will be supplied by the pupil, according to preceding rules, where not given.

to use, brauchen	buying, d— Kaufen
march, marschieren	life, d— Leben
save, retten	learning (act of), d— Lernen
answering, d— Antworten	lily, d— Lilie
paying, d— Bezahlen	market, der Markt
jewel, precious stone, d— Edelstein	morning, der Morgen
asking (of questions), d— Fragen	afternoon, der Nachmittag
Italy, Italien	plum, d— Pflaume
fire-place, d— Kamin'	emerald, d— Smaragd'
elm, d— Ulme	winter-month, der Wintermo- nat
blue, blau	valuable, precious, wertvoll
light, easy, leicht	generally, usually, gewöhnlich
useful, nützlich	etc., u. s. w. (= und so weiter, i. e. "and so further")

Genitive with ) in the morning, morgens or des Morgens  
adverbial force. ) in the afternoon, nachmittags or des Nachmittags

The Cardinal Points of the Compass (= die vier Himmels-  
gegenden): North, (der) Norden; South, (der) Süden; East,  
(der) Osten; West, (der) Westen.

Names of the Months: der Januar, der Februar, der März,  
der April, der Mai, der Juni, der Juli, der August, der Sep-  
tember, der Oktober, der November, der Dezember.

**Idiom:** I saved his life, lit. I saved to or for him the life,  
Ich rettete ihm das Leben. See § 44, 6 (b).

### EXERCISE XVII.

A. 1. Wer hat das Bild von meinem Neffen über das Kamin  
gehängt? 2. Was für einen Tisch hat Johann auf dem Markte  
gekauft? 3. Auf welche Bank werden wir uns setzen? 4. Wel-  
chem Knaben gehört dieses Messer? Es gehört Wilhelm. 5. Jenes  
Mädchen auf der Straße ist das Töchterchen unseres Nachbarn.  
6. Was machen Sie gewöhnlich, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben?  
7. Des Morgens studiere ich, und des Nachmittags rudere ich auf  
dem Flusse. 8. Welches sind die Namen der sieben Tage der  
Woche? Montag, u. s. w. 9. Wem schicken Sie diesen Brief?  
10. Ich schicke ihn dem Buchhändler. 11. Worüber haben die  
Herren gelacht? 12. Wer ist die Frau neben meiner Tante auf  
der Bank? 13. Was für Augen hat der Student? Seine Augen  
sind blau. 14. Woraus machen wir Schiffe? Wir machen sie  
aus Eisen und Stahl. 15. Karl ist mit dem Lernen seiner Auf-  
gabe nicht fertig. 16. Worauf haben die Schüler sich gesetzt?  
Sie haben sich auf die Brücke gesetzt. 17. Was für Edelsteine  
haben Sie da? 18. Ich habe einen Diamant(en), einen Rubin,  
und einen Smaragd. 19. Das Heer ist von Frankreich nach  
Italien marschiert. 20. Napoleon schickte dem Grafen einen Dia-  
mant(en), weil der Graf ihm das Leben gerettet hatte.

B. 1. Which of your sisters are learning German? 2. For  
whom is this diamond? It is for the countess. 3. Which



are your pens? 4. The asking of questions is very easy, but the answering is very difficult. 5. The north, the south, the east, and the west are the four cardinal points of the compass. 6. Which of these students is Mr. Braun? 7. The boy buys himself pears and plums in the market. 8. My uncle has three children — a girl and two boys. 9. June, July, and August are very hot in Canada. 10. Buying is pleasant, but paying is very disagreeable. 11. Iron and steel are very useful. 12. The rose and the lily are flowers, but the oak and the elm are trees. 13. I blame Mary because she wastes her money. 14. What would you do with your money, if you were rich? 15. We always hoped that William would learn German.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XVII.

1. Wo hängt das Bild von Ihrem Neffen? 2. Wer ist das Mädchen vor unserm Hause? 3. Weshalb schickte der König dem Bürgermeister einen Diamanten? 4. Was für Augen hat der Student? 5. Ist das Fragen leicht? 6. Was würden Sie machen, wenn Sie einen Feiertag hätten?

---

### LESSON XVIII.

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES (concluded). — GENERAL REMARKS.  
— DOUBLE GENDER.

#### 89. GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES AS DETERMINED BY FORM.

##### 1. Masculine are :

- (a) Substantives in *-ich, -ig, -ing, -m*, *almost always*, as : *der Kranich*, the crane ; *der Honig*, the honey ; *der Fremdling*, the stranger ; *der Atem*, the breath.
- (b) Those in *-el, -en* (not infinitives), *-er*, *generally* (names of agents in *-er always*), as : *der Vögel*,

the spoon; **der Garten**, the garden; **der Gärtner**, the gardener.

- (c) Monosyllables — *generally* (but with many exceptions), as: **der Krieg**, the war; **der Tag**, the day, etc.

## 2. Feminine are:

- (a) Substantives in **-ei**, **-heit**, **-feit**, **-schaft**, **-ung**, **-in**, *always*, as: **die Schmeichelei**, flattery; **die Schönheit**, beauty; **die Dankbarkeit**, gratitude; **die Freundschaft**, friendship; **die Hoffnung**, hope; **die Gräfin**, the countess; **die Freundin**, the (female) friend.

NOTE. — The termination **-in** is used to form feminine names from masculines, usually with Umlaut, always so in monosyllables.

- (b) Those in **-t** (especially after a consonant), **-end**, *generally*, as: **die Kraft**, strength; **die Zukunft**, the future; **die Tugend**, virtue.
- (c) Those in **-e**, *generally* (but with many exceptions), as: **die Höhe**, height; **die Größe**, size.
- (d) Some in **-nis** (see also under neuters), as: **die Wildnis**, the wilderness.
- (e) Foreign Substantives in **-age**, **-ie** (French); **-if** (Greek); **-enz**, **-tät**, **-(t)ion**, **-ur** (Lat.), *always* as: **die Courage**, courage; **die Melodie**, the melody; **die Musik**, music; **die Audienz**, the audience; **die Universität**, the university; **die Nation**, the nation; **die Natur**, nature.

## 3. Neuter are:

- (a) Substantives in **-chen** and **-lein** (diminutives), *always* (without regard to sex), as: **das Männlein**, **das Fräulein**, **das Mädchen**.

- (b) Those in **-tum**, *almost always*, as: **das Christentum**, Christendom, Christianity.
- (c) Those in **-nis**, **-jal**, **-jel**, *generally*, as: **das Ereignis**, the event; **das Schicksal**, fate, destiny; **das Rätsel**, the riddle.
- (d) Those beginning with the prefix **Ge-**, unless otherwise determined by meaning, termination, or derivation, as: **das Gemälde**, the painting; **das Gemach**, the apartment; but: **der Vater**, the godfather; **die Mutter**, the godmother; **die Gesellschaft**, the company; **der Gebrauch**, the usage (from **der Brauch**, masc. monosyll.).

Give the gender of the following substantives, assigning the rule in each case: <sup>das</sup> Weisheit, <sup>der</sup> Hut, <sup>die</sup> Kirche, <sup>der</sup> Künstler, <sup>die</sup> Kandidat, <sup>die</sup> Essig (vinegar), <sup>die</sup> Blume, <sup>das</sup> Geschenk, <sup>das</sup> Knäblein, <sup>das</sup> Begräbnis, <sup>die</sup> Nacht, <sup>das</sup> Gassen, <sup>das</sup> Gewitter, <sup>der</sup> Singer, <sup>der</sup> Apfel, <sup>der</sup> Korb, <sup>die</sup> Universität, <sup>der</sup> Astrolog, <sup>der</sup> Teppich, <sup>die</sup> Philosophie.

## 90. GENERAL REMARKS ON GENDER.

1. Gender agrees, as in English, with sex, except in **das Weib**, in Diminutives in **-chen** and **-lein**, and in certain compounds (see below).

2. Inanimate objects, which in English are all alike neuter, may be of any gender in German, as determined by Meaning or Form, as: **der Hut**, **die Blume**, **das Buch**.

3. Each substantive of which the gender is not determined by the rules should be learnt **with the Definite Article** as the sign of its gender.

4. Compounds are of the gender of the last component (hence **das Frauenzimmer**, the woman, is neuter, except

**der Mädchen**, disgust, from **die Zehn**.

**die Antwort**, the answer, from **das Wort**.

**der Mittwoch**, Wednesday, from **die Wede**.

Also certain compounds of *Mut*, which are given in Appendix I.

5. The exceptions to the foregoing lists will be found in Appendix I.

## 91.

## DOUBLE GENDER.

The gender of the following substantives (with others given in App. I.), varies with their meaning :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<b>der</b> Band, volume	<b>Bände</b>
<b>das</b> Band, { ribbon	<b>Bänder</b>
{ bond, tie	<b>Bande</b>
<b>der</b> Bauer, peasant	<b>Bauern</b>
<b>das</b> Bauer, bird-cage	<b>Bauer</b>
<b>der</b> Heide, heathen )	<b>Heiden</b>
<b>die</b> Heide, heath )	
<b>der</b> Schild, shield	<b>Schilde</b>
<b>das</b> Schild, sign of an inn, etc.)	<b>Schilder</b>
<b>der</b> See, lake )	<b>Seen</b>
<b>die</b> See, sea )	
<b>der</b> Thor, fool, G. des Thoren	<b>Thoren</b>
<b>das</b> Thor, gate, G. des Thores	<b>Thore</b>

## VOCABULARY.

(The pupil will supply the article in German where not given.)

to visit, study (at a university), besuchen (+ Acc.)	relate, tell, erzählen
collect, gather, sammeln	paint, malen
peasant, country-man, d—	(female) neighbour, d— Nachbarin
Bauer	barin
bee, d— Biene	orator, d— Redner
	bedroom, d— Schlafzimmer

boat, das Boot  
 friendship, d— Freundschaft  
 inn, d— (Wohnhaus)  
 district, locality, d— Gegend  
 history, story, d— Geschichte  
 waiter, d— Kellner  
 piano, das Klavier  
 vice, das Laster  
 lesson, d— Lektion  
 people, die Leute (pl.)  
 love, d— Liebe  
 mathematics, d— Mathematik  
 (sing.)

little son, d— Söhnchen  
 sun, d— Sonne  
 city-gate, town-gate, d—  
 Stadthor  
 ingratitude, d— Undankbarkeit  
 way, road, d— Weg  
 wind, d— Wind  
 rage, fury, die Wut  
 sign, das Zeichen  
 terrible, terribly, fürchterlich  
 strong (heavily, of rain, etc.),  
 stark  
 willingly, with pleasure, gern

so, so

**Idioms:** 1. I like to learn German, Ich lerne gern Deutsch.

2. A week ago to-day, Heute vor acht Tagen (Dat.).

3. A week from to-day, Heute über acht Tage (Acc.).

### EXERCISE XVIII.

A. 1. Ohne (die) Freundschaft, (die) Hoffnung und (die) Liebe würde das Leben sehr traurig sein. 2. Unsere Vettern waren heute vor acht Tagen bei uns. 3. (Die) Schmeichelei ist kein Zeichen der Freundschaft. 4. Wilhelm, lerne deine Lektion. 5. Was für Bände sind auf dem Tische in Ihrer Bibliothek? 6. Es sind fünf Bände von Schillers Werken. 7. Die Wut des Sturmes ist fürchterlich, aber das Schiff ist schon im Hafen. 8. Lernt Ihr Bruder gern Mathematik? Nein, aber er lernt gern Deutsch. 9. Wem gehören diese Ringe, der Marie oder der Sara? 10. Die Dankbarkeit ist eine Tugend, aber die Undankbarkeit ist ein Laster. 11. Karl Schmidt besucht im Winter die Universität, aber im Sommer wohnt er bei seinen Eltern auf dem Lande. 12. Jenes Fräulein hat ihrer Freundin ein Band zum Geburtstag geschenkt, und ihre Freundin ist damit sehr zufrieden. 13. Diese Handschuhe gehören nicht mir, sie gehören meinem

Schwager. 14. Der Maler hat ein Schild für das Gasthaus vor dem Thor gemalt. 15. Marie, hast du die Bänder für deine Mutter gekauft? Nein, aber ich werde sie morgen oder am Mittwoch kaufen. 16. Kellner, holen Sie mir gefälligst ein Messer und einen Löffel. 17. Er hat mir keine Antwort auf meinen Brief geschickt. 18. Was für eine Melodie spielt das Töchterchen unserer Wirtin auf dem Klavier? 19. Wenn ich Geld hätte, so würde ich einen Teppich und Vorhänge für mein Schlafzimmer kaufen. 20. Wenn Marie ihre Lektion nicht lernt, so wird sie in der Schule nicht gut antworten.

*B.* 1. This country-man lives on a heath near the lake. 2. The tempest is terrible, but the ship is already in the harbour. 3. The stranger praises this locality on account of the beauty of the landscape. 4. What kind of a flower is it? It is a violet. 5. We met a stranger on the way to the university. 6. Your aunt is my neighbour. 7. Who are these people? They are the parents of my cousin. 8. The mother relates to her little son the story of the little man in the wood. 9. Have you heard the words of the orator? 10. During the tempest the wind shook the house. 11. The girl hangs the bird-cage before the window in the sun (acc.). 12. The bees gather honey from the flowers upon the heath, and the peasant sells it in the town. 13. When we hastened home yesterday, it was raining heavily. 14. I shall not wait for George, because I have no time. 15. When I resided at (bei) my uncle's, I was always at home at ten o'clock in the evening.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XVIII.

1. Wer war heute vor acht Tagen bei Ihnen? 2. Was für Bücher haben Sie auf Ihrem Tische? 3. Lernen Sie gern Mathematik? 4. Was macht Karl Schmidt im Winter? 5. Wer spielt jetzt auf dem Klavier? 6. Was werden Sie heute über acht Tage machen?

## LESSON XIX.

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.—IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

## 92. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Relative Pronouns are :

1. *der, die, das,* } *who* (of *persons*), *which* (of
2. *welcher, welche, welches,* } *things*) — DEFINITE.
3. *wer, who* (= *he who, whoever*) }
4. *was, what* (= *that which, whatever*) } — INDEFINITE.
5. *desgleichen,* }
6. *dergleichen,* } the *like* of whom or which — INDECLINABLE.

93. *Der, die, das*, as Relative Pronoun, is declined as follows :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die, who, which, that</i>
Gen.	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i> whose, of which
Dat.	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i> , (to, for) whom, which
Acc.	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die, whom, which, that</i>

OBSERVE. — These forms are the same as those of the Definite Article, except the added *-en* of the Gen. Sing., Gen. Plur., and Dat. Plur.

94. *Welcher*, as Relative Pronoun, is declined after the *dieser* Model, but, like the Interrogative *welcher*, lacks the Genitive.

95. REMARKS ON **der** AND **welcher**.

1. **Der** and **welcher** refer alike to both persons and things, and are interchangeable, except that :

(a) In the gen., *dessen, deren, dessen, pl. deren* (not *welches*, etc.), are always used (see § 82, above).

(b) **Der** is used when the antecedent is of the First or Second Person, the relative being, in that case, always followed by the Personal Pronoun, as :

I, who am your friend,  
 Ich, **der** ich Ihr Freund bin,  
 (or : Ich, **die** ich Ihre Freundin bin).

O God, (thou) who art in Heaven,  
 O Gott, **der** du im Himmel bist.

2. **Der** and **welcher**, referring to inanimate objects, are usually replaced by **wo** (*wer*-before a vowel) *before* a preposition (compare § 83, 3, above, for similar use of *wo* for *was*), as :

The table, on which (*whereon*) the book is,  
 Der Tisch, auf welchem, or : **worauf** das Buch ist.

3. The Gen. *dessen*, etc., always precedes its case, as :

A tree, the leaves of **which** are green,  
 Ein Baum, **dessen** Blätter grün sind.

96. REMARKS ON **wer** AND **was**.

1. **Wer** and **was** are declined like the Interrogative Pronouns *wer?* and *was?*

2. **Wer** is used of *persons* only, for all genders and both numbers; **was** *never of persons*.



3. *Wer* and *was*, as relatives, are *indefinite* and *compound* in meaning, and include the antecedent, as :

*Wer* nicht hören will, muß fühlen,  
(He) **who** will not hear, must feel.

*Was* ich Ihnen geschickt habe, ist nicht viel,  
**What** (= **that which**) I have sent you, is not much.

4. *Wer* never has an antecedent, since it includes the antecedent itself ; therefore

*never* say : Der Mann, **wer** hier war,  
but : Der Mann, **welcher** hier war,  
(The man **who** was here).

5. *Was* never has an antecedent, unless the antecedent be a neuter adjective or pronoun, such as *nichts*, nothing ; *etwas*, something ; *alles*, everything ; or a phrase, in which cases *was* always replaces *das*, as :

Nothing (**that**) I say, etc., *Nichts*, **was** ich sage, etc.

All (**that**) I have, etc., *Alles*, **was** ich habe, etc.

The best (**that**) I have, etc., *Das Beste*, **was** ich habe, etc.

He does not learn his lessons, **which** (i. e. 'the not learning') is a great pity, *Er lernt seine Lektionen nicht*, **was** sehr schade ist.

6. *Ever* = *auch* or *immer* after *wer* or *was*, as :

*Wer es auch (immer) gesagt hat*, **Whoever** has said it.

7. The Relative *was*, like the Interrogative, is not used after prepositions in the Dative or Accusative, but is replaced in the same way by *wo(r)*; with prepositions governing the Genitive, *wes* is used (see § 83, 3, above).

OBSERVE. — The *relative must never be omitted* in German, as it so frequently is in English, hence :

(*Engl.*) The man I met,

(*Germ.*) Der Mann, **welchem** (dem) ich begegnete.

**97.** *Desgleichen* and *dergleichen* are indeclinable words, the former referring to a masc. or neuter noun in the sing., the latter to fem. or plural nouns, as :

Ein Mann, *desgleichen* (dat.) ich nie begegnete,

A man, the like of whom I never met.

Haben Sie jemals *desgleichen* gehört?

Have you ever heard the like of that?

Eine Frau, *dergleichen*, etc., A woman, the like of whom, etc.

Kinder, *dergleichen*, etc., Children, the like of whom, etc.

## **98.** CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Every relative sentence is of course a *dependent* sentence, and as such must have the **verb at the end**, as :

The wine, which I have sent you, is very good.

Der Wein, **den** ich Ihnen geschickt habe, ist sehr gut.

2. The Relative must immediately follow its antecedent, when the latter (whether subject or not) precedes the verb of a principal sentence, or when the separation from the antecedent would cause any ambiguity, as :

Der Mann welcher gestern hier war, ist mein Onkel. The man who was here yesterday is my uncle.

Das Buch, welches Sie mir schickten, habe ich nicht gebraucht, I have not used the book you sent me, but : Ich habe das Buch nicht gebraucht, welches u. s. w.

3. In sentences with *wer* or *was*, the relative clause will be counted as the first member of the principal sentence, which will therefore begin with the verb, e. g. :

**Wer** nicht hören will, muß fühlen,

He who will not hear, must feel.

NOTE. — In German, every dependent sentence or clause is separated from the sentence on which it depends by a comma. The relatives *welcher* and *der* must therefore always be preceded by a comma.

## 99.

## IRREGULAR WEAK VERBS.

1. A Few Weak Verbs, besides adding the termination *te* to form the Impf., and *-t* to form the P. Part., also change the Stem Vowel in the Impf. Indicative and P. Part., but *not* in the Impf. Subjunctive. They are :

INFINITIVE.	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.	P. PART.
brennen (intr.), to burn, be consumed with fire	brannte	brennte	gebrannt
fennen, to know, be acquainted with	fannte	fennte	gefaunt
nennen, to name	nannte	nennte	genannt
rennen, to run (at full speed)	rannte	rennte	gerannt
senden, to send	{ sandte (sendete)	sendete	{ gesandt (gesendet)
wenden, to turn	{ wandte (wendete)	wendete	{ gewandt (gewendet)

OBSERVE: 1. The double forms of the last two verbs, of which the shorter are in more general use.

2. The three following verbs have also a *consonant* change, *with* Umlaut in the Impf. Subj. :

INFINITIVE.	IMPF. IND.	IMPF. SUBJ.	P. PART.
bringen, to bring	brachte	brächte	gebracht
denken, to think	dachte	dächte	gedacht
dünken, to seem (impers.)	{ deuchte (däuchte)	{ deuchte (däuchte)	{ gedeucht (gedäucht)
(denchten, dächten)	{ dünfte (dünfte)	{ dünfte (dünfte)	{ gedünkt (gedünkt)

REMARKS.—1. Compare the English: bring, brought; think, thought.

2. The forms *dächte*, *gedäucht*, are as yet more common than *deuchte*, *gedeuht*, but the latter are according to the new official orthography.

3. Besides the Inf. *denken*, there is also a Pres. Ind. 3. sing. *denkt*.

NOTE. -- The German Perfect often replaces the English Past or Imperfect (see also Less. XLIII.), as:

I sent you the book yesterday,  
*Ich habe Ihnen gestern das Buch geschickt.*  
 I was working yesterday the whole day,  
*Ich habe gestern den ganzen Tag gearbeitet.*

#### VOCABULARY.

consider, bedenken (trans.)	acquaintance, die Bekanntschaft
order, bespeak, bestellen	postman, der Postbote
think of, denken an (+ acc.)	title, der Titel
or denken (+ gen.)	all, everything, Alles
recognize, erkennen	unhappy, unfortunate, un-
like to hear, gern hören	glücklich
divide, share, teilen	improbable, unwahrscheinlich
burn, consume with fire	just now, eben, soeben
(trans.), verbrennen	diligently, industriously, fleißig
wish, wünschen	easily, readily, leicht
apply to, sich wenden an	really, wirklich
(+ acc.)	

*Idiom: It is a pity, Es ist schade (adj.).*

#### EXERCISE XIX.

A. 1. Der Kaiser sandte einen Boten mit der Nachricht nach Berlin. 2. Wer nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich. 3. Die Leute, bei denen ich auf Besuch gewesen bin, sind Schotten. 4. Hat der Kellner Alles gebracht, was wir brauchen? 5. Der Postbote hat mir die Nachricht gebracht, worauf ich wartete. 6. Ich erkannte wirklich den Herrn nicht, der gestern mit meinem Vetter in der Kirche war. 7. Das Pferd des Generals rannte um den Preis. 8. Der Fremdling, dessen Bekanntschaft ich zu machen wünsche, wird morgen hier sein. 9. Das Feuer brannte im Ofen und ver-

brannte das Holz. 10. Wenn er unglücklich war, wandte er sich immer an mich, der ich sein Freund war. 11. Ich dachte heute an die Geschichte, die Sie mir gestern erzählten, und ich habe sehr darüber gelacht. 12. Hat der Diener die Bücher nach Hause gebracht, die ich beim Buchhändler gekauft habe? 13. Mensch, hast du je bedacht, was du bist? 14. Wir haben das Holz schon verbrannt, das wir vor acht Tagen gekauft haben. 15. Dieses Kind erzählt immer zu Hause, was es in der Schule hört. 16. Alles, was er hat, teilt er mit mir, der ich sein Freund bin. 17. Glauben Sie die Geschichte, die Herr Braun uns erzählt hat? 18. Die Frau, deren Töchterchen bei uns auf Besuch ist, wird morgen nach Hause reisen. 19. Was Sie in der Stadt gehört haben, ist sehr unwahrscheinlich. 20. Es regnete gestern, was sehr schade war, da wir auf dem Lande waren.

*B.* 1. Do you hear what I say to you? 2. My father always burnt the letters which were no longer useful. 3. He has not told me what he wishes. 4. The man, in whose house we lived, is the brother of our neighbour. 5. Here is the meat which you have ordered. 6. The honey which the countryman brought us yesterday is not good. 7. Do you know the artist who has painted this picture? 8. People who are not industrious do not become rich. 9. We readily believe what we hope and wish for. 10. What were you thinking of when you met me yesterday? 11. Have you all you need? 12. I believe that I know the man who is in front of the house. 13. I always burn the newspapers I do not need. 14. The students to whom these books belong do not study them diligently, which is a pity. 15. I do not know the song, the title of which you have just named. 16. What was burning? The gardener was burning leaves.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XIX.

1. Was machen Sie gewöhnlich mit den Zeitungen, die Sie nicht mehr brauchen? 2. Wer hat Ihnen diese Nachricht

gebracht? 3. Woran denken Sie? 4. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie einen Feiertag haben? 5. Glauben Sie jede Geschichte, die Sie hören? 6. Was erzählt das Kind?

## LESSON XX.

DECLENSION OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES:—STRONG FORM.  
—CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS.

### 100. DECLENSION OF ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES.

The boy is **good** — **Predicative Adjective**.

The **good** boy — **Attributive** “

REMEMBER: That Adjectives used as *Predicates* are **not varied** (see § 14).

**101.** Every **Attributive** Adjective either *is or is not preceded by a determinative word* (i. e., article or pronominal adjective), which shows gender, number and case **by distinctive endings**.

**102. First Form.** — If not preceded by any such determinative word, the Attributive Adjective follows the **Strong Declension**, which is the same as the *dieſer* Model throughout, thus :

### STRONG DECLENSION OF **gut**, **good**.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<b>guter</b>	<b>gute</b>	<b>gutes</b>	<b>gute</b>
Gen.	<b>gutes</b>	<b>guter</b>	<b>gutes</b>	<b>guter</b>
Dat.	<b>gutem</b>	<b>guter</b>	<b>gutem</b>	<b>guten</b>
Acc.	<b>guten</b>	<b>gute</b>	<b>gutes</b>	<b>gute</b>

## SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

*Singular.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	good wine	good soup	good glass
Nom.	guter Wein	gute Suppe	gutes Glas
Gen.	gutes (en) Wein(e)s	guter Suppe	gutes en Glases
Dat.	gutem Wein(e)	guter Suppe	gutem Glase
Acc.	guten Wein	gute Suppe	gutes Glas

*Plural.*

## ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	gute Weine, Suppen, Gläser
Gen.	guter Weine, Suppen, Gläser
Dat.	guten Weinen, Suppen, Gläsern
Acc.	gute Weine, Suppen, Gläser

OBSERVE: In this form, where there is no other word to show the gender, etc., of the noun, this work must be done by the adjective, which therefore has as full a set of endings as possible.

REMARKS. — 1. The Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter generally has **-en** instead of **-es** before strong substantives, as: **guten Weines**, **guten Brotes**.

2. Adjectives in **-e** drop the **-e** of the stem in declension, as: **müde**, tired: **müd-er**, **müd-e**, **müd-es**, etc.

3. If several Adjectives precede the same substantive, all follow the same form, as:

**guter, alter, roter Wein**, etc.,  
good, old, red wine.

Decline throughout in German: sick child, high tree, long lesson, beautiful broad stream, young woman, lazy horse, tired boy.

**103. CONJUGATION OF STRONG VERBS.**

Verbs in German are either Strong or Weak. The **Weak Verbs**, which indicate change of tense by the **addition of a termination** (usually *without change of vowel*), as: lob-en, lobte, ge-lob-t, have been treated in Lessons IX. X.

**104.** The **Strong Verbs**, on the other hand, indicate the change of tense by a **change of the Root Vowel without adding a termination**, as: ſing-en, to sing, Impf. ſang; bleiben, to remain, Impf. blieb.

**105.** The Past Participle in Strong Verbs ends in **-en** (not -et), usually also with change of Vowel, as: ſing-en, P. Part. ge-ſung-en; bleiben, P. Part. ge-blieb-en; but geben, P. Part. ge-geben.

REMARK. — This change of Root-Vowel is called ‘Ablaut, and is common to English and German. Compare Eng. sing, sang, sung; give, gave, giv-en.

**106. PARADIGM OF SIMPLE TENSES OF ſingen, to sing.****Principal Parts.**

INFIN. ſing-en                      IMPF. ſang                      P. PART. ge-ſung-en

**Indicative.****Subjunctive.****PRESENT.**

ich ſinge, I sing	ich ſinge, I (may) sing, etc.
du ſing(e)ſt, thou sing-est	du ſingeſt
er ſing(e)t, he sing-s	er ſinge
wir ſingen, we sing	wir ſingen
ibr ſing(e)t, ye sing	ibr ſinget
ſie ſingen, they sing	ſie ſingen

**IMPERFECT.**

(Ind. Stem with Umlaut, where possible.)

ich ſang, I sang	ich ſänge
du ſang(e)ſt, thou sangst	du ſängeſt



Indicative.	Subjunctive.
er <i>sang</i> , he sang	er <i>sänge</i>
wir <i>sangen</i> , we sang	wir <i>sängen</i>
ihr <i>sang(e)t</i> , ye sang	ihr <i>sänget</i>
sie <i>sangen</i> , they sang	sie <i>sängen</i>

## Imperative.

*sing(e)* [du], sing [thou]  
*singe* er, let him sing  
*singen* wir, let us sing  
*sing(e)t* [ihr], sing [ye]  
*singen* sie, let them sing

OBSERVE: The *Person* endings are the same throughout as in the paradigm of *leben*, in which -*te* of the Impf. is a **Tense** ending (see Lessons IX. X); this is shown by the following:

**107. TABLE OF ENDINGS OF STRONG VERBS IN  
SIMPLE TENSES.**

Present.		Imperfect.		Imperative.
INDIC.	SUBJ.	INDIC.	SUBJ.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1. — <b>e</b>	— <b>e</b>	—	— <b>e</b>	
2. —( <b>e</b> ) <b>ſt</b>	— <b>eſt</b>	—( <b>e</b> ) <b>ſt</b>	— <b>eſt</b>	—( <b>e</b> )
3. —( <b>e</b> ) <b>t</b>	— <b>e</b>	—	— <b>e</b>	— <b>e</b>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. — <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>
2. —( <b>e</b> ) <b>t</b>	— <b>et</b>	—( <b>e</b> ) <b>t</b>	— <b>et</b>	—( <b>e</b> ) <b>t</b>
3. — <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>

- OBSERVE: 1. The changed Vowel of the Imperfect, and absence of person endings in 1. and 3. sing.  
 2. The Umlaut of the Imperfect Subjunctive.  
 3. The persistent -**e** of the Subjunctive (Imperf. as well as Pres.)

REMARKS. — 1. The **-e** of the termination in the 2. Sing. of the Pres. and Impf. Ind. is only retained in Strong Verbs after **d**, **t**, or a sibilant, as: *ich reit-e*, *du reit-est*; *ich preis-e*, *du preis-est*; and in the 3. Sing. Pres. Ind., and 2. Plur. Pres. and Impf. Ind. after **d**, **t**, as: *er reit-et*, *ihr reit-et*, *ihr ritt-et*; but *er preis-t*, *ihr preis-t*, *ihr pries-t*.

2. The compound tenses of a Strong Verb are formed precisely like those of a Weak Verb, some being conjugated with *haben*, others with *sein*; hence it is only necessary to know the Inf., Impf. and P. Part., and in some cases the 2. Sing. Imper., in order to conjugate a Strong Verb throughout.

**108. PARADIGM OF COMPOUND TENSES OF *singen*, to sing (with *haben*); *fallen*, to fall (with *sein*).**

**Indicative.**

**PERFECT.**

**Subjunctive.**

(Pres. of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{haben} \\ \text{sein} \end{array} \right\} + \text{P. Part. of } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singen} \\ \text{fallen} \end{array} \right\} )$

*ich habe gesungen*, I have sung      *ich habe gesungen*  
*du hast gesungen*, thou hast sung, etc. *du habest gesungen*, etc.  
*ich bin gefallen*, I have (am) fallen, etc. *ich sei gefallen*, etc.

**PLUPERFECT.**

(Imperf. of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{haben} \\ \text{sein} \end{array} \right\} + \text{P. Part. of } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singen} \\ \text{fallen} \end{array} \right\} )$

*ich hatte gesungen*, I had sung, etc.      *ich hätte gesungen*, etc.  
*ich war gefallen*, I had (was) fallen, etc. *ich wäre gefallen*, etc.

**FUTURE.**

(Pres. of *werden* + Inf. of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singen} \\ \text{fallen} \end{array} \right\} )$

*ich werde singen (fallen)*, I shall sing (fall)      *ich werde singen (fallen)*  
*du wirst singen (fallen)*, thou wilt sing (fall), etc. *du werdest singen (fallen)*, etc.

## Indicative.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

## Subjunctive.

(Future of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{haben} \\ \text{sein} \end{array} \right\} + \text{P. Part. of } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singen} \\ \text{fallen} \end{array} \right\} )$

*ich werde gesungen haben*, I shall have sung    *ich werde gesungen haben*

*du wirst gesungen haben*, thou wilt have sung, etc.    *du werdest gesungen haben*, etc.

*ich werde gefallen sein*, I shall have (be) fallen, etc.    *ich werde gefallen sein*, etc.

## Conditional.

## COMPOUND.

## SIMPLE.

(Impf. Subj. of *werden* + Inf. of *singen*, *fallen*)

*ich würde singen (fallen)*, I should sing (fall), etc.

(Simple Cond. of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{haben} \\ \text{sein} \end{array} \right\} + \text{P. Part. of } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singen} \\ \text{fallen} \end{array} \right\} )$

*ich würde gesungen haben*, etc.

*ich würde gefallen sein*, etc.

## Inf. Perf.

(P. Part. of  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{singen} \\ \text{fallen} \end{array} \right\} + \text{Pres. Inf. of } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{haben} \\ \text{sein} \end{array} \right\} )$

*gesungen (zu) haben*, to have sung

*gefallen zu sein*, to have (be) fallen

**109. Compound Verbs.** — Compound Verbs are conjugated like the simple verbs from which they are derived; those having one of the inseparable particles **be-**, **er-**, **emp-**, **ent-**, **ge-**, **ver-**, **zer-**, do not take the prefix *ge-* in the P. Part., as: **be-singen**, P. Part. **be-sungen** (compare **be-zahlen**, P. Part. **be-zahlt**, § 35. Rem. 6), and in the Inf. take *zu* *before* the prefix; other compounds take the prefix *ge-* and the particle *zu* *between* the prefix and the verb (Part. or Inf. respectively).

**110.** The Strong Verbs are divided into classes, according to the 'Ablaut,' or Vowel-changes, of the root (see § 105. Rem., above). These classes, with the verbs belonging to each, are given in the following Lessons (XXII–XXXI).

## 111. SHORTER FORMS OF THE CONDITIONAL.

The **Impf.** and **Plupf. Subj.** are frequently used in all Verbs instead of the Simple and Compound Conditional respectively, thus:

ich **hätte** = ich würde haben; ich **jäuge** = ich würde singen;

ich **hätte gehabt** = ich würde gehabt haben; ich **hätte gesungen** = ich würde gesungen haben.

NOTE. — These shorter forms are always to be preferred in the Passive Voice (Less. XXI), and in the Modal Auxiliaries (Less. XXXIV).

## VOCABULARY.

help (serve) one's self, <i>sich bedienen</i>	singer, <i>der Sänger, die Sängerin</i>
acknowledge, confess, <i>bekennen</i>	liberal, generous, <i>freigebig</i>
catch cold, <i>sich erkälten</i>	friendly, kind, <i>freundlich</i>
nominate, appoint, <i>ernennen</i>	fresh, <i>frisch</i>
fill, <i>füllen</i>	glad, <i>fröh</i>
spread out, <i>sich verbreiten</i>	hard, <i>hart</i>
bough, branch, <i>der Ast</i> *	hoarse, <i>heiser</i>
ink, <i>die Tinte</i> or <i>Tinte</i>	bad, <i>schlecht</i>
company, <i>die Gesellschaft</i>	black, <i>schwarz</i>
governor, <i>der Gouverneur</i>	brave, valiant, <i>tapfer</i>
concert, <i>das Konzert</i>	true, faithful, <i>treu</i>
queen, <i>die Königin</i>	weighty, important, <i>wichtig</i>
paper, <i>das Papier</i>	at last, finally, <i>endlich</i>
advice, counsel, <i>der Rat</i>	yes (emphatic), yes indeed, <i>ja wohl</i>

*Idioms:* To appoint (as) governor, *zum Gouverneur ernennen*; cheerfully, *freuden Mutes* (genitive with adverbial force): good morning, *guten Morgen* (i. e., *Ich wünsche Ihnen einen guten Morgen*).

## EXERCISE XX.

A. 1. Mein Messer ist von gutem, hartem Stahle. 2. Hohe Bäume haben gewöhnlich große Äste. 3. Was für Pferde haben

Sie gekauft? Ich habe schwarze und weiße Pferde gekauft. 4. Füllen Sie gefälligst mein Glas mit frischem Wasser. 5. Tapfere Soldaten eilen frohen Mutes in die Schlacht. 6. Zwei glückliche Menschen wohnen in jenem Hause. 7. Haben Sie etwas Neues in der Stadt gehört? Ja wohl, viel Neues, aber nichts Interessantes. 8. Hier ist guter Käse und frisches Brod; bitte, bedienen Sie sich. 9. Wer du bist zeigt deine Gesellschaft. 10. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun, ich hoffe, daß wir heute schönes Wetter haben werden. 11. In welchem Jahre ernannte die Königin den Grafen von Dufferin zum Gouverneur von Canada? 12. Ich habe gutes Papier, aber meine Feder ist schlecht. 13. Die Kinder liebten meinen Onkel, weil er nie müde wurde, ihnen schöne Geschichten zu erzählen. 14. Sie haben endlich bekant, daß Sie Unrecht haben. 15. Ich habe mich erkältet; wenn ich jetzt sänge, würde ich heiser werden. 16. Ich habe schon oft das Lied gehört, welches die Sängerin im Konzert gesungen hat. 17. Gute Bücher sind treue Freunde, die immer Rat für uns haben. 18. Wenn wir fleißig sind, so werden unsere Lehrer uns loben.

*B.* 1. Have you black ink or red? I have black. 2. Rich people are not always generous, and generous people are not always rich. 3. What kind of neighbours have you? We have friendly neighbours. 4. Please fill my glass with pure fresh water. 5. High mountains and beautiful valleys spread out before our eyes. 6. I have something important to say to you. 7. New friends are not always good friends. 8. This mother buys her children something useful. 9. Have you white paper or blue? I have white, but my brother has blue. 10. I like to hear the singer, who sang at (in) the concert yesterday. 11. My sister did not sing at the concert, because she was hoarse. 12. If she had not been hoarse, she would have sung.

## ORAL EXERCISE XX.

1. Weshalb liebten die Kinder meinen Onkel? 2. Wer wohnt in jenem Hause? 3. Was hat die Mutter ihren Kindern gekauft? 4. Was für Papier haben Sie für mich gekauft? 5. Warum sangen Sie nicht? 6. Womit haben Sie mein Glas gefüllt?

## LESSON XXI.

## THE PASSIVE VOICE.

**112.** The Passive Voice is formed by means of the various tenses of the auxiliary verb **werden**, **to become** (see § 19) + the **Past Participle** of the Verb to be conjugated, as in the Paradigm below.

Principal Parts of **werden** :

INFIN. **werden** IMPF. **wurde** (ward) PAST PART. **geworden**

NOTE. — The perfect tenses of **werden** are formed with **sein** (see § 53, a), Perf. **Ich bin** geworden; Plupf. **ich war** geworden, etc. For the formation of the future and conditional, see **sein** (§ 52).

PARADIGM OF THE PASSIVE VOICE OF **loben**, **to praise**.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

PRESENT.

(Pres. of **werden** + P. Part. of **loben**.)

I am (being) praised, etc.

I (may) be praised, etc.

ich werde

ich werde

du wirst

du werdest

er wird

er werde

wir werden

wir werden

ihr werdet

ihr werdet

sie werden

sie werden

gelobt

gelobt

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

## IMPERFECT.

(Imperf. of *werden* + P. Part. of *loben*.)

I was (being) praised, etc.		I might be (being) praised,	
ich wurde (ward)	} <b>gelobt</b>	ich würde	} [etc.
du wurdest (wardst)		du würdest	
er wurde (ward)		er würde	
wir wurden		wir würden	
ihr wurdet		ihr würdet	
sie wurden		sie würden	
			<b>gelobt</b>

## PERFECT.

(Perfect of *werden* + P. Part. of *loben*.)(Part. of *werden* omits *ge-*)

I have been praised, etc.		I (may) have been praised,	
ich bin	} <b>gelobt</b> worden	ich sei	} [etc.
du bist		du seiest	
er ist		er sei	
wir sind		wir seien	
ihr seid		ihr seiet	
sie sind		sie seien	
			<b>gelobt</b> worden

## PLUPERFECT.

(Plupf. of *werden* + P. Part. of *loben*.)

I had been praised, etc.	I might have been praised,
ich war <b>gelobt</b> worden	ich wäre <b>gelobt</b> worden [etc.
du warst <b>gelobt</b> worden, etc.	du wärest <b>gelobt</b> worden, etc.

## FUTURE.

(Future of *werden* + P. Part. of *loben*.)

I shall be praised, etc.	I shall be praised, etc.
ich werde <b>gelobt</b> werden	ich werde <b>gelobt</b> werden
du wirst <b>gelobt</b> werden, etc.	du werdest <b>gelobt</b> werden, etc.

## Indicative.

## Subjunctive.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

Fut Perf. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

I shall have been praised, etc.	I shall have been praised, etc.
ich werde <b>gelobt</b> werden sein	ich werde <b>gelobt</b> werden sein
du wirst gelobt werden sein, etc.	du werdest gelobt werden sein etc.

## Conditional.

(Cond. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

## SIMPLE.

## COMPOUND.

I should be praised, etc.	I should have been praised
ich würde <b>gelobt</b> werden	ich würde <b>gelobt</b> werden sein
du würdest gelobt werden, etc.	du würdest gelobt werden sein etc.

## Infinitive.

(Infin. of werden + P. Part  
of loben.)

## Participles.

(Part. of werden + P. Part  
of loben.)

<i>Pres.</i> to be praised	<i>Pres.</i> being praised
<b>gelobt</b> (zu) werden	<b>gelobt</b> werdend
<i>Perf.</i> to have been praised	<i>Past.</i> been praised
<b>gelobt</b> worden (zu) sein	<b>gelobt</b> worden

## Imperative.

(Imper. of werden + P. Part. of loben.)

be praised, etc.  
werde **gelobt**  
werde er gelobt  
werden wir gelobt  
werdet gelobt  
werden sie gelobt

REMARKS. — I. The shorter forms, i. e. Impf. and Plupf. Subj. (see § 111, and Note), are commonly used for the longer forms with würde in the conditional.



2. Observe the omission of the **ge-** in the P. Part. of **werden** (**worden** for **ge-worden**) when used as auxiliary of the passive voice.

3. The **personal agent** with the passive voice (which is the *subject* of the active verb) is denoted by the preposition **von** (Engl. *by*), as :

Der unartige Knabe wird **von** seinem Lehrer bestraft,  
The naughty boy is being punished **by** his teacher.

4. The auxiliary participle **werden** is omitted whenever the state of the subject may be regarded as still continuing, thus :

Das Haus **ist** gebaut,  
The house has been (is) built (and is still standing).

5. The Engl. '**I am,**' '**I was,**' etc., as part of the passive auxiliary '**to be,**' must be rendered into German as follows :

(a) By the proper tense of **werden** when they are equivalent to '**I am being,**' '**I was being,**' etc., as :

The child **is** (i. e., is **being**) punished by its parents,  
Das Kind **wird** von seinen Eltern bestraft ;  
The dinner was **being** served, when we arrived,  
Das Mittagessen **wurde** serviert, als wir ankamen ;

or when the verb, being turned into the active voice, is in the **present** or **imperf.** tense respectively, as :

*Passive:* { The boy **is** (**was**) always punished by the teacher,  
                  when he is (**was**) naughty,  
                  Der Knabe **wird** (**wurde**) immer vom Lehrer be-  
                  straft, wenn er unartig **ist** (**war**) ;

*Active:* { The teacher always **punishes** (pres.) or **punished**  
                  (impf.) the boy, when he is (**was**) naughty,  
                  Der Lehrer **bestraft** (**bestrafte**) immer den Knaben,  
                  wenn er unartig **ist** (**war**).

(b) By the proper tense of **sein** (with or without **werden**, see last Remark), when they are equivalent to 'I have been,' 'I had been,' etc., or when the verb, being turned into the active, would be **perf.** or **pluperf.** respectively, as:

*Passive:* { I am (= have been) invited to the party,  
Ich bin zur Gesellschaft **eingeladen** (worden);

*Active:* { They have invited (perf.) me to the party,  
Man hat mich zur Gesellschaft **eingeladen**.

*Passive:* { The dinner was (= had been) served, when we  
arrived,  
Das Mittagseffen war **serviert**, als wir ankamen;

*Active:* { They had served (plupf.) the dinner, etc.,  
Man hatte das Mittagseffen **serviert**, u. s. w.

The following examples will serve to show more clearly the proper use of the various forms of the passive:

- |    |   |   |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | { | (a) Die Läden <b>werden</b> jetzt geschlossen, The shops <b>are being</b> shut now ( <i>present</i> ).  |
|    |   | (b) Die Läden <b>sind</b> diese Woche früher geschlossen <b>worden</b> , The shops <b>have been</b> shut earlier this week ( <i>perfect</i> ).                              |
|    |   | (c) Die Läden <b>sind</b> jetzt geschlossen, The shops <b>are</b> (and <b>remain</b> ) shut ( <i>past state, continuing in the present</i> ).                               |
| 2. | { | (a) Der Soldat <b>wurde</b> von einer Kugel <b>verwundet</b> , The soldier <b>was</b> wounded by a ball (a ball <b>wounded</b> him, <i>impf.</i> ).                         |
|    |   | (b) Der Soldat <b>war</b> von einer Kugel verwundet <b>worden</b> , The soldier <b>had been</b> wounded by a ball ( <i>pluperf.</i> ).                                      |
|    |   | (c) Der Soldat <b>war</b> schwer verwundet, The soldier <b>was</b> severely wounded (and <b>still</b> suffered from his wound: <i>past state, continuing in the past</i> ). |

3. { (a) Diese Brücke **wurde** vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge **was** built ten years ago (they built it then, that is the date of its **being** built, *impf.*)  
 (b) Diese Brücke **war** vor zehn Jahren gebaut, This bridge **was** built ten years ago (and is still standing: *past* state, *continuing* in the *present*).

### EXERCISE ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

*A.* Turn the following sentences into German: 1. This house was built by my father. 2. My window **is** broken (gebrochen). 3. The child is washed (gewaschen). 4. This man is esteemed by everybody (jedermann). 5. The garden must be sold. 6. The enemy was beaten (geschlagen).

*B.* Turn the following sentences into the passive: 1. Woraus machen wir Messer? 2. Robert Stevenson hat die Victoria Brücke bei Montreal gebaut. 3. Mein Bruder hat mir diese Uhr geschenkt. 4. Die Feinde bombardierten die Stadt. 5. Der Lehrer hatte den Knaben bestraft, weil der Knabe sein Buch verloren (lost) hatte. 6. Dein Vater wird dich loben.

### 113. LIMITATIONS OF THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Only the **direct object** of a **transitive** verb can become the subject of the passive verb, thus we say in the

*Active:* Mein Vater liebt **midh**; and in the

*Passive:* **Ich** werde von meinem Vater geliebt.

But the sentence:

‘I have been promised help by him’ =

**Hülfe** ist mir von ihm versprochen (promised) worden, since in the

*Active:* Er hat mir **Hülfe** versprochen (promised).

**Hülfe** is the direct, but mir the indirect object. Hence it follows, that

2. Intransitive verbs can only be used *impersonally* in the passive, thus:

I am allowed = **Es wird mir erlaubt** (Lat. *mihi per-mittitur*);

He has been helped = **Es ist ihm geholfen worden**.

This impersonal passive is also used in expressing an action without specifying any agent, as :

**Es wurde** gestern Abend viel **getanzt**,

There **was** a great deal of **dancing** yesterday evening.

NOTE. — The pron. **es** in these constructions is omitted if any other member of the sentence precedes the verb, as :

**Mir wird** erlaubt ; **Gestern Abend wurde**, etc.

#### 114. SUBSTITUTES FOR THE PASSIVE VOICE.

The passive voice is much less frequently used in German than in English, particularly in the longer forms. It is often replaced, especially with intransitive verbs :

(a) By the indefinite pronoun **man** (Fr. *on*, see Less. XXVII), with the verb in the active voice, as :

**Man glaubt** ihm nicht, He is not **believed**;

**Man kann** ihm nicht **trauen**, He **cannot** be **trusted**.

(b) By a reflexive verb, as :

**Der Schlüssel wird sich** finden, The key will be found ;  
and particularly with **lassen**, as :

**Das läßt sich** leicht **machen**, That can easily be done

#### VOCABULARY.

to conquer, overcome, erobern	mill, die Mühle
believe, glauben (intr., + dat. of person)	beef, das Rindfleisch
wait (for), warten (auf + acc.)	courage, die Tapferkeit
workman, der Arbeiter	untruth, falsehood, die Un- wahrheit
visit, visitors, der Besuch	as, als

once, ein'mal	carefully, sorgfältig
this evening, heute Abend	severely, streng
as soon as, sobald'	little, wenig

**Idioms:** As a child, when (I etc. was) a child, als Kind; This house is for sale (lit., to sell, to be sold), dieses Haus ist zu verkaufen; to have visitors, Besuch haben.

#### EXERCISE XXI.

*A.* 1. Dieses Bild wurde von meiner Schwester gemalt, und es ist viel gelobt worden. 2. Die Stadt ist vom General bombardiert und erobert worden. 3. Wir werden bestraft werden, wenn wir unsere Lektionen nicht sorgfältig lernen. 4. Die Läden sind geschlossen, denn heute ist (ein) Feiertag. 5. Ist das Haus neben der Mühle verkauft? 6. Jawohl, es wurde gestern von Ihrem Neffen gekauft. 7. Von wem wurde das Kind gerettet, als das Haus brannte? 8. Es wurde von einem Arbeiter gerettet, welcher wegen seiner Tapferkeit von den Leuten gelobt wurde. 9. Wäre der Knabe nach Hause geschickt worden, wenn er nicht unartig gewesen wäre? 10. Neben dem Hause unseres Nachbarn wird eine Kirche gebaut. 11. Es wurde gestern Abend viel bei uns gesungen und gespielt, denn wir hatten Besuch. 12. Ist das Rindfleisch geschickt worden, welches ich bestellt habe? 13. Der Lehrer sagte, daß er mit meiner Arbeit zufrieden sei. 14. Das Bild wäre von den Künstlern nicht gelobt worden, wenn es nicht sehr schön gewesen wäre. 15. Als Kind wurde ich immer von meinem Vater streng bestraft, wenn ich eine Unwahrheit sagte. 16. Wird es uns erlaubt sein, unsere Aufgaben zu verbrennen, wenn wir damit fertig sind? 17. Es wird heute viel gespielt, aber wenig studiert, weil wir morgen keine Schule haben. 18. Es ist mir nichts davon gesagt worden. 19. Wir wurden nicht gelobt, weil wir nicht fleißig waren. 20. Sobald die Lektionen gelernt sind, werden wir einen Spaziergang machen.

*B.* 1. Our parents love us. 2. We are loved by our parents. 3. By whom was this letter brought? 4. It was brought by a messenger. 5. Our house is built, and we are already living in it. 6. Is the dinner served? No, it is being served

now. 7. Was the soldier in the hospital wounded, or was he ill? 8. He had been wounded by a bullet. 9. The carriages of the count will be sold to-day. 10. His horses are already sold. 11. Why is this boy not believed? 12. He is not believed because he once told an untruth. 13. It is agreeable to be praised. 14. My sister is learning the song, which was sung at (in) the concert yesterday.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXI.

1. Wer hat dieses Rindfleisch gebracht? 2. Wann wird uns erlaubt werden, im Garten zu spielen? 3. Ist das Haus neben der Kirche verkauft? 4. Wird heute Abend viel studiert werden? 5. Von wem wurde der Knabe nach Hause geschickt? 6. Ist dieses Bild zu verkaufen?

### LESSON XXII.

#### DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES: WEAK AND MIXED.— STRONG VERBS: *beißen* MODEL.

##### 115. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES: SECOND FORM.

If preceded by the **Definite Article** or by any determinative word of the **diejer** Model, the Attributive Adjective follows the **Weak Declension**, and takes **-t** in the **Nominative Sing. of all Genders**, and in the **Accusative Sing. Feminine and Neuter**; otherwise **-en** throughout thus:

##### WEAK DECLENSION OF *gut*, good.

		<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<i>gute</i>	<i>gute</i>	<i>gute</i>	<i>guten</i>
Gen.	<i>guten</i>	<i>guten</i>	<i>guten</i>	<i>guten</i>
Dat.	<i>guten</i>	<i>guten</i>	<i>guten</i>	<i>guten</i>
Acc.	<i>guten</i>	<i>gute</i>	<i>gute</i>	<i>guten</i>

## SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

*Singular.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	the good man	the good woman	the good child
Nom.	der gute Mann	die gute Frau	das gute Kind
Gen.	des guten Mannes	der guten Frau	des guten Kindes
Dat.	dem guten Manne	der guten Frau	dem guten Kinde
Acc.	den guten Mann	die gute Frau	das gute Kind

*Plural.*

## ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder
Gen.	der guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder
Dat.	den guten Männern, Frauen, Kindern
Acc.	die guten Männer, Frauen, Kinder

OBSERVE: Words of the **dieſer** Model having (as far as possible) a full set of endings showing gender, etc., the adjective has as few of such distinctive endings as possible.

Further examples :

**dieſer** gute Mann, this good man  
**dieſes** guten Mannes, of this good man, etc.

**jene** gute Frau, that good woman  
**jener** guten Frau, of that good woman, etc.

**welches** gute Kind, which good child  
**welches** guten Kindes, of which good child, etc.

REMARK. — Two or more adjectives qualifying the same substantive follow the same form (compare § 102. Remark 3. above), as :

**der** gute, alte, rote Wein,  
**guter, alter, roter** Wein.

Decline throughout in German: the sick child; that high tree; which long lesson; this beautiful, broad stream; that young woman; this lazy horse; which tired boy.

**116. Third Form.** — If preceded by the **Indefinite Article** or by any determinative word of the **mein** Model, the **Attributive Adjective** follows the **dieſer** Model in the **Nominative** and **Accusative Sing.** of **all Genders**; otherwise, it takes **-en** (i. e., follows the **Weak Declension**) throughout, thus :

MIXED DECLENSION OF **gut, good.**

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<b>guter</b>	<b>gute</b>	<b>gutes</b>	guten
Gen.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Dat.	guten	guten	guten	guten
Acc.	<b>guten</b>	<b>gute</b>	<b>gutes</b>	guten

SUBSTANTIVES WITH ADJECTIVES.

*Singular.*

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	a good man	a good woman	a good child
Nom.	ein <b>guter</b> Mann	eine <b>gute</b> Frau	ein <b>gutes</b> Kind
Gen.	eines guten Mannes	einer guten Frau	eines guten Kindes
Dat.	einem guten Manne	einer guten Frau	einem guten Kinde
Acc.	einen guten Mann	eine gute Frau	ein gutes Kind

OBSERVE : This form differs from the weak form only in the **Nom. Sing. Masc.**, and **Nom. and Acc. Sing. Neut.**, where words of the **mein** Model have no distinctive endings. The adjective must consequently have the missing sign of gender and case.

The Plural of this form is the same as that of the Weak Declension, but, as **ein** has no Plur., the full declension of Substantives with **mein** is given here :



*Singular.*

MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
my good brother	my good sister	my good child
N. mein guter Bruder	meine gute Schwester	mein gutes Kind
G. meines guten Bruders	meiner guten Schwester	meines guten Kindes
D. meinem guten Bruder	meiner guten Schwester	meinem guten Kinde
A. meinen guten Bruder	meine gute Schwester	mein gutes Kind

*Plural.*

## ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	meine guten Brüder, Schwestern, Kinder
Gen.	meiner guten Brüder, Schwestern, Kinder
Dat.	meinen guten Brüdern, Schwestern, Kindern
Acc.	meine guten Brüder, Schwestern, Kinder

## 117. COMPOUND VERBS WITH SEPARABLE PREFIX.

1. The prefixes **be-**, **er-**, etc. (see § 35, Rem. 6), hence called Inseparable Prefixes, are never separated from the verb; other prefixes (chiefly the Prepositions) are Separable, but only in Principal Sentences with Simple Tense, as:

Der König **schickte** zwei Boten **aus**,  
The king **sent out** two messengers.

Mein Bruder **reist** morgen **ab**,  
My brother **sets out** (— departs) to-morrow.

NOTE. — These Prefixes contain an idea distinct from that of the verb, and hence, if retained before the Verb in the cases above, would throw the verb out of its place as *Second Idea* of the Principal Sentence.

2. The **ge-** of the P. Part. and **zu** in the Infinitive follow the prefix, making together but one word, as:

Die Boten des Königs **sind abgereist**,  
The messengers of the king have departed.

Mein Vater wünscht morgen abzureisen,  
My father wishes to depart to-morrow.

3. The principal accent is on the *Verb* when the Prefix is *Inseparable*; on the *Prefix* when *Separable*, as: besu'chen, ver-tau'fen; but aus'schicken, ab'reisen.

4. The principal parts of Separable Compound Verbs should therefore be given as in the following examples:

INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
an'greifen, to attack	griff . . . an	angegriffen
ab'schneiden, to cut off	schnitt . . . ab	abgeschnitten

### 118. STRONG VERBS: **beißen** Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	beißen	biß	gebissen
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i>	bite	bīt	bitten
<i>Ablaut:</i>	ei	ī	ī

#### LIST.

NOTES. — 1. Compounds are only given in the Lists when the simple Verb is not found in the strong form.

2. R. = Reflexive; N. = Neuter, i. e., conjugated with *sein* only, N. A. = Neuter and Active, i. e., with *sein* or *haben*; W. indicates that the Weak form is also used without difference of meaning.

beißen, bite	biß	gebissen
(er)bleichen (W. N.), turn pale	erblich	erblichen
(be)sleißen (R.), apply one's self	besleiß	besliffen
gleich, resemble, be equal to	glich	geglichen
gleiten (N.), glide	glitt	geglichen
greifen, grasp, seize	griff	gegriffen
fneifen, pinch	kniff	gekniffen
leiden, suffer	litt	gelitten

pfeifen, whistle	pfiß	gepfißen
reißen, tear	riß	gerißen
reiten (N. A.), ride	ritt	geritten
schleichen (N.), sneak	schlich	geschlichen
schleifen, grind	schliff	geschliffen
schmeißen, fling	schmiß	geschmissen
schneiden, cut	schnitt	geschnitten
schreiten (N.), stride	schritt	geschritten
streichen, stroke	strich	gestrichen
streiten, contend	stritt	gestritten
weichen, yield	wich	gewichen

REMARKS.— 1. The root vowel being shortened in the Impf., the following consonant, if single, is doubled; and stems in **-d** (schneiden, leiden) change **d** into **tt**.

2. Those whose stem ends in **-ß** change **ß** into **ff** in the Impf. (unless final) and P. Part., as: beißen, ich biß, wir bißen, gebissen.

3. The following Verbs are weak when they have a different meaning, as below:

bleichen (trans.), bleach	bleichte	gebleicht
schleifen, drag; raze (to the ground)	schleifte	geschleift
weichen, soften, soak	weichte	geweicht

4. Begleiten, to accompany, is no compound of gleiten, to glide, but of leiten, to lead (weak, = be-ge-leiten); verleiden, to make disagreeable, spoil (not from leiden, but Leid) is weak.

#### VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, ab'reisen	slip, slide, aus'gleiten
cut off, ab'schneiden	comprehend, understand, be=
paint (not pictures), an'=	greifen
streichen	seize, ergreifen

fear, sich fürchten (vor + dat.)	piece, das Stück
tear (to pieces), zerreißen	little piece, das Stückchen
pass (time, etc.), zu bringen	traveller, der Wanderer
Cinderella, Aschenputtel	tooth, der Zahn*
barber, der Barbier'	toothache, das Zahnweh
idea, notion, der Begriff	evil, angry, cross, böse
steamer, steam-boat, das	joyous, merry, fröhlich
Dampfschiff	smooth, slippery, glatt
thief, der Dieb	golden, of gold, golden
grass, das Gras	violent, heavy (of rain), heftig
hair, das Haar	naughty, ill-behaved (of
hay, das Heu	children), un'artig
huntsman, hunter, der Jäger	true, wahr
illness, die Krankheit	furious, wütend
fever, das Fieber	on that account, deswegen
slipper, der Pantoffel	of it, davon
rain, der Regen	the day before yesterday, vor-
rheumatism, der Rheumatismus	gestern

*Idioms:* To be on the point of (be about to), im Begriffe sein. You are tired, are you not? Sie sind müde, nicht wahr? So are we, Wir sind es auch. George has torn my coat, Georg hat mir den Rock zerissen.

### EXERCISE XXII.

A. 1. Der General M. ritt auf einem schwarzen Pferde durch die Straßen Toronto's (von Toronto). 2. Wie haben Sie die Zeit auf dem Lande zugebracht? 3. An was für einer Krankheit hat Ihr Vater so lange gelitten? 4. Sie sind müde, nicht wahr? Wir sind es auch. 5. Als mein Bruder jung war, hatte er schlechte Zähne und litt sehr an Zahnweh. 6. Der schwarze Hund unserer Nachbarn ist böse; er hat vorgestern ein kleines Kind gebissen. 7. Auf're alten Nachbarn begleiteten uns nach dem Hafen, als wir abreisten. 8. Wo wohnt der Barbier, der Ihnen das Haar geschnitten hat? 9. Mein altes Messer schneidet jetzt gut, denn der Diener hat es gestern geschliffen. 10. Als ich vor

der Schule über die glatte Straße schritt, glitt ich aus und zerriß mir den neuen Rock. 11. Als der Dieb im Begriffe war, ins Haus zu schleichen, ergriff ihn der Diener. 12. Unser alter Nachbar litt lange an (am) Rheumatismus, und war deswegen immer zu Hause. 13. Der General ritt mit seinen Offizieren über die Brücke. 14. Der böse Knabe auf dem Apfelbaum riß die reifen Äpfel vom Baume und schmiß sie auf die Erde. 15. Mein junger Nefse, der auf der Universität war, hat am Fieber gelitten, aber er ist jetzt wieder wohl. 16. Nischenputtels Schwester schnitt sich (dat.) ein Stück vom Fuße ab, weil er zu groß für den goldenen Pantoffel war. 17. Ich bin schnell nach Hause geritten, weil ich mich vor dem wütenden Sturme fürchtete. 18. Der Wanderer schritt frohen Mutes durch den grünen Wald und pfiß ein fröhliches Lied. 19. Dieses Messer ist nicht scharf; wann wurde es geschliffen? 20. Karls schöner, neuer Rock wurde vom Hunde zerissen.

B. 1. Where is the old knife that you ground? 2. When Mary was young she resembled her mother. 3. The bears sneaked (perf.) into the wood, but the hunters followed (perf.) them. 4. Where does the painter live who painted (perf.) our house? 5. The industrious countryman cut (perf.) the grass yesterday, and is making hay to-day. 6. Why are you crying, Charles? I am crying because George pinched (perf.) me. 7. The rain spoiled my (dat. + def. art.) journey to the country. 8. The steamer has whistled already. Now I shall say farewell. 9. Little Charles is a naughty child; he has torn his (dat. of refl. pron. + art.) new dress. 10. Old people often suffer from rheumatism. 11. Have you understood what he said? 12. The gardener was burning the boughs, which he had cut from the trees. 13. I have quarrelled with my old friend, because he was wrong. 14. This blue ribbon is too long, please cut a little of it off for me. 15. Why is Charles crying? He has been bitten by a dog.

## ORAL EXERCISE XXII.

1. Was für einen Hund hat Ihr Nachbar? 2. Wie würden Sie die Zeit zubringen, wenn Sie reich wären? 3. Was machte der Wanderer, als er durch den Wald schritt? 4. Wo wohnen Sie jetzt? 5. Wann werden Sie Heu machen? 6. Weshalb sind Sie so schnell nach Hause geritten?

## LESSON XXIII.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS. — STRONG VERBS: **bleiben** MODEL.

## 119.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

1. The Possessive Pronouns are used when no substantive is expressed, as :

The hat is **mine** (*Pronoun*); but :

It is **my** hat (*Adjective*).

2. They are formed from the stems of the corresponding Possessive Adjectives by adding certain endings, as follows :

(a) Endings of *dieſer* Model (without article), as :

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
	ALL GENDERS.		
Nom.	<b>meiner</b>	<b>meine</b>	<b>mein(e)s</b>
Gen.	<b>meines</b>	<b>meiner</b>	<b>meines</b>
Dat.	<b>meinem</b>	<b>meiner</b>	<b>meinem</b>
Acc.	<b>meinen</b>	<b>meine</b>	<b>mein(e)s</b>
			<b>meine, mine</b>
			<b>meiner, of mine</b>
			<b>meinen, (to, for) mine</b>
			<b>meine, mine</b>

OBSERVE : In the Nom. and Acc. Neuter, **-e** of the ending may be omitted.

So for the other persons :

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Sing.</i>	<b>deiner</b>	<b>deine</b>	<b>deines, thine</b>
	<b>ſeiner</b>	<b>ſeine</b>	<b>ſeines, his, its</b>
	<b>ihrer</b>	<b>ihre</b>	<b>ihrer, hers (its)</b>

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
<i>Plur.</i>	unſ(e)rer	unſ(e)re	unſ(e)res, ours
	eu(e)rer	eu(e)re	eu(e)res, yours
	ihrer	ibre	ibres, theirs
	Ihrer	Ihre	Ibres, yours)

(b) Preceded by the Definite Article, and hence with endings of **Weak Adjective**, thus :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
N.	der meine	die meine	daß meine	die meinen, mine
G.	deß meinen	der meinen	deß meinen	der meinen, of mine
D.	dem meinen	der meinen	dem meinen	den meinen, (to, for) mine
A.	den meinen	die meine	daß meine	die meinen, mine

So : der, die, daß *deine*, thine      der, die, daß *eu(e)re*, yours  
 der, die, daß *seine*, his, its      der, die, daß *ibre*, theirs  
 der, die, daß *ihre*, hers, (its)      (der, die, daß *Ihre*, yours)  
 der, die, daß *unſ(e)re*, ours

(c) Preceded by Definite Article, with ending **-ig** + Weak terminations, thus :

	<i>Singular.</i>		
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.
Nom.	der <i>meinige</i>	die <i>meinige</i>	daß <i>meinige</i>
Gen.	deß <i>meinigen</i> , etc.	der <i>meinigen</i> , etc.	deß <i>meinigen</i> , etc.

*Plural.*

ALL GENDERS.

Nom. die *meinigen*, mine  
 Gen. der *meinigen*, of mine, etc.

So : der, die, daß *deinige*, thine  
 der, die, daß *seinige*, his, its

and so on for the other persons.

NOTE. - 1. In *unſrige* and *euriqe* the -e of the stem is always omitted.

REMARK. — 1. These forms are interchangeable, without difference in meaning, as:

I have my book, but I have not **yours**,

Ich habe mein Buch, aber ich habe nicht  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ihr(e)s} \\ \text{das Ihre} \\ \text{das Ihrige.} \end{array} \right.$

His letter is here, but **ours** is not here,

Sein Brief ist hier, aber  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{unj(e)rer} \\ \text{der unj(e)re} \\ \text{der unjrige} \end{array} \right\}$  ist nicht hier.

2. When a Possessive Pronoun is used as *predicate*, it may be replaced by the Possessive Adjective *without ending*, as:

This book is **mine**, Dieses Buch ist **mein**.

3. Observe the following idiomatic uses of the Poss. Prons.:

(a) Ich werde **das Meinige** (neuter sing.) thun,  
Is shall do **my part**, **my utmost**.

(b) **Die Meinigen**, **die Seinigen** (Plur.),  
My, his friends, family.

(c) A friend of mine = **Einer von** meinen Freunden.  
This friend of mine = **Dieser mein** Freund.

## 120. STRONG VERBS: **bleiben** Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	bleiben	blieb	geblieben
<i>Eng. Analogy:</i>	wanting		
<i>Ablaut:</i>	ei	ie	ie

### LIST.

bleiben (N.), stay, remain	blieb	geblieben
(ge)deihen (N.), thrive	gedieh	gediehen
leihen, lend, borrow	lieh	geliehen



meiden, avoid	mied	gemieden
preisen, praise	pries	gepriesen
reiben, rub	rieb	gerieben
scheiden (N. A.), part (intr. and trans.	schied	geschieden
scheinen, shine ; seem, appear	schien	geschieden
schreiben, write	schrieb	geschrieben
schreien, scream, shout	schrie	geschrien
schweigen, be silent	schwieg	geschwiegen
speien, spit	spie	gespien
steigen (N.), mount, ascend	stieg	gestiegen
treiben, drive	trieb	getrieben
weisen, show, point out	wies	gewiesen
zeihen, accuse	zieh	gezichen

## VOCABULARY.

to copy, ab'schreiben	heat, die Hitze
hang up, auf'hängen	last, der Lasten
ascend, bestiegen (trans.)	pepper, der Pfeffer
prove, demonstrate, be-	shepherd, der Schäfer
weisen	shoemaker, cobbler, der
appear, erscheinen	Schuster
shine, glitter, glänzen	silence (act of keeping s.),
descend, herab'steigen	das Schweigen
guard, keep, hüten	speaking (act of), das Sprechen
rule, reign, govern, regieren	throne, der Thron
write (to), schreiben (dat. or	pasture, pasturage, die Weide
an + acc.)	fifty, fünfzig, fünfzig
climb, steigen (auf + acc.)	bright, brightly, hell
pardon, excuse, verzeihen	loud, loudly, laut
remain behind, zurück'bleiben	correct, richtig
cold, die Erkältung	round, rund
family, die Familie	bad, schlimm
herd, flock, die Herde	strong, severe, stark

**Idiom :** Up to the present time, still, noch immer.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

*A.* 1. Es ist nicht Alles Gold, was glänzt. 2. Sprechen ist Silber, Schweigen ist Gold. 3. Schuster, bleib' bei deinem Leisten. 4. Seit acht Tagen bin ich wegen einer starken Erkältung zu Hause geblieben. 5. Eine von meinen Cousinen ist jetzt bei uns auf Besuch, aber sie bleibt nicht lange. 6. Was für Tiere sind in jenem Walde? Es sind Bären. 7. Die Mutter und ihre Tochter weinten heftig, als sie von einander schieden. 8. Mein Oheim blieb wegen der großen Hitze mit seiner Familie auf dem Lande. 9. Karl hat an seinen Vater geschrieben, und ich bin im Begriffe an den meinigen zu schreiben. 10. Der König schwieg und schien traurig zu sein, als er die schlimme Nachricht hörte. 11. Bitte, verzeihen Sie mir, daß ich Ihnen noch nicht geschrieben habe. 12. Wo haben Sie Ihren Hut aufgehängt? Ich habe ihn neben den übrigen gehängt. 13. Als wir auf den Berg stiegen, schien die Sonne schon hell. 14. Welche von diesen Büchern wünschen Sie? Ich wünsche die meinen. 15. Wir würden auf dem Lande geblieben sein, wenn unsere Freunde auch geblieben wären. 16. Die Herden wurden auf die Weide getrieben, als wir vom Berg herabstiegen. 17. Es ist uns bewiesen worden, daß die Erde rund ist. 18. Vor fünfzig Jahren bestieg die Königin Victoria den Thron, und sie regiert noch immer. 19. Würden Sie nach Europa reisen, wenn ich zurückbliebe, um Ihr Haus zu hüten? 20. Die Knaben pöffen und schreien, als sie auf den Berg stiegen.

*B.* 1. George has black ink, but mine is red. 2. Mary's sister and mine are learning German. 3. We have looked for William's books and ours everywhere. 4. Your exercise is not correct, copy it. 5. Whose gloves have you? I have mine and yours. 6. Why did the boy shout so loud? 7. To whom were you writing the long letter yesterday? 8. I have black eyes, but yours are blue. 9. In what year did Goethe's 'Faust' appear? 10. Waiter, please bring me the vinegar and the pepper. 11. This lead-pencil is mine, where is

yours? 12. Your aunt and mine are neighbours. 13. The professor seemed not to be at home, for his windows and shutters were not open. 14. I should write to him, if he wrote to me. 15. I was writing to my mother and Charles was writing to his when the postman brought us the letters.

### ORAL EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Seit wann sind Sie schon zu Hause geblieben? 2. Was machten die Schäfer, als wir vom Berge herabstiegen? 3. Wann bestieg die Königin Victoria den Thron? 4. Was für Tinte haben Sie? 5. Für wen ist dieser lange Brief? 6. Welches sind die Namen der Monate?

## LESSON XXIV.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES (concluded): TABLE, GENERAL REMARKS.—STRONG VERBS: *schließen* AND *fechten* MODELS.

### 121. TABLE OF ADJECTIVE ENDINGS.

I. STRONG.				II. WEAK.			
<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		
MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.	M. F. N.
N. —er	—e	—es	—e	—e	—e	—e	—en
G. —es (en)	—er	—es (en)	—er	—en	—en	—en	—en
D. —em	—er	—em	—en	—en	—en	—en	en
A. —en	—e	—es	—e	—en	—e	—e	—en

OBSERVE: —en for —es in Gen. Sing. Masc. and Neuter before strong subs.

OBSERVE: Persistent —e, except Nom. Sing. of all genders, and Acc. Sing. Fem. and Neuter.

## III. MIXED.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	M. F. N.
Nom. — <b>er</b>	— <b>e</b>	— <b>es</b>	— <b>en</b>
Gen. — <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>
Dat. — <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>	— <b>en</b>
Acc. — <b>en</b>	— <b>e</b>	— <b>es</b>	— <b>en</b>

OBSERVE: Same as Weak (II), except Nom. Sing. Masc. and Nom. Acc. Sing. Neuter.

## 122. GENERAL REMARKS ON ADJECTIVES.

1. Participles used attributively are employed and declined as Adjectives, as : *geliebter Vater*, beloved father ; *das weinende Kind*, the weeping child ; *meine geehrte Mutter*, my honoured mother.

2. Adjectives and Participles used as Substantives vary their declension according to the rules for Adjective Declension, but are spelt with **capital** letters, as : **der Kranke**, the sick man, patient ; Fem. **die Kranke**, the sick woman ; Plur. **die Kranken** ; **ein Kranter**, a sick man, patient ; pl. **Kranke**, sick people, patients.

REMARKS.—1. Many words, the English equivalents of which are Substantives only, are Adjectives in German, as : **der Fremde**, the stranger, foreigner, Pl. **die Fremden**, but **ein Fremder**, Pl. **Fremde** ; **der Reisende**, the traveller, **ein Reisender**, etc. These Adjective-Substantives, when Masc. and preceded by the Definite Article, have the same inflection as the Weak Declension.

2. Names of languages from Adjectives are not declined when used without the article, as :

*Was ist dieß auf Deutsch?* What is this in German?

3. Adjectives of colour used substantively are indeclinable, or add **-s** in the Gen. Sing., as: *das Grün, des Grün(s)*.

4. If the Substantive is not expressed, the Adjective shows by its ending the gender, number and case, as:

*Ein kleiner Mann und ein großer,*  
A little man and a tall **one**.

NOTE. — The English 'one' is in these cases not to be translated into German.

5. If a Substantive is preceded by a succession of Adjectives, they all follow the same form, as: *guter, alter, roter Wein; der gute, alte, rote Wein; eines guten, roten Weines*.

6. Adjectives whose stem ends in **-el**, **-en**, **-er**, as: *edel*, noble; *golden*, golden; *heiser*, hoarse, drop **-e** of the **stem** when inflected; those in **-el**, **-er** may drop **-e** of the *termination* instead, unless the termination is **-e**, **-er**, or **-es**, as: *das goldne Bauer; der edlen or edeln Frau; dem heisren or heisern Sänger*.

7. The Adjective *hoch*, high, drops **e** when inflected, as: *der hohe Baum*, the high tree.

8. Adjectives can generally be used without change as adverbs, as: *lustig*, merry, merrily; *angenehm*, agreeable, agreeably; *gut*, good, well.

9. Adjectives (so-called) in **-er** from names of places are indeclinable, as: *die Londoner Zeitung*, the London newspaper; *Hamburger Schiffe*, Hamburg ships; *ein Pariser Handschuh*, a Paris glove.

NOTE. — These adjectives correspond to the English use of the proper names without inflection. They are really substantives in the Gen. Plur., thus: *die Londoner Zeitung* is strictly *die Zeitung der Londoner*, the newspaper of the *Londoners*. Hence they are spelt with a capital letter.

10. After personal pronouns, the Adjective follows the strong declension except in the Dat. Sing. and Nom. (and sometimes Acc.) Plur., as:

(for) me, poor man; you good people; us little children.  
 mir **armen** Manne; ihr **guten** Leute; uns **kleine(n)** Kinder.

11. The Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII) *etwas*, *nichts*, *viel*, are Substantives, and therefore not determinative words, and the following adjective has the *strong* declension, as: *etwas Gutes*, something good; *nichts Angenehmes*, nothing pleasant.

OBSERVE: The Adjective is here used as substantive, and therefore spelt with a capital.

12. After the Indefinite Numerals in the Plural (see Less. XXIX) *alle*, all; *einige* (*etliche*), some; *manche*, many; *mehrere*, several; *solche*, such; *vieler*, many; *wenige*, few, the Adjective may have either the weak or the strong ending.

13. After the interrogative *welche* in the plural, the strong declension is also found in the adjective; and the exclamatory *welch* is generally uninflected before an adjective, which then always has the strong form, as:

**Welch** großes Vergnügen! What (a) great pleasure!

### 123. STRONG VERBS: *ſchießen* Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	<i>ſchießen</i>	<i>ſchoß</i>	<i>geſchoſſen</i>
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i>	(shoot)	shot	shot
<i>Ablaut:</i>	<b>ie</b>	<b>ö</b>	<b>ö</b>

#### LIST.

(ver)drücken, vex	verdroß	verdroſſen
fließen (N.), flow	floß	gefloſſen
gießen, pour	goß	gegoſſen

glimmen, glow	glimm	geglimmen
klimmen (W. N. A.), climb	klimm	gklimmen
kriechen (N.), creep	kriech	gekrochen
genießen, enjoy	genieß	genossen
riechen, smell (tr. and intr.)	riech	gerochen
(er)ſchallen (W. N.), sound, resound	erſchall	erſchallen
ſaufen, drink (of beasts)	ſöff	geſoffen
ſchießen, shoot	ſchoß	geſchoßen
ſchließen, lock, shut	ſchloß	geſchloßen
ſieden (W.), boil (intr.)	ſott	geſotten
ſprießen (N.), sprout	ſproß	geſproſſen
triefen (N.), drip	trieß	getroffen

REMARKS. — 1. Observe, as under the *beißen* Model (§ 118, Rem. 1, 2) the doubling of consonants and the interchange of *ß* and *ff*; also the change of *ß* into *tt* (as in *leiden*, *ſchneiden*, *ib.* Rem. 1).

2. *Rächen*, 'to avenge,' is weak but has also P. Part. *gerochen*.

3. *ſaufen* has also *ſäufſt*, *ſäuft* in the Pres. Indic. 2. 3. Sing.

4. The *simple* verb *ſchallen* is usually weak (*ſchallte*, *geſchallt*).

5. In *ſieden* the weak P. Part. (*geſiedet*) is rare.

## 124. STRONG VERBS: *ſechten* Model.

	INFIN.	2. 3. S. PR. IND. 2. S. IMPER.	IMPT.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	<i>ſechten</i>	<i>ſichtſt ſicht ſicht</i>	<i>ſocht</i>	<i>geſochten</i>
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i>	wanting			
<i>Ablaut:</i>	<i>e</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>o</i>

### LIST.

<i>ſechten</i> , fight	<i>ſichtſt, ſicht, ſicht</i>	<i>ſocht</i>	<i>geſechten</i>
<i>ſlechten</i> , weave, twine	<i>ſlichtſt, ſlicht, ſlicht</i>	<i>ſlocht</i>	<i>geſlechten</i>

(er)löſchen (N.), be- come extinguished	(erlöſcheſt) erlöſcht (erlöſch)	erlöſch	erlöſchen
melfen (W.), milk	(milchſt, milcht, milch)	molf	gemolfen
quellen, gush forth	(quillſt, quillt, quelle)	quoll	gequollen
ſchmelzen (N.), melt (intr.)	(ſchmelzeſt) ſchmilzt (ſchmilz)	ſchmolz	geſchmolzen
ſchwellen (N.), swell	(ſchwillſt) ſchwillt (ſchwill)	ſchwoll	geſchwollen

REMARKS. — 1. Rare forms are enclosed in ( ).

2. The simple verb löſchen, ‘to extinguish’ (tr.), is weak (löſchte, gelöſcht), as are also its *separable* compounds, e. g., auslöſchen.

3. Schmelzen (intr.) has also the forms (ſchmelzeſt), ſchmelzt (ſchmelze).

4. Schmelzen, ‘to smelt’ and ſchwellen, ‘to cause to swell’ (trans.), are weak.

#### VOCABULARY.

extinguish, put out, auslöſchen	snow, der Schnee
water (flowers, etc.), begießen	eight, acht
prescribe, verſchreiben	celebrated, famous, berühmt
flow past, vorüberfließen	blind, blind
close, shut, zuſchließen	healthy, healthful, geſund
exhibition, die Ausſtellung	dear, lieb
health, die Geſundheit	Limburg (adj.), Limburger
drink, beverage, das Getränk	dead, tot
cow, die Kuh*	Toronto (adj.), Torontoer
maid, maid-servant, die Magd*	thereon, daran
mid-day, noon, der Mittag	past, by, vorüber
pain, der Schmerz	

**Idioms :** 1. To go past the house, am Hauſe vorübergehen.

2. In German, auf Deutſch or im Deutſchen.



## EXERCISE XXIV.

*A.* 1. Wie würden Sie diese Wörter auf Deutsch schreiben? 2. Ich habe meinen Brief geschlossen und werde ihn jetzt nach der Post bringen. 3. Des Morgens steigen die kleinen Vögel zum Himmel auf und jagen lustig. 4. Welch großes Vergnügen, gute Gesundheit zu genießen! 5. Ein kleiner Strom floss lustig an unserem Hause vorüber. 6. Der Fuß des Kranken ist geschwollen und er leidet sehr daran. 7. Unser geehrter Professor ist seit acht Jahren tot. 8. Der Doktor hat dem Kranken guten, alten, roten Wein verschrieben. 9. Die Zeitungen erzählen viel von der Toronteer Ausstellung. 10. Der Regen quoll vom Himmel und löschte das glimmende Feuer aus. 11. Unsere Soldaten schlossen die Stadthure und ſochten tapfer gegen den Feind. 12. Die Mägde haben die Rübe gemolken und jetzt begießen sie die Blumen. 13. Bitte, ſchweigt, ihr guten Leute, denn die Kranken leiden jetzt große Schmerzen. 14. Würde der Lehrer böse werden, wenn der Schüler seine Aufgabe zerriß? 15. Der Schäfer hat dem Reisenden den Weg nach der Stadt gewiesen. 16. Würde es Ihnen die Reise verleidern, wenn ich zurückbliebe? 17. Haben Sie die prächtigen Blumen gesehen, die wir dem Kranken ſchicken? 18. Der Schnee ſchmolz und das Waſſer troff von den Häuſern, als die Sonne gegen Mittag warm ſchien. 19. Der Blinde, der neben uns wohnt, ſlocht zwei Körbe für meine Mutter. 20. Der junge und der alte Fremde, die im Walde jagten, haben viele Vögel geſchoſſen. 21. Von wem ſind die Blumen begoſſen worden? Sie ſind vom Gärtner begoſſen worden.

*B.* 1. The golden slipper was too small for Cinderella's sisters. 2. Paris gloves and Limburg cheese are famous everywhere. 3. The huntsman shot a hare and brought it home. 4. Our neighbours are not at home, for their doors and windows are closed. 5. I do not believe every story I hear. 6. Please, dear mother, tell us little children something new and pretty. 7. If Charles tears his new book, his mother

- will be very angry. 8. He seemed not to hear what I said to him. 9. These flowers are for the patients in the hospitals. 10. (The) green is agreeable for those who have weak eyes. 11. The horse is drinking the water which we have brought him. 12. Pure fresh water is a healthful beverage. 13. A week ago I was at (in) a concert, where this singer (*f.*) sang. 14. When the weather becomes cold, the dogs like to creep behind the stove. 15. The travellers enjoyed the beauty of the landscape, when they were ascending the high mountain. 16. Please tell me how this word is written in German.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXIV.

1. Haben Sie Ihren Brief schon geschlossen? 2. Wie lange ist Ihr geehrter Professor schon tot? 3. Was hat der Doktor der Kranken verschrieben? 4. Weshalb wurde der Lehrer böse? 5. Wer hat diese Vögel geschossen? 6. Was hat der Jäger mit dem Hasen gemacht, welchen er im Walde geschossen hat?

### LESSON XXV.

#### COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES. — STRONG VERBS: frieren MODEL.

##### 125. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

In German, as in English, the degrees of comparison are formed by adding to the Positive:

—**er** to form the Comparative, and

—(**e**)**ſt** “ “ “ Superlative, as:

neu, new            neuer, newer            neu(**e**)**ſt**, newest

reich, rich            reich**er**, richer            reich**ſt**, richest

angenehm, agreeable            angeneh**mer**, **more** agreeable

angeneh**mſt**, **most** agreeable

REMARKS. — 1. Monosyllabic adjectives with **a**, **o**, **u** (not **au**) generally take Umlaut (but with many exceptions, given in App. K.), as :

lang	länger	längst
kurz	kürzer	kürzest

2. The syllables **-er**, **(e)st** are added to *every* adjective, without regard to its length, as in the case of *angenehm* (given above, but see § 161, note).

3. Adjectives used attributively in the Comparative or Superlative degree are declined, and add the usual endings *after* the syllables **-er**, **-est** respectively, as :

der reichere Mann	ein reicherer Mann
mein ältestes Kleid	liebster Freund

4. Participles are compared like adjectives, as :

geliebt, beloved	geliebter	geliebtest
------------------	-----------	------------

5. **-e** of the Superlative ending is retained only after **d**, **t** or a sibilant (**j**, **sch**, **z**, **ß**, **x**), as : alt, Superl. **älteste**; but groß always has Superl. **größt**.

5. Adjectives in **-e**, **-el**, **-en**, **-er** drop **e** of the stem in the Comparative, as : träge, träger, trägtst; edel, edler, edelst.

## 126.

## THE COMPARATIVE.

1. 'Than' = **als** after the Comparative.

2. The compound form with **mehr** (Engl. 'more') is never (except with the adjectives given in § 161) used in German (as it is in Engl. with polysyllabic adjectives), unless when two *adjectives* (i. e., two qualities of the same object) are being compared, as :

Er ist **mehr** schwach als krank,  
He is **more** (i. e., rather) weak than ill.

## 3. Comparison of equality :

I am (just) as rich as he,

Ich bin (eben) **so** reich wie er.

4. 'The . . . the' before comparatives = **je, desto** or **um so** — **je (desto or um so)**, as :

The longer the nights, the shorter the days,

**Je (desto)** länger die Nächte, **je (desto)** kürzer die Tage.

5. When the comparative is declined, the omission of **e** of the stem takes place just as in Adjectives in **-er**, as :

den reicher(**e**n) Mann, etc.

NOTE.—The syllable **-er** may occur three times successively at the end of the same adjective, viz. : 1° as part of the stem, e. g., heiß**er**, hoarse; 2° as inflection of comparison, e. g., heiß(**e**)rer, hoarser; 3° as ending of strong adjective declension, e. g., ein heiß(**e**)rerer Sänger, a hoarser singer.

## 127.

## THE SUPERLATIVE.

1. The Superlative is not used, even as *Predicate*, in the undeclined form, but :

(a) If the substantive is expressed, or if the substantive of the preceding clause can be supplied, the (weak) adjective form with definite article is used, as :

This river is **the broadest** in America (i. e., the broadest *river*), Dieser Fluß ist **der breiteste** in Amerika (der breiteste *Fluß*).

The days in June are **the longest** (days) in the whole year, Die Tage im Juni sind **die längsten** (Tage, understood) im ganzen Jahre.

This earthquake was **the most severe** that we have had, Dieses Erdbeben ist **das heftigste**, welches wir gehabt haben.

(b) If no substantive can be supplied, the *adverbial form* preceded by **am** is used, as :

The lake is broader than the river, but the sea is the **broadest** (observe *not* 'the broadest *lake, river* or *sea*'), Der See ist breiter als der Fluß, aber die See ist **am breitesten**.

The days are longest (i. e., 'at the longest,' not 'the longest days') in June, Im Juni sind die Tage **am längsten**.

The earthquake was **most severe** on Monday, Am Montag war das Erdbeben **am heftigsten** (not 'the severest earthquake').

NOTE. - The superlative may be strengthened by prefixing **aller-**, as: das **allerheftigste**, am **allerheftigsten**.

2. In the preceding examples, the superlative ascribes a quality to the object in the highest degree *in comparison* (expressed or implied) with, or *relatively* to, a number of other objects, and is hence called the **Relative Superlative**. But the English superlative with **most** often merely ascribes the quality *in an eminently high degree*, without instituting any comparison. When so used, it is called the **Absolute Superlative**, as :

Your father was **most** kind (i. e. = 'exceedingly kind,' not = 'kindest')

The Absolute Superlative is rendered in German by an adverb of eminence, such as *sehr*, very; *höchst*, *äußerst*, exceedingly, prefixed to the adjective in the positive, as :

Ihr Vater war **sehr** (**höchst**, **äußerst**) *gütig*,

Your father was **most** (very, exceedingly, extremely) kind.

3. The superlative is commonly used in German of two objects (which is not admissible in Engl.), as :

Der (größere or) **größte** von diesen zwei Knaben,  
The taller of these two boys.

## 128. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are compared like adjectives, the superlative form being that with **am**, as :

angenehm, agreeably      angenehmer, more agreeably  
**am angenehmsten**, most agreeably

## 129. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

gut, good	besser	best (different root)
hoch, high	höher	höchst (drops <b>c</b> in <i>Compar.</i> )
naß(e), near	näher	nächst (nearest, <b>next</b> ; inserts <b>c</b> in <i>Superl.</i> )
viel, much	mehr	meist (different root)
wenig, little (of quantity)	weniger	wenigst (different root)

NOTES. — 1. Mehr is used as adverb of quantity only. For the Subst. *mehrere*, Pl. *mehrere* 'some, several,' see §§ 152, 175.

2. Wenig also has the regular forms *weniger*, *wenigst*.

## 130. DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

The following Comparatives and Superlatives are formed from adverbs, etc. (some of which are obsolete) :

(außen, without, <i>adv.</i> )	äußer, outer	äußerst, outermost utmost, extreme
(ehe, before, <i>conj.</i> )	(eher, sooner, <i>adv.</i> )	{ ehest, soonest erst, first
(hinten, behind, <i>adv.</i> )	hinter, hinder	hinterst, hindmost
(innen, within, <i>adv.</i> )	inner, inner	innerst, innermost

(laß, late, <i>obsolete</i> )	—	lest, latest, last
(mittel, middle)	mittler, middle	mittelft, middle
(nied, below, <i>obsolete</i> )	nieder, lower	niederft, lowest
(oben, above, <i>adv.</i> )	ober, upper	oberft, uppermost
(unten, below, <i>adv.</i> )	unter, lower	unterft, lowest, undermost
(vorn, before, <i>adv.</i> )	vorder, fore	vorderft, foremost

### 131. STRONG VERBS: *frieren* Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	<i>frieren</i>	<i>für</i>	<i>gefür</i>
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i>	freeze	fröze	frözen
<i>Ablaut:</i>	<i>ie</i> , etc.	<i>ö</i>	<i>ü</i>

NOTE.—The long *ö* is what distinguishes this Model from the *ſchießen* Model (§ 123).

#### LIST.

##### A. (INFIN. *ie*, *ü*.)

biegen, bend	bog	gebogen
bieten, bid, offer	bot	geboten
fliegen (N.), fly (on wings)	flög	geflögen
fliehen (N.), flee (escape)	flöh	geflöben
frieren (N. A.), freeze, be cold	fror	gefroren
heben, lift, raise	hob, hub	gehoben
(er)ſieſen, (er)füren, choose	erfor	erfor
lügen, lie (tell a falsehood)	log	gelogen
(ver)lieren, lose	verlor	verloren
ſchieben, shove, push	ſchob	geſchoben
ſchwören, swear	ſchwor, ſchwur	geſchworen
(be)trügen, deceive, cheat	betrog	betrogen
wiegen, weigh, have weight (intr.)	wog	gewogen
ziehen (N. A.), pull (tr.); move (intr.)	zog	gezogen

REMARKS.—1. Biegen, bieten, fliegen, fliehen, ziehen, have also the forms (now used only in poetry) with *eu* for *ie* in the

2. and 3. Sing. Pres. Ind. and 2. Sing. Imper., as: *bengſt*, *bengt*, *beng*; *ſleuchſt*, *ſleuch*; *zeuchſt*, *zeuch*.

2. Wiegen, to rock, is weak (*wiegte*, *gewiegt*).

3. Observe the change of *h* into *g* in *ziehen*, *zog*, *gezogen*.

### B. (INFIN. *ē*, *ü*.)

<i>ſcheren</i> , shear	<i>ſchor</i>	<i>geſchoren</i>
<i>weben</i> (W.), weave	<i>wob</i>	<i>gewoben</i>
<i>wägen</i> , weigh (trans.)	<i>wog</i>	<i>gewogen</i>
(be)wegen, induce, persuade	<i>bewog</i>	<i>bewogen</i>

REMARK. — *Bewegen*, ‘to move (set in motion)’ is weak (*bewegte*, *bewegt*).

### VOCABULARY.

to offer, an <b>’</b> bieten	metal, das Metall
abolish, annul, cancel, auf <b>’</b> heben	red (subst.), das Rot
put off, delay, postpone, auf <b>’</b> ſchieben	sparrow, der Sperling
remove (neut.), auß <b>’</b> ziehen	part, portion, der Teil
prefer, vor <b>’</b> ziehen (dat. of pers.)	shore, bank, das Ufer
fly away, weg <b>’</b> fliegen	on that account, therefore, deshalb
roof, das Dach	yet, still (in spite of all), doch
colour, die Farbe	straight, gerade (adj.)
hunger, der Hunger	exactly, just, gerade (adv.)
cook, der Koch *	as soon as, sobald

*Idioms*: 1. I prefer gold to silver, Ich ziehe das Gold dem Silber vor.

2. I like the winter in Canada, Ich habe den Winter in Canada gern.

### EXERCISE XXV.

A. 1. Ein Sperling in der Hand iſt beſſer als zwei auf dem Dache. 2. Marie iſt jünger als Louiſe, aber ſie iſt doch größer.



3. Hunger ist der beste Koch. 4. Der junge General B. ist ein tapfrerer Held als sein Vater. 5. Die Reisenden schoben das Boot vom Ufer und ruderten über den Fluß. 6. Aufgeschoben ist nicht aufgehoben. 7. Welches von diesen Mädchen ist das größte? 8. Je höher ein Vogel fliegt, je kleiner scheint er zu werden. 9. Der Fremde hat mir mehr für mein Haus angeboten als Sie, aber ich glaube nicht, daß er so gut bezahlen würde. 10. Je fleißiger wir sind, desto mehr lernen wir. 11. Im Sommer habe ich das Land ganz gern, aber im Winter ziehe ich die Stadt vor. 12. Mir Unglücklichen ist der Fuß erfroren, als ich nach Hause ritt. 13. So bald wir unser Haus verkauft hatten, zogen wir aus. 14. Als ich auf dem Lande war, wog ich mehr als ich jetzt wiege. 15. Es ist wahr, daß die reichsten Leute nicht immer die glücklichsten sind. 16. Der Regen, welcher uns die Reise verleidet hat, war mehr nützlich als angenehm. 17. Die Mutter hob die Stücke von dem Glas auf, welches ihr unartiges Kind auf die Erde geschmissen hatte. 18. Dieser Knabe hat seine Eltern betrogen, und deshalb ist er unglücklich. 19. Frieren Sie, Herr Professor? Jetzt nicht, aber ich fror, als ich auf der Straße war. 20. Der Jäger hat den Vogel geschossen, gerade als er auf den Baum flog. 21. Von wem wurde Ihr Haus gekauft? 22. Von einem Fremden, der seit vierzehn Tagen bei meinem Vetter auf Besuch ist.

B. 1. Lead is a heavy metal, but gold is the heaviest. 2. This painter is not so famous as his father, but his pictures are just as fine. 3. George lost his parents when he was still very young. 4. Those students have lost a great deal of time, but now they are studying more industriously. 5. The bird flew away, just as the huntsman was on the point of shooting it. 6. When is the weather coldest in Canada? In the month of January it is coldest. 7. Which bird flies fastest? 8. The useful is better than the beautiful. 9. What kind of a dog has the huntsman lost? 10. Iron is heavy, lead

is heavier, but gold is heaviest of all. 11. Green is a more agreeable colour for the eyes than red. 12. If the stick is too long, cut a piece of it off. 13. The upper part of the city of Quebec is much finer than the lower. 14. The weather seems to be warmer to-day, but it froze (perf.) yesterday. 15. When I was younger, I weighed more than my brother, but now he weighs more than I. 16. The upper part of the city of Quebec was built earlier than the lower part.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXV.

1. Ist der junge General ein tapferer Mann? 2. Ziehen Sie das Land der Stadt vor? 3. Weshalb ist der Knabe so traurig? 4. Wann hat der Jäger den Vogel geschossen? 5. Welche Studenten lernen am meisten? 6. Welches ist besser, reich und unglücklich oder arm und glücklich (zu) sein?

### LESSON XXVI.

#### DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS. — STRONG VERBS:

#### fingen MODEL.

#### 132. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The Demonstrative Pronouns are:

1. *der, die, das*, that
2. *dieser, diese, dieses*, this, that
3. *jener, jene, jenes*, that, yonder
4. *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige*, that
5. *der nämliche, die nämliche, das nämliche*, the same
6. *derselb(ig)e, dieselb(ig)e, dasselb(ig)e*, the same

7. *solch(er), solch(e), solch es*, such, such a

8. *desgleichen, dergleichen*, of that kind (of those kinds)

REMARK. — These may all be used either as Substantive or Adjective Pronouns, except *desgleichen* (see § 139, 1, below).

**133.** 1. *Der, die, das*, used adjectively (i. e., before a substantive), is declined like the Definite Article (which is merely the demonstrative adjective weakened and un-emphasized), as :

*Der' Mann, that man. Der Mann', the man'.*

2. When used substantively it is declined thus :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>
Gen.	<i>dessen</i>	<i>deren</i>	<i>dessen</i>	<i>derer (deren)</i>
Dat.	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>denen</i>
Acc.	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>

NOTE. — The form *deren* (Gen. Pl.) is only used as = 'of them,' as :

How many children have you? I have seven **of them**.

Wie viele Kinder haben Sie? Ich habe **deren** sieben.

**134.** *Dieser* and *jener* both follow the *dieser* Model (see § 6), but *dies* is used for *dieses* in the Neuter Nom. and Acc. Sing. when used substantively, as :

**Dies** ist mein Buch, Er hatte **dies** nicht gehört,

This is my book. He had not heard **this**.

*dieser* = **this** (the *nearer* of two objects, hence also =) **the latter**, as :

*jener* = **that**, yonder (the *more remote* of two objects, hence also =) **the former**;

*Dieser* Baum ist groß, aber *jener* ist größer,

This tree is large, but **that** (one) is larger.

**Jener** Baum, **yonder** tree (pointed out as *remote*).

Karl und Wilhelm sind Brüder; **dieser** ist fleißig, **jener** ist träge, Charles and William are brothers; **the latter** is diligent, **the former** is idle.

**135. 1. Derjenige** is declined in both parts, like the Definite Article followed by the adjective form *jenig* with weak endings, thus :

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<b>derjenige</b>	<b>diejenige</b>	<b>dasjenige</b>	<b>diejenigen</b>
Gen.	<b>desjenigen</b>	<b>derjenigen</b>	<b>desjenigen</b>	<b>derjenigen</b>
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

**2. Der** or **derjenige** is used :

(a) before a genitive case, as :

Ich habe Ihren Hut und **denjenigen** Ihres Bruders,  
I have your hat and **that of** your brother (your brother's) ;

NOTE. — The demonstrative may also be omitted in this construction, as in English ; or the simple *der* may be used.

(b) before a relative clause, as :

**Der(jenige)**, **welcher** zufrieden ist, ist glücklich,  
**He who** is contented, is happy.

**Die(jenige)** Frau ist am schönsten, **welche** gut ist,  
**That** woman is most beautiful, **who** is good.

Ihr Haus und **das(jenige)**, **worin** wir wohnen,  
**Your** house and **that in which** we live.

NOTE. — In sentences like the first, where *der(jenige)* is used substantively, the demonstrative and relative together may be replaced by the compound relative *wer*, thus :

**Wer** zufrieden ist, ist glücklich.

**136.** *Derjelbe* (*derjelbige*) = 'the same,' as: **the same** hat, *derjelbe* Hut; and is declined like *derjenige*, in two parts, written as one word, thus:

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUTER.	ALL GENDERS.
Nom.	<i>derjelbe</i>	<i>diejelbe</i>	<i>dasjelbe</i>	<i>diejelben</i>
Gen.	<i>deſjelben</i>	<i>derjelben</i>	<i>deſjelben</i>	<i>derjelben</i>
	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

(For examples of its use see § 143. 2-4. below).

NOTE. — *Jelbig* is sometimes used without article, with strong endings: *jelbiger*, *-e*, *-es*.

**137.** *Der nämliche* sometimes replaces *derjelbe*.

**138.** 1. *Soldh*, when used alone, follows the *dieſer* Model, as: *ſoldher* Wein, **such** wine; *ſoldhes* Brot, **such** bread.

2. *After ein*, it follows the mixed declension of adjectives, as:

Nom. *ein ſoldher* Wein, **such** a wine

Gen. *eines ſoldhen* Weines, of such a wine, etc.

3. *Before ein*, *ſoldh* is always, and before an adjective, generally, uninflected, as:

*Soldh* ein Wein; *ſoldh* guter Wein, or *ſoldher* gute Wein.

NOTE. — The adjective has the *strong* endings when *ſoldh* is uninflected, otherwise it has the *weak* endings, except in the plur., where it sometimes has the *strong*.

2. *Soldh* with *ein* is often replaced by *ſo*, as:

*So* ein Wein; ein *ſo* guter Wein.

**139.** 1. *Desgleichen* is used as an indeclinable neuter substantive never as adjective), thus:

*Ich* hatte *desgleichen* nie gehört,

I had never heard **that sort of thing** (anything of **that kind**).

NOTE.—*Vergleichen* is also used adverbially, = ‘in the same way, also.’

2. *Vergleichen* is used both substantively (referring to a fem. or plur. noun) and adjectively. In the latter case it is invariable, standing before substantives of any gender and number, as :

*Vergleichen* Wein,  
Wine of that sort.

*Vergleichen* Weine,  
Wines of that sort.

NOTE.—The phrase: *und vergleichen mehr* (abbrev. u. dgl. m.) is used for *und so weiter* (u. f. w.) = *et cetera*.

### GENERAL REMARKS ON DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**140.** The English ‘**that**’ is rendered in German :

1. As **Demonstrative Pronoun** :

(a) Most generally by **der** or **diejer**, when there is no contrast with any other object, thus :

**That** man, **der**’ Mann or **diejer** Mann.

(b) By **der** or **derjenige** before a **genitive case** or a **relative clause** (see § 135, 2, above).

(c) By **jener**, when the object is distinctly pointed out as *remote* (= yon, yonder), or as more remote than another, thus :

**Jener** Baum, **That** tree (over yonder).

**Diejes** Haus und **jenes**, This house and **that** one.

2. As **Relative** by **der** or **welcher** (see § 95), thus :

The book **that** I have, Das Buch, **das** (**welches**) ich habe.

3. As **Conjunction** by **daß**, thus :

I shall tell your father **that** you are diligent,

Ich werde deinem Vater sagen, **daß** du fleißig bist.

**141.** The neuter pronouns **das**, **diej(es)**, **jenes** are used (like **es**, see § 39, 1, and **welches**, § 82, Rem. 2) before the verb

'to be,' representing the real subject, which follows the verb, and with which the verb agrees, as :

**Das** ist mein Bruder, **That** is my brother.

**Dies(es)** ist Ihre Schwester, **This** is your sister.

**Jenes** sind seine Bücher, **Those** are his books.

**142.** **Der** and **jener**, when referring to inanimate objects, are often replaced by the adverb **da(r)**, 'there,' before prepositions (compare § 38, Rem. 5) and **dieser** by **hier**, as :

Ich habe nichts **damit** zu thun,

I have nothing to do **with that** (*therewith*).

**Hiermit** muß ich schließen,

**With this** (*herewith*) I must close.

NOTE. — This substitution is not made before a relative, as :

Ich dachte an **das** (*not* daran), **was** Sie sagten,

I was thinking of **that** which (what) you were saying.

### **143.** USE OF DEMONSTRATIVES TO REPLACE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. The neuter gen. **dessen** replaces that of the neuter pers. pron. (**seiner**) referring to things, as :

Ich erinnere mich **dessen** nicht,

I do not recollect **it** (*seiner* = *him*, of *him*).

2. The genitive of **der** and that of **derselbe** are frequently used to replace the possessive adjective of the 3. person, in order to avoid ambiguity, as :

Der Graf war mit **seinem** (des Grafen) Jäger und **dessen** (des Jägers) Hunden (or mit den Hunden **desjenigen**) auf der Jagd, The Count was at the hunt with **his** (the Count's) huntsman and **his** (the huntsman's) dogs.

NOTE. — Mit **seinen** Hunden would mean 'with the Count's dogs.'

3. **Derselbe** is used in other cases also to prevent ambiguity (also **dieser** in the same way), as :

Mein Bruder ist bei meinem Freunde, und **derselbe** (or **dieser**) achtet **ihn** sehr; or: er (mein Bruder) achtet **denjenigen** sehr, My brother is at my friend's, and **he** (the latter, the friend) esteems him (my brother) very much; or: he (my brother) esteems him (my friend) very much.

4. **Derselbe** also replaces the personal pronouns, to prevent repetitions like *ihn* — *Ihnen*, *Sie* — *sie*, etc. as:

*Dieser Wein ist gut, ich kann Ihnen denselben* (for *ihn Ihnen*) empfehlen, This wine is good, I can recommend it to you.

#### 144. STRONG VERBS: *singen* Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	<i>singen</i>	<i>säng</i>	<i>gesungen</i>
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i>	<i>sing</i>	<i>säng</i>	<i>sung</i>
<i>Ablaut:</i>	<i>ĩ</i>	<i>ǣ</i>	<i>ũ</i>

#### LIST.

binden, bind	band	gebunden
dringen (N.), press	drang	gedrungen
finden, find	fand	gefunden
klingen, ring, sound	klang	geklingen
(ge)lingen (N.), succeed (impers., with dat. of pers.)	gelang	gelungen
ringen, wring (the hands, etc.)	rang	gerungen
schlingen, twine: swallow	schlang	geschlungen
schwinden (N.), vanish	schwand	geschwunden
schwingen, swing	schwang	geschwungen
singen, sing	sang	gesungen
sinken, sink	sank	gesunken
springen (N. A.), spring, leap	sprang	gesprungen
trinken, drink (of human beings)	trank	getrunken
winden, wind	wand	gewunden
zwingen, force	zwang	gezwungen



## VOCABULARY.

to press in, penetrate, ein- escape, entfliehen [dringen invent, erfinden remember, sich erinnern (+gen. of thing) drown, be drowned, ertrinken spring upon, los'springen (auf + acc.) mean, suppose, meinen oblige, verbinden vanish, verschwinden	on board, am Bord grammar, die Gramma'tik dealer, der Händler lion, der Löwe diver, der Taucher telephone, das Telephon' clever, geschickt prudent, cautious, vor'sichtig unfortunately, leider below, unterhalb (+ gen.) never yet, noch nie
---	---

## EXERCISE XXVI.

A. 1. Dies ist mein Vetter aus Montreal; kennen Sie ihn? 2. Jawohl, diesen kenne ich ganz gut, aber nicht den, der mir gestern den Brief gebracht hat. 3. Ein böser Knabe schwang sich auf den Apfelbaum im Garten seines Nachbarn und schmiß die Äpfel auf die Erde. 4. In diesem Felde haben die Bauern schon das Gras geschnitten, aber in jenem werden sie es erst morgen schneiden. 5. „Liebet die, die euch hassen.“ 6. Jenes sind meine Hunde, aber dies sind diejenigen, welche der Jäger vor acht Tagen verloren hat, und die ich gefunden habe. 7. Erinnern Sie sich dessen, was ich Ihnen vom alten Schloß am Ufer des Sees erzählt habe? 8. Dem würde ich keinen Thaler leihen; der würde nie bezahlen. 9. Die Schäfer trieben ihre Herden über denselben Berg auf welchen wir stiegen. 10. Der Reisende stieg vom Pferde und band dasselbe an einen kleinen Baum. 11. Das Schiff stieß an einen Felsen, das Wasser drang ein, und das Schiff sank. 12. Ich habe mich beflissen, Latein zu lernen, aber es ist mir nicht gelungen. 13. Der Löwe war gerade im Begriffe auf den Reisenden loszuspringen, als der Jäger ihn schoss. 14. Kennen Sie Herrn Bell? Welchen Herrn Bell meinen Sie? 15. Denjenigen, der das Telephon erfunden

hat. 16. Was ist aus meiner deutschen Grammatik geworden? Sie scheint ganz verschwunden zu sein. 17. Das sind schöne Erdbeeren; wo haben Sie dieselben gekauft? 18. Sie sind schön, nicht wahr? Solch prächtige Beeren finden Sie nicht bei jedem Händler. 19. So heißes Wetter haben wir noch nicht gehabt. 20. Was wurde dir geantwortet, als du nach dem Kranken fragtest? 21. Man sagte mir, er sei ein wenig besser.

*B.* 1. The patient is just as weak to-day as he was yesterday. 2. Such happy days I have never yet passed! 3. Where do you generally pass the winter? 4. Where is my pen? Have you found it? 5. This is my neighbour of whom you have already heard so much. 6. The ship has sunk, and the people who were on board have been drowned. 7. I was looking for my coat, but found my father's. 8. I should be very much obliged to you, if you sang me a beautiful song. 9. Which is poorer, he who has no money, or he who has no friends? 10. How should we escape if the boat sank? 11. Charles has already finished (the) learning (of) his lesson; he is cleverer than I thought. 12. The diver that jumped from the bridge has unfortunately been drowned. 13. It will have been a good lesson for us, if it makes us more prudent in future. 14. Is that a new song? No, it is the same that I sang a week ago at your house. 15. The St. Lawrence River is the broadest in Canada; below the city of Quebec it is broadest. 16. The patient is better to-day; he will be allowed to go out to-morrow.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXVI.

1. Was ist aus dem Taucher geworden? 2. Ist Karl geschickter als Johann? 3. Was hat der böse Knabe gemacht? 4. Ist der Reisende dem Löwen entflohen? 5. Ist es Ihnen gelungen, Latein zu lernen? 6. Wessen Hunde sind das?

## LESSON XXVII.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS. — STRONG VERBS: *spinnen* AND *helfen* MODELS.

## 145. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

The Indefinite Pronouns are :

(a) *Substantive* :

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>man</b> (indecl.), one, they, people (Fr. <i>on</i> )            | } of <i>persons</i><br>only                               |
| 2. <b>jedermann</b> , everybody, everyone                              |   |
| 3. <b>jemand</b> , { somebody, anybody<br>{ some one, any one          |   |
| 4. <b>niemand</b> , { nobody, no one, no person<br>{ not anybody, etc. |   |
| 5. <b>etwas</b> , something, anything                                  | } of <i>things</i><br>only                                |
| 6. <b>nichts</b> , nothing, not anything                               |   |
| 7. <b>einer</b> , one, some one  | } (dieser Mod-<br>el) <i>persons</i><br>and <i>things</i> |
| 8. <b>keiner</b> , no one, none  |   |

(b) *Adjective* (also used substantively):

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>einige</b> , <b>etliche</b> (plur.), some, a few,<br>several  | } (dieser Mod-<br>el) <i>persons</i><br>and <i>things</i> |
| 2. <b>jed(wed)er</b> ( <b>jeglicher</b> ), each (one), every<br>one |   |
| 3. <b>mancher</b> , many (a one)                                    |   |
| 4. <b>mehrere</b> (pl.), several                                    |   |
| 5. <b>viel</b> , much, pl. <b>viele</b> , many                      |   |
| 6. <b>wenig</b> , little, pl. <b>wenige</b> , few                   |   |
| 7. <b>weldher</b> , some  |   |

REMARK.—The Indefinite Pronominal Adjectives are also used as Indefinite Numeral Adjectives (see Less. XXIX).

**146.** *Man* (spelt with small letter and *one n*, to distinguish it from *der Mann*, the man, from which it is derived) is the Indefinite **Personal** Pronoun, and is used to make a statement without specifying any particular person. It is equivalent to Engl. 'one, they, we, you (indef.), people,' etc., (French *on*), or to the impersonal use of the passive voice, as :

*Man* sagt, **One** says ; **they, people** say ; or **it is said**.

*Man* kann Öl und Wasser nicht zusammen mischen,

**One** (**we, you**) cannot mix oil and water.

REMARKS. — I. **One's self** (refl.) = *sich* ; **one's** = *sein* (poss. adj.), as :

*Man* schämt *sich* seiner Fehler,

**One** is ashamed of **one's** faults.

2. *Man* cannot be replaced by any other pronoun, as :

*Man* wird müde, wenn **man** (not *er*) zu lange arbeitet,

**A man** (**one**) gets tired, when **he** works too long.

**147.** *Jedermann* is used in the Sing. only ; it takes -s in Gen., but is otherwise uninflected, as :

*Jedermanns* Sache ist niemandes Sache,

**Everybody's** business is **nobody's** business.

Die Bibel ist ein Buch für *jedermann* (acc.),

The Bible is a book for **everybody**.

**148.** *Jemand* and its negative *niemand* are used in the Sing. only, and are declined thus :

Nom.	jemand	niemand
Gen.	jemandes	niemandes
Dat.	{ jemandem jemand(en)	{ niemandem niemand(en)
Acc.	jemand(en)	niemand(en)

NOTE. — The uninflected forms are preferable for the Dat. and Acc., as:

Wir haben **niemand** (acc.) getadelt, We have blamed nobody.

Werden Sie es **jemand** (dat.) sagen? Shall you tell it to anybody?

**149.** 1. **Etwas** is sometimes abbreviated to **was**, as:

Ich will **dir was** sagen, I will tell you **something**.

2. After **etwas** and **nichts**, an adjective has the strong neuter ending **-es** (see § 122, Rem. 11, above).

3. **Etwas** and **nichts** are also used as Indefinite Numerals (see Less. XXIX, § 168).

**150.** **Einer** (dieſer Model), 'one, some one, any one,' is used:

1. In the Nom. Sing. Masc. = man.

2. To supply the missing cases of man, as:

Es thut **einem** (dat.) leid, von ſeinen Freunden zu ſcheiden.

**One** is sorry to part from one's friends.

3. Before a substantive, as:

**Einer** meiner Freunde (**von** meinen Freunden),  
One of my friends.

**Ein(e)s** von dieſen Büchern, One of these books.

4. To represent a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie ein Buch? Ja, ich habe **ein(e)s**,

Have you a book? Yes, I have **one**.

NOTE. — The **e** may be dropped in the ending of the Nom. and Acc. Neut.

**151.** **Keiner** (dieſer Model) is the negative of **einer**, and is used:

1. As equivalent to **niemand**.

2. Before a substantive, as:

**Keiner** von meinen Freunden,

**None** (not one) of my friends.

3. To represent a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie ein Buch? Nein, ich habe **kein(e)s**.

NOTE. — Like **einer**, it may drop **e** in the Nom. and Acc. Neuter.

**152.** *Einige* (etliche), *mehrere*, = 'some, a few, several,' as:

*Einige* von meinen Freunden, **Some** (a few) of my friends.

*Mehrere* dieser Bücher, **Several** of these books.

**153.** *Jeder*, *jedweder*, *jeglicher* (dieser Model) or *ein jeder*, etc. (def. art. + adj. with *mixed* declension) are used, especially in the Masc., for *jedermann*, as:

Die Bibel ist ein Buch für *jeden*.

(*Ein*) *jeder* ist seines Glückes Schmied,

Every man (one) is the architect (lit. smith) of his own fortune.

**154.** *Mancher*, 'many a one, many a person' (dieser Model), is used to express indefinite plurality, as:

*Mancher* denkt, Many a one (person) thinks.

**155.** *Welcher* (dieser Model) is used for 'some,' referring to a preceding substantive, as:

Haben Sie Brot? Ja, ich habe *welches*.

**156.** For *viel* and *wenig* see Less. XXIX, § 176.

**157.** When the Engl. 'anybody, anyone, anything,' = 'anybody, etc., *at all*' (indefinite and general), they are rendered by *irgend jemand*, *irgend einer*, *irgend etwas*, as:

**Anybody** (at all) will tell you, where I live,

*Irrend jemand* (or *einer*) wird Ihnen sagen, wo ich wohne.

Ich bin mit *irgend etwas* zufrieden,

I am contented with **anything** (at all).

**158.** STRONG VERBS: *spinnen* Model.

	INFIN.	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	spinnen	spāun	gespōnnen
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i>	spin	spān	(spūn)
(incomplete)			
<i>Ablaut:</i>	i	ā	ō

## LIST.

(NOTE. — The Impf. Subj. is also given, on account of variations occurring.)

(be)ginnen, begin	begann	begöune	begonnen
rinnen (N.), flow	rann	ränne	geronnen
ſchwimmen (N. A.), swim	ſchwamm	{ ſchwämme ſchwümme }	geſchwommen
ſinnen, think	ſann	ſänne	geſonnen
ſpinnen, spin	ſpann	{ ſpänne ſpünne }	geſponnen
(ge)winnen, win, gain	gewann	{ gewänne gewünne }	gewonnen

NOTE. — Observe the subjunctive forms with vowel of P. Part. + Umlaut, instead of vowel of Impf. Ind.

## 159.

STRONG VERBS : *helfen* Model.

	INFIN.	Pr. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. Pr. Imper. 2. Sing.	IMPF. SUBJ.	P. PART.	
<i>Germ. Model :</i>	helfen	hülſt, hülſt, hülſ	hülſ	hülfe	
<i>Engl. Analogy :</i>	wanting.				
<i>Ablaut :</i>	e	ī	ā	ä, ö or ü	ū

## LIST.

(NOTE. — The 2. 3. sing. Pres. Ind., 2. sing. Imper., and Impf. Subj. are also given.)

bergen, hide	birgſt, birgt, birg	barg	bärke	gebergen
berſten (N.), burst	(birſteſt, birſt, birſt)	barſt	{ bärſte börſte }	geberſten
(ver)derben (N.), spoil (intr.)	verdirbſt, etc.	verdarb	verdürbe	verdorben
dreſchen, thrash	driſcheſt, etc.	{ draſch droſch }	{ dräſche dröſche }	gedreſchen
gelten, be worth	giltſt, gilt, gilt	galt	gälte	gegolten

helfen, help	hilfst, etc.	half	hülfe	geholfen
schelten, scold	schiltst, schilt, schilt	schalt	schälte	gescholten
sterben, (N.), die	stirbst, etc.	starb	stürbe	gestorben
werben, woo	wirbst, etc.	warb	würbe	geworben
werden (N.), be- come	wirßt, wird, werde	{ ward wurde	würde	geworden
werfen, throw	wirfst, etc.	warf	würfe	geworfen

REMARKS. — 1. Most of these verbs have *ü* or *ü* in the Impf. Subj. instead of *ü*, which cannot be distinguished in sound from the *e* of the Pres. Ind.; thus *stürbe* and *stürbe* would sound alike.

2. *Verderben*, when trans., is both strong and weak (*verderbte*, *verderbt*).

3. *Werden* has *ward* or *wurde* in the sing.; *wurden* only in the plur. (see § 19).

4. The Imperative never has the final *-e* in these verbs, except *werde*.

5. Observe the omission of (*e*)*t* of 3. sing. Pres. Ind. in the verbs with stem in *-t*, *-d*.

#### VOCABULARY.

to be or do (of health), sich befinden	run away, vanish, zerrinnen
reflect, deliberate, sich be- sinnen	the conduct, das Betragen
accomplish, leisten	poet, der Dichter
remain over, be left, übrig bleiben	barley, die Gerste
hide, conceal, verbergen	oats, der Hafer
requite, reward, vergelten	sailor, der Matrose
complete, finish, vollenden	musician, der Musiker
throw away, wegwerfen	need, necessity, die Not *
	dove, pigeon, die Taube
	plate, der Teller
	loss, der Verlust *



embarrassment, perplexity,	thereto, dazu'
die Verle'genheit	no longer, nicht mehr
wheat, der Weizen	as, wie
evil, böse	

*Idiom:* I like the country. Ich bin ein Freund vom Lande.

#### EXERCISE XXVII.

A. 1. Wer zu viel redet, leistet wenig. 2. Derjenige, welcher zu viel redet, leistet wenig. 3. Dies sind meine Schuhe, aber jenes sind (die) Ihre(n). 4. Wer jedermanns Freund ist, ist niemandes Freund. 5. Ein guter Christ vergilt Böses mit Gutem. 6. Es ist so eben jemand hier gewesen. 7. Welches von diesen Väandern ziehen Sie vor, das rote oder das blaue? 8. Wen suchst du? Ich suche die arme Familie, deren Vater gestorben ist. 9. Haben Sie schon Ihren Weizen gedroschen? Man drischt heute den Hafer und die Gerste, aber man wird erst morgen den Weizen dreschen. 10. Es ist ein Verlust für das ganze Land, wenn ein großer und guter Mann stirbt. 11. Der große Knabe schämt sich seines Betragens und deshalb verbirgt er sein Gesicht. 12. „Wie gewonnen, so zerronnen,“ das ist, man verliert leicht, was man leicht gewinnt. 13. Die Erdbeeren, welche ich gestern kaufte, sind verdorben. 14. Man hilft gern einem, der sich selbst hilft. 15. Hiermit schicke ich Ihnen das Geld, welches Sie so freundlich gewesen sind, mir zu leihen. 16. Sind Sie ein Freund vom Schwimmen? Jetzt nicht mehr, aber ich schwamm gern, als ich jünger war. 17. Der Unglückliche besann sich lange, schritt aber endlich an den Rand des Bootes und sprang ins Wasser. 18. Ist er ertrunken? Nein, er wurde von den Matrosen gerettet.

B. 1. Good morning, Mr. Bell, how are you to-day? 2. Have you any money? Yes, to be sure, I have some, but not enough for my journey. 3. Where is the tree to which the traveller tied his horse? 4. People take cold easily when they are tired. 5. Schiller and Beethoven were Germans, the

latter was a great musician, the former a great poet. 6. Mr. A. is a lazy man; he would not work at all, if necessity did not force him to it. 7. We found the money we lost a week ago. 8. Many a one begins what he will never finish. 9. Mary, my child, throw that apple away; it is spoilt. 10. Have you shot many pigeons? We have shot only a few. 11. Except my brother and me nobody is at home. 12. The mother is scolding, because her naughty child has thrown a plate upon the ground. 13. Where is the River St. Lawrence broadest? 14. When the children had drunk, the cat drank the milk which remained over (was left). 15. The women on (an) the shore screamed and wrung their hands, when the boat sank in which their husbands were. 16. Has the money which was lost been found?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXVII.

1. Wann wird man den Hafer dreschen? 2. Warum verbirgt der böse Knabe sein Gesicht? 3. Wem hilft man gern? 4. Sind Sie ein Freund vom Jagen? 5. Was für ein Mann ist Herr Bell? 6. Weshalb schilt die Frau?

### SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON D.

#### ON CERTAIN ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS.

#### 160. ADJECTIVES USED AS ATTRIBUTES ONLY.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as predicates:

1. Derivatives in **-en**, **-ern** (denoting material), as: golden, of gold, golden; **silbern**, of silver. These are replaced in the predicate by the substantive with **von**, as:

*Diese Uhr ist von Silber.* This watch is of silver.

2. Many in **-ig** and **-lich**, as: **dieblich**, thievish; **tierisch**, bestial; **heuchlerisch**, hypocritical; **täglich**, daily; **jährlich**, annual; **wirklich**, actual, real.

3. Those in **-ig** from adverbs of time and place, as: **heutig**, of to-day; **hierig**, of this place.

## 161. ADJECTIVES USED AS PREDICATES ONLY.

The following classes of adjectives are not used as attributes :

1. Those that are really nouns (though spelt with a small letter), such as: *angst*, afraid; *feind*, hostile; *freund*, friendly; *leid*, sorry; *not*, needful; *nütze*, useful; *schuld*, guilty.

2. The following among others:

bereit, ready	getroß, confident
eingedenk, mindful	gewahr, aware
gar, cooked, done (of food)	gram, averse
gang und gäbe, current (of money, etc.)	irre, astray, wrong
teilhaft, partaking	

NOTE. — Both these classes of adjectives are incapable of comparison in the ordinary way, and form the comparative and superlative by prefixing *mehr* and *am meisten* respectively, as:

Er wurde meinem Bruder immer *mehr gram*. He grew more and more averse to my brother.

Das that mir *am meisten leid*, I was most sorry for that (*relative superl.*).

## 162. REMARKS ON CERTAIN PRONOUNS.

1. The pronouns *wer*, *was* are frequently followed by the demonstrative *der* in the *after* clause, and always so when the latter (the seeming antecedent) is in a different case from that of the relative, as:

*Wer hat, dem wird gegeben*, To him that hath shall be (is) given.

2. The neuter pronouns *es*, *das*, *was*, *jedes*, *alles* are often used in the Nom. and Acc. Sing. in reference to a *number* of persons or things, especially if of different gender, as:

*Männer, Weiber, Kinder, alles* schrie um Hilfe, so laut *es* konnte,  
Men, women, children, *all* cried for help as loud as *they* could;

*Früh übt sich, was ein Meister werden will*,

Those practice early, *who* would become masters.

NOTE. — Observe that the verb is *singular*.

3. *Was* is sometimes used for *warum?* ('why?'), as:

*Was weinst du?* Why dost thou weep?

4. The relative adverb *wie* ('as') after *solch ein* or *so ein* ('such a') is usually followed by a personal pronoun, agreeing in gender and number with the antecedent, as:

*Solch (so) ein Mann, (or ein Mann) wie wir ihn nie gekannt hatten*,  
Such a man as we had never known.

NOTE. — The demonstrative *solch* or *so* is often omitted, as indicated in the above example.

## LESSON XXVIII.

NUMERALS: CARDINALS AND ORDINALS. — STRONG VERBS:  
**sprechen MODEL.**

## NUMERALS.

**163. Cardinals.**

1. eins; ein(er), -e, -(es)
2. zwei
3. drei
4. vier
5. fünf
6. sechs
7. sieben
8. acht
9. neun
10. zehn
11. elf
12. zwölf
13. dreizehn
14. vierzehn
15. fünfzehn or funfzehn
16. sechzehn
17. siebzehn
18. achtzehn
19. neunzehn
20. zwanzig
21. ein und zwanzig
22. zwei und zwanzig
30. dreißig
40. vierzig
50. funfzig or fünfzig

**164. Ordinals.**

- |       |                                 |
|-------|---------------------------------|
| 1st.  | der erste                       |
| 2nd.  | " zweite                        |
| 3rd.  | " dritte                        |
| 4th.  | " vierte                        |
| 5th.  | " fünfte                        |
| 6th.  | " sechste                       |
| 7th.  | " siebente                      |
| 8th.  | " achte                         |
| 9th.  | " neunte                        |
| 10th. | " zehnte                        |
| 11th. | " elfte                         |
| 12th. | " zwölfte                       |
| 13th. | " dreizehnte                    |
| 14th. | " vierzehnte                    |
| 15th. | " fünf- or fünfzehnte           |
| 16th. | " sechzehnte                    |
| 17th. | " siebzehnte                    |
| 18th. | " achtzehnte                    |
| 19th. | " neunzehnte                    |
| 20th. | " zwanzigste                    |
| 21st. | " ein und zwanzigste            |
| 22nd. | " zwei und zwanzigste           |
| 30th. | " dreißigste                    |
| 40th. | " vierzigste                    |
| 50th. | " funfzigste or fünf-<br>zigste |

60. sechzig	60th. der sechzigste
70. sieb(en)zig	70th. „ sieb(en)zigste
80. achtzig	80th. „ achtzigste
90. neunzig	90th. „ neunzigste
100. hundert	100th. „ hundertste
101. hundert (und) eins	101st. „ hundert und erste
123. hundert (und) drei und zwanzig	123rd. „ hundert (und) drei und zwanzigste

### Cardinals.

200. zwei hundert
300. drei hundert
1000. tausend
1001. tausend und eins
1036. tausend (und) sechs und dreißig
1887. { tausend (und) acht hundert (und) sieben und achtzig { or achtzehnhundert sieben und achtzig
10,000. zehn tausend
100,000. hundert tausend
1,000,000. eine Million'
2,567,849. zwei Millionen, fünf hundert (und) sieben und sechzig tausend, acht hundert (und) neun und vierzig.

**Interrogative Ordinal:** der wievielte? which (in order)?  
what day of the month? (See § 166, 3, Note 2).

### 165. REMARKS ON THE CARDINAL NUMERALS.

1. **Ein** only is declined throughout, thus:

(a) Before a substantive after the *mein* Model (§ 8), like the Indefinite Article, which is the same word unemphasized, as:

**Ein** Mann, one man; ein Mann', a man.

NOTE. — The numeral *ein* is sometimes printed with a capital, or spaced out (= Engl. italics) to distinguish it from the Article, as :

Wir haben **Ein'** (*e i n*) Buch, We have one book.

Wir haben ein Buch', We have a book.

(b) Used substantively (see also § 150, above) without article, after *dieser* Model (§ 6), as :

**Einer** von meinen Freunden, **One** of my friends.

Unser **einer**, **One** of us (*of our sort*).

(c) After an article or other determinative word, like an adjective, as :

Der **eine** Bruder, The **one** brother.

Mein **einer** Schuh, (The) **one** of my shoes.

NOTE. — With the definite article it may be used substantively also, as :

Der **eine** und der andere, (The) one and the other.

and even in the plural (= some, one party), as :

Die **einen** sagten dies, die andern jenes,

Some (the one party) said this, others (the other party) that.

(d) **Eins** is the form used in counting.

2. **Zwei** and **drei** may have **-er** in the Gen. and **-en** in the Dat. when not accompanied by any article, etc., as :

Aus **zweier** oder **dreier** Zeugen Mund kommt die Wahrheit,  
Out of the mouth of **two** or **three** witnesses cometh  
the truth.

Man kann nicht **zweien** Herren dienen,

One cannot serve two masters.

NOTE. — The Gen. **-er** is necessary to show the case, but may be replaced by *von*; but the Dat. **-en** before a substantive is rare, the **-n** of the substantive sufficiently showing the case.

3. **Beide** = 'both,' refers to two objects taken together, and is declined like an adjective in the Plur.: N. **beide**, G. **beider**, etc.; *die beiden*; *meine beiden Brüder*. It often

replaces *zwei* after determinative words, as in the last example. The neuter sing. form *beides* is also found, as :

*Beides ist wahr*, Both (things) are true.

NOTES. — 1. Both  *wir*  = *wir beide(n)* (we two).

2. 'Both' as conjunction = *sowohl*, etc. (See Less. XI.)

4. Other cardinals are not declined unless used substantively (see next section).

5. The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by adding *-zehn* (Engl. *-teen*) to the units (but *sechzehn* drops *-s*).

6. The multiples of ten (20—90) add *-zig* to the units, *zwanzig*, *dreißig* being irregular, and *sechzig* dropping *-s*.

7. The *units* always precede the *tens* in compound numbers from 21 upwards, both being joined by the conjunction *und* 'and'; hence 25 = *fünf und zwanzig* (Engl. 'five and twenty'); 156 = *hundert sechs und fünfzig*, etc.

8. *Hundert* and *Tausend* are generally used without *ein* before them, and the conjunction *und* may be omitted after them.

9. 'One by one, two by two,' etc. = *je einer, je zwei* (or *je zwei und zwei*), etc.

10. The Cardinals may be used as substantives :

(a) With a substantive understood (as *simple* numbers only), with *-e* in Nom. Acc., *-en* in Dat., as :

*Alle vier*, All fours.

*Mit sechsen*, With [a coach and] six [horses].

(b) As feminine substantives, of the spots on dice, etc., or of the figures 1, 2, 3, etc., see § 80, 2, (c), with plur. in *-en*, as :

*Die Eins*, the one-spot, figure one, plur. *Einien*.

- (c) Hundert and Tausend are used as collective substantives, declined after the Hund Model, § 21, (b), as :

Im ersten **Hundert**, In the first **hundred**.

Tausende von Menschen, **Thousands** of men.

- (d) Million is a fem. subst. of the weak declension.

### 166. REMARKS ON ORDINAL NUMERALS.

1. The Ordinals are formed from the Cardinals by adding :

(a) Up to 19. **-te**, except der **erste**, **dritte**, **achte**.

(b) From 20 upwards. **-ste**, which in compound numbers is added to the *last component only*.

NOTE. — Der **andere** is the older ordinal for 'second'

2. The ordinals after proper names (of sovereigns, etc.) are spelt with a capital letter, and must (with the article) be declined throughout, the proper name being undeclined, as :

Karl **der Erste**, Charles the First.

Georg **des Vierten**, Of George the Fourth, etc.

NOTE. — The Roman Numerals I., II., etc., after names of sovereigns must always be read as def. art. + ord. num. in the proper case. Thus: Heinrich IV. = Heinrich **der Vierte** (Nom.); or Heinrich **den Vierten** (Acc.); but: der Thron Heinrich IV. = der Thron Heinrich **des Vierten** (Gen.); unter Heinrich IV. = unter Heinrich **dem Vierten**.

3. The ordinals are used adjectively before the names of the months, as :

Der achtzehnte August, The 18th [of] August.

Am zwei und zwanzigsten Juni, On the 22d [of] June.

NOTES. — 1. The figures 1, 2, etc., before the months are to be read as ordinals, thus :

Am 1. Januar = am ersten Januar.

Toronto, (d.) 25.(ten) April = Toronto, **den** (acc. of time, see § 184, 1) fünf und zwanzigsten April.



## 2. 'What day of the month is it?'

Der **wievielſte** **iſt** heute? or: Den **wievielſten** **haben** wir heute?

'It is the fifth,'

Es **iſt** heute **der** **fünfte**, or: Wir haben heute **den** **fünften**.**167.** STRONG VERBS: *ſprechen* Model.

INFIN.	PR. IND. 2. 3. Sing.	} IMPF. P. PART.
	" IMPER. 2. "	

<i>Germ. Models:</i>	<i>ſprechen</i>	<i>ſpricht</i>	<i>ſpricht</i>	<i>ſpricht</i>	<i>ſprach</i>	<i>geſprochen</i>
	<i>ſiehlen</i>	<i>ſiehlſt</i>	<i>ſiehlſt</i>	<i>ſiehl</i>	<i>ſtahl</i>	<i>geſtohlen</i>
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i>	<i>ſpeak</i>	<i>wanting</i>			<i>ſpāke</i>	<i>ſpōken</i>
<i>Ablaut:</i>	<i>ě</i>	<i>ī, īē</i>			<i>ā</i>	<i>ō</i>

## LIST A. (i, a, o.)

<i>brechen</i> (N. A.), break	<i>brichſt</i> , etc.	<i>brach</i>	<i>gebrochen</i>
<i>nehmen</i> , take	<i>nimmſt</i> , etc.	<i>nahm</i>	<i>genommen</i>
( <i>erſchrecken</i> (N.), be frightened	<i>erſchrickſt</i> , etc.	<i>erſchrak</i>	<i>erſchrocken</i>
<i>ſprechen</i> , speak	<i>ſprichtſt</i> , etc.	<i>ſprach</i>	<i>geſprochen</i>
<i>ſtechen</i> , sting (trans.)	<i>ſtickſt</i> , etc.	<i>ſtach</i>	<i>geſtechen</i>
<i>treffen</i> , hit	<i>triffſt</i> , <i>triffſt</i> , <i>triff</i>	<i>traf</i>	<i>getroffen</i>

REMARKS. — 1. *Erſchrecken*, to frighten trans.), is weak (*erſchreckte*, *erſchreckt*).2. Observe the dropping of *h* and doubling of *m* in *nehmen*, and the single consonant in the Imperfect of *erſchrecken* and *treffen*.

## LIST B. (ie, a, o.)

(The Imperf. Subj. is also given.)

( <i>ge</i> ) <i>bären</i> , bear, bring forth	<i>gebietſt</i> , etc.	<i>gebar</i>	<i>gebäre</i>	<i>geberen</i>
( <i>be</i> ) <i>ſehlen</i> , com- mand	<i>beſiehlſt</i> , etc.	<i>befahl</i>	<i>beſöhlſe</i>	<i>beſehlen</i>

(emp)fehlen, re- commend  
empfehlst, etc. empfahl empföhle empfohlen

ſtehlen, steal ſtiehlſt, etc. ſtahl { ſtähle geſtohlen  
ſtöhle

Also :

kommen (N.), { kommenſt, kommt } komm kam käme gekommen  
come { könnenſt, könnenſt }

REMARKS. -- 1. The simple verb ſehlen, to be wanting, to make a mistake, is weak (ſehlte, geſehlt).

2. Kommen drops one **m** in Impf.

3. All verbs of this Model (A. and B.) drop the final **-e** of the 2. sing. Imper.

#### VOCABULARY.

to add, addieren	hunting, das Jagen
arrive (at), an'kommen (in + dat.)	James, Jakob
obtain, get, bekommen	mile (German), league, die Meile
divide, dividieren	minute, die Minute
celebrate, feiern	government, reign, die Regierung
multiply, multiplicieren	Reformation, die Reformation'
subtract, ſubtrahieren	second (of time), die Sekunde
happen upon, meet with, treffen	voyage, die Seereise
care, attention, die Acht	far, weit
railway-station, der Bahnhof *	about, ungefähr
holidays, die Ferien (pl.)	twice, zweimal
ſiſhing, das Fiſchen	as far as, biß zu (dat.)
prison, das Gefängniß	

**Idioms:** 1. He was born twenty-five years ago, Er iſt vor fünf und zwanzig Jahren geboren.

2. Please take another apple (i. e., yet one more), Bitte, nehmen Sie noch einen Apfel.

3. Take care, Nehmen Sie ſich in Acht.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

*A.* 1. Wie alt sind Sie? Ich bin in meinem neun und zwanzigsten Jahre. 2. Dieses Jahr bekamen wir am acht und zwanzigsten Juni Ferien. 3. Jeder Monat außer dem Februar hat entweder dreißig oder ein und dreißig Tage. 4. Den vier und zwanzigsten Mai war ich bei meinem Vater auf Besuch, denn an diesem Tage feiern wir den Geburtstag der Königin. 5. Karl der Erste von England war der Vater Karl II. und Jakob II. 6. Das war eine schlechte Nachricht, nicht wahr? Unsere Mutter erschrak, als Sie dieselbe hörte. 7. Den fünf und zwanzigsten trafen wir Herrn Bell auf dem Bahnhofe, gerade als er im Begriffe war abzureisen. 8. In der Stadt London sind mehr als drei Millionen Einwohner. 9. Die einen empfahlen ihm zu bleiben, die andern abzureisen. 10. Wie weit ist es von hier bis zum nächsten Dorfe? Ungefähr fünf und zwanzig englische Meilen. 11. Er nahm die Fische je zwei aus dem Korbe und legte dieselben auf den Tisch. 12. Das Eis bricht, nehmen Sie sich in Acht. 13. Hunderte von Menschen haben während des Erdbebens das Leben verloren. 14. Unter der Regierung Heinrich VIII. begann die Reformation in England. 15. Meine beiden Brüder reisten am fünf und zwanzigsten Juni von Liverpool ab und kamen erst am achtzehnten Juli in Quebec an. 16. Wann kommt Ihr Geburtstag? Am ein und zwanzigsten November. 17. Die Regierung Heinrich VIII. war eine der berühmtesten in der Geschichte Englands. 18. Als wir einen Spaziergang machten, haben wir mehrere unserer Freunde angetroffen. 19. Von wem ist Ihnen geraten worden, eine Seereise zu machen? Es ist mir von mehreren Ärzten geraten worden.

*B.* 1. One general commands thousands (dat.) of soldiers. 2. Mary has broken her pen, but she has taken Louisa's. 3. The ice is breaking; take care, Fred. 4. This is my lead-pencil, not William's. 5. You have taken only one apple, please take another. 6. When do we celebrate the Queen's Birthday? On the 24th of May. 7. What day of the month is it to-day?

To-day is the 31st of March. 8. The thief was thrown into (the) prison, because he had stolen five hundred dollars. 9. Which do you prefer, (the) hunting or (the) fishing? I like both. 10. A bee stings, but a dog or a cat bites. 11. The days are longest in the month of June, and shortest towards Christmas. 12. When our neighbours were at church, a thief went (fommen) into the house and stole several hundred dollars. 13. In the year eighteen hundred and eighty-seven Queen Victoria celebrated the fiftieth year of her reign. 14. The eldest son of the Queen of England was born the ninth of November one thousand eight hundred and forty-one. 15. Tell me how much thirty-two and eighty-eight make. 16. There are sixty seconds in a minute, sixty minutes in an hour, twenty-four hours in a day, seven days in a week, four weeks in a month, and twelve months in a year. 17. Would you make a voyage to Europe if you were advised to do so? 18. Yes, I should like very much to make a voyage to Europe.

Read in German: 2 mal 11 ist 22, 3 mal 12 ist 36, 4 mal 8 ist 32, 5 mal 9 ist 45, 6 mal 7 ist 42,  $7 \times 10$  ist 70,  $8 \times 11$  ist 88,  $9 \times 12$  ist 108,  $10 \times 10$  ist 100,  $11 \times 11$  ist 121,  $12 \times 12$  ist 144. Addiert 2,342, 25,891 und 989,346. Subtrahiert 27,763 von 31,551. Multipliziert 591 mit 478. Dividiert 2,581,640 mit 61.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXVIII.

1. Wie weit ist es von Hamilton nach Toronto? 2. Wann sind die Tage am kürzesten? 3. Wie viel macht das, wenn man 337 mit 2 multipliziert? 4. Wie viele Tage sind in einem Jahre? 5. Wann bekommt ihr Ferien? 6. Wessen Bleistift haben Sie?

## LESSON XXIX.

INDEFINITE NUMERALS. — STRONG VERBS: *offen* MODEL.

## 168. INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

The Indefinite Numerals are :

1. *all*, all
  2. *ganz*, whole, all
  3. *jeder*,
  4. *jedweder*,
  5. *jeglicher*,
  6. *kein*, none. not one
  7. *einige*,
  8. *etliche*,
  9. *manche*, many
  10. *mehrere*, several
  11. *viel*, much (pl. many)
  12. *wenig*, little (pl. few)
  13. *etwas*, some
  14. *genug*, enough
  15. *mehr*, more
- } each (*dieſer* Model)
- } some, a few
- } (indeclinable)

REMARK. — All these, except *all* and *ganz*, are used as Indefinite Pronouns (see Less. XXVII).

169. 1. *All* expresses *number* as well as quantity, and denotes that *every individual part* of a whole is present.

2. When declined, it follows the *dieſer* Model, whether used with or without a substantive, as :

*aller Käſe* ;                      *alle Arbeit* war vergeblich ; *alles Brot* ;  
*all* [the] cheese : *all* labour was useless : *all* [the] bread.

3. Unless used substantively, it always *precedes* the determinative word, and then generally remains uninflected in the sing., and often in the plur., as :

**Alles** mein Geld, **All** my money.

**Alles(e)** meine Freunde, **All** my friends.

4. When used substantively and preceded by a determinative word, it still follows the *strong* declension, as :

Dieses (das) **alles**, **All** this (that).

Bei dem **allem**, With **all** that.

5. It is not (as in English) followed by the definite article, but may be followed by the *demonstrative* *der*, *die*, *das*, as :

**Alles** Geld, All [the] money.

**Alles(es) d a s** Geld, All **that** money.

**Alle** Menschen, **All** [the] men.

**Alle die** Menschen, All **those** men.

**170.** 1. **Ganz** expresses *quantity*, not number, and represents an object as *complete* and *undivided*, without reference to its parts. When therefore the Engl. 'all' = 'whole' it must be rendered by **ganz**, not by **all**, as :

I have been working **all** (the **whole**) day long,

Ich habe den **ganzen** Tag gearbeitet.

2. **Ganz** is declined like an adjective, and always follows the determinative word, as :

Der **ganze** Tag, The **whole** day.

Mein **ganzes** Eigentum, [The] **whole** [of] my property.

3. Before names of countries and places it may remain uninflected, if unaccompanied by an article, etc., as :

**All** (the **whole** of) America does not belong to the United States, **Ganz** (or **das ganze**) Amerika gehört nicht zu den Vereinigten Staaten. — But :

**Die ganze** Schweiz, **All** Switzerland.

**171.** 1. **Jeder** (dieser Model) is used to denote each *individual* belonging to a whole, as :

**Jeder** Baum hat Äste, **Every** tree has branches.

2. It is sometimes preceded by *ein*, and then follows the *mixed* adjective declension. *Jedweder* and *jedlicher* are less common forms, used in the same way.

**172.** *Kein* is the negative of *ein*.

**173.** 1. *Einige* (plur., *dieſer* Model) = 'some, a few,' denotes a *small* number taken *collectively*, and is used without article, as :

*Einige* Vögel können nicht ſingen, Some birds cannot sing.

Vor *einigen* Jahren, A few years ago.

2. It is used in the sing. only before names of materials to denote a *limited quantity*, as :

Ich habe *einiges* Geld, I have **some** money (but *not much*).

3. *Etliche* is a less usual word with the same meaning and use.

NOTE. — *Ein paar* 'a pair, couple' (with small *p*) is also used in the sense of 'a few,' the *ein* being then indeclinable, as :

Mit *ein paar* Thalern, With a few dollars.

**174.** *Mancher* (*dieſer* Model), 'many(a),' denotes *indefinite plurality*, as :

*Mancher* Vogel kann nicht ſingen,

Many a bird cannot sing.

Ich habe *manches* Unglück gehabt,

I have had **many a** misfortune.

*Manche* Leute glauben, **Many** people believe.

It may remain uninflected, especially before an adj., as :

*Mancher* gute, or *manch* guter Mann.

**175.** *Mehrere* = 'several, a few,' taken *individually*, as :

*Mehrere* Leute wurden krank, **Several** people became ill.

**176.** *Viel* and *wenig*, in the sing., are inflected (dieser Model) when they denote *number*, and uninflected when they denote *quantity*, as :

•     Lerne nicht *vielen*, sondern *viel*, Do not learn **many**  
          (a *great number* of) **things**, but **much** (a large  
          *quantity*).

They are usually, though not always, declined in the plural.

NOTE. — The Engl. ‘little’ = ‘small’ is rendered by *klein*.

**177.** *Etwas* is used before names of material, etc., in the sing., like *einiges* (see § 173, 2, above), of a *small quantity*, as :

*Etwas* Brot, **Some** bread (but not much).

**178.** *Genug* may precede or follow its substantive, as :

Geld *genug*, or *genug* Geld, money **enough**.

NOTE. — As adverb, it always *follows* its adjective, as :

Das Band ist nicht lang *genug*, The ribbon is not long enough.

**179.** *Mehr* is the comparative of *viel*, and is indeclinable, as :

Ich habe **mehr** Freunde als er,  
 I have **more** friends than he.

**180.** The Engl. ‘some, any’ are generally omitted before substantives, unless a *small quantity* (*some*, but *not much*) is denoted (see § 157, above). In answer to a question, without a substantive, they are rendered by *einiges* (sing.), *einige* (plur.) or *welch* (sing. or plur.), not by *etwas* (which = ‘something’), as :

Haben Sie Geld? Ich habe **einiges** (*welches*).

Haben Sie Freunde? Ich habe **einige** (*welche*).



**181. STRONG VERBS: *eſſen* Model.**

	INFIN.	Pres. Ind. 2. 3. Sing. Imper. 2. Sing. }	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model:</i>	<i>eſſen</i>	<i>iſſeſt, iſt, iß</i>	<i>āß</i>	<i>gegeſſen</i>
<i>Engl. Analogy:</i> (incomplete)	<i>eat</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>āte</i>	<i>eaten</i>
<i>Ablaut:</i>	<i>e i</i> }	<i>i, ie</i>	<i>ā</i>	<i>ē</i>

**LIST.**

bitten, beg, ask	bitteſt, bittet, bitte	bat	gebeten
eſſen, eat (of man)	iſſeſt, iſt, iß	aß	gegeſſen
freſſen, eat (of beasts)	friſſeſt, frißt, friß	fraß	gefreſſen
geben, give	gi(e)bſt, gi(e)bt, gi(e)b	gab	gegeben
(ver)geſſen, forget	vergiſſeſt, vergiſt, ver- giß	vergaß	vergeſſen
leſen, gather; read	leſeſt, lieſt, ließ	laß	geleſen
liegen, lie down	liegeſt, liegt, liegn	lag	gelegen
meſſen, measure	miſſeſt, mißt, miß	maß	gemeſſen
(ge)neſen (N.), re- cover (from illness)	geneſeſt, geneßt, geneſe	genaß	geneſen
(ge)ſchehen (N.), happen (impers.)	— geſchieht —	geſchah	geſchehen
ſehen, see	ſieheſt, ſieht, ſieh	ſah	geſehen
ſißen, ſit	ſißeſt, ſißt, ſiß(e)	ſaß	geſeſſen
treten (N. A.), tread	trittſt, tritt, tritt	trat	getreten
(weſen, N., obsolete), to be	— — —	war	geweſen

OBSERVE. — 1. The changes from *ii* to *iß*: also that *iß* of the Impf. is retained through that whole tense, the vowel being long, as: *wir aßen, ich aße*.

2. That *geneſen* does not change *e* into *ie*.

3. The change in *ſiſſen* of *ſ* into *ſſ* and *ſſ*.
4. That the long *e* of the root is changed into *ie*, the short *e* into short *i*.
5. The inserted *g* in the P. Part. of *eſſen* (*gegeſſen*).
6. The doubling of *t* in 2. sing., etc., of *treten*, and omission of final *-t* in 3. sing. (*tritt*).

## VOCABULARY.

to experience, feel, empfinden	telegraph, der Telegraph'
intend, contemplate, vor= haben	misfortune, das Unglück
absence, die Abwesenheit	world, die Welt
Francis, Franz	pardon, die Verzeihung
century, das Jahrhundert	thin, dünn
cherry, die Kirſche	almost, nearly, beinahe, faſt
province, die Provinz'	immediately, (ſo)gleich
romance, novel, der Roman'	lately, not long ago, neulich
swallow, die Schwalbe	late, ſpät
	while, während

**Idioms:** 1. **There is, there was,** etc. (general statement), *eſ gibt, eſ gab*, etc. (obj. in acc. see Less. XXXVII).

2. **To cut one's hand,** *ſich in die Hand ſchneiden* (lit., to cut one's self into the hand).

3. **To beg pardon,** *um Verzeihung bitten*.

4. **To speak to (with),** *ſprechen* + acc. of person.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

A. 1. Das ganze Land empfindet den Verluſt eines guten und groſen Mannes. 2. Es gibt ſchöne Vögel, welche gar nicht ſingen. 3. Bitte, geben Sie mir noch einen Thaler; ich habe nicht Geld genug. 4. Iſt Georg den Apfel, den er gekauft hat, oder denjenigen, welchen ich ihm gegeben habe? 5. Der Fremde trat mir auf den Fuß, aber gleich bat er mich um Verzeihung. 6. Während Ihrer Abwesenheit ſind mehrere Leute gekommen, um Sie zu

sprechen. 7. Georg sagte mir neulich, daß er Fritz vor einigen Wochen gesehen habe. 8. Nimm dich in Acht, das Eis, worauf du trittst, ist sehr dünn. 9. Ich bitte um Verzeihung, daß ich so spät gekommen bin. 10. Wenn du meinen Onkel siehst, so sage ihm, bitte, daß ich vorhabe, ihn zu besuchen. 11. Es liegt ein Roman von Sir Walter Scott auf dem Tische; lesen Sie denselben? 12. Was ist geschehen? Meine kleine Schwester ist auf Glas getreten und hat sich in den Fuß geschnitten. 13. Dieses Unglück geschah in den Ferien, und sie genas sehr langsam, weil das Wetter so heiß war. 14. Eine Schwalbe macht keinen Sommer. 15. Ein Tier frißt und säuft, aber ein Mensch ißt und trinkt. 16. Durch den Telegraphen hört fast die ganze Welt in vier und zwanzig Stunden von dem, was in irgend einem Lande geschieht. 17. Als ein Reicher aus seinem Hause kam, bat ihn ein Armer um ein wenig Geld, aber er gab dem Armen keins. 18. Das Pferd des Reisenden fraß ein wenig Heu und Hafer, während sein Herr das Mittagseßen im Gasthause aß. 19. Das Kind hat schon alles Brod und Fleisch gegessen, es hat auch alle Milch getrunken, die im Glase war. 20. Einem Lügner wird nicht geglaubt, selbst wenn er die Wahrheit spricht.

*B.* 1. The whole of England is not so large as the Province of Manitoba. 2. Henry VIII. of England, Francis I. of France, and Charles V. of Germany were the greatest monarchs of the 16th century. 3. Where did you find the money? It lay in the grass. 4. Every summer the birds eat the cherries in our garden. 5. The sick man lay seven weeks in the hospital, but he has now recovered. 6. The rich (man) gave the poor (man), who sat before the house, some money. 7. This youth has read all the books in the library of his father, but unfortunately he forgets just as fast as he reads. 8. Napoleon I. died on the 5th May 1821: he was 52 years old. 9. Have you forgotten what I told you two months ago? 10. During the rain we sat under a tree and

told stories. 11. One forgets easily what one reads too quickly. 12. If you have more paper than you need, please give me some. 13. Nineteen hundred years ago the Romans possessed almost the whole world. 14. Many young people read hundreds of novels, and forget after some time almost all they have read. 15. Twenty-five years ago our neighbour possessed only a few hundred dollars, but now he is one of the richest men in the city. 16. Speak the truth, whether you are believed or not.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXIX.

1. Gibt es in Amerika Vögel, die nicht singen? 2. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen? 3. Was haben Sie meinem Onkel gesagt, als er hier war? 4. Was sagen Sie vom Lesen der Romane? 5. Welchen Apfel iszt Georg? 6. Ist das Telephon eine neue Erfindung?

---

### LESSON XXX.

DERIVATIVE NUMERALS. — TIME, MEASURE, DATE. — STRONG VERBS: *ichlagen* MODEL.

#### 182. DERIVATIVE NUMERALS.

From the Cardinal and Indefinite Numerals are formed the following **Derivative Numerals**:

(a) By adding *-mal*, *adverbs* denoting 'so many times,' as: *einmal*, once; *viermal*, four times; *einundzwanzigmal*, twenty-one times; *manchmal*, many a time.

NOTES. — 1. *Mal* is neuter, hence *jedesmal*, each time; and with Indef. Numerals sometimes adds *-ß*, as: *vielmals(ß)*, *mehrmalsß*.

2. Ein'mal = 'on one (single) occasion,' as:

Ich habe ihn nur einmal gesehen, I have seen him only once.

- Einmal' (einmal's, einm) = 'once upon a time,' as:

Es war einmal' ein König, etc. (GRIMM.)

3. Nicht ein'mal, 'not once,' as:

Er ist nicht ein'mal hier gewesen, He has not been here once.

- Nicht einmal' (or nicht mal'), 'not even,' as:

Er ist nicht (ein)mal' hier gewesen, He has not even been here.

- (b) By adding -fach or fältig, *adjectives* denoting 'so many fold,' as: einfach, simple; zweifach (zwiefach), twofold, double; vierfach (viefältig), quadruple; vielfach, mannichfach, manifold.

NOTE. — Einfältig = 'foolish, silly.'

- (c) By adding -lei to the gen. fem. sing. or plur., *indeclinable adjectives* denoting 'of so many kinds,' as: einerlei, of one kind; dreierlei, of three kinds; vielerlei, mancherlei, of many kinds, etc.

NOTE. — Es ist mir einerlei = 'It is (all) the same to me.'

### 183. From the Ordinals are formed:

- (a) By adding -l, the *fractional Numerals*, as: ein Drittel =  $\frac{1}{3}$ ; das Viertel, the quarter: drei Zwanzigstel =  $\frac{3}{20}$ , etc.

NOTES. — I. These are substantives formed from the ordinal + Teil (= part), and are therefore neuter, thus:

Das Drittel = das dritte Teil, 'the third part.' etc.

2. 'Half' as substantive = die Hälfte: as adjective or adverb = halb, which is declined like gan; (see § 170, 2), as:

Ich habe die Hälfte meines Eigentums verloren,  
I have lost half (of) my property.

Der Knabe war halb tot, als man ihn fand,  
The boy was half dead when he was found.

**Halb** Washington, or **das halbe** Washington,  
(The) half (of) Washington.

**Halb** or **das halbe** Frankreich, half France; but

**Die halbe** Schweiz, half Switzerland.

- (b) By adding **-halb**, *Mixed Numbers* with the Fraction 'half,' as: **drittehalb** =  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ; **viertehalb** Meilen, three miles and a half; **fünftehalb** Ellen, four and a half yards.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe that the ordinal is one higher than the cardinal of the Engl. idiom; thus 'two and-a-half' is a number consisting of three parts, of which the first and second parts are **wholes**, but the **third** is only **a half**, hence **drittehalb**.

2.  $1\frac{1}{2}$  = **anderthhalb** (not **zweitehalb**; see § 166, 1, Note), as:  
**Anderthhalb** Flaschen (pl.), A bottle and a half.

3. These are invariable adjectives.

- (c) By adding **-ens**, ordinal adverbs denoting in what place or order, as:

**erstens**, firstly; **zweitens**, secondly; **drittens**, thirdly, etc.

## 184. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

1. Both **point** and **duration of time** are expressed by the **Accusative** without a preposition, as:

**Den ersten** Januar, (On) the first of January.

**Er kam letzten** Montag an, He arrived last Monday.

**Ich war letzte** Woche krank, I was ill last week.

**Ich war eine ganze** Woche krank, I was ill (for) a whole week.

2. **Point of time** is also expressed:

- (a) By the preposition **am** with the Dat. (always contracted with the article), of *date*, as :

**Am** ersten Januar, **On** the first of January.

**Am** Sonntag, **On** Sunday.

**Am** Morgen dieses Tages, **On** the morning of this day.

- (b) By the *Genitive* case, with **Tag**, days of the week, or divisions of the day, when denoting indefinite time or habitual action, as :

**Des** Tages, **In** the day time, by day.

**Sonntags**, **On** Sundays.

(**Des**) Abends, **In** the evening.

2. The **Time of Day** is thus expressed :

- (a) The **quarters** of the hour, with reference to the following hour (not the *past* hour, as partly in English), thus :

It is a quarter past twelve = **Es** ist (ein) Viertel **auf** eins (i. e., *one quarter towards*, or *on the way to*, one).

It is half past twelve = **Es** ist halb eins (i. e., *half one*).

It is a quarter to one = **Es** ist drei Viertel **auf** eins (i. e., *three quarters towards one*).

- (b) The minutes past by **nach**, as : **Es** ist zwanzig Minuten **nach** zwei, It is twenty minutes past two.

The minutes to by **vor**, as : Zehn Minuten **vor** drei, ten minutes to three.

- (c) at = **um** ; o'clock = **Uhr**, as :

**Um** ein Uhr, **At** one o'clock.

**Um ein Viertel auf fünf Uhr,** At a quarter past four o'clock.

**Es ist drei Viertel auf fünf (Uhr),** It is a quarter to five (o'clock).

**Es hat sechs (Uhr) geschlagen,** It has struck six (o'clock).

NOTE. — The impersonal Verb 'to be,' in expressing the time of the day, is always *singular*, as in English.

### 185. EXPRESSIONS OF QUANTITY.

1. A substantive expressing **Quantity** (Measure, Weight or Number), if *Masculine* or *Neuter*, retains the form of the singular, as :

**Vier und zwanzig Zoll** machen **zwei Fuß**, 24 inches make two feet.

**Zwei Pfund**, Two pounds.

**Tausend Mann**, A thousand men. — But :

**Zwei Flaschen** (fem.), Two bottles.

**Zwölf Ellen** (fem.), Twelve yards.

2. The substantive, the quantity of which is expressed, is generally put in **apposition** with that expressing the quantity, as :

**Zwei Buch Papier**, Two quires of paper.

**Dreitausend Mann Infanterie**, Three thousand infantry soldiers.

**Fünf Glas Bier**, Five glasses of beer.

**Mit zwei Paar Schuhe** (dat.), With two pairs of shoes.

3. But if a determinative word precedes the substantive measured, etc., use the Gen. case, or *von* with Dat., as :

**Ich habe sechs Pfund dieses guten Zuckers** (or : **von diesem guten Zucker**) gekauft.



4. The **measure** (of weight, distance, etc.) is put in the accusative, as :

Dieſer Bleiſtift iſt nur einen Zoll lang,  
This lead-pencil is only an inch long.

Ich habe eine ganze Meile (acc.) marſchirt,  
I have been marching a whole mile.

Dieſes Paket' wiegt ein halbes Pfund (acc.),  
This parcel weighs half-a-pound.

### 186. STRONG VERBS : *ſchlagen* Model.

	INFIN.	PR. IND. 2. 3. sing.	IMPF.	P. PART.
<i>Germ. Model :</i>	<i>ſchlagen</i>	<i>ſchlägt, ſchlägt</i>	<i>ſchlug</i>	<i>geſchlagen</i>
<i>Engl. Analogy :</i>	<i>slay</i>	<i>wanting</i>	<i>slew</i>	<i>slain</i>
(incomplete)				
<i>Ablaut :</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>ü</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>a</i>

#### LIST.

backen (W.N.A.), bake	bäcſt, bäckt	back	gebacken
fahren (N.A.), ride (in a conveyance), drive	fährſt, fährt	fuhr	gefahren
graben, dig	gräbſt, gräbt	grub	gegraben
laden (W.), invite ; load	lädſt, lädt	lud	geladen
ſchaffen, create	ſchaffſt, ſchafft	ſchuf	geſchaffen
ſchlagen, strike	ſchlägſt, ſchlägt	ſchlug	geſchlagen
tragen, carry	trägſt, trägt	trug	getragen
wachſen (N.), grow	wächſeſt, wächſt	wuchſ	gewachſen
waſchen, wash	wäſcheſt, wäſcht	wuſch	gewaſchen

Also the irregular :

ſtehen, stand	ſtehſt, ſteht	{ (ſtund) } { ſtand }	geſtanden
---------------	---------------	--------------------------	-----------

and the usually weak :

fragen, ask	{ fragſt, fragt fragſt, fragt }	{ frug } fragte }	gefragt
-------------	------------------------------------	----------------------	---------

REMARKS. — 1. Baden is usually weak in the Impf. (badte), but strong in the P. Part. (gebaden). Observe also the single *f* in Impf.

2. Jähren is conjugated with *sein* when intr., with *haben* when trans.

3. Schaffen 'to work' and (ver)schaffen 'to procure' are weak. Observe the single *j* in the Impf.

#### VOCABULARY.

to set out, depart, leave, ab-	minute-hand, der Minuten-
fahren	zeiger
rise, aufstehen	pound, das Pfund
invite, einladen	post-office, die Post
understand, verstehen	riding, das Reiten
dine, zu Mittag essen	sentence, der Satz *
go for a drive, spazieren fahren	hour-hand, der Stundenzeiger
absence, die Abwesenheit	cup, die Tasse
little tree, das Bäumchen	tea, der Thee
dozen, das Dutzend	clock, watch, die Uhr
yard, die Elle	train, der Zug *
multiplication-table, das Ein-	two weeks, a fortnight, vier-
maleins	zehn Tage
thread, der Faden *	then, dann
driving, das Fahren	early, früh
driver, coachman, der Kutscher	slow, slowly, langsam
hole, das Loch	at least, wenigstens
night, die Nacht *	first, first of all, zuerst

*Idioms:* 1. The Boston train. Der Zug  $\left\{ \begin{smallmatrix} \text{von} \\ \text{nach} \end{smallmatrix} \right.$  Boston.

2. What time (o'clock) is it? Wie viel Uhr ist es?

#### EXERCISE XXX.

A. 1. Ein dreifacher Faden bricht nicht leicht. 2. Der Kutscher fährt so langsam, daß wir nicht vor drei Viertel auf zwölf ankommen werden. 3. In der einen Hälfte der Welt ist es Tag,

während es in der andern Hälfte Nacht ist. 4. Was giebt es heute Neues? 5. Weshalb haben Sie mich gestern nicht besucht? Erstens weil es regnete, und zweitens weil ich selbst Besuch hatte. 6. Du hast gut gelesen, lies noch einen Tag. 7. Wie viel wiegen Sie? Ich wiege ungefähr hundert und fünfzig Pfund. 8. Der Zug kommt um drei Viertel auf neun an und fährt um sieben Minuten nach zehn ab. 9. Haben Sie Ihre Uhr bei sich? Ja, aber die Feder ist gebrochen. 10. Ich habe zwei Duzend Gläser bestellt, aber sie sind noch nicht angekommen. 11. Wir haben unsere Vettern eingeladen, während der Ferien vierzehn Tage bei uns zuzubringen. 12. Wir essen im Sommer um halb zwei zu Mittag. 13. Ich würde gern mit Ihnen spazieren fahren, wenn Sie mich einladen. 14. Der Hund verbarg den Knochen in ein Loch, welches er hinter dem Apfelbaum grub. 15. Die Magd steht früh (des) Morgens auf, wäscht die Kleider und bäckt Brot. 16. Johann ist ein sehr einfältiger Knabe; er hat noch nicht das Einmaleins gelernt. 17. Wie viel Uhr war es, als der Minutenzeiger auf sechs und der Stundenzeiger zwischen drei und vier stand? 18. Der Bauer frug den Reisenden, wie viel Uhr es sei (wäre), und dieser zog seine Uhr aus der Tasche und sagte ihm, es sei halb eins. 19. Addiere drei Viertel, vier Siebentel, neun Dreizehtel und elf Zwanzigstel; wie viel ist (macht) das? 20. Der Hund würde den Knaben gleich beißen, wenn derselbe ihn schlänge. 21. Gehen Sie zur Gesellschaft der Frau B.? 22. Ich bin nicht eingeladen; mein Bruder wurde eingeladen, aber ich nicht.

*B.* 1. In six days God created Heaven and earth. 2. The patient drank two glasses of wine and three cups of tea yesterday. 3. This silly boy has not even understood what I said to him. 4. Here is good, strong cloth; it costs two and a half dollars a (the) yard. 5. This tree grows quickly; it is at least four times as high as it was three years ago. 6. This exercise is very easy; we shall have finished (with) it in half an hour. 7. The dealer showed us many kinds of ribbon,

red, blue, yellow, etc. 8. Which do you prefer, (the) riding or (the) driving? It is all the same to me. 9. Please tell me what time it is? It is exactly thirteen minutes after eleven. 10. It is nine o'clock, for the hour-hand is (stands) at (auf) nine and the minute-hand at twelve. 11. These three school-boys bought themselves a melon, which weighed almost five pounds. 12. The coachman drove first to the post-office and then to the bank. 13. Between April and September the little tree grew a foot and a half. 14. Precisely at five o'clock the Boston train left, and at 9.45 we arrived. 15. Was this house built before you came here? 16. Add  $\frac{31}{40}$ ,  $\frac{42}{51}$  and  $\frac{82}{90}$ .

## ORAL EXERCISE XXX.

1. Wie viel macht drittehalb, fünftehalb und neuntehalb? 2. Um wie viel Uhr kommt der Zug von Boston an? 3. Was sagte der Reisende, als der Bauer ihn fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 4. Wie viel Uhr ist es nach Ihrer Uhr? 5. Wie viele Sätze hast du schon gelesen? 6. Ist jemand während meiner Abwesenheit gekommen?

## LESSON XXXI.

ADVERBS. — STRONG VERBS: *fallen* MODEL.

## 187.

## ADVERBS.

Adverbs may be arranged according to their meaning as follows, with examples of the simpler and more commonly occurring ones under each class:

## I. Time.

(a) *Past*:  
damals, at that time  
eben, just, just now  
ge'ſtern, yesterday

neulich, the other day, lately  
vor'geſtern, the day before  
yesterday  
vorher', before

*(b) Present :*

heute, to-day

jetzt, }  
nun, } now*(c) Future :*

bald, soon

hernach', afterwards

morgen, to-morrow

nachher', afterwards

nimmer, nevermore

ü'bermorgen, the day after to-  
morrow*(d) Interrogative :*

wann? when?

*(e) General :*

dann, then (past or fut.)

ein'it, once upon a time (past);  
some day (fut.)

endlich, at last

erst, only (not sooner than)

(so)gleich, at once, directly

in'dessen, }  
unter'dessen, } in the meanwhile

immer, always, at all times

je(mal's), ever, at any time

nie(mal's), never, at no time

noch, still, yet

o'ft(mal's), often

j'den, already

jelt'en, seldom, rarely

## II. Place and Direction.

*(a) Demonstrative :*da, }  
da'selb'st, } there, in *that* place(da)hin, thither, *to* that placedort, there, in *that* place(da)her, thence, *from* that  
placehier, here, in *this* placehie(r)her, hither, *to* this place*(b) Negative :*

nirgend's, nowhere

*(c) Interrogative and**Relative :*wo, where, in *what* placewohin, whither, *to* what placewoher, whence, *from* what  
place*(d) General :*

ir'gendwo, anywhere

überall', everywhere

## III. Measure and Degree.

auch, also, ever

etwa, about, nearly

beinahe, }

ja'st, } nearly, almost

ganz,	} wholly, altogether	nur, only
gänzlich,		sehr, very
gar, at all, very		so, so
genug, enough		ungefähr, about
gerade, just, exactly		überhaupt, generally
faum, hardly, scarcely, no		wie? how?
sooner		zu, too
noch, still, more		ziemlich, tolerably

## IV. Affirmation.

ja, yes; to be sure	gewiß, certainly
ja wohl, certainly	natür'lich, of course
freilich, to be sure, indeed	wir'lich, to be sure, indeed
fürwahr, truly, really	ja, it is true, certainly

## V. Negation.

nein, no	nicht, not
----------	------------

## VI. Possibility.

etwa,	} perhaps	wahrscheinlich, probably
vielleicht,		wohl, perhaps

## VII. Necessity.

allerdings, certainly	durchaus, absolutely, entirely
-----------------------	--------------------------------

## VIII. Cause.

daher,	} therefore	warum,	} wherefore, why (interrog. or rel.)
darum,			
deſhalb,			

NOTE. — These last, as well as many of the others, are also used as Conjunctions. See Less. XL.

**188.** STRONG VERBS : *fallen* Model.

INFIN. PR. IND. 2. 3. Sing. IMPF. P. PART.

(same as Inf.)

*Germ. Model :* *fallen* *fällst, fällt* *fiel* *gefallen**Engl. Analogy :* *fall* *wanting* *fell* *fallen*

(incomplete)

*Ablaut :* *a* *ü* *ie* *u*(NOTE. — This is only a *seeming* Ablaut; see § 192, Rem. 4.)

## LIST.

<i>blasen</i> , blow	<i>bläsest, bläst</i>	<i>blies</i>	<i>geblasen</i>
<i>braten</i> , roast tr. and intr.)	<i>brätst, brät</i>	<i>briet</i>	<i>gebraten</i>
<i>fallen</i> (N.), fall	<i>fällst, fällt</i>	<i>fiel</i>	<i>gefallen</i>
<i>fangen</i> , catch	<i>fängst, fängt</i>	<i>f(ie)ng</i>	<i>gefangen</i>
<i>halten</i> , hold	<i>hältst, hält</i>	<i>hielt</i>	<i>gehalten</i>
<i>hängen</i> , hang	<i>hängst, hängt</i>	<i>hi(e)ng</i>	<i>gehangen</i>
<i>hauen</i> , hew	<i>hauest, haut</i>	<i>hieb</i>	<i>gehauen</i>
<i>heißen</i> , bid; be called	<i>beißest, heißt</i>	<i>biess</i>	<i>gebeissen</i>
<i>lassen</i> , let	<i>lässest, läßt</i>	<i>ließ</i>	<i>gelassen</i>
<i>laufen</i> (N. A.), run	<i>läufst, läuft</i>	<i>lief</i>	<i>gelaufen</i>
<i>raten</i> , advise (gov. dat.)	<i>rätst, rät</i>	<i>riet</i>	<i>geraten</i>
<i>rufen</i> , call	<i>rufst, ruft</i>	<i>rief</i>	<i>gerufen</i>
<i>schlafen</i> , sleep	<i>schläfst, schläft</i>	<i>schlieff</i>	<i>geschlafen</i>
<i>stoßen</i> , push	<i>stößest, stößt</i>	<i>stieß</i>	<i>gestoßen</i>

Also the irregular :

*gehen* (N.), go *gehest, geht* *gi(e)ng* *gegangen*REMARKS. — 1. Observe in *braten*, *halten*, *raten* the contracted forms of the 3. sing. Pres. Ind.2. *hängen* is the strong verb (*hieng*, *gehangen*) and is properly intr. (= 'to be suspended'); *hängen* is weak (*hangte*, *gehängt*) and trans., but the distinction is not strictly observed.

3. Observe that heißen and stoßen, having the root vowel long, retain *ß* throughout; whereas lassen varies according to rule, thus: ich lasse, gelassen, but er läßt, ließ, wir ließen.

## VOCABULARY.

to begin, commence, anfangen	man-of-all-work, (farm-) ser-
receive, get, erhalten	vant, der Knecht
please, gefallen	beef, das Rindfleisch
leave, leave behind, lassen	skate, der Schlittschuh
skate, Schlittschuh laufen	skating, das Schlittschuhlaufen
kick, strike, bump, stoßen	bacon, der Speck
cut down, um'hauen	language, die Sprache
butter, die Butter	study, das Studium
play-mate, der Gespieler	last, preceding, vorig
mouse, die Maus *	

**Idioms:** 1. What is the name of? Wie heißt?

2. What is your name? Wie heißen Sie?

3. My name is Henry, Ich heiße Heinrich.

4. I think highly of him (i. e., esteem, value him highly),  
Ich halte viel von ihm.

5. How do you do? (How are you?) Wie geht es Ihnen?

6. He has not been here for a long time, Er ist lange nicht  
hier gewesen (Er ist nicht lange hier gewesen = He has not  
been here long).

## EXERCISE XXXI.

A. 1. Mit Speck fängt man Mäuse. 2. Der Knabe fiel, als er Schlittschuh lief, und stieß sich den Kopf aufs Eis. 3. Ein schlafender Fuchs fängt kein Huhn. 4. Im Herbst bläst der Wind kalt, und pfeift durch den Wald. 5. Essen, trinken und schlafen, heißt (ist) das Leben! 6. Im Winter schläft man gewöhnlich länger als im Sommer. 7. Man läßt jetzt die Fenster offen, denn das Wetter ist warm geworden. 8. Ich laufe nicht gern Schlittschuh, aber meine Gespieler sind große Freunde davon. 9. Die Magd ging zum Laden und kaufte drei Pfund Thee, zwei Pfund Butter,



zehn Pfund Zucker und zwei Flaschen Bier. 10. Dort stand der Baum, den der Knecht neulich umgehauen hat. 11. Sagen Sie mir, wohin Sie vorgestern gingen, als ich Sie in der Königsstraße traf. 12. Der Schüler ließ seine Bücher zu Hause, aber er ist gleich nach Hause gelaufen und hat dieselben geholt. 13. Vorige Woche erhielt meine Schwester einen Brief von ihrer Freundin; fast jede Woche erhält sie einen. 14. Dieselbe schrieb, daß sie den ganzen Winter in Boston zubringen würde, wenn es ihr daselbst gefiele. 15. Der Wind blies den Tag so heftig, daß Georgs Vater ihm riet, nicht aufs Wasser zu gehen. 16. Ich bitte um Verzeihung, daß ich Sie so lange allein gelassen habe. 17. Das franke Kind würde besser geschlafen haben, wenn die andern Kinder weniger Lärm gemacht hätten. 18. Vor zwanzig Jahren hing das Bild meines Vaters an der Wand über dem Kamin, und es hängt noch immer da. 19. Wenn er nicht so früh gegangen wäre, so hätte ich ihn zum Mittagessen eingeladen. 20. Guten Morgen, Frau Vell; wie geht es Ihnen? 21. Es geht mir ganz gut; wie geht es Ihrer Familie? 22. Friedrich II. von Preußen wurde Friedrich der Große genannt.

*B.* 1. My father speaks German almost as well as English. 2. Good evening, my little friend; how do you do? 3. I have not seen you for a long time. 4. A cold, cutting wind blew through the open window. 5. When I was young, I liked to skate. 6. Do you like (to eat) beef? 7. It was a quarter past eight when the concert began. 8. That horse kicks: take care. 9. At what o'clock will you be at home? I shall not be at home before half past ten. 10. When we were going home, we met our friends, who were coming out of church. 11. What is the name of the long street, which runs from King Street towards (nach) the north? 12. My friend, of whom I thought so highly, died in his nineteenth year. 13. In September we began to learn German, and the study of that language pleases us very much. 14. A lost child was crying

upon the street, and calling after its mother. 15. Some one asked it what its name was. 16. The poor child answered that its name was William, and that it lived in Frederick-Street. 17. I wrote to my cousin a month ago, but I think he is angry, for the letter has not yet been answered.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXI.

1. Was ist geschehen, während die Knaben Schlittschuh liefen? 2. Weshalb sind diese Fenster offen gelassen worden? 3. Was kaufte die Magd auf dem Markte? 4. Weshalb ist der Schüler so schnell nach Hause gelaufen? 5. Wann haben Sie Nachricht von Ihrem Bruder erhalten? 6. Sprechen Sie Deutsch?

### LESSON XXXII.

ADVERBS (continued): — FORMATION AND COMPARISON. —  
TABLE OF STRONG VERBS AND GENERAL REMARKS  
ON THE SAME.

#### 189.

#### FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

1. From *Adjectives* (including most adverbs of manner):

(a) Most adjectives may be used without change as adverbs, as :

Er läuft schnell, He runs quickly.

(b) By adding *-lich* (Engl. *-ly*), sometimes with Umlaut, as :

freilich, of course, to be sure

gänzlich, entirely

fürzlich, recently

neulich, lately, the other day

schwerlich, hardly, scarcely

Also to participles, as :

hoffentlich, it is to be hoped

wissentlich, knowingly

(c) By adding *-lings*, as :

*blindlings*, blindly

(d) By adding *-s*, *-ens*, as :

*anders*, otherwise

*links*, to (on) the left

*bereits*, already

*rechts*, to (on) the right

*besonders*, especially

*übrigens*, moreover

Also to participles, as :

*eilends*, hastily

2. From *Substantives*, by the use of the genitive case (sometimes with article), to express :

(a) *Time*, as :

*abends* (or *des Abends*), in the evening

*nachts* (or *des Nachts*), by night (anomalous, *Nacht* being fem.)

*morgens* (or *des Morgens*), in the morning

*anfangs*, in the beginning

(b) *Manner*, as :

*flugs*, in haste

*teils*, in part

3. From *Prepositions*, by adding *-en*, sometimes with *h(a)r-*prefixed, as :

*außen*, } outside, out of  
*draußen*, } doors

*vorn(e)*, before

*oben*, above

*innen*, } within, in-doors  
*drinnen*, }

*unten*, below

*drüben*, over there

*hinten*, behind

NOTE. — Prepositions in composition with verbs are really adverbs (also the particles *ab*, *ein*, *entw*, *weg*, *zurück*).

4. By *combination*. For these see Part III.

## 190. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

1. Some adverbs are compared, as :

balb, } ehe, }	soon	eher	am ehesten
oft, often		öfter	am öftesten
gern, willingly		lieber	am liebsten ( <i>different root</i> )
wohl, } gut, }	well	besser	am besten ( " " )

2. Adjectives are used as adverbs in the *comparative*, as in the positive, without change, as :

Er läuft **schneller** als sein Bruder,  
He runs **more quickly** than his brother.

3. In the *superlative* degree, the form with **am** is used for the *relative* superlative (see §§ 127, 2, and 128), as :

Er läuft **am schnellsten** von allen,  
He runs **most quickly** of all.

4. The *absolute* superlative (see § 127, 2) is usually formed by prefixing an adverb of eminence (such as *sehr*, *höchst*, *äußerst*, etc.), as :

Er schreibt **äußerst** schön,  
He writes **most** (i. e., *very*) beautifully.

5. Adverbs from adjectives in **-ig**, **-lich**, **-sam** use the uninflected form for the superlative *absolute*, as :

Er läßt **freundlichst** grüßen,  
He desires to be **most kindly** remembered.

Also a few monosyllables, as : *längst*, long ago ; *höchst*, most highly.

6. The superlative absolute may also be expressed by **auf das** (*auf's*) prefixed to the superlative adjective, to express the *highest possible degree*, as :

Er besorgt seine Geschäfte **auf das** (aufs) Gewissenhafteste,  
He attends to his business in the most conscientious  
manner (possible).

7. A few superlative adverbs end in **-ens**, with special meanings, as :

**höchstens**, at most  
**meistens**, for the most part  
**wenigstens**, at least  
**nächstens**, shortly

Also the ordinal adverbs, **erstens**, etc., see § 183, (c).

# 191. POSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs generally precede the word they modify (except *genug*, see § 178, Note).

For further particulars as to their position in the sentence, see § 45, Rule 5.

# 192. TABLE OF CLASSIFICATION OF STRONG VERBS.

Class.	Div.	German Model.	English Analogy.	Ablaut.				Lesson.
				INFIN.	IMPF.	P PART.	2, 3. sing. PR. IND. 2. S. IMP.	
I.	<i>a</i>	beißen	bite	ei	ī	ī	—	XXII.
	<i>b</i>	bleiben	(wanting)	ei	īē	īē	—	XXIII.
II.	<i>a</i>	schießen	shoot	ie, etc.	ū	ū	—	XXIV.
	<i>b</i>	frieren	freeze	ie, etc.	ō	ō	—	XXV.
III.	<i>a</i>	singen	sing	ī	ū	u	—	XXVI.
	<i>b</i>	spinnen	<i>spin</i>	ī	ū	ū	—	} XXVII.
	<i>c</i>	helfen	(wanting)	ē	ū	ū	ī	
IV.	—	sprechen	<i>speak</i>	e, etc.	ā	ū	ī, īē	XXVIII.
V.	—	essen	<i>eat</i>	e, etc.	ā	e	ī, īē	XXIX.
VI.	—	schlagen	<i>slay</i>	a	u	a	Umlaut	XXX.
VII.	—	fallen	<i>fall</i>	various	īē	same as Infin.	Umlaut	XXXI.

REMARKS. — 1. The Umlaut of classes VI., VII. does not occur in the Imperative.

2. The varying vowels of the Imperf. Subj. are given in the lists, where necessary.

3. The English Analogies printed in Italics are incomplete.

4. The vowel-change of class VII. is not an Ablaut, but the result of reduplication.

5. The lists of the various classes contain only the verbs of common occurrence ; all others will be found in App. L.

**193.** Distinguish between the verbs of the following groups :

(a)	bitten, beg, ask	bat	gebeten
	beten, pray (intr.)	betete	gebetet
	bieten, bid, offer	bot	geböten
(b)	liegen, lie (be recumbent, intr.)	lag	gelegen
	legen, lay (trans.)	legte	gelegt
	lügen, lie, tell a falsehood	lög	gelögen
(c)	ziehen, pull (trans.), move (intr.)	zog	gezogen
	zeihen, accuse	zieh	geziehen
	zeigen, show	zeigte	gezeigt

**194.** Remember the irregularities of :

essen (P. Part. <i>geessen</i> )	ſtehen, ſtand (or ſtund), ge-
bauen (Impf. <i>hieb</i> )	ſtanden
gehen, ging, gegangen	ziehen, zog, gezogen

Also the double forms in the Impf. of :

heben ( <i>hub, hob</i> )	ſchwören ( <i>ſchwur, ſchwor</i> )
---------------------------	------------------------------------

NOTE. — There are a few strong P. Parts. from verbs now otherwise weak, as: *gemahlen*, from *mahlen*, to grind (Impf. *mahlte*) ; *geſalzen*, from *ſalzen*, to salt (Impf. *ſalzte*) ; *geſpalten*, from *ſpalten*, to split (Impf. *ſpaltete*) ; also some strong participles used only as adjectives, viz. :

erhaben (from erheben), exalted, sublime

bescheiden ( " bescheiden), modest

verwirren ( " verwirren), confused

### VOCABULARY.

to wind up (a clock, etc.), aufziehen	examination, das Examen kitchen, die Küche
pass (an examination), be- stehen	place, spot, die Stelle employed, busy, beschäftigt
greet, salute, grüßen	then (conj.), denn
go (or be) too slow (of a clock, etc.), nach'geben	hungry, hungrig
run after, nach'laufen (+ dat.)	left, links
cry, rufen	right, recht
go (or be) too fast (of a clock, etc.), vor'gehen	salt (adj.), gesalzen
command, der Befehl	in spite of, trotz (+ gen.)
visit, visitors, der Besuch	improbable, unwahrscheinlich
	like, wie

**Idioms:** 1. I saw your friend to-day; he wishes to be remembered to you, Ich habe heute Ihren Freund gesehen; er läßt Sie grüßen.

2. How do you like Boston? Wie gefällt es Ihnen in Boston?

### EXERCISE XXXII.

A. 1. Geht Ihre Uhr vor, oder geht sie nach? 2. Sie geht ganz richtig. 3. Haben Sie Ihre Uhr aufgezogen? 4. Ein kleines Mädchen fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei. 5. Ein Herr zog seine Uhr aus der Tasche und zeigte sie dem Kinde mit den Worten: „Sage du mir selbst, wie viel Uhr es ist.“ 6. Wo sind deine Schwestern? Marie ist oben in der Bibliothek und Sophie ist unten in der Küche. 7. Anfangs wohnten wir nicht gern in dieser Straße, aber jetzt gefällt uns dieselbe ganz gut. 8. Ich glaube, wir werden einen heißen Sommer haben; was meinen Sie? 9. Die meisten Leute essen lieber frisches Fleisch als ge-

jaſſeneß. 10. Trotz deß Befehls deß Königs betete Daniel jeden Tag dreimal. 11. Meine Tante, die in Berlin wohnt und deren Bruder Sie kennen, iſt ſehr krank. 12. Grüßen Sie freundlichſt Ihre Eltern für mich, wenn Sie nach Hauſe kommen. 13. Hoffentlich wird Fritz ſein Examen gut beſtehen, denn er hat außs gewiſſenſtaſteſte ſtudiert. 14. Er wird eß ſchwerlich beſtehen, da er erſt ſeit zwei Jahren in der Schule iſt. 15. Der lügt, welcher wiſſentlich eine Unwahrheit ſagt. 16. Ich eße gern gebratenes Rindfleiß, beſondereß wenn ich recht hungrig bin. 17. Rechts von der Schule ſteht eine Kirche, links ſteht der Marktt. 18. Wir haben lieber abends Beſuch als morgens, denn morgens ſind wir gewöhnlich beſchäftigt. 19. Dieſeß Kind wird nächſteneß krank werden, denn eß hat ſeit drei Tagen faſt gar nichts gegeßen. 20. Eß ſtand früher eine Kirche auf der Stelle wo wir jetzt ſind, aber ſie iſt ſchon längſt verſchwunden. 21. Von wem wurde die Kirche gebaut, wovon Sie ſprechen? 22. Ich weiß eß nicht, eß iſt mir nie geſagt worden.

*B.* 1. Please show me the way to the post-office. 2. If George is up-stairs, tell him that I am down-stairs. 3. I do not like London; I prefer to live in a smaller city. 4. The pen still lies on the book upon which I laid it. 5. Please tell me who lives over the way. 6. This boy has been stung by a bee. 7. Of all animals the horse runs quickest. 8. Give me what you have in your (the left hand. 9. Lessing died on the fifteenth of February 1781. 10. The soldiers ran blindly into the battle and fought like lions. 11. The train for (nach) Montreal leaves (ab'fahren) at twelve o'clock at night, and arrives in Montreal at ten o'clock in the morning. 12. A little beggar ran after a gentleman, and asked him for some money. 13. 'My father is dead,' cried he, 'my mother is dead, and all her children are dead!' 14. 'Who are you then?' asked the gentleman. 15. What answer was given to the beggar by the gentleman, when he was asked for money?



## ORAL EXERCISE XXXII.

1. Was würden Sie sagen, wenn ich Sie fragte, wie viel Uhr es sei? 2. Gefällt Ihnen die Strasse, worin Sie jetzt wohnen? 3. Hat Fritz sein Examen gut bestanden? 4. Wo ist meine Feder? 5. Was für Sprachen haben Sie studiert? 6. Glauben Sie, daß der Herr dem Bettler etwas gegeben hat?

## LESSON XXXIII.

ADVERBS (continued): IDIOMS. — IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS.

## 195. IDIOMATIC USES OF CERTAIN ADVERBS.

1. *nun, well.*

*Nun*, es ist mir einerlei,

*Well* (*why*), it is all the same to me.

NOTE. — *Nun* is here really an interjection, and hence does not throw the subject after the verb.

2. *eben, just, exactly.*

Das ist *eben* derselbe Mann,

That is the *very* (*exactly* the) same man.

Wir sind (*so*)*eben* angekommen, We have *just* arrived.

Das kann man *eben* nicht sagen, One cannot *exactly* say that.

3. *gern, lieber, am liebsten.*

Ich esse *gern* Fisch, I am fond of (eating) fish.

Ich esse *lieber* Fisch als Fleisch, I *prefer* (eating) fish to meat.

Er würde es *gern* thun, He would be glad to do it, would do it *with* pleasure.

Welche Sprache *sprechen* Sie *am liebsten*?

Which language do you *prefer* (speaking)?

4. **erst**, first, only, not before, etc.

Man muß **erst** denken, dann sprechen,  
One must think **first** and then speak.

Mein Bruder wird **erst** morgen kommen,  
My brother will **not** come **before** to-morrow.

Wir hatten **erst** zwei Meilen marschiert,  
We had **only** marched two miles.

Mein Bruder ist **erst** zwei Jahre alt,  
My brother is **only** (not more than) two years old.

5. **zuerst**, first of all; for the first time.

Dieses Schiff ist **zuerst** (vor allen andern) im Hafen angekommen, This ship arrived in the harbour **first** (i. e., **before any other**).

Ich werde **zuerst** (or **erst**) zum Schneider, dann zum Buchhändler gehen, I shall go **first** (of all) to the tailor's, then to the bookseller's.

Ich habe ihn gestern **zuerst** (zum ersten Mal) gesehen, I saw him **for the first time** yesterday.

NOTE.—**Zuerst** refers to *time* only, as above; **erstens** = 'firstly, in the first place,' refers to *order* only, as in enumerations, thus:

Ich konnte nicht kommen, **erstens**, weil es regnete, **zweitens**, weil ich krank war, I could not come, first (in the first place) because it rained, secondly, because I was ill.

6. **schon**, already, as early as, etc.

Sind Sie **schon** da? Are you there **already**?

Ist Ihr Bruder **schon** in Frankreich gewesen?  
Has your brother **ever** been in France?

Ich bin **schon** drei Tage in der Stadt,  
I have been in the city **for the last** three days.

Das Schiff ist **schon** gestern angekommen,  
The ship arrived (**as early as**) yesterday.

Er wird **ſchon** kommen, He will be sure to come (he will come, no doubt).

NOTE. — *Schon* is often, as in the fourth of the above sentences, to be left untranslated in English.

### 7. **nach**, yet, still, more.

#### (a) Of *Time*:

Sind Sie **nach** hier? Are you still here?

Ich bin **nach** nie in Deutschland gewesen,  
I have never yet been in Germany.

Er war **nach** vor einer Stunde hier,  
He was here only an hour ago.

**Nach** heute, Even to-day (while it is yet to-day, not later than to-day).

NOTE. — Observe that *nach* precedes the negatives *nie*, *nicht*, etc.

#### (b) Of *Number*:

**Nach** eine Tasse Thee, Another cup of tea.

**Nach** zwei, Two more.

**Nach** (ein)mal ſo viel, As much again.

### 8. **doch**, yet, after all.

#### (a) *Adversative*:

Er wird **doch** kommen, He will come after all (emphasis on *doch*).

Er wird **doch** kommen!, He will come, I hope (emphasis on *kommen*).

Habe ich es Ihnen **doch** gesagt! I told you so (did I not tell you so?).

NOTE. — Observe that in the last example the verb is at the *beginning* of the principal sentence.

#### (b) With *Imperatives*:

Kommen Sie **doch** herein, Pray come in (*urgent*).

(c) In answer to a *negative question or statement* :

Haben Sie ihn **nicht** gesehen? (Ja), **doch**.

Have you not seen him? **Yes, I have.**

Ich habe es **nicht** gethan. Sie haben es **doch** gethan.

I did not do it. **Yes, you did.**

(For *doch* and *noch* as Conjunctions, see Less. XL.)

NOTE. — *Doch* gives an affirmative answer, where a negative one is expected.

### 9. **auch**, also, even, etc.

**Auch** sein Vater war gegen ihn, **Even** his father was against him.

Mein Bruder war nicht müde, und ich war **auch nicht** müde,  
My brother was not tired, and I was **not tired either**.

Haben Sie **auch** bedacht', was Sie sagen, **Are you sure**  
**you have considered**, what you say? (emphasis on  
*bedacht*).

### 10. **wohl**, indeed, etc.

Er leugnet es **wohl**, aber es ist *doch* wahr, He denies it  
**indeed** (to be sure) but yet it is true.

Sie sind **wohl** ein Fremder? **I suppose** (presume) you  
are a stranger (**no doubt** you are, etc.).

NOTE. — *Gut*, not *wohl*, is the adv. of the adj. *gut*, good, when modifying a transitive verb.

### 11. **ja**, yes, to be sure, etc.

Thun Sie es **ja**', **Be sure** to do it, do it by all means  
(emphasis on *ja*).

Er ist **ja** mein Vater', He is my father, **you know** (em-  
phasis on *Vater*).

### 12. **nur**.

(With the Imperative.)

Kommen Sie **nur** herein, **Just** come in (reassuringly).

## 196.

## IRREGULAR STRONG VERBS.

I. *Thun*, to do, Impf. *that*, P. Part. *gethan*.

*That*, like Engl. 'did,' is a relic of the old Impf. by reduplication, the old form being *te-ta*, i. e., the stem *ta-* with reduplicating syll. *te-* prefixed, then *te-te*, *tet*, *that*. *Thun* rejects *t* of the termination throughout, except in 1. Sing. Pres. Ind., and in the Pres. Subj.

## II. IMPERFECT-PRESENT VERBS.

INFIN.	PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.	IMPERFECT		P. PART.
	1. Sing.	1. Plur.		IND.	SUBJ.	
wissen, know	weiß	wissen	wisse	wußte	wüßte	gewußt
dürfen, dare	darf	dürfen	dürfe	durfte	dürfte	gedurft
können, can	kann	können	könne	konnte	könnte	gekonnt
mögen, may	mag	mögen	möge	mochte	möchte	gemocht
müssen, must	muß	müssen	müsse	mußte	müßte	gemußt
sollen, shall	soll	sollen	solle	sollte	sollte	gesollt

III. *Wollen*, will, Pres. Ind. 1. Sing. *will*, 1. Plur. *wollen*, Pres. Subj. *wolle*, Impf. Ind. *wollte*, Subj. *wollte*, P. Part. *gewollt*.

REMARKS. — I. Observe the following peculiarities in the verbs under II. and III.:

- (a) All have the *same* vowel (mostly with Umlaut) in the Inf. and the *Plur.* of the Pres. Ind.; but (except *sollen*) a *different* vowel in the *Sing.* of the same tense.
- (b) The *Impf. Ind.* and *P. Part.* have the weak endings *-te*, *-t*, but the vowel is without Umlaut; *wissen* changes *i* to *u*; *mögen* changes *g* into *ch*.
- (c) The *Impf. Subj.* has Umlaut, except in *sollen* and *wollen*.

(d) The Sing. of the Pres. Ind. of these Verbs is as follows, the Plural being regular:

wissen	{ ich weiß du weißt er weiß	dürfen	{ ich darf du darfst er darf	können	{ ich kann du kannst er kann
mögen	{ ich mag du magst er mag	müssen	{ ich muß du mußt er muß	sollen	{ ich soll du sollst er soll
		wollen	{ ich will du willst er will		

Observe here the *different* vowel of the Inf. and Indic. (except *soll*); also the want of the *person-ending* in the 1. and 3. Sing. (*ich*, *er weiß*, *darf*, *kann*, etc., not *weiß-t*, *darf-t*, *kann-t*; compare Engl. **can**, **may**, etc., not *can-s*, *may-s*, etc.).

2. The forms of the Present in the verbs under II. were originally *Strong Imperfects* (hence their want of person-endings), which came to be used with a *Present* meaning; the new (weak) Imperfects were formed from these, with vowel-change.

3. The Present of *wollen* was originally a Pres. Subj., used as Indic., and therefore also without full person-endings.

4. The Imperative is wanting in all under II., except *wissen*, Imper. *wiße*.

NOTES.— I. *Wissen* (= Fr. *savoir*) is used of knowledge, and of *things* only; *kennen* (= Fr. *connaître*) of *acquaintance*, of persons *and* things, thus:

**Wissen** Sie den Weg? Do you know the road? (i. e., do you know which is the right road?)

**Kennen** Sie den Weg? Are you acquainted (familiar) with the road?

**Kennen** Sie meinen Bruder? Do you know my brother?

**Wissen** Sie, was er gesagt hat? Do you know what he said?

2. All these verbs, except *wissen*, govern another Verb in the Infin. without *zu* (see Less. XLV), as:

*Ich darf gehen*, I am permitted to go.

### VOCABULARY.

to put on (a hat), aufsetzen	watch-key, der Uhrschlüssel
expression, der Ausdruck *	dwelling-house, das Wohn-
French (language), Französisch	haus
building, das Gebäude	clear(ly), distinct(ly), deutlich
commandment, das Gebot'	although, obgleich'

*Idioms*: 1. Will you be so kind as to lend me your pen? Wollen Sie so gut sein und mir Ihre Feder leihen? (lit., will you be so kind and, etc.)

2. I am sorry (I regret), Es thut mir leid (leid to be treated as a separable particle).

3. What is that in German? Wie heißt das auf Deutsch?

4. I do not need to go to school to-day, Ich brauche heute nicht zur Schule zu gehen.

5. He knows French, Er kann Französisch.

### EXERCISE XXXIII.

A. 1. Ich kann dich nicht verstehen; sprich doch deutlicher. 2. Kommen Sie nur herein, wenn Sie wollen. 3. Ist es Ihnen schon gelungen, Französisch zu lernen? 4. Ich werde noch heute diese Lektion lernen müssen, und es ist schon drei Viertel auf zehn. 5. Noch vor vierzehn Tagen liefen wir Schlittschuh, und heute ist das Eis geschmolzen. 6. Das erste Gebot heißt (is): „Du sollst keine andern Götter neben mir haben.“ 7. Es thut mir leid, daß wir erst morgen abreisen; ich wäre lieber heute abgereist. 8. Thut es Ihnen nicht auch leid, daß Sie bis morgen bleiben müssen? 9. Wie heißt der englische Ausdruck 'Do you know my friend?' auf Deutsch? „Kennen Sie meinen Freund?“ 10. Mein Onkel und meine Tante sind schon gestern angekommen, aber meine Vettern und Cousinen werden erst übermorgen kommen können. 11. Weißt du, daß deine Mutter angekommen ist? 12. Ich will diesen Hut nicht aufsetzen, weil er mir zu klein ist. 13. Heute darf ich länger

hier bleiben; ich brauche nicht vor zehn Uhr zu Hause zu sein. 14. Wollen Sie sich nicht setzen? 15. Ich werde mehr Geld haben müssen; ich habe nicht genug zur Reise. 16. Je mehr man hat, desto mehr will man. 17. Dieses unartige Kind weiß nicht, was es will. 18. Ich habe eben gehört, daß meine Mutter krank ist, aber ich werde sie nicht vor morgen besuchen können. 19. Wollen Sie gefälligst meinen Brief zur Post bringen? 20. Wilhelm wird den ganzen Tag zu Hause bleiben müssen, weil er sich erkältet hat. 21. Mein Bruder spricht gut Deutsch, obgleich er erst in in seinem siebzehnten Jahre das Studium dieser Sprache angefangen hat. 22. Wollen Sie so gut sein und mir sagen (mir zu sagen), wie viel Uhr es ist?

*B.* 1. A stranger wants to speak to (sprechen + acc.) you. 2. That building was first a bank, then a shop, but it is now a dwelling-house. 3. How do you know that? I know it because I have heard it from my father. 4. What shall I do? I have lost all my money. 5. Do you know who has torn this book? 6. No, I do not know who has torn it. 7. Can you write the name of that stranger? 8. Do you know German? No, but I know French. 9. Do you know the difference between the words 'kennen' and 'wissen'? 10. I had already put on my hat, and was just on the point of going out, when the rain began. 11. These two ships set sail (abfahren) at the same time, but the smaller arrived first. 12. I could not wind up my watch yesterday evening; I had no watch-key about me. 13. I cannot remain now any longer; I must be at home at ten o'clock. 14. I know this street, but I do not know the name of it (say: how it is called). 15. A brave man is esteemed by everybody. 16. Of what is bread made?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Wie heisst 'I am sorry' auf Deutsch? 2. Weshalb bleiben Sie heute nicht länger? 3. Können Sie Deutsch?



4. Sollte man gegen jedermann freundlich sein? 5. Wie gefällt Ihnen Paris? 6. Wie viel Uhr ist es, wenn der Stundenzeiger zwischen vier und fünf und der Minutenzeiger auf zehn steht?

## LESSON XXXIV.

### THE MODAL AUXILIARIES.

**197.** The Verbs **dürfen**, **können**, **mögen**, **müssen**, **sollen**, **wollen** (see last Lesson), with the Verb **lassen** (Class VII, Less. XXXI) are called **Modal Auxiliaries**, or **Auxiliary Verbs of Mood**, since they are used to form combinations equivalent to various **Moods**. Thus: *lasset uns gehen*, 'let us go,' is really equivalent to an *Imperative Mood* 1. Pl. of *gehen*; *ich kann gehen*, 'I can go,' to a *Potential Mood*, etc.

**198.** These Modal Auxiliaries differ from the English Auxiliaries *can*, *may*, *must*, *shall*, *will*, in having an Infinitive and a Past Participle, and in the consequent ability to form a complete set of **compound tenses**, which are wanting in the English Verbs, and must therefore be supplied in that language by equivalent phrases, as shown in the following partial paradigms (see also Less. XXXV).

<b>dürfen</b> , to be permitted		<b>können</b> , to be able (can)		<b>mögen</b> , to like, be allowed (may)
---------------------------------	--	----------------------------------	--	--

#### PRESENT INDICATIVE.

<i>ich darf</i> , I am permitted, may		<i>ich kann</i> , I can, am able		<i>ich mag</i> , I like, may
---------------------------------------	--	----------------------------------	--	------------------------------

#### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>ich dürfe</i> , I (may) be permitted,		<i>ich könne</i> , I (may) be able		<i>ich möge</i> , I (may) like
--	--	------------------------------------	--	--------------------------------

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich durfte, I was per- mitted	ich konnte, I could, was able	ich mochte, I liked, might
----------------------------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich dürfte, I might be permitted	ich könnte, I could, might be able	ich möchte, I might like
-------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------

## PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe gedurft, I have been per- mitted	ich habe gekonnt, I have been able	ich habe gemocht, I have liked
---	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe gedurft, I (may) have been permitted	ich habe gekonnt, I (may) have been able	ich habe gemocht, I (may) have liked
---	--	---

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich hatte gedurft, I had been per- mitted	ich hatte gekonnt, I had been able	ich hatte gemocht, I had liked
---	---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte gedurft, I might have been permitted	ich hätte gekonnt, I might have been able	ich hätte gemocht, I might have liked
--	---	--

## FUTURE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde dürfen, I shall be permitted	ich werde können, I shall be able	ich werde mögen, I shall like
---	--------------------------------------	----------------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gedurft haben, I shall have been permitted	ich werde gekonnt haben, I shall have been able	ich werde gemocht haben, I shall have liked
--	---	---

## SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich würde dürfen, I should be permitted	ich würde können, I should be able	ich würde mögen, I should like
---	------------------------------------	--------------------------------

## COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gedurft haben, I should have been permitted	ich würde gekonnt haben, I should have been able	ich würde gemocht haben, I should have liked
---	--	--

---

<b>müssen</b> , to be compelled (must)	<b>sollen</b> , to be obliged (shall)	<b>wollen</b> , to be willing (will)
--	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

## PRESENT INDICATIVE.

ich muß, I am compelled, must	ich soll, du sollst, I am (obliged) to, thou <b>shalt</b>	ich will, I will, intend to, am about to
-------------------------------	---	--

## PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich müße, I (may) be compelled	ich solle, I (may) be obliged	ich wolle, I (may) be willing
--------------------------------	-------------------------------	-------------------------------

## IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich mußte, I was compelled	ich sollte, I was (obliged) to, ought	ich wollte, I was willing
----------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------

## IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich müßte, I might be compelled	ich sollte, I might be obliged	ich wollte, I might be willing, would
------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--

## PERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich habe gemußt, I have been com- pelled	ich habe gesollt, I have been obliged	ich habe gewollt, I have been wil- ling
--	---	---

## PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe gemußt, I (may) have been compelled	ich habe gesollt, I (may) have been obliged	ich habe gewollt, I (may) have been willing
--	---	---

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

ich hatte gemußt, I had been com- pelled	ich hatte gesollt, I had been obliged	ich hatte gewollt, I had been willing
--	--	--

## PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hätte gemußt, I might have been compelled	ich hätte gesollt, I might have been obliged, <b>ought</b> to have	ich hätte gewollt, I might have been willing
---	---	--

## FUTURE INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde müssen, I shall be com- pelled	ich werde sollen, I shall be obliged	ich werde wollen, I shall be willing
--	---	---

## FUTURE PERFECT.

ich werde gemußt haben, I shall have been com- pelled	ich werde gesollt ha- ben, I shall have been obliged	ich werde gewollt haben, I shall have been wil- ling
--	--	---

## SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich würde müssen,	ich würde sollen,	ich würde wollen,
I should be com- pelled	I should be obliged	I should be wil- ling

## COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gemußt haben, I should have been com- pelled	ich würde geollt ha- ben, I should have been obliged	ich würde gewollt haben, I should have been wil- ling
---	--	--

## 199. FURTHER PECULIARITIES OF MODAL AUXILIARIES.

1. They govern an Infinitive without *zu*, as :

Er muß **gehen**, He must *go*.

2. In the compound tenses, when a governed Infinitive occurs, the weak P. Part. is replaced by the Infinitive (really the old strong P. Part. without prefix *ge-*, which coincides in form with the Infinitive), as :

Ich habe **gemußt**, I have been obliged ; — but

Ich habe es **thun müssen**, I have been obliged to do it.

3. In subordinate sentences, their auxiliary of tense does not come last, but precedes both the governed infinitive and the participle of the Modal Auxiliary, as :

Er sagte, daß er es **habe** thun müssen, He said, that he had been obliged to do it.

NOTE. — The foregoing peculiarities are all shared by the verbs *heißen*, *helfen*, *hören*, *lassen*, *machen*, *sehen* ; for other verbs governing an Infinitive without *zu*, see LESS. XLV.

4. The *shorter* (and older) forms of the Conditional (viz. : Impf. and Plupf. Subj., see § 111) are preferred to the longer ones (with *würde*), thus :

## SIMPLE CONDITIONAL.

ich <b>dürfte</b>	= I should be permitted
ich <b>könnte</b>	= I    "    "    able
ich <b>möchte</b>	= I    "    like
ich <b>müßte</b>	= I    "    be compelled
ich <b>sollte</b>	= I    "    "    obliged
ich <b>wollte</b>	= I    "    "    willing

## COMPOUND CONDITIONAL.

ich hätte	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{gedurft, dürfen} \\ \text{gekonnt, können} \\ \text{gemocht, mögen} \\ \text{gemußt, müssen} \\ \text{gefolgt, sollen} \\ \text{gewollt, wollen} \end{array} \right.$	I should have	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{been permitted} \\ \text{"    able} \\ \text{liked} \\ \text{been compelled} \\ \text{"    obliged} \\ \text{"    willing} \end{array} \right.$
-----------	---	---------------	---

REMARKS. — 1. The Engl. auxiliaries also use by preference shorter forms of the Comp. Condit., but differently constructed thus:

ich hätte es <b>thun</b>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{können} \\ \text{mögen} \\ \text{müssen} \\ \text{sollen} \\ \text{wollen} \end{array} \right.$	= I	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{could} \\ \text{might} \\ \text{must} \\ \text{should} \\ \text{would} \end{array} \right.$	have done it
--------------------------	---	-----	---	--------------

Observe that the Engl. Verbs have the *Modal Auxiliary* ('could,' 'might,' etc.) in the *Simple Tense* (**Impf.**), and the *governed verb* ('have done') in the *Compound Tense* (**Perf. Inf.**); whereas the Germ. Verbs have the *Modal Auxiliary* (hätte...können, etc.) in the *Compound Tense* (**Plupf. Subj.**), and the *governed verb* (thun) in the *Simple Tense* (**Pres. Inf.**).

2. Distinguish carefully between 'could,' *Indic.* (= **was** able, **konnte**) and 'could,' *Conditional* (= **would** be able, **könnte**); and so with the other verbs, thus:

Er konnte es nicht thun = He could not (was not able to) do it (*Indic.*).

Er könnte es thun, wenn er wollte = He could (would be able to) do it, if he were willing (*Condit.*).

### VOCABULARY.

to remain up, sit up, auf'bleiben	fellow-creature, neighbour,
go out, aus'gehen	der Nächste
thank, danken (+ dat.)	disaster, das Unglück
bow to, greet, grüßen (trans.)	untruth, falsehood, die Un-
depend, rely (upon), sich ver-	wahrheit
lassen (auf + acc.)	over again, noch (ein)mal'
moment, der Augenblick	whether, if, ob
railway, die Eisenbahn	else, otherwise, sonst

**Idioms:** 1. Will you have a cup of tea? No, thank you, *Wollen Sie eine Tasse Thee? Ich danke (Ihnen).*

2. In fine weather, *Bei schönem Wetter.*

3. I have heard (it) said, etc., *Ich habe sagen hören, u. s. w.*

### EXERCISE XXXIV.

**A.** 1. Du hast deine Aufgabe sehr schlecht gemacht; du wirst sie gewiß noch (ein)mal' machen müssen. 2. Darf ich einen Augenblick Ihren Bleistift brauchen? Ich habe den meinen verloren. 3. Wir müssen gleich zur Schule gehen, sonst kommen wir zu spät. 4. Man sollte seinen Nächsten lieben, wie sich selbst. 5. Vorige Woche hätte mein Vater sein Haus verkaufen können, aber er hat es nicht gewollt. 6. Jetzt möchte er es gern verkaufen, aber niemand will es. 7. Deine Bettern lassen dich freundlichst grüßen. 8. Wissen Sie, wie der Herr heißt, der mich soeben begrüßt hat? 9. Du sollst zu deinem Vater gehen; er will dich sprechen. 10. Der Knabe mag sagen, was er will; ich weiß, daß er eine Unwahrheit gesagt hat. 11. Möchten Sie nicht bei diesem schönen Wetter spazieren fahren? 12. Hast du den Zug von Buffalo angekommen sehen? 13. Ja wohl, ich habe ihn angekommen sehen, aber es war niemand darauf, den ich kannte. 14. Er hat gedurft, aber

er hat nicht gewollt. 15. Ich habe in der Stadt sagen hören, daß ein großes Unglück auf der Eisenbahn geschehen ist. 16. Er soll von diesem Baum gesprungen sein, aber ich kann es kaum glauben. 17. Ich darf nicht so spät aufbleiben als mein älterer Bruder; ich muß jeden Abend um zehn Uhr zu Bette gehen. 18. Ich will thun, was ich kann; darauf können Sie sich verlassen. 19. Von wem wurde das Buch geschrieben, das Sie soeben lasen? 20. Es thut mir leid, daß Sie so lange auf mich haben warten müssen; ich konnte meine Handschuhe nicht finden.

*B.* 1. By whom was this picture painted? 2. I should like to know what time it is. 3. May you go out, if you want to? No, we are obliged to stay at home the whole day. 4. I do not like (I like no) tea; I prefer (the) coffee. 5. Could you help me with my lesson? 6. I should certainly help you with it, if I could. 7. He may say, what he will; it is all the same to me. 8. My father could have sold his house last year, but now it is impossible, for nobody wants to buy it. 9. Charles has beaten his dog with a stick; he should not have done that. 10. May I offer you a piece of meat? No, thank you. 11. Have (let) the messenger wait, till I write an answer. 12. I should like to read this French book, but I do not know any French. 13. I am sorry that I have not been able to come sooner. 14. He will be obliged to study another year, if he does not pass his examination. 15. Sophia should not have gone for a walk, since the weather is so cold. 16. The horse I wanted to buy was already sold.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXIV.

1. Wie heisst das erste Gebot? 2. Wissen Sie, ob wir morgen zur Schule gehen müssen? 3. Darf ich Ihnen eine Tasse Thee anbieten? 4. Weshalb haben Sie mir mit meiner Aufgabe nicht helfen wollen? 5. Wie lange werden wir auf Fritz warten müssen? 6. Sollte man seinen Nächsten lieben?



## LESSON XXXV.

## MODAL AUXILIARIES (continued): IDIOMS.

**200.** The following are the most important of the various meanings of the Modal Auxiliaries :

1. **Dürfen** denotes **permission**, as :

Darf ich fragen? **May** I ask.

Sie **dürfen** jetzt nach Hause gehen, You **may** go home now.

Er hat nichts sagen **dürfen**, He has not been **permitted** (**allowed**) to say anything.

2. **Können** denotes :(a) **ability** (of *persons*), as :

Er **konnte** schön schreiben, He **could** (was **able** to, **knew how** to) write beautifully.

Ich **hätte** nicht kommen **können**, I **could** not have (would not have been **able** to) come.

(b) **possibility** (of *events*), as :

Es **kann** sein, It **may** be (so), it is **possible**.

3. **Mögen** denotes :(a) **preference, liking** (of *persons*), as :

Ich **mag** dieses Gedicht nicht, I do not **like** (care for) this poem.

Er **mochte** nicht arbeiten, He did not **like** to work.

Ich hätte Ihren Bruder sehen **mögen**, I should have **liked** to see your brother.

NOTE.—This is the usual meaning in the *first person* ; also in the Impf. (Indic. and Condit.) throughout.

(b) **concession, possibility** (in 2. and 3. person only), as :

Er mag gehen, He may go (as far as I am concerned),  
or : Let him go.

Das mag sein, That may be (for all I know).

. NOTE.—The Engl. 'may' denoting permission must be rendered by *dürfen* in the first person, as :

May I accompany you? Darf ich Sie begleiten?

(c) Observe this idiom :

Ich werde morgen ausgehen, mag es regnen oder nicht, I  
shall go out to-morrow, whether it rains or not.

4. *Müssen* denotes necessity, as :

Alle Menschen müssen sterben, All men must die.

Es muß gestern geschehen sein, It must have happened  
yesterday.

Wir werden ausgehen müssen, We shall be compelled  
(or 'obliged,' or 'shall have') to go.

NOTE.—'To be obliged, compelled' after a negative is rendered by *brauchen*, as :

I am not obliged to go, Ich *brauche* nicht zu gehen.

5. *Sollen* denotes duty or obligation, imposed on the  
subject *by the will of another*.

(a) Imposed by the speaker, as :

Du sollst nicht stehlen, Thou shalt not steal.

(b) Imposed by some person other than, but recognised  
by, the speaker, as :

Ich soll gehen, I am to go.

Er hätte gehen sollen, He ought to have gone.

Was soll geschehen? What is to be done?

Was sollte ich thun? What was I to do?

(c) It also denotes a statement on the part of another  
as to the subject, as :

Er soll sehr reich sein, He is said to be very rich.

6. **Wollen** denotes(a) the exertion of the **will** on the part of the subject, as :Er **will** nicht gehorchen, He **will** not (refuses to) obey.

(b) intention or impending action, as :

Er **will** morgen abreißen, He **intends** (means) to depart.Das Eis **will** brechen, The ice **is about** to break  
(**threatens** to break).Er **wollte** eben gehen (= war eben im Begriff zu gehen),  
He was just **on the point** of going.(c) a **statement** or **claim** on the part of the subject, as :Er **will** in Indien gewesen sein, He **asserts** that he has  
been (**pretends** to have been) in India.7. **Laſſen** is used(a) as auxiliary of the **Imperative Mood**, as :**Laſſen** Sie uns hier bleiben, Let us remain here.(b) to express **permission**, etc., as :Man hat den Dieb entſpringen **laſſen**, The thief has been  
**allowed** to escape.(c) to express the **agency** of another, as :Der Offizier **ließ** den Soldaten **beſtrafen**, The officer  
**ordered** the soldier **to be** punished.Aſchenputtels Vater **ließ** den Baum **umhauen**, Cinderella's  
father **had** the tree cut down.

NOTE. — The infin. in the former of these examples is rendered by the *passive* infinitive in English, the object of the verb *laſſen* being understood. Supply the ellipsis as follows :

Der Offizier hat **jemand** (obj. of *laſſen*), den Soldaten (obj. of *beſtrafen*), **beſtrafen laſſen**, The officer has ordered *somebody* to punish the soldier.

(d) **reflexively**, as :

Er ließ sich leicht betrügen, He suffered himself to be deceived easily.

Ich ließ es mir gefallen, I submitted to it.

Es läßt sich nicht leugnen, It cannot be denied.

## 201. How to render SHALL and WILL.

1. The Engl. 'shall' and 'will' must *both* be rendered by **werden** when they express *mere* futurity, as :

I **shall** be drowned and nobody **will** save me,

Ich **werde** ertrinken und niemand **wird** mich retten.

2. But if they express **more** than mere futurity (e. g., *obligation* or *determination*), they must be rendered by **sollen** and **wollen** respectively, as :

I **will** be drowned and nobody **shall** save me,

Ich **will** ertrinken und niemand **soll** mich retten.

## 202. Observe the following parallel idioms :

- |     |   |   |
|-----|---|---|
| (a) | { | Er hat es nicht thun können, He has not been able to do it.       |
|     |   | Er kann es nicht gethan haben, He cannot (possibly) have done it. |
| (b) | { | Er hat es nicht thun mögen, He did not like to do it.             |
|     |   | Er mag es gethan haben, He may (possibly) have done it.           |
| (c) | { | Er hat es thun müssen, He has been obliged to do it.              |
|     |   | Er muß es gethan haben, He must have done it.                     |
| (d) | { | Er hat es thun sollen, He should (ought to) have done it.         |
|     |   | Er soll es gethan haben, He is said to have done it.              |

- (e) { Er hat es thun wollen, He intended to have done it.  
 Er will es gethan haben, He pretends (claims) to have done it.

## VOCABULARY.

to put on, draw on (coat, etc.)	Englishman, der Engländer
anziehen	naught, cipher; zero, die Null
expect, erwarten	shoemaker, der Schuhmacher
chat, talk, plaudern	proverb, das Sprichwort
reap, schneiden	studying, das Studieren
disturb, interrupt, stören	lesson, die Stunde
try, versuchen	bunch of grapes, die Traube
last, continue, währen	thermometer, der or das Ther=
American, der Amerikaner	mome'ter
physician, doctor, der Arzt *	overcoat, der Überzieher
beggar-woman, die Bettlerin	as far as, bis nach
steam-engine, die Dampf=	dangerous(ly), gefährlich
maschine	sour, sauer

- Idioms:** 1. A doctor has been sent for, Man hat einen Arzt holen lassen.  
 2. Every other day (every alternate day), Einen Tag um den andern.  
 3. Every week, Alle acht Tage.  
 4. I should think so! Das sollte ich meinen!  
 5. In the right way, Auf die richtige Weise (acc.).

## EXERCISE XXXV.

A. 1. Der Telegraph soll von einem Amerikaner erfunden worden sein. 2. „Wer im Sommer nicht mag schneiden, muß im Winter Hunger leiden,“ heißt ein deutsches Sprichwort. 3. Wolle nur, was du kannst, so wirst du können, was du willst. 4. Nächste Woche sollen wir einen Feiertag haben, wenn bis Sonnabend fleißig studiert wird. 5. Marie wollte ihre Lektion in einer halben Stunde lernen, aber sie hat es nicht gekonnt. 6. Wir würden alle glücklicher leben, wenn wir immer thäten, was wir thun sollten. 7. Ich werde die

Lektion nie lernen können. 8. Du wirst sie lernen können, wenn du es nur auf die richtige Weise versuchst. 9. Man darf nicht in der Schule plaudern; das stört den Lehrer und die Schüler. 10. Weßhalb hat Mischenputtels Vater den Baum umhauen lassen? 11. Sollte Herr B. während meiner Abwesenheit kommen, so lassen Sie ihn auf mich warten. 12. Ich möchte nur wissen, warum Georg auf sich warten läßt! 13. Ich möchte Sie nicht stören, aber sagen Sie mir gefälligst, wie dieser Tag auf Englisch heißt. 14. Georgs Vater soll gefährlich krank sein; man hat zwei Ärzte holen lassen. 15. Der Vogel wollte eben vom Baume fliegen, als der Jäger ihn schöß. 16. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun, mein Vater läßt Ihnen sagen, daß er Sie heute Abend erwartet. 17. Habe ich Sie sagen hören, daß Sie jeden Tag eine deutsche Stunde nehmen? 18. Nein, ich nehme einen Tag um den andern eine Stunde. 19. Was mich betrifft, so möchte ich lieber alle drei Tage meine Stunden nehmen. 20. Das sollte ich meinen, denn Sie würden mehr Zeit zum Studieren haben. 21. Ehrlich währt am längsten, und Unrecht schlägt seinen eigenen Herrn.

*B.* 1. Let us take a walk: I cannot work any longer. 2. The beggar-woman, who has just asked us for money, says that she is (claims to be) a hundred years old. 3. She is not quite so old, but she is said to be at least above (über + acc.) ninety years old. 4. The fox said: 'The grapes are sour; I do not like them.' 5. The fox said the grapes were sour, and that he did not like them. 6. Might I ask you how far you are going? As far as Montreal. 7. Should I put on my overcoat? 8. I should think so! The thermometer is (stands) below zero. 9. Is it true that this traveller knows three languages? It may be [so], but I do not believe it. 10. If you should see little Freddy up-stairs, let him come to me. 11. By which shoemaker do you have your shoes made? 12. The steam-engine is said to have been invented by an Englishman. 13. Lazy boys learn only because they are obliged

to learn. 14. He must have been very ill, as (da) he is still so weak. 15. This house is said to have cost four thousand dollars, but I should not like to give two thousand for it. 16. He has not been able to come on account of the storm, otherwise he would be here already.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXV.

1. Möchten Sie nicht eine Reise nach Europa machen? 2. Gehen Sie alle Tage nach der Stadt, oder nur alle zwei Tage? 3. Was machen Sie, wenn Sie nicht mehr studieren können? 4. Wer soll das Telephon erfunden haben? 5. Hat man einen Arzt holen lassen? 6. Haben Sie das Geld bezahlen müssen?

### LESSON XXXVI.

#### COMPOUND VERBS.

**203.** The Prefixes of Compound Verbs may be either **Inseparable** or **Separable**.

#### **204.** A. INSEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: The omission of **ge-** in the P. Part.

The prefixes **be-**, **er-**, **emp-**, **ent-**, **ge-**, **her-**, **zer-**, **miß-**, **wider-** are always *inseparable* and *unaccented*, the principal accent falling on the **verb**.

REMARKS.—1. The particle **miß-** varies in usage, as shown in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 209, 1, below.

2. Remarks on the force and meaning of these particles are given in Part III.

#### **205.** B. SEPARABLE PREFIXES.

REMEMBER: 1. The Prefix is separated from the Verb only in **Simple Tenses** and **Principal** (including **Direct Interrogative** and **Imperative**) **Sentences**.

2. The **ge-** of the P. Part. and **zu** of the Infin. come between prefix and verb.

3. The principal accent is on the **prefix**.

**206.** The **Separable Prefixes** are :

1. The **simple prepositional** and other **adverbs**, **ab-**, **an-**, **auf-**, **aus-**, etc. ; **da(r)-**, **fort-**, **empor-**, **her-**, **hin-**, etc.

2. The **compound adverbs**, such as : **dabon-**, **dazu-**, etc. ; **voran-**, **voraus-**, etc. ; **entgegen-**, **entzwei-**, **zurück-**, etc.

NOTES.-- 1. Observe that these compound adverbs are all accented on the *second* syllable.

2. The use of the compound prefixes with **her-** and **hin-** is defined in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 210, below.

#### EXAMPLES OF VERBS WITH PREFIXES.

(a) Simple Verbs.	(b) Inseparable Compounds.	(c) Separable Compounds.
<b>gehen</b> , go	<b>vergehen</b> , pass away	<b>ausgehen</b> , go out <b>zurückgehen</b> , go back
<b>reißen</b> , tear	<b>zerreißen</b> , tear to pieces	
<b>kommen</b> , come	<b>bekommen</b> , obtain	<b>entgegenkommen</b> , come to meet
<b>finden</b> , find	<b>erfinden</b> , invent	<b>ausfinden</b> , find out

Other Separable Prefixes are :

3. **Substantives**, forming one idea with the verb,

(a) as *objects* of the verb, as :

**achtgeben**, pay attention (attend); **danke**, return  
thanks (thank); **stattfinden**, take place (occur);  
**teilnehmen**, take part (interest one's self).

NOTE. The substantives in these combinations are usually spelt with a small letter, and written in one word with the verb when they precede it.

(b) with **prepositions** (= *adverbial phrases*), as :



**sich in Acht** nehmen (refl.), take care (be careful);  
**zu Leide** thun, injure, hurt; **zu Stande** bringen,  
 complete; **zu Stande** kommen, be completed; **im**  
**Stande** sein, be able; **zum Vorschein** kommen, make  
 one's appearance (appear); **zu Mute** sein, feel.

REMARK. — These substantives occupy the same position in the sentence as separable prefixes, thus:

**Ich** habe auf sein Betragen **acht**gegeben,  
 I have observed his conduct.

**Ich** sagte ihm für seine Freundlichkeit **dan**k,  
 I thanked him for his kindness.

NOTE: — Observe that in the above sentences the simple objects without preposition (*acht, dank*) *follow* the prepositional phrases (*auf sein Betragen, für seine Freundlichkeit*), contrary to rule, on account of their character as separable prefixes.

4. **Adjectives** as prefixes are usually *separable*, as:

**freilassen**, set free (liberate); **festhalten**, hold fast (detain); **sich los**sagen (refl.), renounce.

But many are inseparable, of which fuller particulars are given in the Supplementary Lesson E., § 212.

For **voll-** as prefix see § 208, below.

## 207.

### C. DOUBLE PREFIXES.

1. **Separable + Separable** prefix: these are compound adverbs, and both **separable** (see § 206, 2, above).

2. **Separable + Inseparable**; the former alone is separated, as:

**an'erkennen**, acknowledge, **ich erkenne an** (but see Suppl. Less. E., § 213).

3. **Inseparable + Separable**; both **inseparable**, as:

**beauf'tragen**, authorize, **ich beauf'tragte** ihn, I authorized him; **beraun'stalten**, arrange, **ich beraun'staltete** dies, I arranged this.

NOTE.—These are really not compound but *derivative* verbs, from compound nouns (Auftrag, Anstalt); hence also the verb (as in the former example) is always weak, not strong -- beauftragte, beauftragt.

## 208. D. PREFIXES SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE.

The prefixes **durch-**, **hinter-**, **über-**, **unter-**, **um-**, **voll-** are sometimes separable, sometimes inseparable. They are :

(a) **Separable** as long as both prefix and verb retain more or less of their *literal* or concrete meaning ;

(b) **Inseparable** when both have lost this meaning, and form together **one new idea**. A compound of the same verb and prefix may therefore be **both separable and inseparable** according to its meaning, as in the following examples :

(a) **Separable and Literal.**  
(Accent on Prefix, Trans. and Intr.)

**durch'**reisen, pass (travel)  
through, as :

Er ist gestern hier **durch'**gereist,  
He passed through here  
yesterday.

**hin'**tergehen, go behind

**über'**setzen (tr. or intr.), cross ;  
jump over, ferry across, as :  
Er **setzte** mit einem Sprunge  
**über**, He jumped over at  
a bound.

Fährmann, bitte, **sehen** Sie mich  
**über**, Ferryman, please ferry  
me across.

(b) **Inseparable and Figurative.**

(Accent on Verb, always Trans.)

**durch'**reisen, traverse, travel  
over, as :

Er hat das ganze Land **durch-**  
**reist'**, He has traversed  
(travelled over) the whole  
country.

**hinterge'**hen, deceive, as :

Er **hinterging'** seinen Freund,  
He deceived his friend.

**über'**setzen, translate, as :

Ich **überset'**e ein deutsches Buch,  
I am translating a Ger-  
man book.

**un'terscheiden**, write under.  
subscribe, as :

**Schreiben** Sie Ihren Namen  
hier **unter**, **Subscribe** your  
name here.

**um'gehen**, go round, as :

Sie müssen **um'gehen**, You must  
go round.

**voll'gießen**, pour full, as :

Er **goß** das Glas **voll**, He  
poured the glass full.

**unterscheiden**, sign, as :

Ich habe den Brief noch nicht  
**unterschieden**, I have not  
yet signed the letter.

**umge'hen**, evade, as :

Man **umging'** das Gesetz, They  
evaded the law.

**vollen'den**, complete, as :

Ich habe meine Arbeit voll-  
**endet**, I have completed  
my work.

NOTES. — 1. These separable prepositional prefixes are only rarely used with the verbs given above, except as *prepositions* proper, governing a case, as :

Er ging **hinter** den Ofen (um das Haus),

He went behind the stove (around the house).

2. The adverb **wieder** is separable, except in **wiederholen**, repeat (but **wie'der**holen, fetch again).

3. Many compounds with these prefixes are used as **inseparable** compounds only; others as **separable** only.

#### VOCABULARY.

to meet with, an'treffen

give up, auf'geben

cease, stop, auf'hören

open, auf'machen

leave out, omit, aus'lassen

pronounce, aus'sprechen

assist, aid, bei'stehen

go away, fort'gehen

come out, heraus'kommen

come in, herein'kommen

set (of the sun. etc., un'ter-  
gehen

read to, vor'lesen (+ dat. of  
leave, verlassen [pers.]

promise, versprechen

present, introduce, vor'stellen  
(+ acc. and dat.)

go past, pass by, vorbei'gehen

close, shut, zu'machen

come back, zurück'kommen

collide, zuſam'menſtoßen	marriage (-ceremony), die
send to, zuſchicken (+ dat.)	Trauung
coffee, der Kaffee	pale, bleich
Northern Railway, die Nord'- eisenbahn	by heart, auß'wendig
slave, der Sklave	since, ſeitdem' (adv. and conj.)
	closed, shut (predicate), zu even if, wenn . . . auch

*Idioms:* 1. What is the matter with him? Was hat er?

2. He feels ill, Ihm iſt ſchlecht zu Mute; or: Es iſt ihm ſchlecht zu Mute.

3. To translate into German, Ins Deutsche überſetzen.

4. In fine weather, Bei ſchönem Wetter.

5. If you please, Wenn ich bitten darf (lit., If I may ask).

#### EXERCISE XXXVI.

A. 1. Vergiß nicht, das Fenſter zuzumachen, wenn du das Zimmer verläßt. 2. Was man aufſchiebt, kommt ſelten zu Stande. 3. Können Sie mir ſagen, wie dieſes Wort auf Deutſch ausgeſprochen wird? 4. Meine Schweſtern kamen mir entgegen, aber leider haben ſie mich nicht angetroffen. 5. Viele haben verſprochen, uns beizustehen, aber nur wenige haben uns wirklich beigestanden. 6. Wir ſind jetzt mit dem erſten Teile des Buches beinahe fertig; nächſte Woche fangen wir an, den zweiten Teil zu überſetzen. 7. Zwei Züge ſind auf der Nordeisenbahn zuſammengestoßen. 8. Ich hörte auf zu ſingen, weil ich heißer wurde. 9. Mein Vater machte den Brief auf und las denſelben der Familie vor. 10. Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht, und wenn er auch die Wahrheit ſpricht. 11. Haben Sie die Zeitung bekommen, die ich Ihnen aus der Stadt zugeſchickt habe? 12. Gehen Sie gewöhnlich in der Stadt zu Mittag? 13. Ja wohl, ich gebe jeden Tag um neun Uhr fort und komme erſt um ſechs Uhr zurück. 14. Mancher hat angefangen, was er nicht vollendet hat. 15. Unſere Nachbarn müſſen wohl fort ſein, denn alle Läden ſind bei ihnen zu. 16. Kommen Sie doch herein; ich will Sie Herrn Braun vorſtellen. 17. Ich danke vielmal's, aber ich bin ihm ſchon vorgeſtellt worden. 18. Bei

schönem Wetter gehen wir unserm Vater entgegen, wenn er nach Hause kommt. 19. Findet die Trauung Ihres Vaters morgen oder übermorgen statt? 20. Wollen Sie eine Tasse Thee? Geben Sie mir lieber eine Tasse Kaffee.

*B.* 1. The Reformation took place in the sixteenth century. 2. Have you closed all the doors and windows? 3. What is the matter with you? You look so pale. 4. I do not know; since I have come back, I do not feel at all well. 5. In the year 1865 all slaves in the United States were set free. 6. Have you opened the letters which have just arrived? 7. The sun sets earlier now, and the weather begins to grow colder. 8. Mary is learning a poem by heart; she has already repeated it ten times. 9. Have you found out at what o'clock the meeting takes place? 10. Do you know the gentleman who has just gone past? 11. When we were going past the church, the people were just coming out. 12. Pay attention to your work; you always leave out words, when you are copying. 13. Why have you closed the window? I was beginning to catch cold. 14. I have tried to learn this poem, but it is too hard for me, and I have given it up at last. 15. Goethe's 'Faust' has been translated into English by Bayard Taylor. 16. The marriage of my brother takes place to-morrow at eleven o'clock.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXVI.

1. In welchem Jahre wurden die Sklaven in den Vereinigten Staaten freigelassen? 2. Lernst du gern Gedichte auswendig? 3. Glauben Sie, dass unsere Nachbarn fort sind? 4. Kennen Sie den Mann, der am Hause vorbeigeht? 5. Wer hat diesen Brief aufgemacht? 6. Wie sprechen Sie das Wort G-o-e-t-h-e aus?

## SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON E.

## ON CERTAIN PREFIXES.

209. THE INSEPARABLE PREFIX **miß-**.

The particle **miß-** is inseparable, but:

- (a) With certain verbs it takes the **ge-** of the P. Part. and **zu** of the Infin. after it, as:

**miß'**handeln, act amiss    **miß'**gehandelt    **miß'**zuhandeln

With other verbs **miß-** either:

- (b) Has **ge-** before it, as:

**miß**han'deln, ill-treat    P. Part. **ge****miß'**handelt — or:

- (c) Drops **ge-** altogether, as:

**miß**fal'len, displease    P. Part. **miß**fal'len

NOTE. — Observe that the principal accent:

under (a) is on the *prefix* throughout:

“ (b) is on the *prefix* in the P. Part. only, otherwise on the *verb*;

“ (c) is on the *verb* throughout.

210. USE OF THE PREFIXES **her-** AND **hin-**.

1. The particles **her** ('hither') and **hin** ('hence') are prefixed to verbs, both simple and compound, to indicate the direction **towards** or **from** the speaker respectively, as:

**Kommen Sie her**, Come here (hither, to me).

**Gehen Sie hin**, Go (there) thither (hence, from me).

Hence, a person standing *up-stairs* would say to one *below*:

**Kommen Sie herauf**, Come up here (up-stairs);

but to one *up-stairs*:

**Gehen Sie hinunter**, Go down there (down-stairs).

2. The simple prepositional adverbs **ab-**, **an-**, **auf-**, **aus-**, **ein-**, **in-**, **unter-**, **über-**, **unter-**, **um-**, **vor-** are only used with verbs of motion, when the compound verb denotes motion in a **general** way, **without specified direction**, or when it has lost the idea of motion altogether.

3. (a) When, with **aus-** and **vor-**, also with **ab-** in the sense of 'down,' the place **from** which the motion proceeds is implied, but not specified, the direction **to** or **from** the speaker is further indicated by prefixing **her-** and **hin-** respectively.
- (b) When, with the remaining prefixes (**an-**, **auf-**, etc.), the place to which the motion is directed is implied, but not specified, **her** or **hin-** is similarly prefixed.
4. The following examples will serve to show more clearly the difference between verbs with the simple prefixes and those with **her-** or **hin-**:

(a) With Simple Prefix :	(b) With <b>her-</b> or <b>hin-</b> :
<b>ausgehen</b> , go out (for a walk, on business, etc.)	<b>hinausgehen</b> , go out (from the house)
<b>vorziehen</b> , prefer	<b>hervorziehen</b> , draw forth
<b>absteigen</b> , dismount	<b>herabsteigen</b> , descend
<b>ankommen</b> , arrive	<b>herankommen</b> , come up to. approach
<b>übergehen</b> , desert [perish]	<b>hinübergehen</b> , go over, across
<b>untergehen</b> , set (of the sun); sink;	<b>hinuntergehen</b> , go down (stairs, etc.)

5. When the place **from** or **to** which respectively is specified, these words are used as *prepositions proper*, governing a substantive, but may be repeated as adverbial prefixes with **her** or **hin**, as :

Er ging **aus** dem Zimmer (**hinaus**).

Er zog den Brief **aus** der Tasche (**heraus**).

NOTES. — 1. **Ab-**, meaning 'off, away,' does not require these prefixes, as :

**abreisen**, **abgehen**, to depart, go off; — but: **hinabgehen**, to go down.

2. **Ein-** is replaced, when the place **to** which is specified, by the preposition **in** with the accusative, as :

Er ritt **in** die Stadt **hinein**.

3. Sometimes other prepositions are used to indicate the place **from** or **to** which, in which case the compound prefix is used, as :

Ich werde **nach** Europa **hinübergehen**, I shall go over to Europe.

Er ist **vom** Dache **herabgefallen**, He has fallen down from the roof.

## OTHER PREFIXES.

211. Verbs derived from compound substantives are treated as simple Verbs, as :

Das **Früh**'stück, the breakfast, **früh**'stücken, to breakfast; ich **früh**'stückte, **gefrüh**'stückte.

Die Hand'have, the handle, haud'haben, to handle; **hand'**habte, ge'hand'habt.

Der Rat'schlag, the counsel, rat'schlagen, to take counsel; **rat's**schlagte, gerat'schlagt.

NOTE.—Observe that all such verbs are **weak**, as in the case of the last two of the above verbs, which are not compounds of haben or schlagen respectively.

**212.** Adjective Prefixes are frequently inseparable, but retain the principal accent and require **ge-** before them in the P. Part., as:

**weiß'**sagen, to prophesy, **weiß'**sagte, **ge**weiß'sagt; **recht'**fertigen, to justify, **recht'**fertigte, **gerecht'**fertigt; **lieb'**fösen, to caress, **lieb'**foste, **gelieb'**fost;

also the substantive compound:

**lust'**wandeln, to walk for pleasure, **gelust'**wandelt.

**213.** Some verbs with Separable + Inseparable Prefix are used only in constructions which do not require the separation of the former particle from the verb; thus we may say:

Christus ist **au'**erstanden, Christ is risen from the dead, — or:

Als Christus **aufer**stand, — but instead of:

Er **er**stand **auf**, — we say: Er stand **von den Toten auf**.

Similarly with **aufer**lesen, **boren**thalten, and a few others.

#### EXERCISE E.

1. Have you answered all the letters? I have answered all except this one. 2. I have asked my sister, if (whether) she is ready, but she has not answered. 3. She has gone up-stairs; perhaps she has not heard. 4. Let her come down, for I cannot wait for her any longer. 5. I should like to speak to your father; is he at home? 6. Yes, he is up-stairs in his study; please go up. 7. Some one is shouting in the street; go out and see what is the matter. 8. Are you going out to-day? I am going out, as soon as I have breakfasted. 9. George, go out of the room; you have been behaving badly. 10. Many people say that Mr. B. has acted amiss in this affair, but he has justified himself. 11. We started so early yesterday morning that we had no time to breakfast. 12. Several people were standing on (**auf**) the street before a burning house, and were looking up. 13. A poor woman with her child was on the point of jumping down. 14. At last a fireman went up and saved both [of them]. 15. The boy has abused his dog, and therefore he was punished by his father. 16. The dog was howling in the street, but some one went out and brought him in.



## LESSON XXXVII.

## REFLEXIVE AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

## REFLEXIVE VERBS.

**214.** 1. All Reflexive Verbs are conjugated with **haben**. For an example of their conjugation see § 41. and observe the use of **sich** as special reflexive of the third person for all genders and both numbers.

2. The reflexive pronoun is introduced as near to the beginning of the sentence as possible, sometimes even before the subject, when the latter follows the verb and is not a pronoun, and especially if the subject has adjuncts, as :

Gestern hat **sich** mein lieber, alter Vater beschädigt,  
My dear old father injured himself yesterday.

**215.** 1. Any transitive verb may be used reflexively, when the action of the verb is on the subject ; but Reflexive Verbs proper are :

(a) Those which are used *only* reflexively, especially such as indicate a *state of mind* or *feeling*, as :

<b>sich</b> befehlen (gen.), } apply	<b>sich</b> grämen (gen., or über +
„ befehligen, } one's self	acc.), grieve
„ begnügen (mit), be con-	„ schämen (gen., or über +
tented	acc.), be ashamed
„ bejinnen (gen., recollect	„ sehnen (nach), long (for),
„ erbarmen (gen.), take pity,	yearn
have mercy	„ wundern (über + acc.), be
„ erfälten, catch cold	astonished

(b) Those which, though used also as transitive verbs, have a *special meaning* as reflexives, as :

<b>freuen</b> (impers.), rejoice (tr.),	<b>sich</b> freuen (gen., or über + acc.),
make glad	rejoice (intr.), be glad

<b>fürchten</b> , fear	<b>sich</b> fürchten (vor + dat.), be afraid
<b>hüten</b> , protect	„ hüten (vor + dat.), <b>beware</b>
<b>stellen</b> , place	„ stellen, <b>pretend</b>
<b>verlassen</b> , leave	„ verlassen (auf + acc.), <b>rely (upon)</b>
<b>zutragen</b> , carry (to)	„ zutragen (impers.) <b>hap- pen</b> , occur

2. Transitive verbs are often used in English with the direct (personal) object unexpressed, e. g., 'change, turn, open, spread,' etc.; such verbs have the object expressed in German as the reflexive pronoun, e. g.:

The weather has **changed**, Das Wetter hat **sich** geändert.

The wind is **turning** to the east, Der Wind dreht **sich**  
nach Osten.

The door **opened**, Die Thür öffnete **sich**.

The disease was **spreading** over the whole town, Die  
Krankheit verbreitete **sich** über die ganze Stadt.

3. For the use of Reflexive Verbs for the Passive Voice, see § 114, (b).

4. From what has been said above, it will be evident that Reflexive Verbs are used to a much greater extent in German than in English, which indeed has no Reflexive Verbs in the strict sense defined above.

## 216. GOVERNMENT OF REFLEXIVE VERBS.

1. All *true* reflexives take the reflexive (*personal*) object in the **accusative**; the remote object (the **thing**) is in the **genitive**, or is governed by a preposition, as shown in the examples given in § 215, 1, above, thus:

Ich schäme mich meines Betragens, I am ashamed of my behaviour.

Erinnerst du dich dessen nicht? Do you not remember it?

Wir sehnten uns nach unserer Mutter, We longed for our mother.

Ich erbarmte mich seiner, I had pity upon him.

2. Some spurious reflexives have the reflexive (*personal*) object in the **dative**, and the **thing** in the **accusative**, as :

Ich kann mir das denken, I can imagine that.

Ich bildete mir dies nur ein, I only imagined this.

NOTE. — Sich schmeicheln takes the **dative** of the person with a *clause* as direct object, thus :

Ich schmeichelte mir, daß ich es thun könnte, I flattered myself, that I could do it.

## 217.

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**Impersonal Verbs Proper** are those used only in the third person sing., with the neuter pronoun **es** as subject.

1. Those expressing **Natural phenomena**, as :

es schneit, it snows

es blizt, it lightens

es regnet, it rains

es donnert, it thunders, etc.

also with the verbs sein or werden, as :

(Es ist (wird) kalt, warm, dunkel, etc., It is (grows) cold, warm, dark, etc.

(Es ist (schlägt) fünf, It is (strikes) five.

2 Those expressing bodily or mental affections

(a) with *accusative* of person.

Es friert mich, I am (feel) cold.

Es verlangt mich (nach), I am (feel) desirous.

Es freut mich, I am glad (it rejoices me).

Es wundert mich, I wonder (it makes me wonder).

Es jammert mich (gen.), I pity (it moves me to pity).

Es reut mich (gen.), I repent (it rues me), etc.

(b) with *Dative* of person.

Es dünkt (denkt) **mir**, Methinks.

Es gelingt mir, I succeed, etc.

(c) with *sein* or *werden* (*Dative* of person), as :

Es ist (wird) **mir** übel, wohl (zu Mute), I feel ill, well  
(it is ill, well to or with me in spirit).

Es ist **mir** lieb, leid, I am glad, sorry (it is dear, sad to me).

NOTE. - In this class of verbs the subject **es** is omitted when the personal object precedes the verb, as : mich wundert, etc.

3. Verbs used impersonally with a special sense, as :

Wie **sieht's** mit Ihnen? How fares it with you?

Es **geht ihm** gut, He is prospering.

Was **gibt's**? What is the matter?

Was **fehlt** Ihnen? What ails you?

Also *sein* and *werden*, as under 1 and 2, (c), above.

4. For the impersonal use of the passive voice, see § 113.

NOTE. — Of the above classes, those alone are strictly impersonal which admit only of **es** as subject; others, which are used with other subjects, but only in the third person (sometimes plur. as well as sing.) are properly called unipersonal.

## 218. CONJUGATION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Impersonal Verbs form their various tenses, moods, etc., in precisely the same way as other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular.

2. Some are weak, others strong, as :

frieren, to freeze, Impf. **es fror**, gefroren; schneien, to snow, Impf. **es schneite**, P. Part. geschneit.

3. Most of them are conjugated with *haben*, as :

Es **hat** geschneit, gefroren, etc.;

but some take *sein*, e. g., *gelingen*, *gücken*, to succeed ; *geschehen*, to happen (compare § 53), as .

Es **ist** geschehen, It has happened.

## 219. GOVERNMENT OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. Impersonal Verbs expressing bodily or mental affections, etc., take the immediate (personal) object (= Engl. subj.) in the *Dative* or *Accusative* (see § 217, 2, 3, above).

2. Those under § 217, 2, (a), denoting a *mental* affection may be used

- (a) **impersonally**, with the *thing* (cause of emotion) in the **genitive**, as :

Es jammert **mir** **seiner**, I pity him (it moves me to pity of him).

Es reuet **mir** **meiner** Sünden, I repent (it makes me repent) of my sins.

- (b) **personally**, with the thing (cause of emotion) as **subject**, as :

Er jammert **mir**, I pity him (he moves me to pity).

Meine Sünden reuen (pl.) **mir**, I repent of my sins (my sins move me to repentance).

REMARK. — Observe that the English *subject* is *object* in German, the verb remaining always in the *third* person, as :

Es freut **mir**, I am glad.

Es freut **dir**, Thou art glad.

Es freut **ihn**, He is glad.

Es freut **uns**, We are glad, etc.

**220.**

THERE IS, THERE ARE, etc.

1. The English **there is, there are** (*was, were, has been, will be*, etc.) must be rendered in German by **es giebt** (*gab, hat ... gegeben, wird ... geben*, etc.), when an *indefinite* existence is expressed, or in *general* assertions, as :

**Es gab** früher viele Leute, welche glaubten, etc., **There were** formerly many people who believed, etc.

**Es wird** dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen **geben**, **There will be** a great many plums this year.

REMARKS. — 1. The English *subject* is *object* of *giebt* in German, and is in the *accusative*, as :

**Es giebt einen Roman** (acc.) von Dickens, welcher „Nicholas Nickleby“ heißt, **There is a novel** (nom.) by Dickens, called ‘Nicholas Nickleby.’

2. The verb (*geben*) is always in the *singular* in German, being a true impersonal ; and *es* is never omitted, as :

**Dieses Jahr giebt es**, etc.

2. **There is**, etc., must be rendered into German by **es ist, es sind** (*es war*, etc.), when *definite* existence is expressed, or in *particular* assertions, as :

**Es ist** ein Vogel in diesem Bauer, **There is** a bird in this cage.

**Es sind** zwei Vögel auf diesem Baume, **There are** two birds on this tree.

REMARKS. — 1. The English *subject* is also *subject* (*nominative*) in German, as :

**Es ist ein Roman** (nom.) von Dickens auf dem Tisch, **There is a novel** (nom.) by Dickens on the table.

2. The verb (*sein*) agrees in number with the *real* subject, and *es* is omitted, unless it begins the sentence, as :

Ein Vogel **ist** in diesem Bauer, There is a bird, etc.

NOTE. — This shows that *es* is the *indefinite* *es*, replacing the real subject (see § 39, 1), and *not* the impersonal *es*.

#### VOCABULARY.

to dress (trans.), an'stelden	lightning, der Blitz
dress (intr.), ſich anſtellen	thirst, der Durſt
rèsolve, decide, ſich entſchließen	lemonade, die Limonade
explain, erklären	caterpillar, die Raupe
be mistaken, ſich irren	sleighting, die Schlitzenbahn
turn around (intr.), ſich um=	way, mode, die Weiſe
drehen	successfully), glücklich
get married, marry (intr.), ſich	now-a-days, heutzutage
verheiraten	long (adv.), längſt
marry (trans.), heiraten	past, vorbei
hurt (wound), verletzen	in all ages, zu allen Zeiten

*Idioms:* 1. I feel well, Mir iſt wohl zu Mute.

2. He has married the daughter of the doctor, Er hat ſich mit der Tochter des Doktors verheiratet.

3. In this way, Auf dieſe Weiſe (acc.).

4. I was hungry (thirsty), Ich hatte Hunger (Durſt).

#### EXERCISE XXXVII.

A. 1. Es donnert, und ich fürchte, es wird bald regnen. 2. Um wie viel Uhr wird bei Ihnen zu Mittag geſeſſen? 3. Es hat während der Nacht gefroren und heute werden wir Schlittschuh laufen können. 4. Weſhalb donnert es, wenn es blizt? Das läßt ſich nicht leicht erklären. 5. Ich habe meinen beſten Hund verloren; ſo ein Hund findet ſich nicht leicht wieder. 6. Es freut uns ſehr, daß Heinrich ſein Examen glücklich beſtanden hat. 7. Ich fürchte, es wird dieſes Jahr nur wenige Äpfel geben: die Raupen haben jaſt alle Blätter von den Bäumen geſeſſen. 8. Guten Morgen, Herr Braun; giebt's heute etwas Neues? 9. Mein älteſter Bruder hat ſich verheiratet. 10. Mit wem hat er ſich verheiratet? 11. Mit der Tochter des Doktor B.; erinnern Sie ſich

nicht ihrer? 12. Schmeicheln Sie sich, daß es Ihnen auf diese Weise gelingen wird? Sie haben nicht Geld genug. 13. Ich habe viel mehr Geld als ich brauche; ich würde mich mit der Hälfte begnügt haben. 14. Es würde mich gar nicht wundern, wenn wir noch heute Regen bekämen. 15. Als ich an dem Hause vorüberging, öffnete sich die Thür, und ein alter Herr kam heraus. 16. Dich friert; du solltest deinen Überzieher anziehen. 17. Es waren noch viele Leute auf der Straße, als ich nach Hause kam. 18. Es wird dich bald deines Betragens reuen, wenn ich mich nicht irre; du solltest dich schämen. 19. Es giebt heutzutage Thoren, und leider hat es zu allen Zeiten Thoren gegeben. 20. Sie können sich denken, daß es mich wunderte, als ich mich umdrehte und meinen längst verlorenen Freund vor mir sah.

*B.* 1. Are you afraid when it lightens? 2. Yes, I am always afraid of the lightning. 3. What is the matter with you? You do not look at all well. 4. I do not know what ails me; I do not feel well, perhaps I have caught cold. 5. It has been snowing the whole night, and to-day we have fine sleighing. 6. Have you hurt yourself? Yes, I have cut my finger. 7. There are two gentlemen at the door; do you know them? 8. I know one of them, but I cannot remember his name. 9. I must dress immediately, or else I shall not be ready at seven o'clock. 10. If you do not dress more warmly, you will catch cold. 11. I am thirsty; please give me a glass of lemonade. 12. I am glad that the thunder-storm is past; the lightning is dangerous. 13. Do you remember whether he was here on the 15th or on the 16th of January? 14. Have you decided to leave (the) town, and to pass the summer in the country? 15. I hear somebody shouting in the street; what is the matter?

#### ORAL EXERCISE XXXVII.

1. Sollte man sich vor dem Donner fürchten? 2. Wie lange wohnen Sie schon in dieser Strasse? 3. Stehen Sie



gewöhnlich früh des Morgens auf? 4. Weshalb hast du die Fenster zugemacht? 5. Wie gefällt es Ihnen in diesem Hause? 6. Wird es dieses Jahr viele Pflaumen geben?

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### PREPOSITIONS.

**221.** The Prepositions with the **Dative** only have been given in §§ 46, 51; those with the **Accusative** only in §§ 34, 50; those with Dative or Accusative in § 65.

### PREPOSITIONS WITH THE GENITIVE.

**222.** The Prepositions governing the **Genitive** are chiefly nouns used adverbially. The following lines contain the principal ones, and will aid the memory:

Unweit, mittelst, kraft und während,  
 Vant, vermöge, ungeachtet,  
 Oberhalb und unterhalb,  
 Innerhalb und außerhalb,  
 Diesseit, jenseit, halben, wegen,  
 Statt, auch längs, zufolge, trotz  
 Stehen mit dem Genitiv;  
 Doch ist hier nicht zu vergessen,  
 Daß bei diesen letzten drei  
 Auch der Dativ richtig sei.

**223.** The meanings of these prepositions are as follows:

1. halb(en), halber,  $\frac{1}{2}$  for the sake of, on account of
2. wegen,  $\frac{1}{2}$

REMARKS.—1. Halb(en), halber, always *follows* the case; wegen may follow or precede a noun, but always follows a *personal* pronoun.

2. **Halb** is used only in **deshalb** and **weßhalb**; **halben** after the *personal pronouns* or substantives with a determinative or attributive word; **halber** after a substantive used alone, as :

**Des Friedens halben**, For the sake of peace.

**Beispiels halber**, For the sake of example.

3. The personal pronouns have a special form ending in **-t** before **halben** and **wegen**, thus :

**meinet halben**, for my sake

**unseret wegen**, on our account, etc.

- |   |                             |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 3. <b>außerhalb</b> , (on the) outside of | 5. <b>oberhalb</b> , above  |
| 4. <b>innerhalb</b> , (on the) inside of  | 6. <b>unterhalb</b> , below |

#### EXAMPLES :

Unser Garten ist **außerhalb** (**innerhalb**) **der** Stadt,  
Our garden is **outside** (**inside**) of the town.

Montreal liegt **unterhalb** **des** Ontario-Sees,  
Montreal lies **below** Lake Ontario.

REMARK. — **Innerhalb** in expressions of time may be followed by the *dative* of a substantive without article, as :

**Innerhalb zwei Tagen**, Within two days.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 7. <b>kraft</b> , by virtue of      | 9. ( <b>per</b> ) <b>mittels</b> , by means |
| 8. <b>laut</b> , in accordance with | 10. <b>vermöge</b> , of                     |
|                                     | 11. <b>zufolge</b> , in consequence of      |

REMARK. — **Zufolge** governs the *genitive* when it precedes its case, but the *dative* when it follows, as :

Er that dies **zufolge** **meines** Befehls, or **meinem** Befehle  
**zufolge**, He did this in consequence of my order.

- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 12. <b>diesseit</b> , on this side | 13. <b>jenseit</b> , on that (the other) side |
|------------------------------------|---|

REMARK. — *Diesseit* and *jenseit* are *prepositions* (governing a noun); *diesseits* and *jenseits* *adverbs* (without a case), as:

Ich wohne **diesseit**, er **jenseit** des Flußes, I live on **this**,  
he on **that** (the **other**) side of the river, — but:

Wir wohnen beide nahe am Fluße; ich **diesseits**, er **jen-**  
**seits**, We both live near the river; I on **this**, he on  
the other side.

#### 14. **statt, anstatt**, instead of

REMARK. — *Anstatt* is sometimes divided, thus:

**Anstatt** meines Bruders, **Instead** of my brother. — or:

**An** meines Bruders **Statt**, (**In** my brother's **stead**).

#### 15. **ungeachtet**, notwithstanding      16. **trotz**, in spite of ing

REMARKS. — 1. *Ungeachtet* may precede or follow its case.

2. *Trotz* governs the *dative* in the phrase *trotzdem*, 'in spite of that,' and with the meaning of 'as well as,' as:

Dieser Knabe reitet **trotz** einem Manne, This boy rides  
**as well as** a man.

#### 17. **während**, during      18. **längs**, ) along 19. **entlang**, )

REMARKS. — 1. *Längs* also governs the *dative*, and always *precedes* its case, as:

**Längs** des Ufers, or **dem** Ufer, **Along** the shore.

2. *Entlang* governs the *genitive* when it precedes its case:  
• but it more commonly *follows* its case, and governs the *acc-*  
*sative*, as:

Er ging **den** Fluß **entlang**, He went **along** the river.

To these may be added:

#### 20. **angesichts**, in presence of      22. **um . . . willen**, for the sake 21. **inmitten**, in the midst of      of

REMARKS. — 1. Um . . . willen takes the case between um and willen, as :

Um **meines Vaters** willen, For my father's sake.

2. The *personal pronouns* have the same forms with um . . . willen as with halben and wegen, thus :

um **seinethwillen**, for his sake

um **Ihretwillen**, for your sake, etc.

23. **unfern**, } not far from

24. **unweit**, }

## 224. GENERAL REMARKS ON PREPOSITIONS.

1. An Adverb of direction is frequently placed after an accusative, like a preposition after its case, as :

**Den Berg hinauf**, Up the mountain.

2. (a) Some prepositions may govern a substantive clause with **daß**, as :

Ehre Vater und Mutter, **auf daß** es dir wohl gehe,

Honour father and mother, that it may go well with thee.

NOTES. — 1. Such are auf, außer (also used with **wenn**), biß, ohne, (an)statt, ungeachtet, während.

2. Biß, ungeachtet, während are also used as *conjunctions* without daß.

(b) Um, ohne, and (an)statt may govern an infinitive with zu, as :

Er kam gestern, **um dich zu besuchen**,

He came yesterday (in order) to visit you.

Ich kann nie daran denken, **ohne zu lachen**,

I can never think of that without laughing.

Dieser Mann sollte arbeiten, **anstatt zu betteln**,

This man ought to work. instead of begging.

REMARK. — But if the subject of the infinitive clause is different from that of the sentence on which it depends, **daß** must be used, as :

Ich konnte nicht vorbeigehen, **ohne daß er mich sah** (not ohne mich zu sehen), I could not pass by **without his seeing me.**

3. Prepositions may govern adverbs, as: nach oben, upward; nach hinten, to the rear; auf immer, forever; von fern, from afar; and the compounds with da(r)- and wo(r)- (see § 38, Rem. 5: 83. 3: 96. 7).

4. A substantive governed by a preposition may be followed by an adverb, for nearer definition, as:

**Nach** einer Richtung **hin**, In one direction.

**Von** allen Seiten **her**, From all sides.

Er ritt **hinter** dem Feinde **her**, He rode in pursuit of the foe.

**Um** das Haus **herum**, Round (about) the house.

**Von** nun **an**, From henceforth.

**Von** Jugend **auf**, From youth up.

#### VOCABULARY.

to observe, remark, bemerken  
elect, erwählen (+ zu)  
permit, allow, erlauben  
inquire (about), sich erkundigen  
(+ nach)  
go about, around, herum'gehen  
ring (a small bell), klingeln  
go for a walk, spazieren gehen  
divide, teilen  
let (of houses, etc.), vermieten  
go away, weggehen  
the opposite, das Ge'genteil  
custom, habit, die Gewohnheit  
microscope, das Mikroskop'

(the) little Red (Riding)  
Hood, das Kottäppchen  
umbrella, der Regenschirm  
drop, der Tropfen  
drunkard, der Trunkenbold  
will, testament, das Testament'  
stairs, staircase, die Treppe  
deceased, der (die) Verstorbene  
warning, die Warnung  
living, leben'dig  
loose, slack, los  
in\_time, punctually, recht'zeitig  
except that, außer daß

*Idioms :* 1. For all I care, *Meinetwegen.*

2. This house is for sale, *Dieses Haus ist zu verkaufen* (lit., to be sold).

3. He was elected mayor, *Er wurde zum Bürgermeister erwählt* (lit., to or for a, etc.. — zum = zu einem).

4. I have been here for a week, *Ich bin seit acht Tagen hier.*

5. To laugh (at), make sport (of), *Sich lustig machen* (über + acc.).

6. What is the matter? *Was ist los?*

7. There is a ring (at the door, etc.), *Es klingelt.*

### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

A. 1. Das Haus, welches zu verkaufen ist, steht außerhalb der Stadt, nicht weit vom See. 2. Wenn es nur innerhalb der Stadt stünde, so würde ich gern tausend Thaler mehr dafür geben. 3. Gefällt es Ihnen besser diesseit des Flusses zu wohnen, oder jenseits? 4. Trotz des Sturmes kam das Schiff rechtzeitig in New York an. 5. Dieser Trunkenbold hat um seiner Familie willen das Trinken aufgegeben. 6. Er fürchtete, daß seine Söhne die schlechte Gewohnheit lernen möchten. 7. Der hungrige Wolf ging mehrmals um das Haus und suchte Notkäppchen. 8. Vermittelt seines großen Einflusses bei den Reichen hat sich Herr M. zum Bürgermeister erwählen lassen. 9. Seit wann wohnen Sie in dieser Straße? Seit drei Jahren. 10. Um meinetwillen will er nicht mit mir gehen; vielleicht würde er um Ihetwillen gehen. 11. Ist Georg oben? Ja, er ist soeben die Treppe hinaufgegangen. 12. Passen Sie uns lieber nach oben gehen; es wird uns besser gefallen oben zu sitzen als unten. 13. Es hat vor einigen Minuten geklingelt; wer war da? 14. Es war jemand, der sich erkundigen wollte, ob dieses Haus zu vermieten sei. 15. Dem Testamente zufolge wurde das Eigentum unter die beiden Söhne des Verstorbenen geteilt. 16. Meinetwegen mag er gehen, sobald es ihm gefällt. 17. Außer daß Georg ein wenig größer ist, bemerkt man gar keinen Unterschied zwischen den beiden Brüdern. 18. Herr D. ist einer meiner besten Freunde; er geht fast nie am Hause vorüber ohne hereinzukommen. 19. Unweit der Stadt B. steht das Haus, worin ich geboren bin.

*B.* 1. I shall take my stick instead of my umbrella; I am not afraid of the rain. 2. Have you been taking a walk along the shore? Yes, in spite of the bad road. 3. Not far from the school I let my new knife fall into the snow, and could not find it again. 4. Do you know what was the matter? I heard a great noise down-stairs. 5. I do not know (it), but I shall inquire. 6. Were you allowed perf. to stay? No, we had (perf.) on the contrary to go away again immediately. 7. We have been here since yesterday, and we must wait three days more for the ship. 8. One part of the city lies on this side, the other on that side of a broad river. 9. I do not think much of this gentleman; he would do anything for money. 10. By means of a microscope living animals can be seen in a drop of water. 11. In consequence of this bad news we must be back inside of a week. 12. Should we make sport of other people? 13. No, that is a bad habit. 14. Yonder is the river; on this side stands my house, on that side his. 15. Notwithstanding the warning of his father the youth often went on the water in bad weather. 16. Instead of taking the large boat he always took the small one.

## ORAL EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Weshalb hat der Trunkenbold das Trinken aufgegeben?  
2. Auf welche Weise hat sich Herr B. zum Bürgermeister erwählen lassen?  
3. Haben Sie klingeln hören? Wer war da?  
4. Wo sind Sie geboren, und in welchem Jahre?  
5. Fürchten Sie, es könnte regnen?  
6. Kannst du mir sagen, was auf der Strasse los war?

## LESSON XXXIX.

## PREPOSITIONS (continued):—IDIOMS.

**225.** Prepositions vary more, perhaps, as to idiomatic usage in different languages than any other part of speech. Their proper use must be acquired chiefly by practice and memory, out below are given the German equivalents, in various idioms, of the most commonly occurring English Prepositions, more particularly in cases where the usage of the two languages differs.

**226.****About.**

(a) In the sense of 'around' = **um**, as :

Sie versammelten sich **um** ihn, They assembled **about** him.

(b) Of time = **ungefähr um** (um alone = 'at'; see § 227,

(b) 1, below), as :

**Ungefähr um** zehn Uhr, **About** ten o'clock.

**Ungefähr um** Weihnachten, **About** Christmas.

(c) In the sense of 'nearly' (of *number*) = **etwa, unge-  
fähr** (adverbs), as :

Er hat **etwa** (**ungefähr**) tausend Thaler übrig, He has **about** a thousand dollars left.

(d) In the sense of 'with,' 'about' (the *person*) = **bei**, as :

Ich habe kein Geld **bei** mir, I have no money **with** me, **about** me.

**227.****At.**

(a) Of *locality* :

1. = **in**, when the action, etc., is *within* a building, etc., as :

**In** der Schule, **in** der Kirche, **im** Theater, **im** Konzert,

**At** school, **at** church, **at** the theatre, **at** the concert.



2. = **an**, when the action, etc., is *adjacent* to the object of the preposition, as :

**Am** Fenster, **an** der Thür, **am** Tische, **At** the window, **at** the door, **at** the table (but **bei** Tische, **at** table).

3. = **auf**, when the action is *on the surface*, or on an *elevation*, as :

**Auf** dem Markte, **auf** dem Ball, **auf** der Post, **auf** der Universität, **auf** dem Schlosse, **At** market. **at** the ball, **at** the post-office, **at** the university, **at** the castle.

4. = **zu** or **in** with proper names of *towns* (also with *Haus*, 'home'), etc., as :

**Zu** (in) Paris, **At** Paris.  
**Zu** Hause, **At** home.

(b) Of *time*:

1. = **um** (most usually), as :

**Um** halb vier Uhr, **At** half past 3 o'clock.  
**Um** Ostern, **At** Easter.

2. = **zu**, with *Zeit* and *Stunde*, as :

**Zur** rechten Zeit, **At** the right time.  
**Zu** dieser Stunde, **At** this hour.

NOTE. — **Um** with the acc. is also admissible with these words.

3. = **bei**, as :

**Bei** Tagesanbruch, **At** day-break.

(c) Of *price* = **zu**, as :

Dieser Zucker wird **zu** zwei Thalern das Pfund verkauft,  
 This sugar is sold **at** two dollars a pound.

228.

**By.**

(a) Expressing the *personal agent* after the passive voice = **von**, as :

Das Kind wird **von** seinen Eltern geliebt, The child is loved **by** its parents.

(b) Of a part of the body, etc. = **bei**, as :

Er nahm das Kind **bei** der Hand, He took the child by the hand.

(c) Unclassified :

**Bei** Licht, **By** candle-light.

**Bei** Nacht, **By** night.

**Mit** Gewalt, **By** force.

**Mit** der Eisenbahn, **By** the railway.

**Zu** Land, **zu** Wasser, **By** land, **by** water.

## 229.

## For.

Rendered usually by **für**, but :

(a) Of purpose = **zu** (*never für*), as :

Dies ist schönes Wetter **zum** Spazierengehen, This is fine weather **for** taking a walk.

Er reist **zum** Vergnügen, He travels **for** pleasure.

(b) Of time :

1. *Past* = **seit**, as :

**Zeit** einem Monate, **For** a month (past).

2. *Future* = **auf** + acc., as :

Ich werde **auf** einige Tage verreisen, I shall go away **for** a few days.

3. *Duration* = acc. without preposition, as :

Er war einen ganzen Monat hier, He was here **for** a whole month.

(c) Of cause = **aus**, as :

Er that es **aus** Furcht, He did it **for** fear.

(d) Unclassified :

**Für's** Erste, **For** the present.

**Zum** ersten (zweiten, etc.) Mal, **For** the first (second, etc.) time.

**Zum** Geburtstage, **zu** Weihnachten, **For** (as) a birth-day-present, **for** a Christmas-present.

**230.****In.**

Rendered usually by **in**, but :

(a) = **auf**, as :

**In** the street, **Auf** der Straße.

**In** the country, **Auf** dem Lande.

**In** this manner, **Auf** diese Weise (acc.).

**In** German, **Auf** Deutsch.

(b) = **unter**, as :

**Unter** Elisabeth's Regierung, **In** Elizabeth's reign.

(c) = **zu**, as :

**Zu** Wagen, **In** a carriage.

**231.****Of.**

(a) By the **genitive** without preposition, to express the relation of the *possessive* case, as :

Der Wille unser's Vaters, The will **of** our father (i. e., our father's will).

(b) = **von** :

1. After *verbs*, etc., as :

Ich spreche **von** ihm, I speak **of** him.

2. Between *titles* and names of *places*, as :

Die Königin **von** England, The Queen **of** England.

3. After *numerals* and other *partitives*, as :

Einer **von** meinen Freunden, One **of** my friends.

Der älteste **von** meinen Brüdern, The eldest **of** my brothers.

4. Replacing a *genitive plural* without article, as :

Er ist der Vater **von** vier Knaben, He is the father **of** four boys.

5. To avoid a succession of several genitives, as :

Die Frau vom Vetter meines Onkels, The wife of my  
uncle's cousin.

- (c) Of *cause*, when the cause is a *disease* = **an**, as :

Er starb **an** der Cholera, He died **of** the cholera.

- (a) Of *place*, with names of *battles* :

1. = **bei**, if named after a *town, village*, etc., as :

Die Schlacht **bei** Leipzig, The battle **of** Leipzig.

2. = **an**, if named after a *river*, as :

Die Schlacht **an** der Alma, The battle **of** the Alma.

- (e) Unclassified :

Mangel **an** Geld, Want **of** money.

Liebe **zum** Gelde, Love **of** money.

Was soll **aus** mir werden? What is to become **of** me?

## 232.

## On.

Rendered usually by **auf**, but :

- (a) Of *time* or *date* = **Acc.** without preposition, or = **an**  
+ **Dat.**, as :

**Den** (or **am**) zwölften Januar, **On** the twelfth of January.

- (b) Of *modes of progression* = **zu**, as :

**Zu** Pferde, **On** horseback.

**Zu** Fuß, **On** foot.

- (c) Of *situation*, **on** a river, sea, etc. :

1. When it means on the *water* = **auf**, as :

Viele Schiffe fahren **auf** dem Hudson, Many ships ply **on**  
the Hudson ; — but :

2. When it means on the *shore* = **an**, as :

Hamilton liegt **an** Ontario-See, Hamilton lies **on** Lake  
Ontario.

(d') Unclassified :

Mit Fleiß, **On** purpose.

Bei dieser Gelegenheit, **On** this occasion.

Unter (or mit) dieser Bedingung, **On** this condition.

Zum Begriffe, **On** the point of.

### 233.

### To.

(a) When replacing the indirect object = **Dative** without preposition, as :

Ich habe meiner Schwester ein Buch gegeben, I have given a book **to** my sister (i. e., my sister a book).

(b) Of motion or direction to **persons** = **zu**, as :

Ich will **zu** meinem Vater gehen, I will go **to** my father.

(c) Of motion to **places** :

1. With proper names of countries, towns, etc. = **nach**, as :

Ich gehe **nach** Paris, **nach** Deutschland, I am going **to** Paris, **to** Germany.

2. With common nouns (i) = **in**, **an**, or **auf** respectively, with the *Accusative*, in various idioms, where these prepositions with the Dative = 'at' (see § 227, (a), above), as :

**In** die Schule, Kirche, **ins** Theater, Konzert u. s. w. gehen,  
To go **to** school, church, the theatre, concert, etc.

**Aus** Fenster, **an** die Thür gehen,  
To go **to** the window, door.

**Auf** den Markt, Ball, **auf** die Post, Universität gehen,  
To go **to** market, **to** the ball, post-office, university.

(ii) Frequently = **zu**, which may usually replace the prepositions in the above idioms also, as :

Er ist **zur** Stadt, **zur** Kirche u. s. w. gegangen,  
He has gone **to** town, church, etc.

## 234.

## With.

Observe the following Idioms:

**Von** ganzem Herzen, **With** all my heart.

Er zittert **vor** Kälte, He trembles **with** cold (*cause*).

Das ist **bei** uns nicht Sitte, That is not the custom **with**  
(= *among*) us.

**In** dieser Absicht, **With** this intention.

REMARK. — For the proper use of prepositions after particular adjectives and verbs, see Less. XLIX.

## VOCABULARY.

to intend, gedenken	account, bill, die Rechnung
be enough, suffice, hinreichen	dressing-gown, der Schlafrock*
bring with (one), mitbringen	evil, das Übel
sign, unterzeichnen	relative, der Verwandte
bring back, zurückbringen	treaty, der Vertrag*
excursion, pleasure-trip, der Ausflug*	root, die Wurzel
harvesting, das Ernten	this evening, heute Abend
favour, der Gefallen	thorough(-ly), gründlich
Louis, Lewis, Ludwig	fortunately, glücklicherweise
measles, die Masern (f. pl.)	possible, möglich
	absent (on a journey), verreist

**Idioms:** 1. To be accustomed, Die Gewohnheit haben (+ infin. with zu).

2. In the middle of summer, Mitten im Sommer.

3. To take a pleasure-trip (excursion), Einen Ausflug machen.

4. It looks like rain, Es sieht nach Regen aus.

5. Two or three, Zwei bis drei.

6. He sprang out of the window, Er sprang zum Fenster hinaus  
(point of ingress or exit denoted by zu + dat.).

NOTE: It is customary, in referring to the relatives of the person addressed, to prefix Herr, Frau or Fräulein, as the case may be, but this is not done in speaking of one's own relatives, thus:

Wie geht es Ihrem Herrn Vater? — But: Mein Vater ist ganz wohl.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

A. 1. Auf welche Weise haben Sie die französische Sprache so gut gelernt? 2. Ich habe zuerst die Grammatik gründlich studiert, und dann habe ich anderthalb Jahre in Frankreich zugebracht. 3. Wie lange bleibt Ihr Herr Vater noch fort? Er kommt erst übermorgen nach Hause. 4. Was gedenkst du heute Abend zu thun? Ich weiß es nicht; für's Erste muß ich meine Aufgaben machen. 5. Wo hast du den hübschen Schlafrock bekommen? Ich habe ihn zum Geburtstage bekommen, und ziehe ihn heute zum ersten Male an. 6. Es klingelt; wer ist an der Thür? Es ist jemand, der den Herrn sprechen will, aber er ist bei Tische und läßt sich nicht stören. 7. Du sitzt am Fenster; sieh doch einmal zum Fenster hinaus, und du wirst ihn vielleicht sehen können. 8. Zu welcher Zeit lebte Molière? Er lebte unter der Regierung Ludwig XIV. vor Frankreich. 9. Ist es möglich, zu derselben Zeit von einer Sache zu sprechen und an eine andere zu denken? 10. Die Liebe zum Gelde ist die Wurzel alles Übels. 11. Unser Haus steht am St. Lorenz-Fluß, und von den Fenstern sieht man die Dampfschiffe vorbeigehen. 12. Willst du mir deine Grammatik leihen? Ja wohl, mit der Bedingung, daß du dieselbe vor morgen zurückbringst. 13. Ist Herr B. zu Hause? Nein, er ist auf drei Wochen verreist. 14. Bei Tagesanbruch singen die Vögel am schönsten. 15. Alle Fenster und Thüren werden des Nachts aus Furcht vor Dieben bei uns zugeschlossen. 16. Weshalb sind die Kinder nicht zur Schule gegangen? 17. Es sind mehrere Kinder in der Schule, die an den Masern gelitten haben, und die Mutter fürchtet sich vor dieser Krankheit. 18. Reisen Sie lieber zu Land oder zu Wasser? Im Sommer ziehe ich es vor, zu Wasser zu reisen. 19. Mein Vater hatte die Gewohnheit, uns Kinder um sich zu versammeln und uns Geschichten zu erzählen. 20. Mitten im Sommer, und dann wieder um Weihnachten, gehe ich aufs Land, um meine Verwandten zu besuchen. 21. Vorigen Sommer blieb ich mehr als vierzehn Tage bei denselben.

*B.* 1. Good morning; you have come just at the right time; I was on the point of going to your house (say: going to you). 2. There is a ring at the door; go to the door and see who is there. 3. When you go to the market, do not forget to go to the post also. 4. Do you intend to take a pleasure-trip this summer? Yes, I intend to leave the town for three or four weeks. 5. Last summer we stayed away only a week. 6. Does it not look like rain? 7. Yes, I am afraid it might rain, but fortunately I have brought my umbrella with [me]. 8. Have you any money about you? I should like to pay this bill, and have left my purse at home. 9. I have about seven dollars and a half with me; would that be enough (suffice)? 10. Would you do me the favour to lend me the half of it (davon) for two or three days? 11. What magnificent weather for harvesting; it has not rained for two weeks [past]. 12. Is the servant going to (the) market? No, she was at (the) market (already) two hours ago. 13. The battle of Waterloo took place on the 18th of June in the year 1815. 14. Some months afterwards the treaty of Paris was signed. 15. When (at what time) and in what war did the battle of the Alma take place? 16. It took place in the year 1855, during the war between England and Russia.

ORAL EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Wann gedenken Sie die Stadt zu verlassen? 2. Wo steht das Haus Ihres Herrn Vaters? 3. Auf welche Weise gedenken Sie diesen Sommer zuzubringen? 4. Wollen Sie einmal zu mir kommen, und den Nachmittag bei mir zubringen? 5. Es hat geklingelt; wer ist da? 6. Was für Wetter bekommen wir heute Abend?



## LESSON XL.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**235.** Conjunctions are either :

*A. Cöordinating*, or those which connect sentences of the *same rank* or *order* (principal with principal, or dependent with dependent), or :

*B. Subordinating*, or those which connect one sentence with another, on which it depends, or to which it is *subordinate*.

*A. CÖORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.*

**236. I. Conjunctions Proper.** — The Cöordinating Conjunctions *proper* merely *connect* sentences without affecting their structure. They are :

<b>und</b> , and ( <i>general connective</i> )	<b>aber</b> ,	} but ( <i>adversative</i> )
<b>oder</b> , or ( <i>general disjunctive</i> )	<b>allein</b> ,	
<b>denn</b> , for ( <i>causative</i> )	<b>auch</b> ,	
	<b>sondern</b> ,	

REMARKS. — 1. **Sondern** is used *after negative sentences* only, and introduces a sentence *correcting* or *contradicting* the statement contained in the preceding sentence, in whole or in part, as :

Ich bin nicht krank, **sondern** ganz gesund,  
I am not ill but (on the contrary) quite well.

But if there is no inconsistency or contradiction between the two statements, **aber** is used, as :

Er hat es nicht gethan, **aber** er wird es thun,  
He has not yet done it, but he will do it.

2. **Aber** does not necessarily begin the sentence and often comes after the verb. When **aber** does not begin the sentence, it has rather the sense of 'however,' as :

Das böse Weib **aber** ging vor den Spiegel,  
The wicked woman, **however**, went to the mirror.

NOTE. — When there is any other conjunction present, *aber* seldom begins the sentence.

**237. II. Adverbial Conjunctions.**—Many adverbs and adverbial phrases have the function of conjunctions, when they are used to express the relation between sentences, rather than to modify any particular member of the sentence in which they occur.

The principal cöordinating adverbial conjunctions are :

<b>auch</b> , also, too	}	<i>connective</i> (related to <b>und</b> )
<b>außerdem</b> , besides		
<b>dann</b> , then		
<b>sogar</b> , even		

<b>dennoch</b> ,	}	still	}	<i>adversative</i> (related to <b>aber</b> )
<b>doch</b> ,				
<b>jedoch</b> ,	}	nevertheless		
<b>denn</b> , unless				
<b>dennoch</b> , nevertheless	}	adversative (related to <b>aber</b> )		
<b>desseungeachtet</b> ,				
<b>nichtsdestoweniger</b> ,				
<b>indessen</b> , however				
<b>sonst</b> , else, otherwise				
<b>wohl</b> , indeed	}	to be sure		
<b>zwar</b> , it is true, to be sure				

<b>daher</b> ,	}	therefore	}	<i>causative</i> (related to <b>denn</b> )
<b>darum</b> ,				
<b>deshalb</b> ,				
<b>deswegen</b> ,				
<b>also</b> ,	}	accordingly		
<b>folglich</b> ,				
<b>mithin</b> ,				

so, so	}	<i>comparative</i>
also, so, thus		
ebenso, just as		
besto, } the		
je, }		
insofern, }	}	inasmuch as, as far as — <i>restrictive</i>
inoweit, }		
unterdessen, }	}	<i>time</i>
indeß, }		
darauf, afterwards		
seitdem, since then		

REMARKS.—1. Unlike the conjunctions proper, these adverbial conjunctions, if they *introduce* a sentence, throw the subject *after* the verb; but they may also follow the verb, thus:

Er ist krank; **deßwegen** wird er kommen (or: er wird **deßwegen** kommen), He is ill; nevertheless he will come.

Es regnete, **darum** (daher, deswegen) konnte ich (or: ich konnte **darum**, etc.) nicht ausgehen.

2. **Auch** and **sogar**, when they refer specially to the subject or any other member of the clause preceding the verb, do not throw the subject after the verb, as:

**Auch** sein Vater war zugegen, His father, too, was present.

**Sogar** seinen Feinden hat er vergeben, He has pardoned even his enemies.

3. The verb often comes first in a sentence with **doch**, to express a strong affirmation, as:

**Habe** ich es **doch** gesagt, Did I not say so?

### 238. III. Correlative Conjunctions. These are :

entweder . . . oder, either . . . or } *disjunctive*  
 weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor }  
 nicht nur . . . sondern auch, } not only . . . } *connective*  
 sowohl . . . als auch, } but also }  
 nicht sowohl . . . als, not so much . . . as  
 bald . . . bald, now . . . now (again), at one time . . .  
 at another  
 theils . . . theils, partly . . . partly  
 einerseits . . . anderseits, on the one hand . . . on the  
 other.

REMARK. — The last three are *adverbial* conjunctions, and either follow the verb, or throw the subject after it, unless they modify a particular member of the sentence (compare § 237, Remarks 1, 2, above).

### 239. B. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

1. Sentences introduced by subordinating conjunctions are always *dependent*, and therefore have the verb *last* (see § 32).

2. Some of these also are *adverbial*, but, as this distinction does not affect the construction, they are not separately arranged.

3. The principal subordinating conjunctions are as follows

(a) Introducing *substantive* clause :

daß, that  
 ob, if, whether

(b) Introducing *adverbial* clause :

als,	} when	} <i>time</i>	bis (daß), until	} before	} <i>time</i>
da,			ehe (daß),		
wenn,			bevor,		

indess'en, indem', unterdess'en, während (daß), seit(dem), since sobald', as soon as so lange, as long as (so)wie, as soon as wie, how — <i>manner</i>	} while, whilst } <i>time</i>
denn, than als, } wie, } than, as inwiefern', inasmuch as je nachdem', according as	} <i>degree</i>
da, since daß, that weil, because	} <i>cause</i>
daß, that auf daß, } um daß, } in order that damit', in order that	} <i>purpose</i>
wenn, if als ob, } als wenn, } as if falls, } wofern, } in case	} <i>condition</i>
obgleich, wenn gleich, ob schon, wenn schon, ob auch, wenn auch, obwohl, wiewohl, ungeachtet (daß), wenn . . . nicht, if not, unless	} although } <i>concessive</i>

REMARKS. — 1. **Wenn** and **ob** take the *subjunctive* when the verb of the principal clause is in the *impf.*, *plupf.*, or conditional, as :

Ich **würde** kommen, wenn ich wohl genug **wäre**, I should come, if I **were** well enough.

Ich **wußte** nicht, ob er gekommen **wäre** (**sei**), I did not know, whether he had come.

2. **Wenn** may be omitted in conditional sentences ; the verb then *begins* the clause, as in the question order (compare § 59). This construction is much more common than in English, and is generally used when the dependent clause, containing the *condition*, precedes the principal clause, containing the consequence, as :

**Hätte** ich Geld, **so** würde ich Freunde haben, If I had (had I) money, I should have friends.

NOTE. — The particle **so** should not be omitted in the latter clause when the former is without **wenn**.

3. In the compound conjunctions **obgleich**, **obchon**, **obwohl**, etc., the two parts may be separated, and the latter part placed after the subject, as :

**Obgleich** (**obchon**, etc.) er krank war, etc. ; or :

**Ob** er gleich krank war, Although he was ill.

NOTE. — With **wenn** the particles *gleich*, etc., always follow the subject.

4. The **ob** or **wenn** may also be omitted in these conjunctions and in **als ob**, **als wenn** ('as if') ; the verb then *begins* the sentence, or immediately follows **als**, as :

**Ist** er gleich krank, Although he is ill.

**Es** scheint mir, **als ob** (**wenn**) ich Sie irgendwo gesehen hätte ; or : **als hätte** ich, etc., It seems to me, **as if** I had seen you somewhere.

## 240.

## INTERJECTIONS.

1. **Interjections** proper are not, strictly speaking, members of the sentence, and consist of sounds expressing either :

(a) Independent outbursts of natural feeling, as : **o**, **oh**, of various emotions ; **ah**, **hei**, **heija**, **juchhe** (hurrah), joy ; **ei**, **ha**, **poß**, surprise ; **ach**, **au**, pain ; **pfui** (fie), disgust ; **hah**, contempt ; or

(b) Intimations of will, as : **psit**, **ich** (hush), enjoining silence ; **he**, **hedu'**, **ho**, **halslob**, **hollah**, to call attention.

2. Various parts of speech, and even whole phrases, are employed interjectionally, as : **heil**, hail ; **weh**, woe (subst.) **hoch**, hurrah ; **brav**, bravo ; **leider**, alas ; **fort**, **weg**, away (adverbs) ; **gottlob**, thank God ; also in oaths and adjurations.

3. Akin to Interjections are imitations of natural sounds, as : **hui**, **huich**, whizz ; **piß**, **paß**, **puß**, shot ; **baß**, fall ; **plumps**, splash.

4. (a) The Interjections **o**, **ach**, **pfui**, are sometimes followed by a genitive, as :

**O!** (**ach!** **pfui!**) **der Schande!** **Oh!** (**ah!** **fie!**) what disgrace ;

or by **über** + accusative, as :

**Pfui!** **über dich Zeigen!** Fie on thee for a coward !

(b) The substantives used interjectionally, as under 2, above, are sometimes followed by a dative, as :

**Weh mir!** Woe's me !

**Heil dem Könige!** Hail to the king !

## VOCABULARY.

to call for, **abholen**  
go in, **hineingehen**

wear (intr.), **sich tragen**  
prepare, **verbereiten**

lay up, lay by, zurücklegen  
 old age, das Alter  
 joy, delight, die Freude  
 Lord, der Herr  
 price, der Preis  
 tortoise, die Schildkröte  
 guilt, debt, die Schuld

to be to blame (for), schuld  
 (adj.) sein (an + dat.)  
 cheap, billig  
 certainly, in any case, jedenfalls  
 in vain, vergebens  
 even if, although, wenn auch

*Idioms*: 1. I am studying (preparing) for an examination, Ich bereite mich auf ein Examen (acc.) vor.

2. Do you consider that good? Halten Sie das für gut?

3. To make calls, Besuche machen.

4. In the world, Auf der Welt.

#### EXERCISE XL.

A. 1. Wir sollten alle Menschen lieben, wenn sie uns auch hassen. 2. Sie versprochen, mich abzuholen; allein ich wartete vergebens, denn Sie kamen nicht. 3. Wenn ich an Ihrem Hause vorübergehe, so gehe ich gewöhnlich hinein. 4. Als ich aber gestern Abend vorüberging, sah ich kein Licht und daher bin ich nicht hineingegangen. 5. Je mehr wir lernen, desto mehr sind wir im Stande zu lernen. 6. Die Schüler bekommen morgen Ferien, darum springen und singen sie vor Freude. 7. Wie sehr ich mich auch bemühe, es gelingt mir leider doch nicht, alle Sätze dieser Aufgabe richtig zu schreiben. 8. Du tadelst mich, als ob ich schuld daran wäre. 9. Ein vorsichtiger Mann legt in seiner Jugend Geld zurück, auf daß er in seinem Alter nicht Mangel leide. 10. Außer wenn ich krank oder sehr beschäftigt bin, gehe ich jeden Tag spazieren. 11. Er ist nicht nur reich, sondern auch freigebig, und deshalb hat er so viele Freunde gewonnen. 12. Hätten wir gewußt, daß Sie heute Besuch haben, so wären wir erst morgen gekommen. 13. Wollen Sie sich erkundigen, ob Frau G. noch in demselben Hause wohnt? 14. Es giebt noch viele Leute auf der Welt, die weder lesen noch schreiben können. 15. Sie hätten mir helfen können, wenn Sie es gewollt hätten, allein Sie wollten es nicht.



16. Falls Sie des Nachmittags nicht kommen können, so kommen Sie doch des Abends. 17. Obgleich Karl schon zehn Jahre alt ist, kann er weder gut lesen noch gut schreiben. 18. Die Schildkröte lief, indem der Hase schlief, deshalb ist sie auch zuerst angekommen. 19. Hätte der Hase nicht geschlafen, so wäre er jedenfalls zuerst angekommen. 20. Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß du lange lebest im Lande, das dir der Herr dein Gott giebt.

*B.* 1. We shall come, even if it rains. 2. Before I leave the town, I must make some calls. 3. Shall we go without him, or shall we wait till he comes back? 4. Whilst we were away, a thief came and stole the money. 5. Do you sit up late when you are studying? 6. Not generally; however, when I was preparing for my last examination I used to sit up late. 7. Do you consider this cloth dear? The price is not high to be sure, but it will not wear well. 8. Here is cloth, which is dear, but I believe that it is good. 9. I do not, on the contrary, consider it dear, but cheap, since it is good cloth. 10. Since I have been ill, I am allowed neither to read much nor to write much. 11. It seems to me that it is colder to-day than yesterday. 12. It is all the same to me, whether I travel by the steamer or by the railway. 13. [If] I had thought of that, I should have gone to meet you. 14. The hare slept, and in the meanwhile the tortoise arrived. 15. If the hare had not slept, he would have arrived first.

#### ORAL EXERCISE XL.

1. Die Fenster sind alle auf, wer ist daran schuld? 2. Legen Sie viel Geld zurück? 3. Weshalb haben Sie mich nicht abgeholt? 4. Können Sie mir sagen, in welcher Richtung von hier der Fluss liegt? 5. Hast du dein letztes Examen bestanden? 6. Halten Sie diesen Hut für teuer?

## SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON F.

## ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS.

**241.** 1. *Allein* follows and limits, or corrects, *affirmative* statements, as *sondern* does negative, thus:

Er ist reich, **allein** er ist nicht glücklich, He is rich, **but** he is not happy.

2. *Desto* or *um so* (but not *je*) may be used with a *single* comparative, as:

Eilen Sie, damit Sie **desto** (um so) früher ankommen, Make haste, so that you may arrive *all the* sooner.

3. *Daß* is the most general in meaning of all the conjunctions. It may be omitted when it introduces a *substantive* clause, as in indirect statements. The sentence then has the construction of a principal clause (verb *second*; see § 87, 3). But *daß* cannot be omitted when it expresses *purpose* or *consequence*.

4. The Engl. *if* must be rendered by *ob* (not *wenn*) when it = *whether*, as:

I asked him *if* he could come, Ich fragte ihn, **ob** er kommen könne.

5. For the distinction between *als*, *wenn* (as conjunctions of time) and *wann*, see § 58.

6. 'Than' should be rendered by *als* after an adjective in the comparative degree, not by *wie*.

7. *Denn* = 'than' is obsolete, except when used to prevent the repetition of *als*, as:

Er ist größer als Dichter, **denn** als Mensch, He is greater as a poet, **than** as a man.

8. In comparisons of *equality*, as . . . as = (*eben*)*so* . . . *wie*, or *als*, *wie* being more common, as:

He is as tall as I, Er ist (*eben*)**so** groß **wie** ich.

After a negative, *eben* is omitted, as:

Er ist **nicht so** groß **wie** ich.

9. *So* . . . *so* are used with correlative clauses, containing adjectives compared together in the *positive* degree (compare the use of *je* or *desto* with the compar. degree, § 126, 4), as:

**So** groß er ist, **so** feige ist er auch, He is **as** cowardly as he is big; or: 'equally big and cowardly'; lit.: Big as he is, he is just as cowardly.

NOTE. — In the first clause of the above example *so* is *subordinating*; in the second *cōordinating*, but does not throw the subject after the verb.

Observe also the following construction, where the clauses cannot be rendered as correlative in English:

**So** gern ich Ihnen (auch) helfen möchte, **so** unmöglich ist es mir,  
However glad I should be to help you, it is quite impossible  
for me (or: Glad as I should be, etc.).

10. **As**, when denoting *cause* (= 'since') must be rendered by **da**, as:

I could not come, **as** I was not well, Ich konnte nicht kommen, **da**  
ich nicht wohl war.

11. **As**, in the sense of 'while' = *indessen*, as:

He fell asleep, **as** I was reading to him, Er schlief ein, **indessen** ich  
ihm vorlas.

12. Distinguish carefully between the following uses of Engl. *since*:

(a) *Since* as *preposition* = *seit* (not *seitdem*), as:

Since last Tuesday, *Zeit* letztem Dienstag.

(b) *Since* as *adverb* or *cōordinating* adverbial conjunction = *seitdem* (not *seit*), as:

He was here the day before yesterday, but I have not seen him  
*since*, Vorgestern war er hier, *seitdem* habe ich ihn aber nicht  
gesehen.

(c) *Since* as *subordinating* conjunction of *time* = *seitdem* or *seit*, as:

I have not seen him *since* he recovered from his illness, Ich habe  
ihn nicht gesehen, *seit*(*dem*) er genesen ist.

(d) *Since* as conjunction of *cause* = **da**, as:

Since I have no money, I cannot pay you, **Da** ich kein Geld habe,  
kann ich Sie nicht bezahlen.

13. After **ehe**, **bevor** and **während**, **daß** may be omitted.

14. **Bevor** expresses time only, **ehe** may also express preference (= 'rather'), as:

**Ehe** ich das thue, will ich sterben, **Rather** than do that, I will die.

15. Observe that the adverbial conjunctions **indessen**, **unterdessen** are *cöordinating* when they = 'meanwhile' (the pronoun *dessen* being *demonstrative*), but *subordinating* when they = 'whilst, while' (the pron. being *relative*), as:

Sie sprachen mit einander; **indessen** (**unterdessen**) **ging** ich auf und ab, They were speaking to each other; (**in the**) **meanwhile** I was walking up and down; **but**:

Sie sprachen mit einander, **indessen** (**unterdessen**) ich auf und ab **ging**, They were speaking to each other, **while** I was walking up and down.

In the sense of 'however,' **indessen** is *cöordinating* only.

16. **Indem** is subordinating only, and denotes *cause* as well as time, **as**:

Ich brauche mehr Geld, **indem** ich viele Schulden zu bezahlen habe, I need more money, **since** I have many debts to pay (**having** many debts to pay).

**Indem** er mir die Hand gab, lächelte er, **As** he gave me his hand (**giving** me his hand), he smiled.

17. **Weil** must be used (not *da*) in answer to the question *why?* or *wherefore?* as:

**Warum** kamen Sie nicht? **Weil** ich krank war.

**Why** did you not come? **Because** I was ill.

18. 'Unless' is rendered by **wenn ... nicht** (*if ... not*), or by **denn** (*cöordinating* adv. conj.), as:

Wir werden nicht ausgehen können, **wenn** sich das Wetter **nicht** ändert, We shall not be able to go out, **unless** the weather changes.

Ich lasse dich nicht, du segnest mich **denn**, I will not let thee go, except (**unless** thou bless me).

NOTE. — **Denn** in this sense always follows the verb.

19. 'But' after a negative = **als**, as:

Ich hatte nichts **als** Unglück auf meiner Reise, I had nothing **but** misfortune on my journey.

NOTE. — Nichts weniger als = 'anything but' (not 'nothing less than'), as:

Er ist **nichts weniger als** reich, He is **anything but** rich.

20. Distinguish between:

(a) **Da** = 'there': adverb of *place*, as:

Ich war **da**, I was **there**.

(b) **Da** = 'then': adverb of *time*, as:

Der Dieb *ich*lich ins Haus; **da** ergriff ich ihn, The thief sneaked into the house; **then** I seized him.

(c) **Da** = 'since,' 'as': subordinating conjunction, as:

Ich konnte nicht kommen, **da** ich krank war, I could not come, **since (as)** I was ill.

21. Distinguish between **desseungeachtet**, '*nevertheless*' (*coörd. adv. conj.*) and **ungeachtet**, '*although*,' '*notwithstanding that*' (*subord. conj.*).

# EXERCISE F.

1. Our neighbour has failed, but he is only the richer on that account, since he has not paid his creditors. 2. The hare was sleeping, whilst the tortoise crept slowly towards the goal. 3. Rather than accept your conditions, I will give up my position. 4. He has not been here since last week, and I have not seen him since. 5. Since you have not seen him, I must either go and see him (say: go to him), or write to him. 6. I consider him an ignorant man; he is anything but learned. 7. Have you been at the railway-station? Yes, I was there as the train arrived. 8. We shall not go out this afternoon, because it looks like rain. 9. We shall not go out to-morrow either (*and*), if the weather does not change. 10. The whole family was absent yesterday from eight o'clock till twelve o'clock at night; meanwhile the house took (*tangen*) fire.

## PART SECOND.

### SYNTAX.

#### LESSON XLI.

##### SYNTAX OF THE CASES:—NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE.

###### 242.

###### NOMINATIVE.

1. The **Nominative** is the case of the *subject*, or of a word in apposition to the subject, or of a predicate noun qualifying it. The nominative is also used in address, there being no special form for the vocative.

2. Neuter verbs indicating a state or transition, such as *sein*, to be; *werden*, to become; *bleiben*, to remain; *scheinen*, to seem, appear; *heißen*, to be called, take a *predicate* nominative, as:

Er ist **Soldat** geworden (geblieben), He has become (remained) a **soldier**.

3. Verbs of *calling* take a predicate nominative, verbs of *considering* a nominative with *als*, in the *passive*, as:

Kaiser Heinrich I. wurde **der** Vogler genannt, Emperor Henry was called the Fowler.

Mein Vater wurde immer von mir **als** mein bester Freund betrachtet, My father was always regarded by me (**as**) my best friend.

NOTE.—Verbs of *choosing* generally take the preposition *zu* instead of the English nominative.

## 243.

## GENITIVE.

The Genitive is used chiefly as the complement of substantives, its use in this respect being much the same as the English objective with 'of,' and also covering that of the *possessive*. Thus we have:

1. The Genitive of **Origin**, as:

Die Früchte **des** Baumes, The fruits **of** the tree.

2. The **Subjective** Genitive, indicating the *agent* or *cause*, as:

Der Glaube **eines** Christen, The faith **of** a Christian.

3. The **Objective** Genitive, indicating the *thing affected*, as:

Die Entdeckung **Amerikas**, The discovery **of** America.

4. The **Possessive** Genitive, as:

Der Garten **des** Königs, The garden **of** the king (the king's garden).

5. The Genitive of **Quality**, as:

Zwei Kinder **eines** Alters, Two children **of** one age.

NOTE. — This genitive is frequently replaced by *von*, as:

Ein Mann **von** hohem Alter, A man **of** great age.

6. The **Partitive** Genitive, as:

Einer **meiner** Freunde, One **of** my friends.

Der jüngste **meiner** Brüder, The youngest **of** my brothers.

NOTE. — This genitive is commonly replaced by *von* after numerals and other partitives.

## 244.

## GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives denoting *possession* and *interest*, *plenty*, *knowledge*, *desire*, *guilt*, or their *opposites*, govern the genitive, as:

bedürftig, needing, in need  
begierig (also + nach), de-  
sirous

bewußt, conscious  
eingedenk, mindful  
fähig (also + zu), capable

fröh, glad	ſchuldig, guilty
gewiß, certain	ſicher, certain
gewohnt (also + an with acc.), accustomed	ü'berdrüſſig, weary
leer, empty	verdächtig, suspected
loß (also + acc.), rid	voll (also + acc., or + von), full
müde (also + acc.), tired	wert (also + acc.), worth
ſatt (also + acc.), satisfied	würdig, worthy

REMARKS. — 1. The neuter pronoun 'it' after most of these adjectives may have the form **es**, which is the old *genitive*, and is the origin of the later use of the accusative, first with the pronouns *das*, *was*, and then, by analogy, with substantives, as :

Ich bin **es** (**das**) müde, I am tired of it (that).

2. With *loß*, *müde*, *wert* the Accusative is more usual than the genitive.

## 245.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. Verbs of meanings similar to those of the adjectives under the previous section take a genitive of the **nearer** object, as :

achten (also + auf with acc.), pay attention	denken (generally + an with acc., think
bedürfen, need	gedenken, mention
begehren, desire	genießen (generally + acc.), enjoy
brauchen, want	vergessen (generally + acc.), forget
entbehren, miss. do without	
erwähnen, mention	

Also the following :

harren (also + auf with acc.) wait	lachen, laugh at
warten (also + acc.), tend, nurse	spotten, mock
	ſchonen (also + acc.), spare



2. Transitive Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquittal, deprivation, emotion*, take a genitive of the **remoter** object, as:

anflagen, accuse	lösprechen, acquit
berauben, rob	überfüh'ren, convict
beschuldigen, accuse	überzeugen (also + von), con-
entbinden (also + von), re-	vince
lieve	versichern, assure
entfleiden (also + von), dis-	würdigen, deem worthy
robe	zeihen, accuse

3. Also many reflexive and impersonal verbs (see §§ 215, 216, 219).

**246.**

## ADVERBIAL GENITIVE.

For the use of the genitive in forming adverbs from substantives, see § 189, 2. The adverbial genitive may express *place, time or manner*, as:

linker Hand, On the left hand.

seiner Wege gehen, To go one's way.

dieser Tage, During these (last) days.

Abends, In the evening.

Morgens, In the morning, etc.

Alles Ernstes, In all seriousness.

Trocknen Fußes, Dry-shod.

And particularly with *Weise*, 'manner,' after an adjective, as:

Glücklicher Weise, — or: { Fortunately lit., in a fortunate  
Glücklicherweise, } manner)

**247.** For **Interjections** followed by a genitive, see § 240, 4, (a).

For the genitive after prepositions, see §§ 222, 223.

## EXERCISE XLI.

*A.* 1. Guten Morgen, Karl; was hast du für Eile, mein Junge? 2. Guten Morgen, Herr B.; es ist bald neun Uhr und ich gehe jetzt in die Schule. 3. So, hast du noch weit zu gehen? 4. Bis nach der Friedrichstrasze; Herr G., unser Lehrer, besteht sehr auf Pünktlichkeit. 5. Steige nur ein, du kannst mit mir fahren, da mein Weg durch die Friedrichstrasze führt. 6. Ich bin Ihnen sehr dankbar; das ist sehr freundlich von Ihnen. 7. Sitzt du da bequem? 8. Ja, aber sind meine Bücher Ihnen nicht im Wege? 9. Nicht im geringsten, aber was für eine Menge Bücher hast du da! Du hast gewiss viel zu studieren. 10. Ich arbeite jetzt sehr fleissig, da das Examen nächstens stattfindet. 11. Auf welches Examen bereitest du dich vor? 12. Auf das Eintrittsexamen der Universität. 13. Was für Sprachen studierst du? 14. Ich studiere Englisch, Latein, Deutsch und Französisch. 15. Natürlich studierst du auch die Mathematik? 16. Wir müssen Rechnen, Algebra und Geometrie lernen. 17. Bist du ein Freund von der Mathematik, oder ziehst du die Sprachen vor? 18. Ich lerne sehr gern Mathematik, besonders Algebra; mein Lehrer glaubt, ich habe nicht viel Sprachtalent. 19. Deshalb solltest du desto fleissiger die Sprachen studieren, (auf) dass deine Bildung nicht einseitig werde. 20. Mein Vater ist auch derselben Meinung. 21. Hoffentlich wirst du dein Examen glücklich bestehen; da sind wir aber schon bei der Schule. 22. Ich danke Ihnen vielmals für den freundlichen Wunsch, wie auch für die Fahrt.

*B.* 1. "An honest man is the noblest work of God." 2. A pound of iron is about as large as two pounds of silver. 3. Mr. Cleveland was elected president of the United States in the year 1884. 4. I was to have taken (made) a journey to Europe this summer, but my father needs me in his busi-

ness and I shall be obliged to remain at home. 5. I have been offered five thousand dollars for my house, and I shall sell it, for I am glad of the opportunity of getting (to get) rid of it. 6. The Duke of Wellington, a great English general (Feldherr), was called the "Iron Duke," as Prince Bismarck, the great German statesman, is called the "Iron Chancellor." 7. He (the former) has deserved that title not only as a soldier but as a man. 8. My neighbour, the merchant, has been accused of forgery, but I do not believe that he is capable of such a crime. 9. He was in need of money, and is said to have done it on that account. 10. I hope that he will be acquitted of this accusation, for I am convinced of his innocence. 11. The discovery of America by (durch) Columbus was perhaps the greatest undertaking of any man or of any age (Zeitalter). 12. Columbus was a man of great bodily as well as mental power. 13. His whole fleet consisted of three small ships, of which two were very old. 14. Have you seen your brother the lawyer? 15. Excuse [me]; my brother is not a lawyer, but a doctor. I have not seen him since Christmas. 16. As a student he always used (pflegen) to say he meant to be (werden) a lawyer. 17. We are tired of studying; let us go out. 18. Shall I send for (nach) a carriage? 19. No, it is not worth while (der Mühe wert), I would rather walk. 20. Unfortunately it has rained and the roads are bad. 21. We can try (the) walking, and if we get tired of it, we can take the street-cars (Pferdebahn, sing.).

## LESSON XLII.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES (continued).— DATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE.

### 248.

#### DATIVE.

The **Dative** is the case of the **Indirect Object**.

The Dative is used to denote the person for whose *advantage* or *disadvantage* a thing is or is done, as:

Er hat **mir** ein Buch gekauft, He has bought **me** a book.

**249.** The Dative is very freely used in German to denote the person who has some *interest* in an action or thing. This is called the **ethical dative** or dative of **interest**, and must usually be left untranslated in English, in which language its use is obsolete, thus:

Ich habe **mir** die Sache angesehen, I have considered the thing (for my own satisfaction).

Ich **mir** das nicht wieder, Don't do that again (I tell you).

For the *possessive* dative replacing, with the definite article, a genitive case or (with pronouns) a possessive adjective, see § 44, 6.

## **250.** DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

1. The Dative stands as the *Indirect Object of transitive* verbs, as:

Er giebt **mir** das Buch, He gives **me** the book (the Look to me).

2. It stands as the *sole* object after verbs which express a *personal* relation only, such as verbs of:

(a) *Approach or removal*, etc., as:

begegnen, meet	gleichen, resemble
entgehen, escape	nachgehen, follow
entsprechen, correspond to	nachstehen, be inferior
fehlen, be wanting	nahe, approach
folgen, follow	zusehen, watch

(b) *Pleasure or displeasure*, as:

beaguen, please	drohen, threaten
dankeu, thank	fluchen, curse

gefallen, please	mißfal'len, displease
genügen, suffice	ſchmeicheln, flatter
grollen, be angry	ſtehen, suit, become

(c) *Advantage or disadvantage, as :*

beiſtehen, assist	mangeln, be wanting
dienen, serve	nützen, be useful
helfen, help	ſchaden, harm

(d) *Command, resistance and their opposites, as :*

befehlen, command	tögen, defy
gebieten, order	weichen, yield
gehörchen, obey	widerſte'hen, oppose
verbieten, forbid	widerſtre'b'en, resist

(e) *After verbs expressing possession, trust, and various other personal relations, as :*

antworten, answer	glauben, believe
beſtimmen, agree with	ſcheinen, seem
erwidern, reply	trauen, trust
gehören, belong	zure'den, encourage

Also with *ſein* and *werden*, expressing a state of feeling (with *zu* *Wute* expressed or understood), as :

*Wie iſt Ihnen ?* How do you feel ?

Observe also the idiom: *Wenn dem ſo iſt*, 'If that is the case,' in which *dem* is dat. neut.

(f) After many verbs expressing similar relations, compounded with the inseparable prefixes *er-*, *ent-*, *ver-*, *wider* ; with the separable prefixes *an-*, *auf-*, *bei-*, *entgegen-*, *nach-*, *vor-*, *zu-*, etc., and with adjectives, nouns or adverbial phrases, such as :

leid thun, be sorry	zu Teil werden, fall to one's
wohlwollen, be well-disposed	share
zu Statten kommen, be of use	daß Wort reden, defend

REMARKS. — 1. The great majority of these verbs have become transitive in English, on account of the loss of distinction between the dative and accusative; their construction in German should be carefully observed.

2. Many of the verbs under (*d*), (*e*) above take a *direct* object, particularly in the shape of a clause or of a neuter pronoun, as :

Er hat mir verboten zu gehen, He has forbidden me to go.

Ich erwiderte, daß ich kommen wolle, I replied that I would come.

Mein Vater hat es mir befohlen, My father has ordered me (to do) it.

For the Dative with *Reflexive* Verbs, see §§ 215, 216; with *Impersonal* Verbs, see §§ 217, 219.

## 251. DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

The Dative stands after adjectives similar in meaning to the Verbs given in the foregoing section, such as :

### (a) *Approach*, etc. :

ähnlich, similar	ungleich, unequal, unlike
fremd, strange	nahe (also + bei), near
gleich, equal, like	verwandt, related

### (b) *Pleasure*, etc. :

angenehm, pleasant	lieb, dear
gnädig, gracious	willkommen, welcome

### (c) *Advantage*, etc. :

heilsam, wholesome	treu, faithful
schuldig, indebted	

### (d) *Command*, etc. :

folgsam, } obedient	ungehorsam, disobedient
gehorsam, }	widrig, repulsive

(e) *Possession*, etc. :

eigen, belonging

gemein(sam), common

NOTE. — Almost any adjective modified by *zu* or *genug* may take a dative, as :

Diese Handschuhe sind **mir zu groß** (groß **genug**), These gloves are too large (large **enough**) for me.

For the Dative after Prepositions, see §§ 46, 51.

## 252.

### ACCUSATIVE.

The **Accusative** is the case of the **Direct Object**, **Time** and **Measure**.

*All transitive verbs* take the direct object in the accusative.

REMARK. — Many verbs that are transitive in English are intransitive in German (see § 250, Rem. 1, above), and *vice versa*.

## 253.

### DOUBLE ACCUSATIVE.

The verb *lehren*, 'to teach,' governs two accusatives, one of the person and the other of the thing; the verb *fragen*, 'to ask,' takes the latter accusative only when it is a neuter pronoun, as :

Ich werde **dir die deutsche Sprache** lehren, I shall teach **you the German language**.

Ich wollte **dir gerne etwas** fragen, I should like to ask **you something**.

Verbs of *calling*, etc., have a second accusative as **factive predicate**, as :

Ich nannte **ihn einen Narren**, I called **him a fool**.

Of Verbs of *considering*, etc., some, such as : *betrachten*, 'to regard'; *ansehen*, 'to look upon'; *darstellen*, 'to represent,' take a *factive* accusative with **als**, as :

Ich sehe den Regen **als eine Wohlthat** an, I regard the rain **as a benefit**.

Other verbs of considering, with those of choosing, etc., which take a second accusative of this sort in English, are followed by a preposition (für, zu) in German (see Less. XLIX)

### 254. ACCUSATIVE AFTER INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

1. Intransitive Verbs may sometimes be followed by an accusative of a meaning akin to their own, called the *cognate* accusative, as :

Ich habe einen schönen Traum geträumt, I have dreamt  
a beautiful dream.

2. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative of that which is effected or produced by the action they express, as :

Petrus weinte bittere Thränen, Peter wept bitter tears.

3. Intransitive Verbs may take an accusative followed by an adjective, etc., as *factive* predicate, as :

Ich habe mich satt gegessen, I have eaten enough (lit.,  
have eaten myself satisfied).

Das Kind weinte sich in den Schlaf, The child has cried  
itself to sleep.

REMARK. — The Accusative in all these constructions, except the last, which is not used in the passive, becomes a *nominative* in the passive construction; that of the *thing* after *lehren* remains accusative; with *fragen* and *bitten*, the acc. of the thing is not used in the passive.

For the accusative after *Reflexive* Verbs, see § 216; after *Impersonal* Verbs, see § 219; after *Prepositions*, see §§ 34, 50; after some Adjectives, it replaces the Genitive (see § 245, and Remarks).

### 255. ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE.

1. The Accusative is used adverbially to express *time* (see § 184, 1) and *measure* (see § 185, 4); also *distance* and *way* after verbs of motion, as :



Ich bin **sechs gute Meilen** gefahren, I have driven six full miles.

**Welchen Weg** werden Sie geben? Which way will you go?

The Accusative is used also in absolute constructions, especially with participles, as :

Er kam zu mir, **den Hut** in der Hand, He came to me hat in hand.

Er stand da, **die Augen** in die Höhe **gerichtet**, He stood there [with] eyes uplifted.

#### EXERCISE XLII.

A. 1. Also, Sie haben sich entschlossen, uns morgen früh zu verlassen? 2. Ich muss wohl, da meine Geschäftsangelegenheiten mir keinen längeren Aufenthalt erlauben. 3. Sie reisen natürlich mit dem zweiten Zug ab? 4. Wissen Sie, um wie viel Uhr derselbe in B. ankommt? 5. Ich kann es Ihnen nicht ganz genau sagen, aber er kommt gegen vier Uhr (des) Nachmittags an. 6. Das ist mir viel zu spät. Man erwartet mich schon um halb zwölf auf meinem Bureau. 7. In *dem* Falle müssen Sie wohl den Schnellzug nehmen, der schon um drei Viertel auf sieben abfährt. 8. Es lässt sich nicht ändern. 9. Gut, ich werde Sie Punkt sechs Uhr wecken lassen. 10. Ich danke Ihnen; das wird durchaus nicht nötig sein, da ich meine Weckuhr bei mir habe. 11. Wie viel Zeit brauchen Sie, sich anzukleiden? 12. Zwanzig bis fünfundzwanzig Minuten; aber ich werde noch mehreres einzupacken haben. 13. Dann wäre es jedenfalls besser, die Weckuhr auf halb sechs zu stellen. 14. Bitte, sagen Sie mir genau, wie viel Uhr es jetzt ist; ich fürchte, meine Uhr geht nach. 15. Es ist gerade neun Minuten vor elf. 16. Ist es möglich! Dann geht meine Uhr ja vor, anstatt nach. Sind Sie gewiss, dass Ihre Uhr richtig geht? 17. Jawohl; ich **habe** sie heute nach der Stadtuhr gestellt. 18. Es wird spät;

ich muss mich schlafen legen, um morgen früh aufstehen zu können. 19. Also machen wir es auf diese Weise : Sie stehen um halb sechs auf, um fünf Minuten nach sechs frühstücken Sie, um fünfundzwanzig Minuten nach sechs wird der Wagen vorfahren und in zehn Minuten sind Sie auf dem Bahnhofe. Dann haben Sie noch zehn Minuten übrig, um Ihr Billet' zu lösen und Ihr Gepäck einschreiben zu lassen. Jetzt, gute Nacht ! 20. Gute Nacht, schlafen Sie-wohl !

*B.* 1. Do not trust those who flatter you. 2. Do not believe them, for flatterers are liars. 3. I always considered my father as my truest friend. 4. The general commands the soldiers : the soldiers obey the general. 5. What is the name of the gentleman whom we have just met ? His name has escaped me. 6. You should never forget to thank those who help you. 7. How does this hat, which I bought myself yesterday, please you ? 8. It does not become you very well ; it is too large for you. 9. When I was going to the railway-station, a boy met me and gave me a telegram. 10. May I ask you if Mr. H. is related to you ? 11. He resembles me very much, but he is not related to me. 12. Mr. B. has been ordered, on account of ill-health, to go to a warmer climate. He has been forbidden to pass the winter in the North. 13. How long does he remain absent ? 14. He is to remain absent at least four months. 15. Last week I ordered (myself) an overcoat at the tailor's, which he was to bring me to-day. 16. The Niagara Falls are considered (one considers, etc.) as one of the greatest wonders of the world. 17. People say of one who sleeps very soundly that he sleeps the sleep of the righteous. 18. May I ask you to assist me, or at least to advise me ? 19. I should be very glad to be able to help you. 20. I am in need of money, and should not like to ask any one else for it.

## LESSON XLIII.

## THE INDICATIVE MOOD:—SYNTAX OF ITS TENSES.

**256.** The **Indicative** is the mood of **reality** and **direct statement**. As the tenses are used with reference to time in the Indicative only, their proper use is given here.

**257.** THE PRESENT.

The **Present Tense** answers to all the English forms of that tense (e. g., *ich lobe* = I praise, am praising, do praise), and is used :

1. To denote action **now** going on, as :

*Das Kind schläft*, The child is sleeping (now).

2. To state a **general fact** or custom, as :

*Der Schnee ist weiß*, The snow is white.

*Der Ochs frisst Gras*, The ox eats grass.

3. For the **imperfect** in *historical narrative*, to give greater vividness, as :

*Geschwind hebt er einen Stein auf und wirft denselben dem Hunde, der ihn beißen will, an den Kopf*, Quickly he picks up a stone, and throws it at the dog, who is about to attack him.

4. For the English **perfect** (as in French), when the action or state continues *in the present*, the past being inferred and the present alone expressed, as :

*Wie lange ist er schon krank?* How long has he been ill? (N. B. — He is still ill.)

*Ich gehe seit acht Tagen wieder zur Schule*, I have been going to school again for the last week (and am still going).

NOTE. — This construction is very common with *seit*.

5. For the future very commonly, where no ambiguity would arise, particularly to replace the English form 'am going to,' as:

Ich **schreibe** morgen einen Brief an meinen Vater, I **am going to write** a letter to my father to-morrow.

## 258.

## THE IMPERFECT.

The **Imperfect** is used:

1. As the **historical** (*narrative*) **preterite**, when an event is told in connection with others, as:

Im Anfang **schuf** Gott Himmel und Erde, und Alles **war** wüste und leer u. s. w., And in the beginning God created heaven and earth, and all **was** waste and void, etc.

2. To denote **customary**, **continued** or **contemporaneous** action, replacing the English forms 'was doing,' 'used to do,' as:

Er **ging** jeden Tag um vier Uhr aus, He **used to go out** every day at four o'clock.

Wir **fuhren** an der Kirche vorbei, als die Uhr elf **schlug**, We **were driving** past the church, as the clock **struck** eleven.

## 259.

## THE PERFECT.

1. The **Perfect** indicates a past event as **complete** and **no longer continuing**, thus:

Ich **habe gelebt** und **geliebt**, I **have lived** and **loved** (and both my life and my love are ended).

2. The **Perfect** is used of an event as a **separate** and **independent** fact, simply asserted as true without reference to any other, as:

Gott **hat** die Welt **erschaffen**, God created the world;

but in the sentence :

Gott **schuf** die Welt in sechs Tagen und **ruhte** am  
siebenten, God created the world in six days, and  
rested on the seventh,

the *imperfect* is used, because the two events are connected.

3. The Perfect is used (apart from historical narrative), in preference to the Imperfect, of an event which has not been witnessed or participated in by the speaker, as :

Gestern **ist** ein Kind **ertrunken** (*Perf.*), A child **was**  
drowned yesterday ; - but :

Gestern **ertrauf** (*Impf.*) ein Kind, als ich am Ufer **stand**,  
A child **was** drowned yesterday, when I **was** stand-  
ing on the shore.

REMARK. — This distinction between the use of the Perfect and Imperfect is not accurately observed, but it is always better to render the English forms 'was doing,' 'used to do,' by the Imperfect.

4. The Perfect replaces the Future-Perfect, as the Present does the Future, as :

Ich werde kommen, sobald ich meine Geschäfte **abgemacht**  
**habe**, I shall come, as soon as I have (i. e., shall  
have) finished my business.

## 260.

### THE PLUPERFECT.

The **Pluperfect** is used, as in English, of a past action completed before another was begun, thus :

Er **hatte** seine Aufgabe **vollendet**, **ehe** Sie kamen, He had  
finished his exercise, **before** you came.

## 261.

### THE FUTURE.

The **Future** is used :

1. Of an action **about** to take place, as :

Unser Vater **wird** uns **loben**, Our father will praise us.

2. To denote **probability** or **supposition**, as :

Es **wird** mein Bruder **sein**, der angekommen ist, It is **probably** my brother who has arrived.

## 262.

## THE FUTURE-PERFECT.

The **Future-Perfect** is the Perfect in the Future, and expresses *probability* even more frequently than the simple Future, as :

Der Brief **wird** schon gestern **gekommen sein**, The letter **probably** arrived yesterday.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

A. 1. Diese Hitze ist unerträglich ; ich glaube, nie einen so heißen Sommer erlebt zu haben. 2. Und wie schwül es ist ! Sieht es nicht sehr nach Regen aus ? 3. Richtig, da sind schon die ersten Regentropfen, und ich meine, vor einigen Minuten Donner in der Ferne gehört zu haben. 4. Das macht mir einen Strich durch die Rechnung. Bei diesem Wetter kann ich unmöglich zur Stadt gehen. 5. Für's Erste allerdings nicht, aber das Gewitter wird nicht lange anhalten. 6. Das ist ein wahrer Platzregen ; so ein Regen ist dem Lande sehr nötig. 7. Ja, wir haben diesen Sommer überhaupt sehr wenig Regen gehabt, aber vorigen Winter desto mehr Schnee. 8. Hören Sie, das war ein Knall ! 9. Ja, und wie schnell der Donner auf den Blitz folgte ! Fürchten Sie sich vor dem Blitze ? 10. Seitdem es voriges Jahr in unserer Nähe eingeschlagen hat, bin ich ein wenig ängstlich. 11. Das glaube ich schon, aber sehen Sie doch, jetzt hagelt es noch sogar ! 12. Das braucht das Land gewiss nicht, aber die Hagelkörner sind nicht gross genug, um viel Schaden anzurichten. 13. Es fängt schon an, sich aufzuhellen ; das schlimmste ist vorbei. 14. Wie sich die Luft abgekühlt hat ! 15. Und wie schnell ! Das ist oft der Fall hier zu Lande. 16. Jawohl ; erinnern Sie sich nicht des

wechselhaften Wetters, das wir vorigen Frühling gehabt haben? 17. Besonders im März und Anfang April. 18. Einen Tag thaute es, den nächsten fror es, und am dritten Tage regnete oder schneite es gar. 19. Dann gab es wieder eine Hitze wie mitten im Sommer; schon im April hatten wir fast achtzig Grad Fahrenheit. 20. Da scheint die Sonne wieder; ich sagte Ihnen ja, dass das Gewitter nicht lange anhalten würde. 21. Da haben Sie Recht; jetzt muss ich mich auf den Weg machen.

*B.* 1. A misfortune seldom comes alone. 2. Schlegel translated Shakespeare's works into German. 3. Is your father at home? No, he has been away for three weeks, but he is (probably) coming back to-morrow morning. 4. As soon as I have news of his arrival, I shall come again. 5. During my illness I used to go for a drive two hours every day. 6. Are you going (to go) to the concert this evening? I do not think I shall go. 7. Have you an engagement elsewhere? No, but I am going to bed immediately, as I start for Boston to-morrow morning at seven o'clock. 8. People (man) are often conscious of bad habits, which they cannot get rid of. 9. Have you been long in America? I have been here since my fifteenth year. 10. This is probably a letter from my mother, for that is her hand-writing. 11. We had hardly been at home half an hour, when it began to rain. 12. Shakespeare is considered the greatest poet of the English nation. 13. He was born at Stratford-on-Avon, and passed his youth in that place. 14. As a young man he went to London, became celebrated there, and died in the year 1616 in his native town. 15. The sun was setting, and the long [and] desperate combat was not yet decided. 16. For the third time our brave soldiers throw themselves upon the batteries of the enemy. 17. Nothing could resist this attack; the enemy wavers, and the victory is ours. 18. But what a dearly-bought victory! 19. He, who

led the soldiers into the combat, comes not back with them.  
 20. Yonder he lies cold and silent, and our triumph<sup>h</sup> becomes bitter mourning.

## LESSON XLIV.

### THE CONDITIONAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

#### 263.

#### THE CONDITIONAL.

1. The **Conditional** tenses are, in form, subjunctive *past* tenses, answering to the Future as a present.

2. They indicate *possible futurity*, and coincide with the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in their use in conditional clauses, and will therefore be treated conjointly with them (see § 267, below).

NOTE — The Tenses of the Conditional are a new formation; the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. having, in the older stages of the language, performed the function of the Conditional.

**264.** The **Subjunctive Mood** is used much more frequently in German than in English, the distinction between Indicative and Subjunctive being almost entirely obliterated in the latter language.

#### 265. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

The Subjunctive is used in **Indirect Statements** or **Quotations** (see also § 87), i. e., when the words used are quoted in *substance only*, and not as they were spoken, especially after a verb in the principal clause signifying:

(a) *Imparting of information* (statement, report, confession, reminding, etc.), as:

antworten, answer  
 behaupten, assert  
 berichten, report

erzählen, relate  
 gestehen, confess  
 sagen, say



(b) *Apprehension*, as:

denken, think	meinen, be of opinion
erinnern (refl.), remember	merken, observe
fühlen, feel	schließen, conclude
hören, hear	wissen, know

(c) *Contemplation* with various emotions. as:

fürchten, fear	wundern (refl.), wonder
freuen (refl.), rejoice	wünschen, wish
glauben, believe	zweifeln, doubt
hoffen, hope	

(d) *Request, command, advice*, etc., as:

befehlen, command	raten, advise
bitten, ask	verlangen, demand
ermahnen, admonish	

**266.** THE TENSE IN INDIRECT STATEMENTS.

The verb of the Indirect Statement is, as a rule, in the same tense as it would have, if the statement were made directly (see § 87, 2), i. e., the tense of the Indirect Statement is the same as that of the Direct.

REMARKS. — 1. An Indirect Statement is always a *subordinate* clause.

2. The conjunction *daß* may be omitted in such clauses, which will then have the construction of a *principal sentence* (i. e., verb **second**; see § 87, 3).

3. The Indicative may replace the Subjunctive in Indirect Statements, when the speaker wishes to represent his own belief in the correctness of the statement, as:

Ich habe gehört, daß mein Bruder krank **ist**, I have heard that my brother is ill (*and he is ill*).

Sie **wußte**, daß der Spiegel keine Unwahrheit **sprach**, und merkte, daß der Jäger sie betrogen **hatte**, etc. (GRIMM,

*Sneewittchen*, p. 52, l. 1), She **knew** that the mirror did not tell a lie, and saw that the huntsman had deceived her (*and he had deceived her*).

But the Subjunctive is used, when the truth of the statement is not vouched for, or when any doubt is cast upon it, as :

Das böshafte Weib aß sie auf und **meinte**, sie **hätte** Sneewittchens Lunge und Leber gegessen (*ibid.*, p. 49, l. 8), The malicious woman devoured them, and **thought** she had eaten Sneewittchen's lung and liver (whereas she had *not* eaten them).

4. The tense of the Indirect Statement does not depend on that of the principal clause, and the *sequence of tenses* which is observed in English is not found in German, as :

(*Engl.*) He **said** he **was** not ill.

(*Germ.*) Er **sagte**, er **sei** nicht krank.

NOTES. — 1. The Subjunctive is unusual after the verbs under (*b*) and (*c*) in the previous section (except *hören*), if the principal clause has a *present tense*.

2. The rule as to tense is not always strictly observed, the tense used being sometimes determined by the want of distinctive subjunctive forms. Thus in the following sentence two different tenses are used :

Nach schloß er, es **müsse** die Sage vom Glasmännlein nicht sehr bekannt sein, und den Spruch **müßten** nur wenige wissen (HAUFF, *Das kalte Herz*, p. 8, l. 7), Further, he concluded that the legend of the Glass-manikin could not be very well known, and only a few people could know the verse.

3. After an Impf. in the principal clause, the Subjunctive is usual in the Indirect Statement, except as in the second example under Remark 3, above.

4. The verb of the principal sentence sometimes remains unexpressed, or is replaced by a noun of kindred meaning, as :

Er ließ mich abweisen, weil er krank **sei**, He refused to see me, because (*as he asserted*) he was ill.

Ich lief so schnell wie möglich, aus **Furcht**, ich **möchte** zu spät kommen, I ran as quickly as possible, from **fear** that I might come too late.

Das **hätte** ich gesagt? (Do you mean to say that) I said that?

This last construction is very frequent in German, to express emphatically a doubt as to the truth of a statement.

## 267. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AND CONDITIONAL IN HYPOTHETICAL PERIODS.

### Example of a Hypothetical Period :

If I had followed your advice, I should have been happy.

1. The above sentence consists of two parts. Of these the one expresses a *condition*, conceived, in this instance, as unreal or impossible, viz. :

If I had followed your advice (*which I did not*);  
the other expresses a *result*, also unreal or unrealized, which *would have* followed, had the condition been realized, viz. :

I should have been happy (*which I am not*).

2. In both parts of the above period (in the condition and in the result), the verb is in a *past tense* (Impf. or Plupf.) of the Subjunctive Mood, as :

Wenn ich Ihren Rat **befolgt hätte** (Plupf. Subj.), so **wäre** ich glücklich **gewesen** (Plupf. Subj.).

REMARKS. — 1. Either of the two clauses may stand first; thus, the sentence given above may have the form :

Ich wäre glücklich gewesen, wenn u. s. w.

2. The conjunction *wenn* may be omitted, especially when the condition precedes the result, in which case the verb will begin the sentence, as :

**Hätte** ich Ihren Rat befolgt, so wäre ich glücklich.

3. If the **result** clause follows the conditional clause, it is usually introduced by the particle **so**, and *always* when **wenn** is omitted in the preceding conditional clause (see § 59, and Note).

4. The conditional tenses may replace the Impf. and Plupf. Subj. in the apodosis, result or conclusion only, as :

Wenn ich Ihren Rat befolgt hätte, **so würde** ich glücklich **gewesen** sein.

5. If the condition is stated without its unreality being implied, the verb is in the Pres., Perf., or Fut. *Indicative*, as :

Wenn er **kommt**, **so werde** ich fortgehen, If he **comes**, I shall go away.

6. A condition may be introduced by **als wenn** or **als ob**, 'as if,' thus :

Er sieht aus, **als wenn (ob)** er krank **wäre**, He looks as if he were ill.

NOTE. — In clauses of this kind, **wenn** or **ob** may be omitted, and the construction is then inverted accordingly (see § 239, 4), as :

Er sieht aus, **als wäre** er krank.

## 268. OTHER USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The Pres. Subjunctive replaces the missing persons (1. and 3.) of the *Imperative* Mood, the subject being then put after the verb, except in the 3. person, where it may also precede, unless the pron. **Sie** is used for the 2. person, as :

**Gehe** er (or er **gehe**) nach Hause, **Let** him go home.

2. The Impf. and Plupf. Subjunctive are used to express a wish, as :

**Wäre** ich bei Ihnen! **Would** that I were with you!

NOTE. — This is really an elliptical *conditional* clause, with the result unexpressed; the full form may be supplied thus :

**Wäre** ich bei Ihnen, (so wäre ich glücklich).

3. The Subjunctive is used in clauses expressing *purpose*, with the conjunctions *daß*, *auf daß*, *damit*, as :

**Er eilte, daß (auf daß, damit) er zur rechten Zeit ankäme,**  
He hastened, (in order) that he might arrive in good time.

4. It is also used after a *negative* or an *indefinite relative*, as :

**Hier ist niemand, der mich nicht kennt,** There is nobody here, who does not know me.

**Ich werde es thun, was auch davon kommen möge,** I shall do it, no matter what may come of it.

NOTE. — The Indicative is also admissible in these constructions.

5. The Impf. Subjunctive is sometimes used to express *possibility*, as :

**Das ginge wohl,** That might (possibly) do.

**Ich dünkte, das wäre gut,** I should think that might be good ;

and especially with the Modal Auxiliaries, as :

**Das möchte (könnte, dürfte) wahr sein,** That may (possibly) be true.

6. Observe the following idiom :

**Wie dem auch sei,** However that may be.

#### EXERCISE XLIV.

A. 1. Ich habe gehört, dass Sie Ihr Haus verkauft haben ; ist das wahr? 2. Ja, meine alte Wohnung gefiel mir nicht mehr. 3. Wie kommt das? Ihr Haus schien mir immer eine sehr elegante und bequeme Wohnung zu sein. 4. Ein besseres lässt sich nicht leicht finden; allein, seit (dem) die vielen Fabriken in der Nähe gebaut worden sind, gefällt mir die Umgebung nicht mehr. 5. Das kann ich mir schon denken. Der Rauch von den Fabriken muss sehr unangenehm sein. 6. Das ist nicht das Schlimmste; das fortwährende Geräusch

bringt einen oft zum Verzweifeln. 7. Haben Sie ein anderes Haus gekauft? 8. Nein, vorläufig habe ich mir ein Haus in der Schillerstrasse gemietet, sobald ich aber einen passenden Bauplatz finden kann, werde ich bauen. 9. Haben Sie sich schon nach einem Bauplatz umgesehen? 10. Ich habe die ganze Stadt durchsucht, aber ohne Erfolg. 11. Sie müssen sehr schwer zu befriedigen sein. 12. Das gerade nicht, nur bestehe ich auf drei Bedingungen: Frische Luft, eine ruhige Strasse und eine schöne Aussicht. 13. Warum bauen Sie nicht auf der Anhöhe in der Vorstadt, jenseit des Flusses? 14. Daran habe ich schon gedacht, nur sind mir die Preise ein wenig zu hoch. 15. Das würde *mich* nicht abhalten, so lange ich nur bekäme, was ich wünschte. 16. Es wird mir wohl nichts übrig bleiben, als mich dort anzukaufen. 17. Beabsichtigen Sie, mit Backstein oder mit Quaderstein zu bauen? 18. Ich muss das erst mit meinem Architekten besprechen. 19. Welchen Architekten haben Sie gewählt? 20. Herrn Kalk, der den Plan meines alten Hauses entworfen hat. 21. Dann bekommen Sie jedenfalls ein gutes Haus. Ich wünsche Ihnen Glück zu Ihrem Unternehmen. 22. Danke vielmals.

*B.* 1. An old beggar-man said: "When I was young, I could have worked if I had wished (*wollen*), and now I should be glad to work, if I could, but I cannot. Alas! had I only been more industrious." 2. A certain French king is said to have died of hunger, for fear that he might be poisoned. 3. I wish my house were not so far from yours. 4. I too; if the way were not so long, we could visit each other oftener. 5. We were astonished to see Mr. B. on the street this morning, as we thought he was still in England. 6. They say he intended to remain three months longer in England, but that he was obliged to come home on account of business matters. 7. What did the gentleman whom we just met ask

you? He asked me how far it was to the town-hall. 8. The messenger asserted that he could not wait longer because he had no time, but I believe it was for (aus + dat.) another reason. 9. A certain gentleman wanted to set his watch, and asked his servant what o'clock it was. 10. The servant answered that he had no watch, but that he had seen a sun-dial in the neighbour's garden. 11. To this the gentleman replied absent-mindedly: "Go immediately and ask him for permission to bring it up here." 12. Do you believe that the German language is as difficult as the French? 13. When I began to study German, I thought it was not so difficult as French, but now I believe otherwise. 14. I should be very sorry, if the news were true which I heard this morning. 15. The boys must not skate to-day; the ice is too thin, and they might break through and be drowned. 16. Please tell me who translated Shakespeare's works into German. 17. Would it be worth while to take a carriage to drive to the bank? No, I do not think so. 18. *He* said that of us! I should never have believed it. 19. I asked the bookseller: "Have you Schiller's works?" He answered: "I have not a single copy of them left." 20. I asked the bookseller if he had Schiller's works, and he answered that he had not a single copy of them left.

---

## LESSON XLV.

### THE IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE MOODS.

#### 269. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD.

The **Imperative** expresses a *command* and corresponds precisely to the English Imperative. The Imperative proper occurs only in the 2. person, the other persons being supplied by the Pres. Subjunctive (see § 268, 1, above).

REMARKS. — 1. The pronoun of the 2. Pers. is only expressed for the sake of emphasis or contrast, as :

Singe **du**, Do *you* sing.

Geht **ihr**, wir werden bleiben, *You* go, we shall remain.

NOTE. — The pronoun, if expressed, always *follows* the verb, as above.

2. Where no definite person is addressed (e. g., when an author is addressing his readers), **man** should be used with the Pres. Subj., as :

**Man** denke sich meinen Schrecken, Imagine my fright.

3. The Modal Auxiliaries *sollen*, *müssen*, *lassen* are used with imperative force, as :

Du **sollst** nicht töten, Thou **shalt** not k

Er **muß** schreiben, He **must** write.

**Laß** (laßt, lassen Sie) uns gehen, **Let** us go.

4. The Present and Future Indicative are sometimes used with emphatic imperative force, as :

Du **bleibst** hier ! You are to stay here !

Sie **werden** die Güte **haben**, morgen früher zu kommen,  
You will have the goodness to come earlier to-morrow.

5. The Past Participle and Infinitive are also used in exclamatory clauses with the force of an Imperative, as :

**Zugefahren**, Aufseher ! Drive on, coachman !

**Still stehen** ! Stand still !

**Einsteigen** ! All aboard !

6. In elliptical and exclamatory clauses a command is frequently expressed by an adverbial prefix or prepositional phrase, without a verb, as :

**Friisch auf** ! Kameraden, **aufs Pferd** ! **aufs Pferd** !

**Up** ! comrades, **to horse** ! **to horse** ! (SCHILLER.)

**Drauf und dran** ! Up and at them !

**Her zu mir** ! (Come) hither to me ! (GOETHE, *Faust*.)



## THE INFINITIVE MOOD.

**270.** THE INFINITIVE AS SUBSTANTIVE.

The Infinitive is a verbal substantive, and any infinitive may be used as a substantive of the neuter gender, declined after the *Waler Model* (§ 16).

REMARKS. — 1. The Inf. as Subst. indicates *action*, as: *Das Lesen*, '(the act of) reading,' — but: *gute Lectüre*, 'good reading, good literature.'

2. Some Infinitives have become substantives entirely, as: *das Leben*, life; *das Entsetzen*, horror.

3. The Infinitive, either with or without **zu**, is often used as subject of a verb, and as such may have an object by virtue of its verbal character, as:

*Gute Freunde (zu) haben ist besser als reich (zu) sein.*

**271.** THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT **zu**.

The Infinitive *without zu* follows:

(a) The Modal Auxiliaries (see Lesson XXXIV); also *werden* in the formation of the future tense.

(b) The following verbs:

bleiben, remain	lassen, let, allow, permit
finden, find	lehren, teach
heißen, order, bid	lernen, learn
helfen, help	machen, make
hören, hear	sehen, see

and, in certain phrases, *haben*, as:

*Ich habe nicht viel Geld auf der Bank liegen*, I have not much money lying in the bank.

(c) After *gehen* and other verbs of motion in such phrases as *spazieren gehen*, *reiten*, *fahren*, 'to go for a walk, ride, drive';

ſchlafen gehen, 'to go to bed' (not = 'go to sleep,' which is einſchlafen), etc.

(d) As *predicative subject*, with heißen, and as *object* with nennen, heißen, as :

Das heißt ſchnell fahren, That is quick driving.

Das nenne (heiße) ich ſchlecht anſaugen, I call that beginning badly.

NOTE. — The Past Participle is also admissible in this construction; see § 281, 6, below.

REMARKS. — 1. After haben, bleiben, finden, hören, ſehen, gehen, in the constructions given above, the German Infin. corresponds to a *Present Participle* in English, as :

Er blieb ſtehen, He remained standing, etc.

2. The verbs under (b), except bleiben and heißen, also admit of a **daß** clause after them, as :

Ich habe gehört (geſehen), daß er angekommen ſei, I have heard **that** he is come.

3. The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen also take an Infin. *with zu* after them, as :

Ich habe gelernt, zu gehorchen, I have learnt to obey.

4. For the use of the Infin. for the **P. Part.** with these verbs, see § 199.

NOTE. — The verbs helfen, lehren, lernen do not substitute the Infin. for the P. Part. when followed by an Infin. *with zu* (see Rem. 3, above, and example).

5. For the Infin. with *passive sense* after laſſen, see § 200, 7 (c), Note.

## 272. THE INFINITIVE WITH **zu**.

The Infinitive with **zu** is used after other verbs, such as :

(a) Those implying something to be *attained, done or left undone*, as :

anfangen, } begin	suchen, } try
beginnen, }	versuchen, }
befehlen, command	unternehmen, undertake
bitten, beg	verbieten, forbid
erlauben, allow	wagen, venture
fürchten, fear	warnen, warn
hoffen, hope	wünschen, wish
raten, advise	

(b) Those implying a *suspension of judgment*, as :

beschuldigen, accuse	scheinen, seem
einbilden, (refl.), imagine	sichmeideeln (refl.), flatter one's self.
glauben, believe	
leugnen, deny	

(c) Those indicating various *states of mind*, as :

bereuen, repent	lieb sein, be acceptable (be glad)
freuen (impers.), } rejoice	
freuen (refl.), }	leid sein (thun), be unacceptable (be sorry)

REMARKS. — 1. With most of these verbs the Infinitive may be replaced by a **daß** clause, and *must* be so replaced unless the subject of the action in the dependent clause is either *subject* or *direct object* of the principal clause, as :

Er glaubt, sehr geschickt **zu** sein. He believes himself to be very clever ; — or :

Er glaubt, **daß** er sehr geschickt ist.

Er hoffte, **zu** kommen, He hoped to come ; — but :

Er hoffte, **daß** sein Vater kommen werde, (see § 265. c. .  
He hoped that his father would come.

Es that mir leid, Sie nicht gesehen **zu** haben, I was sorry not to have seen you ; — or :

Es that mir leid, **daß** ich Sie nicht gesehen hatte ; — but :

Es ist mir lieb, daß Sie gekommen sind, I am glad that you have come.

2. The Infinitive clause as *direct object* is often represented in the principal clause by the neut. pron. **es** (with prepositions by **da**, see § 277, below), as :

Ich wage **es** nicht, allein zu kommen, I do not venture to come alone.

Observe the idiomatic use of the Infinitive with **zu** after **haben**, **sein**, **stehen**, in the following examples :

Ich **habe** ihm einen Brief **zu** übergeben, I have a letter to deliver to him.

Es ist (steht) **zu** erwarten, It is to be expected.

NOTE. — In the latter example, the infin. has a *passive* signification.

#### EXERCISE XLV.

A. 1. Guten Morgen, alter Freund ; nichts könnte mir gelegener sein, als dich anzutreffen. 2. Ich freue mich herzlich, dich zu sehen ; ich habe schon lange einen Besuch von dir erwartet. 3. Du solltest doch wissen, dass man wenig Zeit hat, Besuche zu machen, wenn man sich auf ein Examen vorbereitet. 4. Das ist wahr, aber lass dir gratulieren ; du hast ja ein glänzendes Examen bestanden. 5. Es ist mir freilich viel besser gelungen, als ich erwartete. 6. Was gedenkst du jetzt zu thun, da du promoviert hast ? 7. Gerade das wollte ich mit dir besprechen ; du kannst mir vielleicht mit gutem Rate beistehen. 8. Ich habe mich entschlossen, auf ein Jahr nach Europa zu gehen ; wäre es nicht auch für dich sehr vorteilhaft, ein Jahr dort zuzubringen ? 9. Sehr vorteilhaft, besonders wegen meines Sprachstudiums, aber ich fürchte meine Verhältnisse erlauben es mir nicht. 10. Das sehe ich nicht ein, es wird nur wenig mehr kosten dort zu leben als hier. 11. Bist du deiner Sache gewiss ? 12. Ja wohl, weisst du, ein Vetter von mir ist kürzlich von Europa zurückgekommen, und ich habe

mich bei ihm genau nach Allem erkundigt. 13. Wo hat er die Zeit zugebracht? 14. Teils in England, teils in Frankreich (und) teils in Deutschland, und er behauptet, dass man in Europa wenigstens ebenso billig leben kann wie in Amerika. 15. Aber du hast die Reisekosten nicht mit eingerechnet. 16. Natürlich nicht, aber man reist jetzt viel billiger als man früher reiste. 17. Hast du dein Billet schon gelöst? 18. Noch nicht, aber ich habe mich darnach erkundigt und finde, dass man für hundert Thaler oder weniger über New York nach Liverpool reisen kann. 19. Zweite Klasse natürlich. 20. O nein, erste Klasse, und mit einer sehr guten Dampferlinie. 21. Ist es möglich? Du hast mich fast überredet, die Reise zu unternehmen. 22. Komm nur heute Abend zu mir und wir werden die Sache weiter besprechen. 23. Gut; also bis Abend.

*B.* 1. Have the goodness to read this letter for me; I have left my spectacles up-stairs, and cannot see very well. 2. Please read pretty loud, for my hearing is bad. 3. Help me to do my work, and I will help you to learn your lessons. 4. When you (man) do not know what to say (what you shall say), say nothing. 5. You will now close your books; we have read enough for the present. 6. "To err is human; to forgive, divine," is a verse from a poem by the English poet Pope. 7. I have so much work to do that I do not know where to begin. 8. Show the child how it is to learn its lesson. 9. I am tired of reading, and must now retire to rest. 10. "Eat, little bird, eat," said a child to her bird. 11. "Thou shalt not steal" is (called) the eighth commandment. 12. The habit of rising early is of great importance when one has a great deal of work to do. 13. If one wants to rise early, one should go to bed early. 14. An old, well-known proverb says: "Man does not live to eat, but eats to live." 15. Another proverb says: "Speaking is silver; silence is gold." 16. When I arrived at the railway-station I found that I had no money with me; imagine my

embarrassment. 17. The art of making glass was already known to the ancients. 18. Are there any houses to sell or to rent in your neighbourhood? 19. I wish to speak to Mr. Bell. 20. Have (laſſen) John black my shoes, for I am in a hurry. 21. I have heard say that the celebrated bishop of G. is coming; would you not like to hear him preach? 22. Yes, I should like very much to hear him preach; when is (ſollen) he to come here? 23. We have had the good fortune to shoot three hares. 24. Some people would rather die than beg.

## LESSON XLVI.

### THE INFINITIVE MOOD (continued).

#### 273.

#### INFINITIVE OF PURPOSE.

The Infinitive with **zu** is used to express *purpose*, as:

Mein Freund kam, mich **zu warnen**, My friend came to warn me.

REMARKS. — 1. The Infin. expressing purpose is generally governed by the preposition **um** (see § 276, 1, below), which begins the clause, as:

Ich komme, **um** Sie nach Hause zu bringen, I come to fetch you home.

2. An Infin. clause with **zu** is always preceded by a comma in German.

3. This Infin. is also used, with or without **zu**, after adjectives preceded by **zu**, 'too,' or **genug**, 'enough,' as:

Ich war **zu müde**, (**um**) ausgehen **zu können**, I was too tired to be able to go out.

Er ist reich **genug**, (**um**) viele Diener halten **zu können**, He is rich enough to keep many servants.

NOTE.—After an adjective with *zu*, a clause introduced by *als daß* may be used, as:

*Ich war zu müde, als daß ich ausgehen konnte*, I was too tired to be able to go out.

## 274. THE INFINITIVE AFTER SUBSTANTIVES

The Infinitive with *zu* is used after substantives, nouns and adjectives, akin to the verbs in § 272. to express purpose, etc., as:

*Ich habe Lust, einen Spaziergang zu machen*, I have a *mind* to take a walk.

*Ich hatte keine Zeit, mich nach ihm umzusehen*, I had no *time* to look after him.

*Er ist stets bereit, den Armen zu helfen*, He is always *ready* to help the poor.

## 275. THE ACCUSATIVE WITH THE INFINITIVE.

The Accusative with the Infinitive is inadmissible in modern German: hence verbs denoting statement, knowledge, perception, etc., must be followed by a *daß* clause, as:

(*Engl.*) I know **him** to be a good man,

(*Germ.*) *Ich weiß, daß er ein guter Mann ist.*

(*Engl.*) I perceived **her** to be inattentive,

(*Germ.*) *Ich merkte, daß sie unaufmerksam war.*

REMARKS. — 1. In such sentences as those in the examples given in the above section, the passive construction with the *Infin.* is also inadmissible in German except impersonally, as:

(*Engl.*) He is **known** to be a good man.

(*Germ.*) *Man weiß, daß er ein guter Mensch ist*; — or:

*Es ist bekannt, daß er u. s. w.*

2. Observe the different relations of the accusatives in the following sentences:

(*Engl.*) I begged him (*obj.* of 'begged') to come,

(*Germ.*) Ich bat ihn zu kommen.

(*Engl.*) I wish to see him (*obj.* of 'see'),

(*Germ.*) Ich wünsche, ihn zu sehen.

(*Engl.*) I wish him (*subj.* of 'come') to come,

(*Germ.*) Ich wünsche, daß er komme.

3. After glauben, the Infin. is admissible in German, but not in English, when the subject of the action is the same in both clauses, as :

(*Germ.*) Ich glaubte, recht gehört zu haben,

(*Engl.*) I believed **that** I had heard aright.

When, on the contrary, the subjects are different, the Infin. (with accus.) is admissible in English, but not in German, as :

(*Engl.*) I believe him to be an honest man,

(*Germ.*) Ich glaube, daß er ein ehrlicher Mensch ist.

4. The English Infin. in objective indirect questions is unusual in German, and should be replaced by a finite clause, as :

(*Engl.*) He did not know where to go.

(*Germ.*) Er wußte nicht, wohin er gehen sollte.

(*Engl.*) He told me what to do.

(*Germ.*) Er sagte mir, was ich thun sollte.

## 276. THE INFINITIVE GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

1. Only three prepositions can govern an infinitive (with zu) directly, viz.: **um**, 'in order,' **ohne**, 'without,' and (**an**)**statt** 'instead of,' as :

Er kam, um mich von diesem Unfall zu benachrichtigen,

He came, *in order to inform* me of this accident.

Ich konnte ihn nicht ansehen, ohne herzlich zu lachen,

I could not look at him, *without laughing* heartily.



**Anstatt** mich geduldig anzuhören, unterbrach er mich beständig, *Instead of* listening to me patiently, he kept constantly interrupting me.

REMARKS. — 1. Observe that in each of these examples the preposition stands at the beginning of the clause, the Infinitive at the *end*, with the words dependent on the Infinitive between.

2. The Infinitive after *ohne* and (*anstatt*) may be replaced by a **daß** clause. This is always the case when the subject of the action is different in the two clauses (compare § 224, 2, *b*, Rem.). Thus we may say :

Ich suchte vorbeizufahren, ohne gesehen zu werden (or : ohne daß ich gesehen wurde), I tried to go past without being seen ;

but we *must* say :

Ich suchte vorbeizufahren, ohne **daß** man mich sah, I tried to go past without *any one's* seeing me,

because the subjects of the two clauses are different.

**277.** With other prepositions, the Infinitive or **daß** clause is represented in the principal clause by the adverb **da** prefixed to the preposition, as :

Ich begnügte mich **damit**, ihn meine Unzufriedenheit merken zu lassen, I was contented **with** showing him my dissatisfaction.

Wir verlassen uns **darauf**, **daß** Sie kommen, We rely **on** your coming.

Ich konnte ihn nicht **daran** verhindern, auszugehen, I could not prevent him **from** going out (or : his going out).

Er war eifersüchtig **darauf**, **daß** wir eingeladen werden waren, He was jealous **of** our having been invited.

Wir sehnen uns **danach**, Sie **wiederzusehen**, We long to see you again.

Er findet Vergnügen  **daran**, **Kinder zu necken**, He finds pleasure in teasing children.

Sie ärgerte sich  **darüber**,  **daß** wir so spät kamen, She was angry at our coming so late.

REMARKS. — 1. The preposition 'of' is often omitted, as:

Die Nachricht,  **daß** der Friede unterzeichnet worden war, The news of the peace  **being** (having been) signed.

2. The Infin. clause is only admissible when the subject of the action is the same as in the principal clause (compare § 276, Rem. 2, above).

3. The English **Infinitive in -ing**, or **Gerund**, must be carefully distinguished from the Present Participle, with which it has no connection.

4. The genitive or possessive adjective in English before this Gerund will become the *subject* of the  **daß** clause in German, as:

She was angry at  **our** coming late, Sie war böse darüber,  **daß** wir zu spät kamen.

He insisted on  **his sister's** learning Latin, Er bestand darauf,  **daß**  **seine Schwester** Latein lernte (lernen sollte).

5. In an *indirect question*,  **ob** takes the place of  **daß**, as:

Es geht mich nichts an,  **ob** er kommt oder nicht, It does not concern me,  **whether** he comes or not.

6. When the Gerund expresses an *adverbial* relation (time, cause, etc.), it must be expanded into an *adverbial* clause, as:

**Before concluding**, I shall make one more observation,  **Ehe ich schlicke**, werde ich noch eine Bemerkung machen.

On seeing me, he held out his hand to me, Als er mich sah, hielt er mir die Hand hin.

In persuading others we persuade ourselves, Indem wir andere überreden, überreden wir uns selbst.

## 278. THE INFINITIVE IN ELLIPTICAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

1. The Infinitive is used, as in English, in various elliptical constructions, without being dependent on any other word, as :

Warum mich wecken? Why waken me?

Nach seinem Aussehen zu urtheilen, To judge from his appearance.

2. For the Infinitive with the force of an Imperative, see § 269, Rem. 5, above.

### EXERCISE XLVI.

A. 1. Nicht wahr, Fräulein B., Sie waren gestern Abend im Konzert? 2. Ja, waren Sie auch dort? Ich habe Sie nicht gesehen. 3. Das ist gern möglich; unter so vielen Menschen findet man sich nicht leicht. 4. Der Saal war gedrängt voll, wahrscheinlich weil das Konzert zum Besten des neuen Waisenhauses gegeben wurde. 5. Nicht allein das, sondern auch weil die neue Sängerin, Fräulein M., zum ersten Male auftrat. 6. Das Publikum schien von ihr ganz entzückt zu sein, und die Zeitungen sind heute Morgen voll ihres Ruhmes. 7. Ich habe nie eine so klare und starke Stimme gehört. 8. In der Arie aus Lohengrin hat sie sich besonders ausgezeichnet. 9. Das Lied von Schubert mit Harfen-Begleitung gefiel mir am besten. 10. Frau S. sang auch sehr gut, aber Sie schien ein wenig heiser zu sein. 11. Trotz dem, was die Kritiker sagen, gefiel mir ihr Gesang besser als der von Fräulein M. 12. Ich finde auch, dass sie mit mehr Gefühl singt und dass ihre Stimme geschulter ist. 13. Was halten Sie vom Geigenspiel des Herrn K.? 14. Es muss sehr gut sein, dem Beifall nach zu urtheilen, aber ich ver-

stehe mich nicht auf die Geige. 15. Ich ziehe die Geige jedem andern Instrumente vor. 16. Spielt Ihr ältester Bruder nicht die Geige? 17. Nein, aber er spielt die Flöte und begleitet mich oft, wenn ich auf dem Klavier spiele. 18. Ihre Familie ist überhaupt sehr musikalisch. 19. Ja wohl, wir spielen fast alle mehr oder weniger. 20. Selbst Ihre kleinen Geschwister? 21. Ja, Marie spielt die Guitarre, Anna die Geige und Friedrich nimmt seit einigen Monaten Stunden auf dem Violoncell. 22. Wissen Sie, ob viel für das Waisenhaus übrig bleibt, nachdem alle Kosten bestritten sind? 23. Etwa fünf hundert Thaler, doch beabsichtigt man, ein zweites Konzert im Laufe des Winters für denselben Zweck zu geben.

*B.* 1. Let us (indef.) not return evil for evil. 2. Do what is right, let it cost what it may. 3. The eighth commandment says that we are not to steal. 4. He was punished for having neglected his duty. 5 The teacher told us we should close our books, we had read enough for the present. 6. Freddy, do you stand, and give your little brother your chair. 7. In German they say of one who buys anything without seeing it that he buys a cat in a bag. 8. Do you care to go for a drive with us? 9. No, thank you. Do you ride (fahren); I prefer to walk. 10. Who has left these books lying on the table? 11. John; and he says he forgot to take them up. 12. Bid him carry them up immediately into the study, and then let him come down here. 13. Every one thought Mr. N. to be a rich man, but he failed (perf.) lately. 14. I have not a single pen fit to write with, and I have a dozen letters to write. 15. Do not allow yourself to be disturbed by my coming; do not stop writing. 16. The beggar, of whom we were speaking in another exercise, passed his youth in idling instead of working. 17. Little Frederick had the misfortune to break an arm while skating, and he was obliged to remain lying in bed a week. 18. Alfred the Great divided the day

into three parts: one part was devoted to business, the second to reading, praying and studying, and the third to eating, sleeping and pleasure. 19. We wished our friends to come in, but they had no time. 20. I am glad to have made your acquaintance. 21. If you go hunting without your father knowing it, he will be very much displeased. 22. Our teacher used to insist on our writing a German exercise every day, and it was impossible for us to neglect this duty without his knowing it. 23. Before going home we must go to visit your old friend L. If you went away without his seeing you, he would be very sorry. 24. We heard some one coming behind us on the street, and we remained standing at the corner to see who it was. 25. Our old neighbour has three sons, but instead of their supporting him, he is obliged to support them. Is he not very much to be pitied?

---

## LESSON XLVII.

### THE PARTICIPLES.

**279.** The Participles are properly Verbal Adjectives, and their uses and constructions are those of Adjectives. There are three Participles, the Present, the Past and the Future-Passive or Gerundive. The English compound Perfect Participle (e. g., 'having praised') has no corresponding form in German, and must be rendered by a clause (see § 284, below).

### 280.

#### THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

The **Present Participle** has active force, and, like the Present Indic., marks a *present* or *continuing* state or action, the substantive which it qualifies being the subject of the action, as:

Das **schlafende** Kind, The **sleeping** child (= 'the child that sleeps').

Eine **haarsträubende** Geschichte, A story that **makes** one's hair stand on end.

The Present Participle is for the most part used only *attributively*, as in the above examples. It is used *predicatively* only:

(a) When it is a true adjective in function, without any idea of *time*, as:

Seine Krankheit ist nicht **bedeutend**, His illness is not **serious**.

Die Schönheit dieser Landschaft ist **entzückend**, The beauty of this landscape is **enchanting** (i. e., delightful).

(b) In **apposition** with the *subject* (sometimes also with the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, when the action of the Participle is *simultaneous* with that of the principal verb, as:

Sich schnell nach mir **umwendend**, sah er mich ins Gesicht,  
**Turning** quickly around, he looked into my face.

**Errötend** schlug sie die Augen nieder, **Blushing** she dropped her eyes.

**Preisend** mit viel schönen Reden  
Ihrer Länder Wert und Zahl,  
Säßen viele deutsche Fürsten  
Einst zu Worms im Kaiseraal. (KERNER.)

**Praising** with many fine speeches the worth and number of their territories, many German princes were sitting one day in the Imperial Hall at Worms.

REMARKS. — I. This construction is more usual in poetic or exalted diction than in ordinary language, where it is generally replaced by an adverbial clause (see § 284, below).

2. The Present Participle is not used in German, as it is in English, with the auxiliary 'to be' (see § 31, Rem. 3).

## 281.

## THE PAST PARTICIPLE.

The **Past Participle** of a *transitive* verb has passive force, not necessarily with any distinct reference to past time, as :

Das **geliebte** Kind, The **beloved** child (i. e., the child that *is* or *was* beloved).

But when the participle indicates a single action, it has perfect force, as :

Das **gestohlene** Pferd, The horse **which has been stolen**.

The Past Participle of an *intransitive* verb has active force, as :

Die Musik **hat aufgehört**, The music **has ceased**.

REMARKS. — 1. The Past Participle of transitive verbs may be used attributively as well as predicatively, as in the first two examples above.

2. The Past Participle of intransitive verbs conjugated with *sein* is sometimes used attributively and denotes a *state* produced by the action of the verb, as :

Das **weggelaufene** Pferd, The horse **which had run away**; but not: Das **gelaufene** Pferd.

3. The Past Participle, like the Present (compare § 280 *b.* above), may be used predicatively in *apposition* to the subject (or sometimes to the *direct* object) of the sentence in which it occurs, as :

Das Volk, vom Fürsten **unterdrückt**, empörte sich gegen ihn, The people, **oppressed by the prince**, revolted against him.

4. For the Past Participle with Imperative force, see §269, 5.  
 5. The Past Participle replaces the English *Present* Participle after *kommen* to specify the manner of the motion, as :

Er kam **gegangen**, **gelaufen** u. ſ. w., He came **walking**, **running**, etc.

6. After verbs of *calling*, it is used for the Infinitive, as :

Das heißt (nenne ich) für die Zukunft **gejorgt**, That is (I call that) **caring** for the future.

7. It also replaces an Infinitive in such phrases as the following :

Ich muß fort! Lieber hier Alles im Stiche **gelassen**! I must go! Rather (would I) **leave** everything in the lurch here. (LESSING.)

8. It is used in a few *absolute* constructions, with or without a substantive, which is usually in the accusative when present, as :

**Zugegeben**, daß dies wahr ist, **Granted** that this is true.  
 Meinen Bruder **ausgenommen**, waren alle **zugegen**, **Except** my brother, all were present.

## 282. THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.

This Participle, also called the **Gerundive**, has the form of the Present Part. preceded by **zu**. It is formed from *transitive* verbs only, and is only used attributively, being replaced in the predicate by an infinitive with **zu**, as :

Eine **zu lobende** Handlung, An act **to be praised**; but  
 Eine Handlung, welche **zu loben** ist.

## 283. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE PARTICIPLES.

1. Many words with the form of Participles have the value of adjectives. Some occur as adjectives only (see also § 194, Note), others with a special meaning, as: *gelehrt*, learned; *bekannt*, acquainted; *verschieden*, different; *bekannt*, aged, etc.



2. All Participles (except the Past Part. of some intransitive verbs, see § 281, Rem. 2, above) may be used as pure adjectives, and as such may be compared or used as adjectival substantives (see § 122), frequently with concrete meaning, as: *der Reisende*, the traveller; *der Lesende*, the man who reads; *der Vorstehende*, the chairman; *das Gelesene*, what one has read.

3. Participles, unless they have become pure adjectives, are used sparingly as adverbs; but the Participle in *apposition* (see §§ 280, *b*; 281, 3, above) may sometimes be construed as an adverb, e. g.:

**Schweigend** drückte er mir die Hand, **Silently** (in silence) he pressed my hand.

REMARK. — This participial adverb of manner may be replaced by an adverbial clause with *indem*.

4. The Participle, when used attributively, *always* follows all words qualifying or modifying it, and immediately precedes its substantive; as predicate, it sometimes, especially in poetry, precedes them (see § 280 *b*, above), but generally and more correctly follows, as:

Das von seinen Eltern innig **geliebte** Kind, The child, dearly **beloved** by its parents.

Mit der einen Hand **schwimmend**, mit der andern das Kind über dem Wasser **emperhaltend** u. s. w., **Swimming** with one hand, with the other **holding** the child above water, etc.

Das Volk, vom Fürsten **unterdrückt** u. s. w., The people, **oppressed** by the prince, etc.

## 284. ENGLISH PARTICIPIAL CONSTRUCTIONS.

1. The Present Participle is never used in German, as it so frequently is in English, to express adverbial relations of time

or cause, and must be replaced, where so used, by a regular adverbial clause, introduced by the proper adverb or conjunction, as follows :

- (a) To express **time**, the conjunctions **da**, **als**, 'when,' **indem**, **während**, 'while,' must be used, as :

Seeing him turn pale, I hastened to his assistance, **Da** **als**) ich ihn erblicke*n* sah, eilte ich ihm zur Hilfe herbei.

Recovering himself, the orator continued, **Indem** er sich sammelte, fuhr der Redner fort.

REMARKS. — 1. The English Perfect Participle is replaced by a clause with **nachdem** (or **als**), with the Pluperfect, as :

Having examined his papers, they let him go, **Nachdem** man seine Papiere untersucht hatte, ließ man ihn gehen.

2. The clause with **indem**, indicating simultaneous action, may be replaced by a participial clause in the case specified in § 280, *b*, above.

- (b) To express **cause**, the conjunctions **da**, **indem**, 'as,' 'since,' or **weil**, 'because,' must be used, as :

Being an honest man, he may be trusted, **Weil** er ein ehrlicher Mann ist, so kann man ihm trauen.

Hoping to see you soon, I remain ever yours, **Indem** ich hoffe, Sie bald zu sehen, verbleibe ich stets der Ihrige.

Not having found him at home, I went away, **Da** ich ihn nicht zu Hause gefunden hatte, ging ich fort.

2. The Present Participle *qualifying* a preceding substantive or pronoun is changed :

- (a) Into a regular *relative* clause with finite verb, as :

A loaf was found at Herculaneum, still retaining its form. Ein Brot wurde zu Herculaneum gefunden, **welches** noch die Form beibehielt.

The ship, **having** come straight towards us, showed the black flag, Das Schiff, **welches** gerade auf uns **zugekommen war**, zeigte die schwarze Flagge.

NOTE. The tense of the verb in the adverbial clause will correspond with that of the principal verb, as shown above, the Pluperfect, however, generally replacing the English Perfect Participles.

(b) Into an *attributive* participial clause, in which the Participle will immediately precede the substantive (see § 283, 4, above), as:

A man **passing** on the street. Ein auf der Straße **vorbeigehender** Mann.

3. A Participle preceded by an adverbial conjunction is replaced by a finite clause with the corresponding conjunction, as:

**While** travelling in Europe, we met a great many Americans, **Als** wir in Europa reisten, trafen wir mit vielen Amerikanern zusammen.

For the Infinitive in **-ing**, or Gerund, and its German equivalents, see § 276, above.

#### EXERCISE XLVII.

A. 1. Haben Sie Ihr Billet schon gelöst? 2. Nein, noch nicht. 3. Dann müssen wir uns beeilen; wir sollten erst etwas genießen, ehe wir abreisen. 4. Hier ist der Schalter; soll ich auch ein Billet für Sie nehmen? 5. Danke, ich habe mein schon gelöst. 6. Jetzt bin ich fertig, aber wir haben kaum drei Viertelstunden Zeit, bis der Zug abfährt. 7. Dann müssen wir nach der ersten besten Restauration gehen. 8. Dort drüben ist eine. 9. Das trifft sich gut; gehen wir gleich hinein. 10. Kellner, wir haben es sehr eilig. 11. Nehmen Sie Platz, meine Herren; ich werde Sie sofort bedienen; hier ist die Speisekarte. 12. Geben Sie mir gefälligst einen Teller Suppe. 13. Und Sie, mein Herr? 14. Bringen Sie mir zuerst eine Serviette. 15. Entschuldigen Sie, hier ist sie. 16. Ich nehme

eine Forelle. 17. Bedaure, es ist keine mehr da. 18. Nun, dann bringen Sie mir ein Stück Lachs. 19. Hier ist die Weinkarte; trinken die Herren Wein? 20. Bringen Sie eine Flasche Rotwein und Gläser. 21. Wie schmeckt Ihnen der Fisch? 22. Ausgezeichnet. 23. Diese Suppe schmeckt mir gar nicht. 24. Lassen Sie sich doch Fisch kommen. 25. Ich mache mir nichts aus Fisch; — Kellner! 26. Zu Befehl. 27. Eine Portion Entenbraten mit grünen Erbsen. 28. Wünschen Sie keine Kartoffeln? 29. Jawohl, gebratene Kartoffeln. Bringen Sie auch Brot. 30. Noch etwas? 31. Nein. Was wünschen Sie, Herr B.? 32. Bitte, reichen Sie mir die Speisekarte. Ich bestelle mir Kalbskoteletten mit Kartoffeln und gelben Rüben. 33. Sonst noch Gemüse? 34. Etwas Blumenkohl. 35. Erinnern Sie sich schon früher hier gespeist zu haben, Herr B.? 36. Nicht dass ich wüsste; die Restauration scheint neu zu sein. 37. Deshalb wird man vielleicht so gut bedient. 38. Ist den Herren etwas gefällig? 39. Bringen Sie mir eine Portion Eis und eine Tasse Kaffee. 40. Und mir eine Tasse Chocolate und eine Portion Erdbeeren mit Sahne, und schreiben Sie alles auf meine Rechnung. 41. Hier ist die Rechnung, mein Herr. 42. Wie viel beträgt sie? 43. Sieben Mark fünfzig Pfennig. 44. Hier sind acht Mark; das Übrige ist Ihr Trinkgeld. 45. Jetzt müssen wir fort; es hat soeben auf dem Bahnhofe zum ersten Male geläutet.

*B.* 1. A sleeping fox catches no chicken. 2. Sleeping dogs do not bite. 3. The past cannot be helped (changed); let us rather think of what is to come. 4. It is much better to think without speaking than to speak without thinking. 5. Man is a speaking animal, a fire-using animal, a laughing animal: these are some of the definitions which have been proposed by philosophers. 6. We learn to speak German in speaking German. 7. Well hit (treffen)! I call that well played! 8. I wanted to show you an article in yesterday's

paper, but it is nowhere to be found. 9. Let me know when you think of coming to town. 10. The skill of ants in the building of their nests is astonishing. 11. Smiling, he began to read the letter, but before having read the half of it, he threw it furiously on the floor. 12. A hussar came galloping down the street and said the battle was beginning. 13. The *Paradise Lost* of Milton is one of the most important works of English literature; it was written in the seventeenth century, but this does not prevent its being still much read. 14. After having been so well received by us, I wonder that he is not ashamed to speak evil of us. 15. The morning was cool and charming, but towards noon the heat became oppressive, and we saw great clouds rising in the west. 16. He says the matter is perfectly clear, but his saying so does not make any difference. 17. He went away complaining that there was no use talking to people who did not want to understand. 18. That was because he was angry, and because he had not succeeded in making himself understood (verständlich). 19. Make no mistakes in copying your exercise, or else a second copying will be your punishment. 20. Besides making mistakes the last time, you wrote very badly. 21. "The danger to be avoided," said he, "is not yet past." 22. Going (hingehen) to visit our friends in Schiller-street this afternoon, we met them coming to visit us. 23. His being rich is no excuse for his being lazy; we do not need to be idle merely because we are not forced to earn our bread. 24. A certain man, just before dying, called his sons to him, and told them there was a treasure lying hidden somewhere in his field. 25. Believing they would find it, they began digging everywhere, but without finding the wished-for (erwünscht) treasure. 26. One of them, wiser than the others, finally guessed what his father had meant by having told them this. 27. This son said that since digging the ground the crop had been much better, and that this was the treasure the father meant.

## LESSON XLVIII.

## CONCORD AND APPOSITION.

## 285. CONCORD OF SUBJECT AND VERB.

1. The predicate verb (the *finite* part, or that containing the *copula*) agrees with its subject in number and person.

2. Two or more subjects require the verb in the plural, as :

Mein Vater und meine Mutter **sind** hier gewesen, My father and mother **have** been here.

REMARKS. — 1. If the subject nearest to the verb be singular, the verb is sometimes in the singular, especially if the subjects *follow* the verb, as :

Seine Habsucht, seine üppige Lebensart, sein hochfahrendes Wesen **brachte** die Erbitterung gegen ihn aufs höchste,  
His avarice, his luxurious mode of living, his arrogant behaviour, **excited** the animosity against him to the highest point. (SCHILLER, *Egmont's Leben und Tod.*)

Oben bei dem Throne **lag** der König und die Königin,  
Above near the throne **lay** the King and Queen.

(GRIMM, *Dornröschen.*)

NOTE. — This is especially the case when the subjects, indicating things or abstract ideas, are regarded as forming together one idea, or are more less synonymous, e. g.:

Haus und Hof **ist** verkauft, House and home **are** sold.

Geld und Gut **macht** nicht glücklich, Money and property (= wealth) do not make [one] happy;

or when particular attention is called to the last (as forming a climax), e. g.:

Mein Vermögen, mein Ruh, mein Leben **steht** nicht auf dem Spiele,  
My property, my reputation, my *life* (the most important of all), **are** not at stake.

2. If the subjects be of different *persons*, the verb agrees in person with the first rather than the second or third, and with the second rather than the third, the plural pronoun of the proper person being usually (always with the second person) expressed before the verb, as :

Du und ich (mein Bruder und ich), **wir** gingen aus, You and I (my brother and I) went out.

Du und deine Schwester, **ihr** seid ausgegangen, You and your sister went out.

3. With titles of rank and compliment the verb is usually in the plural (see also § 49), as :

Seine Majestät **haben** geruht u. f. w., His Majesty **has** been pleased, etc.

4. *Collectives*, if singular, take a verb in the singular, unless followed by a plural substantive in apposition or in the genitive, as :

Eine große Menschenmenge **war** zugegen ; — but :

Eine große Menge Menschen **waren** zugegen, A great number of people were present.

NOTES. — 1. The singular may also be used in such cases as that given in the second example above, unless the collective is considered with reference to its component parts *individually*.

2. With nouns of Number in the sing. (see § 185, 1) the verb is used in the plur. only when an *indefinite* quantity is meant, as :

Ein paar (= einige) Tage **waren** vergangen, A few days had passed ; — but :

Ein Paar Stiefel **soſtet** ſieben Thaler, A pair of shoes costs seven dollars.

5. When the real (logical) subject is represented by **es**, or some other neut. sing. pron., before the verb (see §§ 39 ; 82, Rem. 2 ; 141), the verb agrees with the *logical*, not with the grammatical subject, as :

**Es** ſind meine Brüder, It **is** my brothers.

NOTE. — With a *personal* pronoun as subject, **this** **is** follows the verb (see § 39, 2).

6. If the subjects be separated by a disjunctive conjunction or conjunctions, the verb regularly agrees with the last only, but this rule is by no means so strictly observed as in English, even by the best writers, e. g.:

**Weder** die Union **noch** die Ligue **nißten** sich in diesen Streit, **Neither** the Union **nor** the league took part in this dispute.

**Sowohl** die Lage **als** die Befestigung dieser Stadt **schienen** jedem Angriffe Troß zu bieten, The situation, **as well as** the fortification, of this city seemed to defy every attack. (SCHILLER, *30jähriger Krieg*.)

NOTES. — 1. Constructions like the following:

Entweder du oder ich **bin** taub, Either you or I **am** deaf, are in German, as in English, felt to be awkward, and are therefore avoided by substituting some other construction, e. g.:

Entweder ich **bin** taub, oder du **bist** es, Either I **am** deaf, or you **are**.

2. The sing. is used after expressions of the time of day, and in the multiplication-table, as:

Es **ist** zehn Uhr, It **is** ten o'clock.

Zehn mal elf **ist** (macht) hundert und zehn, Ten times eleven **is** one hundred and ten.

## 286. REPETITION OF SUBJECT.

When several connected sentences have a common subject, the subject must be repeated (as pronoun) when the order of the words is changed, as:

Der Zug kommt um neun Uhr an, und fährt um halb zehn wieder ab, The train arrives at nine o'clock, and leaves again at half-past nine; — but:

Der Zug kommt um neun Uhr an, und um halb zehn fährt **er** wieder ab, The train arrives at nine o'clock, and at half-past nine **it** leaves again.



**287. OMISSION OF PREDICATIVE VERB.**

*Haben* and *sein*, as auxiliaries of tense, may be omitted in a *subordinate* sentence, as :

Nachdem sie den Brief **gelesen**, weinte sie, After she **had** read the letter, she wept.

**288. OTHER CONCORDS.**

1. The **Attributive** (or **Determinative**) **Adjective** agrees with the substantives it qualifies in gender, number and case (for inflections see Less. XX, XXII, XXIV); the **Predicative** Adjective has no inflection (see § 14).

2. For the concord of Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives with their antecedent (in gender, number and person) see §§ 38, Rem. 4; 39; 43, Rem. 3, 4; 82, Rem. 1, 2; 83, Rem. 1; 86; 95, 1 (*b*); 162, 2.

NOTE. — A Relative Pronoun referring to an antecedent of the first or second person takes the verb in the *third* person, unless the relative is followed by the personal pronoun, as stated in § 95. 1 (*b*), e. g.:

Bist du es, der so zittert? — or: Bist du es, der **du** so zitterst?  
Is it you that tremble?

**289. THE APPOSITIVE SUBSTANTIVE.**

1. A substantive or pronoun may have another substantive attached to it attributively, giving a further description or definition of the person or thing spoken of. This latter substantive is said to be **in apposition** to the former, as :

Mein Freund, **der Lehrer**, trug seine einzige Waffe, **einen dicken Stab**, in der Hand, My friend, **the teacher**, carried his only weapon, **a thick stick**, in his hand.

2. A substantive or pronoun may also be placed in apposition to a sentence or clause, as :

Er sagte, daß er wieder ganz gesund sei, **eine Behauptung**, welche ich bezweifelte, or: **was** ich bezweifelte, He said he was quite well again, **a statement** which I doubted.

3. The appositive substantive is in the same case as the substantive which it defines, thus :

Karl (Nom.), mein jüngster Bruder, ist krank, Charles, my youngest brother, is ill.

Die Krankheit Karls (Gen.), meines jüngsten Bruders, The illness of Charles, my youngest brother.

Eine gefährliche Krankheit drohte (intr.) Karl (Dat.), meinem jüngsten Bruder ; or : bedrohte (trans.) Karl (Acc.), meinen jüngsten Bruder, A dangerous illness threatened Charles, my youngest brother.

NOTES. — 1. A substantive in apposition to a sentence is put in the Nominative, as in the example under 2, above.

2. An appositive genitive without a determinative word before it, especially when governing another genitive, is uninflected, as :

Die Krankheit des Kronprinzen, Sohn des deutschen Kaisers, The illness of the Crown-Prince, son of the German Emperor ; but :

Die Krankheit des Kronprinzen, des ältesten Sohnes u. s. w., The illness of the Crown-Prince, the eldest son, etc.

4. The appositive substantive generally agrees also in number with the word it defines, except in the case of abstract substantives and collectives, as :

Corneliens Kinder, ihr Stolz und ihre Freude, Cornelia's children, her pride and joy.

Da lebten die Hirten, ein harmloses Geschlecht, There lived the shepherds, a harmless race. (SCHILLER.)

5. The appositive substantive agrees in gender when there is a special form for the feminine, as :

Die Gravitation ist die Lenkerin der Bahnen aller Himmelskörper, Gravitation is the director of the courses of all heavenly bodies.

6. These rules are also applicable to an apposition introduced by als, 'as,' e. g. :

Ich kannte ihn als Knabe (Nom.), I knew him as (when) a boy (i. e., when I was a boy); — but:

Ich kannte ihn als Knaben, I knew him when *he* was a boy.

#### EXERCISE XLVIII.

A. 1. Können Sie mir eine gute Buchhandlung empfehlen?  
 2. Was für Bücher wollen Sie kaufen? 3. Ich möchte mir die Werke einiger von den besten deutschen Schriftstellern anschaffen. 4. Sie sollten zu Herrn Braun gehen; er hat einen sehr grossen Vorrat, besonders von den deutschen Klassikern. 5. Wo ist das Geschäft? 6. Nur einige Schritte von hier, Nummer fünf, um die Ecke; ich werde Sie begleiten. 7. Das wäre mir sehr angenehm. 8. Sie scheinen ein grosser Bücherfreund zu sein. 9. Ja, das ist eine Schwäche, die mich viel Geld kostet, aber mir auch viel Vergnügen macht. 10. Hier ist der Laden; ich erwarte Sie auf meinem Bureau, wenn Sie fertig sind. 11. Ich danke vielmals für Ihre Aufmerksamkeit. Also, auf Wiedersehen. 12. Zeigen Sie mir gefälligst einige Exemplare von Schillers Werken. 13. Gebunden oder ungebunden? 14. Zeigen Sie mir beides. 15. Aus wie vielen Bänden besteht dieses Exemplar? 16. Aus zwölf, und ich möchte Sie auf den ausgezeichneten Druck aufmerksam machen. 17. Der Druck ist sehr klar; haben Sie noch sonstige (andere) Ausgaben? 18. Wir haben Ausgaben in grösserem Format, aber nur gebunden. Hier sind sie. 19. Das Format gefällt mir besser, aber ich mag den Einband nicht. 20. Dem ist leicht abzuhelfen. Ich bestelle Ihnen ein Exemplar und lasse es nach Ihrem Geschmack einbinden. 21. Gut, ich möchte es in braunem Leder mit Titel gebunden haben; aber wie viel soll ich Ihnen dafür bezahlen? 22. Die Ausgabe kostet zehn Thaler, der Einband fünf. 23. Bekomme ich Rabatt? 24. Ja, zehn Prozent gegen bare Bezahlung. 25. Ich bezahle bar; das macht zwei und vierzig Mark. 26. Wünschen Sie noch etwas? 27. Ich

möchte auch Goethes sämtliche Werke in demselben Format und Einband haben. 28. Es thut mir leid, dass wir keine mehr haben, aber ich kann sie bestellen und gleich mit der anderen Ausgabe einbinden lassen. 29. Zum selben Preise? 30. Nein, es wird mit Einband achtzehn Thaler netto betragen. 31. Dann besorgen Sie es gefälligst, und schicken Sie mir die Werke nebst Rechnung an diese Adresse; hier ist meine Karte. 32. Ich besorge alles aufs Sorgfältigste; binnen acht Tagen sollen Sie die Bücher haben.

*B.* 1. "Books," said Alfonso the Wise of Spain, "are my most honest councillors: neither fear nor hope prevents them telling me what my duty is." 2. "It is not my courtiers," said this king, "who tell me most honestly what my duty is, it is my books." 3. "No courtier dares to say to a king: 'Your Majesty is wrong,' but my books tell me so every day." 4. I asked a gentleman standing near me, if he knew what time it was, and he answered me that it was exactly twelve o'clock. 5. More than two hours have passed since then, so it must now be between two and three o'clock. 6. Was it you that came to see me yesterday, when I was away from home? 7. Yes, my brother and I wanted to visit you, and we were sorry not to find you at home. 8. Margaret, the eldest daughter of Henry VII. of England, married James IV. of Scotland. 9. These were the grand-parents of Mary Stuart, Queen of Scotland. 10. To do what is right, and to be happy, is one and the same, for virtue is its own reward. 11. Dear father and mother, do you remain sitting here until I go for a carriage to drive you home, for I know you are too tired to walk. 12. Twelve and twelve make twenty-four, and twelve times twelve is one hundred and forty-four. 13. After having seen London and Paris, we had not much desire to see other cities. 14. I wrote to K., inviting him to pass his holidays with us, and by return of post received a letter.

saying we might expect him in a fortnight. 15. I asked you first as my oldest friend to assist me in this embarrassment. 16. I know we should avoid asking our friends for help until we have done our utmost to help ourselves. 17. The huntsman whistled, and his dogs came running from the wood. 18. Our teacher was in the habit of telling us we should do what was right, let it cost what it would. 19. Is your teacher still living? Yes, he is still living, but he is getting very old now. 20. Goethe and Schiller are the two greatest poets of Germany: it is difficult to say which of the two is most beloved by the German people. 21. If you think we are right, give us some sign of approval: a word, a smile, a glance will suffice. 22. All the rest of our party arrived at the top of the mountain before sunset, but my friend and I arrived only at nine in the evening. 23. Expect us on Thursday next, health and weather permitting. 24. The gentleman coming out of that shop is Dr. B., and the lady accompanying him is his niece, Miss L. 25. Did you ever see the Emperor William? I have never seen him as Emperor of Germany, but I saw him many years ago as King of Prussia.

## LESSON XLIX.

APPOSITION (continued): — APPOSITIVE ADJECTIVES. —  
SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION.

### 290. THE APPOSITIVE ADJECTIVE.

1. Attributive Adjectives and participles are said to be used appositively when they are separated from their substantive, as:

Der Page, jung, hübsch und geistreich, war der Liebling  
des Hauses, The page, young, handsome and  
clever, was the favourite of the house.

In der Schlacht **heurig** und **furchtlos**, war Monmouth  
sonst überall weichlich und unschlüssig, **Ardent** and  
**intrepid** in battle, Monmouth was everywhere else  
effeminate and irresolute.

2. This appositive adjective or participle is, like the predicate adjective, uninflected, and is placed at the end of its clause. It is used much more sparingly in German than in English, and is almost wholly confined to apposition with the *subject* of the sentence (sometimes also with the *direct object*). In English the attributive adjective or participle is generally used appositively when it has more than one modifier, and always when it has a complement (as in the second example above). In German on the contrary the attributive adjective is freely used in all such cases before a substantive. All such appositive adjectives or participles, unless referring to the subject (or direct object) of the sentence, must be rendered in German either by an *attributive* or by a *relative* clause. The following examples will serve to illustrate to what extent the appositive adjective can be used in German, and to show how it is to be replaced in German in various connections.

(a) *English Appositive* = *German Appositive* (see also the examples under 1, above):

{ (*Engl.*) **Beleaguered** with present distresses and the most horrible forebodings on every side, **roused** to the highest pitch of indignation, yet **forced** to keep silence and wear the face of patience, Schiller could endure this constraint no longer. (*CARLYLE, Life of Schiller.*)

{ (*Germ.*) Von gegenwärtigen Nöten und den schrecklichsten Ahnungen von allen Seiten **heimgejucht**, bis auf den höchsten Grad **entriistet**, **gezwungen** jedoch, stillzuschweigen und die Maske der Geduld zu tragen, konnte Schiller diesen Zwang nicht länger erdulden.

NOTE. — In this example, as in those under 1. above, the adjectives (participles) *beleaguered*, etc., are in apposition to the subject 'Schiller.'

(b) *English Appositive Adjective* = *German Attributive Adjective or Relative Clause*:

- (i) { (Engl.) To judge from the quantity of light **emitted** from the brightest stars, there is (one has) reason to suppose that some of them are much greater than the sun.  
 (Germ.) Nach der von den hellsten Sternen **ausgestrahlten** Lichtmenge zu urtheilen, hat man Grund anzunehmen, daß einige davon viel größer sind als die Sonne; or: nach der Lichtmenge zu urtheilen, **welche** u. i. w. **ausgestrahlt wird** u. i. w.
- (ii) { (Engl.) In the Isle of Man vast trees are found **standing firm** on their roots.  
 (Germ.) Auf der Insel Man findet man mächtige Bäume, **welche** auf den Wurzeln **feststehen**; or: mächtige, auf den Wurzeln **feststehende** Bäume.

NOTES. — 1. The participles in these examples are in apposition to the objects 'quantity (of light)' and 'tree' respectively.

2. Observe the position of the Germ. attributive adj. *immediately before the substantive*.

(c) *English Appositive Adjective* = *German Attributive Adjective*:

- (i) { (Engl.) Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some sleep at a place about half a mile **distant** from the river.  
 (Germ.) Bruce ließ seine Leute sich an einer ungefähr eine halbe Meile vom Fluße **entfernten** Stelle niederlegen, um ein wenig zu schlafen.

NOTE. — An attributive clause is preferable here, since a relative clause would separate the clause of purpose (um, etc.) from the infin. (niederlegen) on which it depends.

- (ii) { (Engl.) During the eruption of the volcano, the darkness **occasioned** by the ashes was so profound, that nothing like it was ever experienced.  
 (Germ.) Während des Ausbruches des Vulkans war die durch die Asche **verursachte** Finsternis so tief, wie man nie etwas Ähnliches wahrgenommen hatte.

NOTE.—Although the participle ‘occasioned’ is here in apposition to the subject ‘darkness,’ yet the position of the subject *after* the verb forbids the use of the appositive construction in German, as also in the following sentence :

- (iii) { (Engl.) It was a place **advantageous** for defence.  
 (Germ.) Es war eine zur Verteidigung **günstige** Stelle.

(d) *English Appositive Adjective = German Relative Clause :*

- { (Engl.) This plant has changed into two distinct vegetables, as **unlike** each other as is each of them to the parent-plant.  
 (Germ.) Diese Pflanze hat sich in zwei verschiedene Gemüsesorten verwandelt, **welche** einander so **unähnlich** sind, wie jede derselben der Mutterpflanze ist.

NOTE.—Here the attributive construction is inadmissible on account of the subsequent clause wie jede u. s. w.

## 291. SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

The cases governed by the various Prepositions are fully treated of in Lessons IX, XIII, A, and XXXVIII, and their idiomatic use is further defined in Less. XXXIX.

The object of many verbs, as well as that of substantives and adjectives corresponding with them in signification, is expressed by prepositions. The proper use of prepositions after verbs, etc., must be learnt from practice and from the dictionary : but below is given, for convenient reference, the regimen of particular classes of verbs, etc., which differ most widely from their English equivalents.



1. **at, of** = **über** + **Acc.**, of *sorrow, joy, wonder*, etc., as :

<i>Verbs.</i>	<i>Substantives.</i>
sich ärgern, be vexed	Ärger, vexation
erröten, blush	Errötung, blush
erstaunen, be astonished	Erstaunen, astonishment
sich freuen, rejoice	Freude, joy (also an + Dat.)
sich grämen, grieve	Gram, grief
klagen, complain	Klage, complaint
lachen, laugh	Gelächter, laughter
sich schämen, be ashamed	Scham, Beschämung, shame
spotten, mock	Spott, mockery
sich (ver)wundern, wonder	Verwunderung, surprise

Also the *Adjectives* ärgerlich, vexed ; böse, angry (at *things*) ; empfindlich, sensitive ; froh, lustig, merry.

NOTE.—Böse takes **auf** + **Acc.** when referring to persons.

2. **for** = **auf** + **Acc.**, of *expectation*, etc., as : gesaßt, prepared ; hoffen, Hoffnung, hope ; warten, wait.

3. **for** = **nach**, of *longing, inquiring*, etc., as :

<i>Verbs.</i>	<i>Substantives.</i>
dürsten, thirst	Durst, thirst
forischen, inquire	Forschung, inquiry
hungern, hunger	Hunger, hunger
jagen, hunt	Jagd, chase
suchen, search	Zust, ) desire
sich sehnen, long	Verlangen, )
verlangen, desire	

Also the *Adjectives* durstig, thirsty ; ehrgeizig, ambitious ; gierig, greedy ; hungrig, hungry.

4. **for** = **um**, of *entreaty*, etc., as : bitten, ask ; buhlen, court ; flehen, beg ; sich kümmern, concern one's self.

5. **from** = **vor** + **Dat.**, of *protection*, etc., as: *beiwahren*, preserve; *hüten*, protect; *retten*, save.

6. **in** = **an** + **Dat.**, of *plenty*, *want*, etc., as: *arm*, poor; *fruchtbar*, fruitful; *reich*, rich; *schwach*, weak; *stark*, strong.

7. **in** or **on** = **an** + **Acc.**, of *confidence*, etc., as:

*Verbs.*

*sich brüsten*, boast

*sich verlassen*, rely

*vertrauen*, trust

*Substantives.*

*Stolz*, pride

*Verlaß*, reliance

*Vertrauen*, confidence

8. **of** = **an** + **Dat.**, of *plenty*, *want*, *doubt*, etc., as:

*Verbs.*

*fehlen* (impers.), }  
*mangeln* " } be wanting

*zweifeln*, doubt

*verzweifeln*, despair

*Substantives.*

*Mangel*, want

*Reichtum*, wealth

*Überschuß*, superfluity

*Zweifel*, doubt

Also the *Adjectives* *krank*, sick; *leer*, empty.

9. **of** = **an** + **Acc.**, of *remembrance*, etc., as:

*Verbs.*

*denken*, think

*erinnern*, remind

*sich erinnern*, recollect

*Substantives.*

*Gedanke*, thought

*Erinnerung*, recollection

NOTE. — These verbs also govern the Genitive. See § 245.

10. **of** = **an** + **Acc.**, of *suspicion*, *envy*, *pride*, etc., as

*Substantives.*

*Acht* ( *gelen* ), (pay) attention

*Argwohn*, suspicion

*Eifersucht*, jealousy

*Neid*, envy

*Adjectives.*

*achtſam*, }  
*aufmerſam*, } attentive

*argwöhnlich*, suspicious

*eiferſüchtig*, jealous

*eitel*, vain

*neidiſch*, envious

*ſtolz*, proud

11. *of* = *vor* + *Dat.*, of *fear*, etc., as :

<i>Verbs.</i>	<i>Substantives.</i>
sich fürchten, be afraid	Furcht, fear
" erschrecken, be terrified	Schreck, terror
" grauen, dread	Grauen, dread

Also the adjectives bange, afraid ; sicher, certain, sure.

12. *to* = *an* + *Acc.*, of *address*, etc., as : adressieren, address ; schreiben, write ; sich richten, turn ; sich wenden, apply.

13. *to* = *gegen*, after Adjectives signifying an *affection of the mind*, as : barmherzig, merciful ; feindlich, hostile ; freundlich, friendly ; gerecht, just ; gleichgiltig, indifferent ; gnädig, gracious ; grausam, cruel ; nachsichtig, indulgent.

#### EXERCISE XLIX.

1. My sister is vexed at not receiving an invitation to the party. 2. I am tired of waiting for Charles ; let us go without him. 3. Oh no, do not let us go yet ; he will be angry at us, if we do not wait for him. 4. Charles has many good qualities, but you cannot rely upon him. 5. The boy is proud of the watch given to him by his father. 6. If you lose your way in a city, it is always safest to apply to a policeman. 7. I have no doubt that this is good advice. 8. Mary is angry at Sarah, because Sarah has made sport of her. 9. Our neighbour has been ill for some days ; he complains of rheumatism, and says he has caught cold. 10. I am less vexed at his not coming than at his not sending us word. 11. The war had already lasted more than four years, and people were longing for peace. 12. Diogenes is said to have gone once in daylight through the streets of the city, carrying at the same time a lantern. 13. People began to laugh at him and mock him, asking him what he was looking for. 14. He replied that he was looking for an honest man. 15. The general postponed attacking the enemy, because his army was weak in artillery.

16. Mr. Kalk, the architect, promised that my house should be finished before the 1st July, but I doubt it. 17. The Province of Ontario is rich in iron, but is wanting in coal to smelt it. 18. We have been thinking for some time of selling our house, but we cannot find anyone who is willing to buy it. 19. Be good enough to remind me to buy some postage-stamps, when we go past the post-office. 20. We may learn as much by paying attention to what we see and hear as we can learn from books. 21. The horses, frightened by a passing train, shied, and were on the point of running away. 22. The first settlers in this country had much to endure: they lived for the most part in houses built of [the] trunks\_of\_trees and covered in many cases with bark. 23. (Just) as many people lost their lives (the life) by the famine occasioned by the earthquake, as by the earthquake itself. 24. The bad news received yesterday has prevented our going to town to-day. 25. There are men who grow richer by giving than others [do] by receiving.

---

## LESSON L.

### WORD-ORDER.

#### 292. THE ESSENTIAL PARTS OF A SENTENCE.

1. Every sentence contains three essential parts, viz: the **Subject**, or that of which something is asserted, the **Predicate**, or that which is said of the Subject, and, thirdly, the **Verb** or **Copula**, the word which makes the assertion, and which may include the Predicate (as in the simple tenses of a verb), but does not necessarily do so. Thus, in the sentence: 'He sings,' 'he' is the *Subject*, while 'sings' contains both the *Verb* or *Copula* and the *Predicate*, i. e., it not only asserts something of the Subject, but also says what that something is, being equivalent to 'is singing.' In the sen-

tence: 'He has sung,' on the other hand, 'has' is the *Verb* (or *Copula*), 'sung' is what is asserted, or the *Predicate*.

2. The **Verb** (or *Copula*) is in German the member of the sentence, the position of which is most absolutely fixed; it is the *cardinal point* or *hinge* on which the sentence turns.

### 293. NORMAL POSITION OF THE VERB.

In German, there are **three** normal positions for the **Verb**, according to the nature of the sentence.

(a) The Verb stands **first**:

1. In *Interrogative* Sentences expecting the answer 'yes' or 'no' (i. e., when the verb is the question-word, see § 23. 2), as:

**Ist** Ihr Bruder wohl? **Is** your brother well?

**Wird** er kommen? **Will** he come?

**Heißen** Sie Karl? **Is** your name Charles?

2. In sentences expressing a *command* or *wish*, as:

**Besuchen** Sie mich morgen, **Come** and **see** me to-morrow.

**Wäre** ich zu Hause! **Were** I (would that I were) at home!

NOTE. — The verb may either follow or precede the subject in the

3. Sing. Subj. used as Imperative (see § 268. 1), as:

Gott behüte dich! or: Behüte dich Gott! God preserve thee!

3. In *Conditional* clauses, when the conjunction *wenn* is omitted (compare § 59), as.

**Wäre** das Wetter schön, **so** würde ich ausgehen, If the weather were fine, I should go out.

(b) The Verb comes **second** (is the **second idea**) in all **principal** assertive sentences (compare § 20), as:

Der Mensch **ist** sterblich, Man **is** mortal.

Der jüngere Bruder meines Vaters, welcher so krank war,  
**ist** tot, My father's younger brother, who was so ill,  
**is** dead.

Gestern Abend **starb** der Bruder meines Vaters, Yesterday  
 evening my father's brother **died**.

Sowohl (nicht nur) mein Vater, wie (sondern auch) mein  
 Bruder **war** zugegen, Both (not only) my father, and  
 (but also) my brother **were** (**was**) present.

REMARKS. — 1. As in the last three examples above, the first member of the sentence may be complex, with several attributes, complements, etc.; the verb is still the **second** idea.

2. The coordinating conjunctions *proper* (§ 236) do not count as members of the sentence (see the last example above), but *adverbial* conjunctions throw the subject after the verb.

NOTE. — Certain adverbial phrases, of a more or less interjectional nature, such as: *freilich*, true; *ja*, yes; *ja wohl*, to be sure; *nein*, no; *kurz*, in short; *mit einem Wort*, in a word; *gut*, well, are not regarded as part of the sentence, and do not throw the subject after the verb, thus:

**Freilich**, ich **habe** es nicht selbst gesehen, **True**, I did not see it myself.

**Kurz** (mit einem Wort), ich **glaube** es nicht, **In short** (in a word), I do not believe it.

**Gut**, ich **werde** kommen, **Well**, I shall come.

3. In assertive sentences of an *emphatic* or *exclamatory* character, the verb sometimes comes first, especially when the particle *doch* is present, as:

**Ist** das ein Wetter! (= Was für ein Wetter ist das!)

What weather!

**Habe** ich's dir **doch** gesagt! I told you so!

4. If a dependent clause or a quotation precede the principal sentence (compare § 294, *b*, Rem. 2, below), such clause or quotation is regarded as a single member of the sentence, and requires the verb immediately after it, as:

Da ich selbst nicht kommen konnte, **schickte** ich meinen Sohn,  
As I could not come myself, I **sent** my son.

Als ich ankam, **war** es schon nach 10 Uhr, When I arrived,  
it **was** after 10 o'clock.

Wenn er kommen sollte, **werde** ich zu Hause sein, If he  
should come, I **shall** be at home.

„Ich will meine Aufgabe nicht lernen,“ **schr**ie der unartige  
Knabe, “I will not learn my lesson,” **cried** the naughty  
boy.

NOTES. — 1. After dependent conditional and adverbial clauses (except those of *time*) the particle **so** usually introduces the principal sentence, as :

Da ich nicht selbst kommen konnte, **so** schickte ich meinen Sohn.

Wenn er kommen sollte, **so** werde ich zu Hause sein.

2. This particle **so** should always be inserted after a conditional clause with **wenn** omitted; in colloquial usage, however, the principal sentence sometimes has the subject *before* the verb, **so** being omitted, as :

Wäre er früher gekommen, **so** hätte er mich gesehen ;

or (colloquially) :

Wäre er früher gekommen, **er** hätte mich gesehen.

This latter construction, however, should not be imitated.

3. In *proportional* clauses introduced by **j**, **desto**, or **um so**, the dependent clause comes first, and the verb is preceded by the word expressing the comparison, as well as by the particle **je**, etc., as :

Je länger die Nächte sind, **desto** kürzer **sind** die Tage, The longer  
the nights are, the **shorter** are the days.

(c) The Verb is **last** in dependent sentences and questions (compare §§ 32 ; 88), as :

Ich weiß, **daß** der Mensch sterblich **ist**, I know that man  
**is** mortal.

Ein Mann, **welcher** gestern hier **war**, A man, **who** was  
here yesterday.

Ich gehe, **weil** es schon spät **ist**, I go because it is late.

Ich weiß nicht, **wer** hier gewesen **ist**, I do not know who  
has been here (*def. question*).

REMARKS. — 1. **Indirect statements** with *daß* omitted have the construction of *principal* sentences (verb *second*; see §§ 20; 87, 3), as :

Er sagte, er *habe* es vergessen, He said he **had** forgotten it.

2. **Conditional** clauses with *wenn* omitted follow the *question-order* (verb *first*; compare § 59), as :

**Wäre** das Wetter schön, so würde ich ausgehen, **If** the weather **were** fine, I should go out.

3. The Verb precedes two infinitives (or infinitive and part.; see § 199, 3), as in the compound tenses of Modal Auxiliaries, thus :

Er sagte, daß er nicht *habe kommen wollen*, He said that he **had** not intended to come.

4. Clauses with *denn* (= 'unless,' § 241, 18), having *negative* force, follow the construction of a principal sentence (verb *second*), as :

Ich lasse Dich nicht, Du segnest mich *denn*, I will not let Thee go, **unless** Thou bless me.

Ich werde nicht kommen, *es sei denn*, daß das Wetter schön werde, I shall not come, **unless** (it be that) the weather should become fine.

5. *Haben* and *sein*, as auxiliaries of tense, are frequently omitted at the end of a dependent clause, as :

Er leugnete, daß er das Fenster zerbrochen (*habe* understood), He denied that he **had** broken the window.

Ich fragte ihn, ob er zur rechten Zeit angekommen (*sei* understood), I asked him if he **had** arrived in good time.

## 294. POSITION OF THE SUBJECT.

The Subject is placed :

(a) In **Direct Questions**, if it be the question-word, *at the beginning*; otherwise immediately after the Verb, as :



**Wer** ist hier gewesen? Who has been here?

Ist **er** hier gewesen? Has he been here?

Wann kommt **Ihre Schwester**? When does your sister come?

(b) In **Principal Assertive Sentences**, the *normal* position of the Subject is *first*; but if any other word precede the Verb, the Subject *immediately follows the Verb*, as:

**Ich** werde morgen nicht ausgehen; or:

Morgen werde **ich** nicht ausgehen, I shall not go out to-morrow.

REMARKS. — 1. In point of fact it may be said that, in a principal sentence, the Subject follows the Verb quite as often as it precedes it.

2. A preceding dependent clause, or a quotation, always throws the subject after the verb, except when, after a conditional clause with **wenn** omitted, the principal sentence is not introduced by the particle **so** (compare § 293, 4, Note 2, above).

3. When the real (*logical*) subject is represented by **es** before the verb as grammatical subject, the logical subject immediately follows the verb, as:

**Es** ist **meine Schwester** gewesen, It was my sister.

(c) In **Dependent Sentences**, the Subject, if a relative pronoun, *begins* the sentence, otherwise the Subject immediately follows the connecting word, as:

Der Mann, **welcher** gestern hier war, The man **who** was here yesterday.

Der Mann, den **ich** gestern sah, The man, whom **I** saw yesterday.

**Ich** sagte ihr, daß **ich** kommen werde, I told her that **I** should come.

NOTE.—Personal Pronouns, and especially the reflective *sich*, sometimes precede the Subject, both in principal sentences with the Subject after the Verb, and in dependent clauses, as :

Morgen will *sich* mein Bruder verheiraten, My brother is going to get married to-morrow.

Er jagte, daß *ihn* dieser Mensch beleidigt habe, He said that this fellow had insulted *him*.

## 295. POSITION OF THE PREDICATE.

1. The **Predicate**, if not included in the Verb (see § 292, 1, above), may consist of a participle or infinitive (as in the compound tenses of the verb); or it may be a substantive, an adjective, or the separable prefix of a compound verb.

2. The Predicate is placed **last in Principal Sentences** and in **Direct Questions**; in **Dependent Sentences** it immediately precedes the Verb.

3. If the Predicate is compound, consisting of two or more of the elements under 1, above, they will occur in the following order: 1. Predicative adjective (or substantive); 2. Separable prefix; 3. Participle; 4. Infinitive; thus:

PRED. ADJ.

Er soll stets gegen seinen armen Bruder sehr **freigebig**

PART. INF.

**gewesen sein**, He is said to **have** always **been** very liberal to his poor brother.

PREF. PART. INF.

Sie würde schon gestern **ab-gereist sein**, She would **have** **departed** yesterday.

REMARK.—Any one of these elements of the Predicate may, for emphasis, occupy the normal position of the subject in the *first* place (*before* the Verb), as :

**Schön** ist das Wetter heute nicht, The weather is not (at all) **fine** to-day (i. e., it is *far from* fine).

**Soldat** ist mein Bruder, nicht Matrose, My brother is a soldier, not a sailor.

**Singen** will ich wohl, aber nicht spielen, I will sing, but not play.

NOTE. — The Separable Prefix and the Participle are, however, rarely placed in this position, except in elevated or poetic diction, or for contrast, as:

**Nieder** steig' ich zum Gefechte, I descend (down I go) to the fight. (SCHILLER.)

**Zurück** bleibt der Annapen Troß, The retinue of squires remains behind (*ibid.*).

**Entschlossen** ist er also bald, He is resolved at once (*ibid.*).

**Gegeben** habe ich ihm das Buch nicht, sondern nur geliehen, I did not give him the book, I only lent it to him.

## 296. POSITION OF OBJECTS AND CASES.

1. **Objects** (not governed by a preposition) precede adjectives (objects governed by a preposition), as:

Ich habe einen Brief **an** ihn (an meinen Vater) geschrieben, I have written a letter **to** him (to my father).

2. **Pronouns** (unless governed by prepositions) precede substantives, as:

Ich habe **ihm** einen Brief geschrieben, I have written **him** a letter.

3. Of Pronouns, **Personal** before other Pronouns, as:

Ich habe **ihm** **das** (etwas) gegeben, I have given him **that** (something).

4. Of the cases of Personal Pronouns, the Accusative precedes the Dative, and both precede the Genitive; but the reflexive **sich** usually precedes all others, as:

Er hat **sich** (Dat.) es gemerkt, He has taken a note of it (for himself).

5. Of **Substantives**, the *Person* (unless governed by a preposition) precedes the thing; the *Indirect* precedes the Direct Object, and the *Remoter* Object (in the Genitive) follows both, as :

Ich habe **Ihrer Schwester** das Buch geliehen, I have lent  
your sister the book.

Er hat **diesen Mann** des Diebstahls beschuldigt, He has  
accused this man of theft.

6. The *personal* (or subjective) Genitive (compare § 243, 2) may either precede or follow the substantive which governs it, as :

**Meines Vaters** Haus, My father's house ; or :  
Das Haus **meines Vaters**.

7. The *limiting* Genitive (see § 243, 3) follows, **except** in elevated or poetic diction, as :

Das Ende **des Krieges**, The end of the war.

8. Cases governed by adjectives precede the adjective, but a substantive with a preposition may follow the *predicative* adjective, as :

Ich bin **ihm** dankbar **für seine Bemühungen**, I am grate-  
ful to him for his exertion.

## 297. POSITION OF ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

1. In general, adverbs precede the word they modify, as :

Ich bin **sehr** müde geworden, I have become **very** tired.

Er hat das Buch **nicht** gelesen, He has not read the book.

2. Adverbs of **Time** precede objects (except pronouns) and all other Adverbs or Adverbial expressions, as :

TIME. OBJECT. PLACE. MANNER.

Er hat **gestern** das Buch zu Hause **sehr fleißig** studiert,  
He studied the book very diligently at home yesterday.

3. Adverbs of **place** precede those of **manner**, and both follow objects, as in the above example.

4. Of several Adverbs of like kind, the more general precede the special, as :

**Morgen** um zehn Uhr, At ten o'clock **to-morrow**.

REMARKS. — 1. Any object, adjunct, adverb or adverbial phrase may occupy the normal position of the subject at the head of a principal sentence (before the verb, compare § 295, Rem., above), as :

**Meinen Vater** habe ich nicht gesehen, I did not see **my father**.

**Gestern** kam ich zu spät, I came too late **yesterday**.

2. The *relative* position of objects, adverbs, etc., is the same in principal and subordinate sentences.

## 298. POSITION OF OTHER MEMBERS OF THE SENTENCE.

1. **Attributive Adjectives** and **Participles** immediately precede the substantive they modify, as :

Ein zur Verteidigung sehr **günstiger** Ort, A place very **favourable** for defence.

Das auf dem Hügel **stehende** Haus, The house **standing** on the hill.

2. **Prepositions** precede their case, with the exceptions given in the lists (see §§ 46 ; 51 ; 223).

3. **Conjunctions** come between the words or clauses they connect, as :

Mein Bruder **und** seine Familie sind hier, My brother **and** his family are here.

Ich weiß, **daß** Sie nicht kommen werden, I know **that** you will not come.

NOTE. — In dependent clauses that precede the sentence on which they depend the conjunction is first, as:

**Weil** ich krank war, konnte ich nicht kommen, **Because** I was ill, I could not come.

## 299. CONSTRUCTION OF INCOMPLETE CLAUSES.

The Word-order of Incomplete or Elliptical Clauses is the same as that of Complete Clauses, there being no Verb in the former. In Infinitive Clauses the Infinitive comes last; and in Appositive Clauses, the Adjective or Participle comes last, thus:

Gute Freunde (zu) haben ist ein großes Glück, **To have** good friends is a great blessing.

Die Kunst in Öl zu malen, The art of painting in oil.

Ich werde mich freuen, Sie morgen zu sehen, I shall be glad **to see** you to-morrow.

Dies alles bei mir denkend, schlief ich ein, **Thinking** all this to myself, I fell asleep.

Von dem Lärm aufgeschreckt, sprang er aus dem Bette, **Aroused** by the noise, he jumped out of bed.

## 300. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

1. Direct Questions always *begin with the question-word*, the other members of the sentence occupying the same relative position as in principal sentences. For the position of the Verb and Subject, see §§ 293, 294, above.

2. Questions in German very frequently have the form of a principal assertive sentence, the question being marked only by the rising inflexion of the voice, as:

Du hast deine Lektion nicht gelernt? You have not learnt your lesson?

NOTES. — 1. This construction often occurs with a **Doch** in the sentence, as:

Du wirst **doch** kommen? You will be sure to come (will you not?).

Er ist **doch** nicht krank? He is not ill (is he? I hope not).

2. Exclamatory sentences frequently have the construction of dependent questions, but may also have that of direct questions, as:

Wer mitgehen **dürfte**! (Happy he! who might go with you!

Wie **ist** das Wetter schön! How beautiful is the weather!

### RECAPITULATION.

#### 301. GENERAL REMARKS ON GERMAN CONSTRUCTION.

The following are the principal points in which German differs from English Construction:

1. The **Verb** (containing the Copula) is the hinge on which the sentence turns, and has its position most absolutely fixed.

2. The Subject does not, as in English, necessarily precede the Verb in Principal Sentences; but if any other member of the sentence precede the Verb, an *inversion of the subject* takes place, and it is thrown *after* the verb.

NOTES. — 1. The terms *inversion*, *inverted sentence*, often used by grammarians, refer to the **Subject** only, not to the Verb.

2. This inversion of the Subject is also found in Interrogative and Imperative Sentences (see §§ 293; 294; 300, above).

3. The relative rank of sentences is marked by the varying position of the Verb, which is **last** in Dependent Sentences.

4. All the other parts of the sentence, except what precedes the Verb, are *included* or *bracketed* between the **Verb** and the **Predicate**.

5. Dependent Sentences (including Infinitive and Appositive Clauses; see § 299, above) are marked off from the sentences on which they depend by commas.

## SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON G.

## COMPLEX SENTENCES.—CLAUSE-ORDER.

## 302. COMPOUND AND COMPLEX SENTENCES.

1. A sentence is *compound* when it contains more than one *coördinate* clause; *complex* when it contains a *subordinate* clause, thus:

**Compound:** Ich ging an ihm vorbei, kannte ihn aber nicht,  
I went past him, but did not know him.

**Complex:** Er sagte mir, daß er kommen werde,  
He told me that he would come.

2. Any subordinate clause may itself be complex, having another clause dependent upon it, as:

Ich erwartete ihn gestern, weil er mir geschrieben hatte, daß seine  
Geschäfte bald beendet sein würden, I expected him yesterday,  
because he had written me, that his business would soon be  
finished.

NOTE.—In the above example, the clause *weil er, etc.*, depends on the *principal* clause preceding it; whereas the clause *daß seine Geschäfte, etc.*, depends on the clause *weil er, etc.*, which is itself subordinate.

REMARK.—In the following observations as to the relative position or order of clauses, the term “principal sentence” includes all sentences, though themselves subordinate, which occupy the relation of a principal or governing sentence to the clauses dependent upon them.

303. 1. In Complex Sentences, the position of the various dependent clauses is regulated by the following general principle:

Finish the principal sentence before introducing the subordinate clause.

2. Thus, in the example in § 302, 2. above, it would be wrong to insert the last clause (*daß . . . würden*) within the preceding clause on which it depends, thus:

Weil er mir, daß seine Geschäfte beendet sein würden, geschrieben  
hatte.

3. Similarly the following construction would make the complex sentence quite unintelligible:

Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigkeit eine Sache ohne über die Regel  
zu denken zu thun verleihen.

The observance of the above rule will require the clauses of this sentence to be arranged as follows:



Die Gewohnheit muß die Fertigkeit verleihen, eine Sache zu thun,  
ohne über die Regel nachzudenken, Habit (practice) must bestow  
the readiness of doing a thing without reflecting upon the rule.

4. In the following sentence, again, the isolation of the separable prefix is very objectionable:

Heiter ging die Sonne an jenem Morgen, an dem wir abreisten, auf,  
The sun rose cheerfully on that morning on which we set out.

The prefix *auf* should be inserted after *Morgen*.

**304. Appositive Clauses**, must, however, stand immediately after the particular part of the sentence to which they refer, as:

Die Priesterin, von ihrer Göttin selbst gewählt und geheiligt,  
spricht zu dir, The priestess, chosen and consecrated by the  
goddess herself, speaks to thee.

Was können wir, ein schwach's Volk der Hirten, gegen Albrechts  
Heere? What can we, a weak people of herdsmen, [do] against  
Albert's hosts?

Ich habe ihm diesen Fehler, daß er jede Handlung mißdeute, schon  
oft vorgeworfen, I have often reproached him with this mis-  
take of misinterpreting every action.

Ich konnte die Frage, ob wir kämen, nicht beantworten, I could  
not answer the question, whether we were coming.

**305. Relative Clauses** must immediately follow the antecedent:

(a) When the latter (whether subject or not) precedes the verb of a principal sentence, as:

Der Mann, welcher gestern hier war, ist heute wiedergekommen,  
The man who was here yesterday came again to-day.

Den Mann, wel' er gestern hier war, habe ich nicht gekannt, I did  
not know the man, who was here yesterday.

**NOTE.**—If the antecedent does not precede the verb, the relative is introduced after the conclusion of the principal sentence, except as under (b), below, thus:

Heute ist der Mann wiedergekommen, welcher u. s. w.

Ich habe den Mann nicht gekannt, welcher u. s. w.

(b) When their separation from the antecedent would cause ambiguity, as:

Gestern habe ich meinen Freund, den ich lange nicht gesehen, bei  
meinem Bruder getroffen, Yesterday I met at my brother's my  
friend, whom I had not seen for a long time.

**NOTE.**—If the relative clause were placed after the conclusion of the principal sentence, the relative *den* might refer to *Bruder*.

**306.** A Subordinate or Dependent Clause (with the exceptions specified in Remarks 3, 4, below) may also, whether subjective, objective or adverbial, *precede* the principal clause, in which case it throws the Subject after the Verb. as:

**Ob** ich kommen kann (*subjective clause*), ist zweifelhaft, It is doubtful whether I can come.

**Wer** gar zu viel bedenkt (*subjective clause*), wird wenig leisten, He who considers too much, will accomplish little.

**Daß** er mir nicht geschrieben (*subjective clause*), macht mir Sorgen, [The fact] that he has not written to me, causes me anxiety.

**Ob** ich werde kommen können (*objective clause*), weiß ich nicht, I do not know, whether I shall be able to come.

**Daß** er krank ist (*objective clause*), habe ich gestern gehört, I heard yesterday, that he was ill.

**Da** ich krank war (*adverbial clause*), konnte ich nicht kommen, As I was sick, I could not come.

REMARKS. — 1. Such a clause takes the place of a subject, object or predicate, as the case may be, before the verb (compare §§ 293, *b*, Rem. 4; 294, Rem. 2; 295, Rem.).

2. Adverbial clauses in this way bring expressions of time, place, etc., but more especially those of *cause*, nearer to the verb, which is the part of the sentence they modify.

3. Only *subjective* relative clauses with the *compound* relative *wer*, *was*, can stand at the head of a sentence, as in the second example above.

NOTE. — The relative *der* is sometimes used instead of *wer* as compound relative (including both relative and antecedent), especially in the plural, as:

Die sich zu hart vergangen hatten, flohen aus dem Lande. (SCHILLER); i. e.,  
Diejenigen, welche u. s. w. er: Wer sich zu hart vergangen hatte (sing.),  
floß u. s. w., Those who had committed too great offences, fled from the country.

4. Clauses which modify not the *whole* sentence but a *particular* member, cannot stand at the head of the sentence, but stand either immediately after the word to which they refer, or after the conclusion of the sentence (compare § 297, above). This remark applies especially to *relative clauses* (but see Rem. 3, above, and Note), and to *comparative clauses with als*, as:

Sein Unglück war größer, **als** er ertragen konnte (or: zu groß, **als** daß er es u. s. w.), His misfortune was greater than he could bear.

NOTE. — Comparative clauses with *wie* may precede, as:

Wie im Laub der Vogel singt,

Mag sich jeder gütlich thun,

As the bird sings amid the boughs, let every one enjoy himself. (SCHILLER).

#### EXERCISE G.

1. It seems impossible, says a great botanist, to give, in the present state of our knowledge, a complete definition of what (= that which) is to be considered as an animal, in contradistinction to what one must regard as a plant. 2. The good king Robert Bruce, who was always watchful and prudent, had received information ( Kunde ) of ( von ) the intention of these men to attack him suddenly. 3. Bruce caused his men to lie down to take some sleep at a place about half a mile distant from the river (see § 290, c, i), while he himself, with two attendants, went down to watch the ford through which the enemy must pass, before they came to the place where king Robert's men were lying. 4. "If I go back," thought the king, "to call my men to (the) arms, these men will get (kommen) through the ford unhindered; and that would be [a] pity, since it is a place so advantageous for defence." 5. In the confusion, five or six of the enemy were slain, or, having been borne down by the stream, [were] drowned. 6. With the natural feeling of a young author ( Schriftsteller ), he had ventured (it) to go ( sich ) aufmachen secretly and witness ( bewohnen + dat. ) the first representation of his tragedy at Mannheim. 7. He resolved to be free, at whatever risk ( auf jede Gefahr hin ); to abandon (= give up) advantages which he could not buy ( erkaufen ) at such a price; to quit his stepdame ( stiefmütterlich, adj. ) home, and go forth ( fortwandern ), though friendless and alone, to seek his fortune in the great market ( Jahrmarkt ) of life. 8. Having well examined the place ( Ort ), the soldier reported his discovery to Marius, and urgently ( dringend ) advised ( anraten + dat. ) him, to make an attack upon the fort from that side where he had climbed up, offering ( sich ) anbieten to lead (= show) the way. 9. He ordered his men to advance against the wall with their shields held together in the manner which the Romans named 'testudo' or tortoise ( Schildkröte ). 10. His mother was present on ( bei ) this joyous occasion, and she produced (= showed) a paper of (= with) poison, which, as she said, she meant to have given her son in his liquor ( Getränk, acc. ) rather than that he should submit (himself) to personal disgrace.

## PART THIRD.

---

### WORD-FORMATION. — HISTORICAL SKETCH.

---

#### LESSON LI.

##### DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION.

**307.** 1. New words are formed in a language by two more or less distinct processes: **Derivation** and **Composition**.

2. Derivation is of four kinds, viz.: 1. without change; 2. by internal change; 3. by Suffixes; 4. by Prefixes.

NOTE. — All grammatical terminations (inflexions) are really suffixes, but these are not considered under the present head.

##### **308.** A. WITHOUT CHANGE.

Verbs are derived from substantives, adjectives, adverbs, etc., by the simple addition of the endings of conjugation, as: *Arbeit*, labour; *arbeit-en*, to labour — *Gras*, grass; *gras-en*, to graze — *trocken*, dry; *trockn-en*, to dry — *näher*, near (compar.); *nähern*, to approach — *gegen*, against; *begegn-en*, to meet.

NOTE. — In many of these derivatives, and in most of those from adjectives, the vowel has Umlaut, as: *Pflug*; *pflüg-en*, plough — *Hammer*; *hammer-en*, hammer — *stark*, strong; *stärk-en*, strengthen — *tot*, dead; *töt-en*, kill — *offen*, open; *öffn-en*, open — *empor*, up; *empör-en*, excite.

##### **309.** B. BY INTERNAL CHANGE.

**Derivative Verbs.** — Verbs are derived from other Verbs:

(a) By change (generally Umlaut) of the root or Stem *Vowel*, forming *causative verbs*, which are always transitive and weak, as: *fallen*, fall; *fällen*, fell (*cause* to fall) — *trinken*, drink; *tränken*, make to drink (drench) — *sitzen*, sit; *setzen*, set — *liegen*, lie; *legen*, lay — *fahren*, fare, proceed; *führen*, lead, *cause* to proceed.

(b) By change of *consonant*, with or without vowel-change, as: *stehen*, stand; *stellen*, *cause* to stand, set or place upright — *biegen*, bend; *büßen*, bow — *neigen*, incline; *nicken*, nod (*incline the head*) — *wachen*, awake; *weden*, arouse (*cause* to awake).

NOTE. — Many weak verbs and nearly all *strong* verbs are *primitive*; but *derivative* verbs are generally *weak*.

**310. Derivative Substantives.** — These are derived from Verbs by internal vowel-change without suffix, and are mostly masculine, as: *binden*, bind; *Band*, bond, volume; *Bund*, union — *sitzen*, sit; *Stake*, stake (thing *set* or laid down), etc. — *ziehen*, draw; *Zug*, trait, etc. — *treten*, tread; *Tritt*, step.

NOTE. — Observe that in both the Verbs and Substantives above occasional *consonant* changes also occur.

### C. BY SUFFIXES.

#### 311.

#### VERB SUFFIXES.

1. *-eln* forms derivatives from other verbs, as well as from substantives and adjectives, *usually with Umlaut*, implying diminution or contempt, as: *lachen*, laugh; *lächeln*, smile — *herrschen*, art; *herrschen*, affect (artfully) — *frommen*, pious; *frömmeln*, affect piety.

2. *-ern* from verbs, substantives and adjectives (sometimes with Umlaut), as: *folgen*, follow; *folgern*, infer — *schlafen*, sleep; *schlafen-ern*, feel sleepy — *arg*, bad; *arg-ern*, vex.

3. *-ieren*, mostly from *foreign* stems, without Umlaut, as: *marichieren*, march — *regieren*, reign — *studieren*, study. Also from German roots, by analogy, as: *buchstabieren*, spell.

#### 312.

#### SUBSTANTIVE SUFFIXES.

1. *-t* (= *-it*, = *-il*), *-d*, *-de* (usually feminine) from verbs, usually with vowel-change, as: *beugen*, bend; *Bacht*, bay (bight) — *fahren*, drive; *Fahrt*, drive — *tragen*, wear; *Tracht*, costume — *kommen*, come; *Kunft*, coming (*Ankunft*, arrival; *Zukunft*, future) — *können*, can; *Kunft*, art — *brennen*, burn; *Brand*, conflagration — *wissen*, know; *Wundt*, information.

2., 3. *-chen* and *-lein* form diminutives, usually with Umlaut, as: *Haus*, house; *Häuschen*, little house, cot — *Mann*, man; *Männlein*, manikin.

NOTES. — 1. *-chen* (Engl. *-kin*), originally Low (North) German only, is now more common than *-lein*, which however is preferred after gutturals, as: *Ringlein*, *Büchlein*.

2. Sometimes a double diminutive suffix, *-el + -chen*, is used after gutturals, as: *Ringelchen*, *Büchelchen*.

4. **-e** forms a very large number of feminine derivatives from verbs, *often with vowel-change*; also, *usually with Umlaut*, from adjectives, as: *fliegen*, fly; *Flieg-e*, fly (insect) — *geben*, give; *Gabe*, gift — *sprechen*, speak; *Sprach-e*, speech, language — *gut*, good; *Güt-e*, goodness — *treu*, faithful; *Treu-e*, fidelity.

5. **-ei** (from Fr. *-ie*) forms feminine derivatives, *with accent on the suffix*:

- (a) From verbs in **-eln**, **-ern**, as: *schmeicheln*, flatter; *Schmeichel-ei*, flattery — *zaubern*, enchant; *Zauber-ei*.
- (b) From substantives, indicating state, occupation, etc., most frequently from those in **-er**, as: *Jäger*, hunter; *Jäger-ei*, hunting — *Drucker*, printer; *Drucker-ei*, printing (-trade or -office).

NOTES. — 1. It sometimes implies contempt, as: *Kind-ei*, childish nonsense.

2. By analogy with the formations from stems in **-er**, there has arisen the double suffix **-erci**, added to other stems, as: *Sklav-erci*, slavery (from *Sklave*).

6. **-el**, from verbs (*sometimes with vowel-change*), generally indicating the *instrument*, as: *decken*, cover; *Deck-el*, lid — *fliegen*, fly; *Flüg-el*, wing — *schließen*, lock; *Schlüss-el*, key — *ziehen*, pull; *Zügel*, rein, bridle.

7. **-en**, from verbs, including all infinitives, as well as others, e. g.: *graben*, dig; *Grab-en* (masc.), ditch — *schaden*, hurt; *Schad-en* (masc.), injury.

8. **-er**, often with Umlaut, indicating the *actor*, chiefly from verbs, but also from substantives, as: *baken*, bake; *Bäck-er*, bak-er — *malen*, paint; *Mal-er*, paint-er — *tänzen*, dance; *Tänz-er*, danc-er — *Garten*, garden; *Gärt-n-er*, garden-er — *Schaf*, sheep; *Schäf-er*, shepherd.

NOTE. — Some derivatives from substantives insert **n**, as: *Bild-n-er*, sculptor (from *Bild*) — *Glöck-n-er*, bell-ringer (from *Glöck*) — *Red-n-er*, orator (from *Rede*).

9. **-heit** (Engl. *-head*, *-hood*) forms feminine abstracts from substantives and adjectives, as: *Gott-heit*, God-head — *Kind-heit*, child-hood — *Blind-heit*, blindness — *Frei-heit*, freedom.

10. **-feit** replaces **-heit** after adjectives in **-el**, **-er**, **-ig**, **-lich**, **-bar**, **-sam**, as: *Eitel-feit*, vanity — *Bitter-feit*, bitterness — *Billig-feit*, cheapness — *Heimlich-feit*, secrecy — *Branchbar-feit*, usefulness — *Spar-sam-feit*, economy.

NOTE. — Some derivatives from adjectives insert **-ig** before **-feit**, especially from those in **-haft** and **-los**, as: *Süß-ig-feit*, sweetness — *Standhaft-ig-feit*, steadfastness — *Treu-los-ig-feit*, unfaithfulness.

11. **=in** (compare § 89, 2, Note) forms feminine appellatives from masculine substantives, usually with Umlaut (always so from monosyllables), as: *Gräi*, count; *Gräin*, countess — *Freund*, friend; *Freund in*, (female) friend — *Gärtner*, gardener; *Gärtner-in*, gardener's wife.

12. **=ling** forms masculine diminutives (sometimes with Umlaut) from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: *lehren*, teach; *Lehr ling*, apprentice — *flucht*, flight; *flucht ling*, fugitive — *freund*, strange; *Freund ling*, stranger — *jung*, young; *Jüng ling*, youth.

13. **=nis** (Engl. *-ness*) forms abstracts from verbs; also from a few adjectives, usually with Umlaut, as: *begraben*, bury; *Begräb ni*, funeral — *hindern*, hinder; *Hinder-nis*, obstacle — *gefangen*, captive; *Gefäng-nis*, prison — *finstern*, dark; *Finsternis*, darkness.

14. **=sal, =sel** form abstracts, (generally neuter) from verbs, and also from a few substantives and adjective, as: *schicken*, send; *Schick-sal*, fate — *raten*, guess; *Rät-sel*, riddle — *Mühe*, trouble; *Müß-sal*, fatigue — *trübe*, sad; *Trüb-sal*, tribulation.

15. **=schaft** (Engl. *-ship, -sape*) forms feminine abstracts from verbs and adjectives, as: *Wander-schaft*, wandering — *Freund-schaft*, friendship — *Land-schaft*, landscape — *Gemein-schaft*, community — *Eigen-schaft*, peculiarity; also some collectives, as: *Priester-schaft*, priesthood; *Gesell-schaft*, society.

16. **=tum** (Engl. *-dom*) forms (generally neuter) abstracts from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: *Wach-tum*, growth — *Eigen-tum*, property — *Reich-tum* (masc.), wealth — *König-tum*, royalty (king-dom).

17. **=ung** (= Engl. *-ing* in verbal nouns) forms a large number of feminine abstracts, chiefly from verbs, as: *Belehr-ung*, instruction — *Vergeb-ung*, forgiveness.

18. The suffixes **=end**, **i**, **=icht**, **=ng** are only found after stems which no longer have an independent existence, as: *Ab-end*, *Tag-end*, *Ess-ig*, *Räuf-ig*, *Hab-icht* (hawk).

### 313.

### ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

1. **=bar** (connected with *bären*, 'bear') from verbs (= Engl. *-able*) and substantives, also (rarely) from adjectives, as: *esß-bar*, eat-able — *frucht-bar*, fruitful — *furcht-bar*, frightful — *offen-bar*, evident.

2. **=en, =ern** form adjectives denoting material or kind from substantives, as: *gold-en*, golden — *blei-ern*, leaden — *silber-n*, silver — *holz-ern*, wooden.

NOTE. — *Eisern*, 'iron,' from *Eisen*, is anomalous.

3. *haft* (connected with *haben*, 'have') forms adjectives, denoting the quality of the primitive, chiefly from substantives (also from a few verbs and adjectives), as: *jünd haft*, sinful — *tugend haft*, virtuous — *wohnhaft*, resident — *boß haft*, malicious — *wahr haft*, true.

NOTE.—The suffix *-ig* is often added to adjectives in *haft*, as: *wahrhaftig* (compare also § 312, 10, Note, above).

4. *icht* sometimes replaces *-ig* (see below) after names of materials, as *dorn icht*, thorny — *stein icht*, stony; also in *töricht*, foolish.

5. *-ig* (= Engl. *-y*, as in *might-y*, etc.) forms a very numerous class of adjectives, usually with Umlaut, from verbs, substantives and particles, and from other adjectives (including the possessive pronouns, see § 119, *c*), as: *nachgieb-ig*, yielding — *günst-ig*, favourable — *mächt-ig*, might-y — *schuld-ig*, guilt-y — *güt-ig*, kind — *völl-ig*, complete — *heut-ig*, of to-day — *vor-ig*, former.

NOTE.—For *-ig* before *-il*, see § 312, 10, Note; for *-ig* after *haft*, see 3, above.

6. *-ich* (= Engl. *-ish*) forms adjectives:

(a) From proper names, denoting *origin*, as: *luther'-ich*, Lutheran — *preuß-ich*, Prussian.

(b) From substantives, as: *dieb-ich*, thief-ish — *himml-ich*, heavenly; sometimes also with depreciatory sense, as in English, e. g.: *kind-ich*, child-ish — *weib-ich*, woman-ish (compare *kindlich*, child like — *weiblich*, womanly).

(c) From foreign words (= Lat. *-icus*; Engl. *-ic*, *-ical*), as: *histor-ich*, historical — *log-ich*, logical.

7. *-lei* forms variative numerals; see § 182, (*c*).

8. *-lich* (Engl. *-like*, *-ly*) forms numerous adjectives from verbs (with active or passive sense), substantives (usually with Umlaut) and other adjectives (generally with diminutive meaning, like Eng. *-ish*), as: *erfreulich*, delightful — *schädlich*, injurious — *begreiflich*, intelligible — *glaublich*, credible — *verächtlich*, contemptible — *jährlich*, yearly — *männlich*, manly — *natürlich*, natural — *röthlich*, redd-ish — *langlich*, long-ish.

9. *-sam* (Engl. *-some*) from verbs and substantives (also from a few adjectives), as: *aufmerksam*, attentive — *heilsam*, whole-some — *furchtsam*, timid — *einsam*, lone-some.

#### D. BY PREFIXES.

### 314.

#### VERB PREFIXES.

The **Verb Prefixes** coming under the head of derivation are those which are always inseparable, viz: *be-*, *ent-* or *emp-*, *ge-*, *miß-*, *ver-*, *zer-*. Their various meanings are given below.



1. **be-** (connected with the prep. *bei*, is *intensive*, and
  - (a) forms transitive verbs from intransitive (its most frequent use), as: *fallen*, fall; **be-fallen**, be-fall — *gehen*, go; **be-gehen**, commit (a crime, etc.) — *flagen*, mourn; **be-flagen**, mourn for;
  - (b) it forms verbs from substantives and adjectives, with the meaning 'provide with,' 'make,' as: **be-freunden**, be-friend — **be-stärken**, make strong, strengthen.
2. **ent-** (**emp-** before an *f*, akin to *ant*, as in *antworten*) corresponds frequently to the (Latin) prefixes *dis-*, *de-* in English words and denotes
  - (a) 'in return,' as: **emp-fangen**, receive; **emp-fohlen**, recommend;
  - (b) 'contrary,' 'against,' 'away from,' having privative force, from verbs, substantives and adjectives, as: **ent-binden**, relieve — **ent-decken**, dis-cover — **ent-gehen**, **ent-laufen**, get away, escape;
  - (c) *transition, origin*, as: **ent-schlafen**, fall asleep — **ent-standen**, arise, originate.
3. **er-** (Engl. *a-*, as in *a-rouse*, *a-rise*, etc.) denotes:
  - (a) 'out from,' 'upwards,' as: **er-heben**, raise — **er-wachen**, a-waken;
  - (b) *transition* (compare **ent**, above), as: **er-beben**, begin to tremble — **er-blühen**, come out in blossom — **er-falten**, grow cold;
  - (c) *acquisition* or *attainment* by the action of the verb (a very common use), as: **er-betteln**, get by begging — **er-lernen**, get by cunning;
  - (d) *accomplishment*, as: **er-schießen**, shoot (kill by shooting) — **er-trinken**, be drowned.
4. **ge-** often has no perceptible force, as in: **ge-rieten**, recover (from illness) — **ge-nießen**, enjoy; but commonly it is frequentative and intensive, as: **ge-bieten**, command — **ge-denken**, remember, mention — **ge-loben**, vow.
5. **miß-** (Engl. *mis-*) has negative force, sometimes with the notion of falsehood or failure, as: **miß-achten**, despise — **miß-fallen**, displease — **miß-glücken**, fail — **miß-verstehen**, mis-understand.
6. **ver-** (Engl. *for-* in *for-get*, *for-give*) has the general meaning of 'away' and often, like **ent**, answers to a *dis-* or *de-* in English.
  - (a) It is *intensive*, and expresses *excess*, etc., as: **ver-blühen**, fade away — **ver-kommen**, go to ruin — **ver-zagen**, despair.
  - (b) It denotes a *mistake*, etc., as: **ver-führen**, lead astray — **ver-laufen** (refl.), lose one's way — **ver-legen**, mis-lay.
  - (c) It is *privative* (its most frequent use), and denotes loss, parting, waste, dissolution, as: **ver-gehen**, pass away — **ver-trinken**, waste in drink — **ver-spielen**, gamble away.

(d) It forms verbs from substantives and adjectives denoting a *change* or *transition* into the state of the primitive, as: **ver-**armen, grow poor — **ver** golden, gild.

7. **zer-** denotes separation, destruction, 'to pieces,' as: **zer**-brechen, break to pieces — **zer**-gliedern, dis-member.

## 315.

## SUBSTANTIVE PREFIXES.

1. **Erz-** (= Engl. arch-), as: **Erz**-bischof, arch-bishop — **Erz**-feind, arch-enemy.

**Ge-** forms *usually neuter* derivatives:

(a) **Collectives**, from substantives, as: **Ge**-birge, mountain-range — **Ge**-fieder, feathers — **Ge**-sträuch, bushes.

(b) **Associatives** (of persons), from verbs and substantives, as: **Ge**-spiele, playmate — **Ge**-schwister, brothers and sisters (of a family) — **Ge**-felle, fellow.

(c) **Frequentative** or **intensive abstracts**, also from verbs, as: **Ge**-spräch, conversation — **Ge**-flüster, (continued) whispering — **Ge**-töse, uproar.

NOTE. — The substantives **Ge**-läch, **Ge**-laube contain this prefix.

3. **Miß-**, with the same force as in verbs, e.g.: **Miß**-that, misdeed — **Miß**-gunst, envy.

4. **Un-** is *negative* prefix, as in English, e.g.: **Un**-glück, bad luck — **Un**-recht, wrong — **Un**-sinn, nonsense. It also expresses something monstrous or unnatural, as: **Un**-that, unnatural or monstrous deed — **Un**-mensch, inhuman monster.

5. **Ur-** (akin to **er-**, see above) denotes

(a) *origin*, as in **Ur**-teil (**er**-teilen), sentence, judgment — **Ur**-laub (**er**-lauben), furlough, leave of absence;

(b) *primitiveness*, as: **Ur**-sache (original thing), cause — **Ur**-mensch, primitive man — **Ur**-wald, primeval forest.

REMARK. — Substantives with Verb Prefixes (see § 314, above) are derived from verb-stems having these prefixes (e.g.: **Ab**-zug, **Be**-zug, from abziehen, beziehen), except those with **ge-** (see 2, above).

## 316.

## ADJECTIVE PREFIXES.

The Prefixes of Adjectives are the same as those of substantives, and with the same force, except **ge-**, which forms:

- (a) Past Participles, some without corresponding verbs, as: *ge-ſittet*, well-behaved — *ge-ſtieſelt*, booted;
- (b) adjectives from verb-stems, as: *ge-nehm*, agreeable, acceptable — *ge-wiſſ* (from *wiſſen*, 'know'), certain;
- (c) from other Adjectives, as: *ge-redt*, just — *ge-treu*, faithful.

NOTE. — *ge-leiſt* also contains this prefix.

### 317. OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

Pronouns, Numerals, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections are for the most part either primitive or compound; for Derivative Numerals and Numeral Adverbs, see §§ 182, 183; for the derivation of other Adverbs, § 189.

## II. COMPOSITION.

**318.** 1. A compound word is one made up of two or more words, each of which maintains its separate form and meaning.

2. In *genuine* compounds, the last component only is inflected; but there are also *spurious* compounds, in which one or more of the preceding components takes an inflectional ending (see § 319, 1, Notes 2, 3, below), without liability to further variation.

NOTE. — In a few words arbitrarily written as compounds, both elements are inflected; see § 319, 2, Note, below.

3. Compounds are made with much greater freedom in German than in English. Words that in English are written separately, are often written as one word in German, forming compounds of a length and complexity unknown in the English language, as: *Feuerverſicherungſgeſellſchaft*, fire insurance company — *Luſtröhrerndwindſucht*, bronchial consumption.

NOTE. — These long compounds are generally broken up by one or more hyphens as: *Feuerverſicherungſ-Geſellſchaft*, a capital letter usually following the hyphen.

4. When the last component is common to several successive compounds, it is expressed with the last component word only, the omission being indicated in the other cases by a hyphen, as: *Apfel, Kirſch und Birnbäume*, apple, cherry and pear-trees — *eine freuden- und nutzloſe Aufgabe*, a joyless and profitless task.

5. The Composition of Verbs is fully treated of in Less. XXXVI, and Supp. Less. E.; that of Numerals in Less. XXVIII, and also in §§ 182, 183. The compound Prepositions will be found in Less. XXXVIII, and Conjunctions in Less. XI, and require no special explanation.

### 319. COMPOSITION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

The last element is (with exceptions noted under 5, below) a **Substantive**, which determines the gender, and is alone inflected; the first element generally having the principal accent. The varieties of Compound Substantives are:

1. **Substantive + Substantive**, the first element being in *apposition* or in some *case* or *other relation* (usually genitive) to the other, as below, as: Himmel reich, kingdom of heaven (*apposition*) — Aug=apfel, eye-ball — Landes herr, sovereign — Freuden=fest, joyous festival — Kinder=stube, nursery (*genitive* relation) — Tinten=faß, inkstand (stand *for* ink) — Tanz=stunde, dancing=lesson (*dative* relation) — Ratten=fänger, rat-catcher — Weg weiser, guide, finger-post (*accusative* relation) — Ost wind, East wind — Freuden=thräne, tear of joy (*origin*) — Fuß=tritt, kick (*instrument*) — Dach=fenster, window *in* the roof (*place*) — Tage=werk, day's work.

NOTES. — 1. *Primary* Compounds are those composed of **stem + substantives**, either with the stem-suffix *=t*, as: Tagewert; or without suffix, as: Handwerk, trade — Jagd=horn, hunting-horn.

2. *Secondary* Compounds are made up with a *Genitive case*, Singular or Plural; if singular, the first component takes *=s* after *strong* masculines and neuters, and *=en* after weak substantives, whether sing. or plur.; thus: Sonntag=*s*fleid, sunday-dress — Freud=*en*=geißel, cry of joy — Wörter=*n*=buch, dictionary.

3. The suffix *=s* is also added to *feminines* in *=t*, *=heit*, *=feit*, *=schaft*, *=ung*, and the foreign endings *=ion*, *tät*, as: Geburt=*s*tag, birthday — Freiheit=*s*=liebe, love of liberty — Mäßigkeit=*s*=verein, temperance society — Religion=*s*=krieg, religious war — Universität=*s*=gebäude, University building.

2. Qualifying **Adjective + Substantive**, as: Edel=stein, precious stone, jewel — Jungfrau, virgin — Hochzeit, wedding (high time) — Voll=mond, full-moon.

NOTE. — In a few spurious compounds of this kind, the adjective is declined, as: ein Höch=*r*=priester, high-priest; der Höhepriester — die Lange=weile, tedium, ennui; Gen. der Langenweile.

3. **Adverb or Preposition + Substantive**, usually from compound verbs, but not always, as: Her kunft, origin — Wohl=that, benefit — Anzahl, number — Bei=spiel, example — Hinter=list, cunning — Über=macht, superiority.

4. **Verb-stem + Substantive**, sometimes with connecting suffix *=t*, as: Les=*t*=buch, Schreib=*t*=feder, Sing vogel.

5. **Other Compound Substantives**. There is a special class of substantive compounds of a character different from those enumerated above, and of various composition, consisting of:

(a) A limiting word (not a subst.) + Substantive, as: *Blinde-luh*, blind-man's-buff — *Kahl-kopf*, bald-head — *Groß-maul*, boaster — *Lang-bein*, long-legged person — *Schrei-hals*, bawler — *Viereck*, square.

(b) Limiting word + Adjective, as: *der Nimmer-satt*, the glutton — *das Immer grün*, the evergreen.

NOTE. — These compounds are masculine when referring to persons, otherwise neuter. The same rule holds good for the compounds under (c), below.

(c) Verb + Object, limiting word or phrase, as: *der Taugenichts*, the good-for-nothing — *der Spring-ins-feld*, the romp — *der Stören-fried*, the kill-joy — *das Stell dich-ein*, the rendez-vous.

### 320. COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

Compound Adjectives consist of an Adjective preceded by a limiting word, viz.:

1. Adjective + Adjective, as: *taub stumm*, deaf-mute — *dunkel-blau*, dark-blue — *rot-bädig*, red-cheeked.

2. Substantive + Adjective:

(a) with connecting inflexional suffix (compare § 319, 1, Note 2, above), as: *liebes-frank*, love-sick — *gedanken voll*, pensive — *hoffnungslos*, hopeless;

(b) without suffix, as: *liebe-voll*, affectionate — *huld reich*, gracious — *freude-leer*, joyless.

NOTES. — 1. The Adjectives *los*, *reich*, *voll* are of such constant occurrence as to have almost acquired the character of suffixes.

2. In some of these compounds, the substantive expresses *comparison*, or has *intensive* force, as: *treideweiß*, white as chalk — *federleicht*, light as a feather — *festenfest*, firm as a rock.

3. Verb + Adjective, as: *wiß-begierig*, eager for knowledge — *merkwürdig*, remarkable (noteworthy).

NOTE. — In Compound Adjectives like *danke-swert*, 'welcome' ('thankworthy'), the first element is the infinitive used as a *Substantive*.

4. Adverb or Preposition + Adjective, as: *hoch geboren*, high-born — *wohl-feil*, cheap — *unter-than*, subject — *über-klug*, overwise.

### 321. COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

Adverbs are compounded of various parts of speech:

1. With Nouns (*mostly in the Genitive*) affixed to other parts of speech, as: *fall: gleich-fall*, likewise; *jeden-fall*, in any case —

Maß(e): einiger-maßen, in some degree — Seite: einer-seits . . . ander-seits, on the one hand . . . on the other hand — Teil: meisten-theils, chiefly; meines-theils, on my part — Weg: gerades-wegs, straightway; keines-wegs, by no means — Weise: einst-zeiten, mittler-weise, meanwhile, meantime — Weise: glücklicher-weise, fortunately; kreuz-weise, crosswise; thöricht-weise, foolishly.

NOTE. — The *masc.* and *neuter* genitive-inflection -*ē*, from its frequent use in adverbial genitives, has become an adverbial suffix, and is sometimes attached to *fem.* substs., as: die Nacht, *adv.* nachts, by night. So also has the suffix -*wärts*, as: himmel-wärts, heavenward — nord-wärts, northward.

2. With **Prepositions** (or original **Adverbs**) prefixed or suffixed to other parts of speech, as: zu-gleich, at the same time — gerade-zu, straight on — auf-wärts, upward; berg-auf, uphill — unter-wegs, on the way; berg-unter, downhill — heut-zu-tage, nowadays — jahre-lang, for years.

3. With **Pronouns** (or **Stems** originally **Pronominal**) compounded with each other, as: wohin? whither? dahin, dorthin, thither — woher? whence? daher, dorthin, thence, etc.

For *Numeral Adverbs*, see § 182.

## LESSON LII.

HISTORICAL SKETCH. — GRIMM'S LAW. — UMLAUT, etc.

### 322. RELATION BETWEEN GERMAN AND ENGLISH.

1. A comparison of German words and forms with their English equivalents will serve to show that a very large number of both words and grammatical forms are common to both languages. Though rarely absolutely identical in form, the resemblances are both so close and so numerous that they cannot be the result of mere borrowing on the part of either language from the other, but must imply *relationship*, or, in other words, *a descent from a common source, a common origin*.

English and German are therefore **Modern Dialects of one and the same original language**.

2. This original language is no longer extant, either as a spoken or as a written language. There are, however, other languages — some still spoken, some known to us only as written — which were once also

dialects of this common ancestor, or *Grundsprache*, as German philologists call it. This group or *sub-family* of languages is called the **GERMANIC** or **TEUTONIC**, the common source or *Grundsprache* of which was itself a dialect of a larger *family*, all of whose members were dialects of, and derived from, one common primitive source (*Ursprache*). This family is called the **INDO-GERMANIC**, **INDO-EUROPEAN** or **ARYAN** family, and includes most European and several Asiatic languages.

3. The divisions of this great family, with the chief representatives, ancient (written) and modern (spoken), of each, are as follows, beginning from the East :

(a) **INDIC** — *ancient*: Sanskrit, etc.; *modern*: Hindustani, etc.

(b) **PERSIC** — “      Zend, etc.;      “      Persian, etc.

(c) **GREEK** — *ancient* and *modern*.

(d) **ITALIC** — *ancient*: Latin, etc.; *modern*: the Romance languages (Italian, French, Spanish, etc.).

(e) **LITHUANIC**.

(f) **SLAVONIC** — Russian, Polish, Bohemian, etc.

(g) **GERMANIC** — see below.

(h) **CELTIC** — Irish, Gaelic, Welsh, etc.

### 323.      THE GERMANIC LANGUAGES.

The Germanic or Teutonic group of languages may be classified as follows :

1. **GOthic** or **EAST GERMANIC**, once spoken by the Goths of Mæsia, on the Danube, represented only by a translation of portions of the Bible, made by Ulfilas, Bishop of the Goths, in the 4th century, A. D.

2. **SCANDINAVIAN** or **NORTH GERMANIC** — *ancient*: Old Norse; *modern*: Icelandic, Danish (Norwegian), Swedish.

3. **LOW GERMAN** or **WEST GERMANIC** — *ancient*: Frisian, Low Saxon, Low Frankish, Old English (Anglo-Saxon), Middle English; *modern*: Dutch, **ENGLISH**.

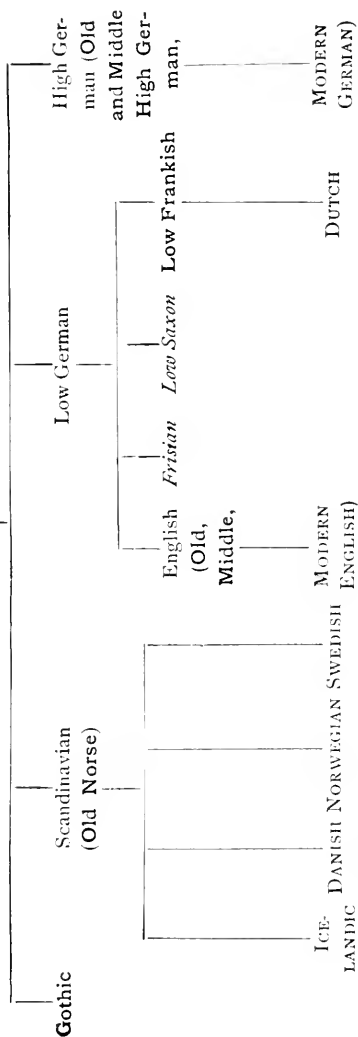
**NOTE.** — The modern representatives of the other Low German languages are mere dialects — known as *Plattdeutsch* (i. e., Flat German), the present (High) German literary language having displaced them.

4. **HIGH GERMAN** or **SOUTH GERMANIC**, including the (no longer spoken) Old and Middle High German, and the **GERMAN**, as spoken and written at the present day.

The following diagram will serve further to illustrate the relationships of the German language :

## PRIMITIVE TEUTONIC.

(Grunddeutsch.)



NOTES. — 1. The languages printed in **heavy type** are extinct; those in *Italics* are now only represented by dialects; those in CAPITALS are languages (not mere dialects) of the present day.

2. High-German includes also Middle German; it is now, and has been since the 16th century, the only literary language of the German empire, extending also into parts of Austria and Switzerland.



## 324.

## HISTORY OF HIGH GERMAN.

The HIGH GERMAN (including the Middle German) branch of the Germanic sub-family has passed through three stages, as follows :

1. **Old High German**, to the 12th century. Its literature is chiefly ecclesiastical — its principal authors being monks, such as Otfrid, the Frank, author of a rhyming harmony of the Gospels, and Notker, of St. Gallen in Switzerland. Each author wrote in his own dialect.

NOTE. — The chief characteristic of this Old High German, which distinguishes it from the subsequent stages, is the comparative fulness and distinctiveness of its grammatical forms. Thus *Tagen*, *Ëbren*, (*Safen* (dat. pl.) = O. H. G. *tag-um*, *sun-um*, *geb-ôm* respectively; and the pres. indic. of *nëman* (*nehmen*) is as follows: *nim-u*, *nim-is*, *nim-it*, *nëmam-(ës)*, *nëm-at*, *nëm-ant*. It also has a fifth case (the *Instrumental*).

2. **Middle High German** A. D. 1100–1500. Literature during this period passed from the hands of the clergy into those of the *nobles*; hence its courtly character. The branches of poetic composition therein represented were *Epic* and *Lyric* Poetry, the former comprising not only the great National Epics of the ‘*Nibelungenlied*’ and ‘*Gudrun*,’ but also the Courtly or Art Epics of Chivalry, such as Wolfram von Eschenbach’s ‘*Parcival*’ and Gottfried von Straszburg’s ‘*Tristan und Isolde*’; the latter comprising the productions of the ‘*Minnesänger*,’ of whom the greatest was Walther von der Vogelweide. The *Dialect of Swabia* (which included Baden, Württemberg and parts of Bavaria) became the leading literary language.

NOTE. — Middle is distinguished from Old High German chiefly by the loss of the full vowels of inflectional syllables, which were for the most part changed into *e*. Thus the O. H. G. datives pl. *tag-um*, *geb-ôm* are in Mid. H. G. *tag-en*, *geb-en*; and the pres. indic. of *nëmen* is: *nim-e*, *nim-est*, *nim-et*, *nëm-en*, *nëm-et*, *nëm-ent*. It is further distinguished from O. H. G. by the *sj* read of the Umlaut (see § 326, below), which in the former is confined to the vowel *a*, to the vowels *o* and *u* also; and from both O. H. G. and Modern German by the large number of its diphthongal sounds (*ai*, *ei*, *ô*, *öi*, *au*, *ou*, *ôu*, *eu*, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, *iü*; *ua*, *ue*, *üe*, *uo*), the greater number of which are unknown in both the preceding and the later stage of the language.

3. **New or Modern High German**, from 1500 to the present day, forming, since before the beginning of the 16th century, the standard *literary language* of all German-speaking people. Its basis is Doctor Martin Luther’s translation of the Bible (1522–34), in which he adopted the „*Hausleiprache*“ or *official court language* particularly of the Duchy of Saxony, as being, in his own words, „*die gemeine Deutsche Sprache, welcher nachfolgen alle Fürsten und Könige in ganz Deutschland*.“

NOTE.—The chief characteristic which distinguishes Modern (New) High German from Middle High German is the lengthening of all stem-vowels before a single consonant. Thus *jagen*, *jerach*, *leben*, all have the stem-vowel long in Modern German, but short in Middle High German. To this may be added the use of the letter *h* to mark a preceding long vowel, as in *nehmen*, M. H. G. *nemen* (with short *e*); the change of *i* into *ih* before *l*, *n*, as: *schlafen*, M. H. G. *slâf*, *snê*; and that of the long vowels *i*, *û*, into the diphthongs *ei*, *eu* respectively, as: *mein*, *dein*, *drei*, *Weib*, *Maus*, *Haus*, *Haut*, *laut*, M. H. G. *min*, *dîn*, *dri*, *wib*, *mûs*, *hûs*, *hût*, *lût*.

### 325. GRIMM'S LAW OF *Vautverschiebung*.

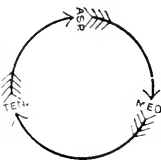
1. The law of the progression or shifting of mutes, Germ. *Vautverschiebung*, also called GRIMM'S LAW after its chief discoverer, Jakob Grimm, the illustrious grammarian, is one of the most striking features of the Germanic languages.

2. The Mutes are divided into three classes, according to the organ with which they are uttered, viz.: LINGUALS (or DENTALS): *t*, *th*, *d*; LABIALS: *p*, *ph* (*f*), *b*; and PALATALS (or GUTTURALS): *k* (*c*), *ch* (*h*), *g*. Each of these classes contains a *tenuis* (or *surd*), an *aspirate* or *spirant*, and a *media* (or *sonant*), thus:

	TENUES.	ASPIRATES or SPIRANTS.	MEDIAE.
LINGUALS:	<i>t</i>	<i>th</i>	<i>d</i>
LABIALS:	<i>p</i>	<i>ph</i> , <i>f</i>	<i>b</i>
PALATALS:	<i>k</i> , <i>c</i>	<i>kh</i> , <i>ch</i> ( <i>h</i> )	<i>g</i>

3. In the majority of the Germanic languages — Gothic, Scandinavian, Low German (including therefore ENGLISH) — as compared with the other members of the Indo-Germanic family (Greek, Latin, etc.; see § 322, 3, above), each of these mutes has undergone *one* “shifting,” or been pushed forward one stage in its own class, the *tenuis* having been changed into *aspirates* (or more strictly *spirants*), the *aspirates* into *mediae*, and the *mediae* into *tenuis*. In High German alone they have undergone a second “shifting” in the same direction.

NOTE.—The accompanying diagram will serve further to illustrate this process, showing how the mutes observe the following rotation from primitive Indo-Germanic through general Germanic (including English) to High German, viz.: *Tenuis*, *Aspirate*, *Media*; *Aspirate*, *Media*, *Tenuis*; *Media*, *Tenuis*, *Aspirate*.



3. Taking Latin or Greek as representing the first or primitive Indo-Germanic stage, and English as representing the second, or general Germanic stage (the first shifting), the following scheme will show the *theoretical* working of this law:

	LINGUALS.	LABIALS.	PALATALS.
Latin, Greek, etc.:	t, th, d	p, ph, b	k, kh, g
= English, etc.:	th, d, t	ph, b, p	kh, g, k
= (High) German:	d, t, th	b, p, ph	g, k, kh

5. The operation of the law is, however, subject to the following general exceptions:

(a) **p** and **k** were changed in the second shifting, not into aspirates proper, but into the *spirants* **f** and **h** (= **dh**) respectively, and these spirants were not subjected to any further change.

(b) The lingual aspirate is represented in High German by **z**, **s**, **ß**, or **h**.

(c) The second shifting of media to tenuis took place in High German in the *lingual series* only, except in one dialect (the Alemannian).

(d) The aspirate (or spirant) **dh** is never found in Modern German at the beginning of a word.

6. Hence the modified scheme below will represent approximately the *actual* working of the law:

	LINGUALS.	LABIALS.	PALATALS.
Latin, Greek, etc.:	t, th, d	p, ph (f), b	k, kh (h), g
= English, etc.:	th, d, t	f, b, p	h, g, k
= (High) German:	d, t, z, s, ss, sz	f, b, f	h(dh) g, k (dh)

NOTE. — Latin has **c**, **f**, and **h** for **k**, **ph** and **kh** respectively; and the **dh** at the bottom of the last column does not occur at the beginning of words; see 5, (d), above.

#### EXAMPLES OF Lautverschiebung.

(NOTE. — Examples from Lat. unless otherwise specified.)

1. LINGUALS: (a) **t** — **th** — **d**; as: **tectum** — **thatch** — **Tad**; **tenuis** — **thin** — **dünn**; **tu** — **thou** — **du**; **tres** — **three** — **drei**; **frater** — **brother** — **Bruder**; (b) **th** — **d** — **t**, as: **thygatēr** (Gr.) — **daughter** — **Tochter**; **thyra** (Gr.) — **door** — **Türe**; **thēr** (Gr.) — **deer** — **Tier**; (c) **d** — **t** — **z, s, ss, sz**, as: **domus** — **timber** — **Zimmer**; **dakry** (Gr.) — **tear** — **Träne**; **sedere** — **sit** — **sitzen**; **edere** — **eat** — **essen**.

2. LABIALS: (a) **p** — **f** — **f**, as: **pugno** — **fight** — **kämpfen**; **pedem** — **foot** — **Fuß**; **piscis** — **fish** — **Fisch**; (b) **ph** (Lat. **f**) — **p** — **b**, as: **frater** — **brother** — **Bruder**; **fagus** — **beech** — **Buche**; (c) **b** — **p** — **f**, as: **cannabis** — **hemp** — **Hanf**.

3. PALATALS: (a) **k** (Lat. **c**) — **h** — **dh** (h if initial), as: **canis** — **hound** — **Hund**; **octo** — **eight** — **acht**; **noctem** — **night** — **Nacht**; (b) **kh** (Lat. **h**) — **g** — **g**, as: **hostis** — **guest** — **Gast**; **hortus** — **garden** — **Garten**; (c)

g — k (c) — *ch* (k if initial) as; *gelidus* — cold — *falt*; *genu* — knee — *Kn̄ie*; *jugum* — yoke — *Jo<sup>h</sup>*; *frango* — break — *bre<sup>h</sup>en*.

NOTE. — A further class of exceptions is caused by the fact that the mutes are sometimes protected from change by an adjacent consonant, as: *wander* — *wandern*; *stone* — *Stein*; *haste* — *Ha<sup>st</sup>*; *night* — *Nach<sup>t</sup>*; *craft* — *Ar<sup>st</sup>*. There are also other deviations from the strict rule too numerous to be mentioned here.

## 326.

## UMLAUT.

1. Umlaut is the modification of an accented *a*, *o*, *u*, *au* into *ä* (*e*), *ö*, *ü*, *äu* respectively, and is caused by the influence of an *i* or *j* in the following syllable.

REMARKS. — 1. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, with the diphthong *au*, are guttural or "back" vowels, and approach the sound of the following *i*, which is a palatal or "front" vowel.

2. This *i* or *j* appears in Old High German, but has disappeared — with some exceptions, as under (*a*'), (*e*'), (*f*'), below — in Modern German, and even in Middle High German. The following are a few examples of the origin and working of this law:

- (a) In the plur. of Substantives of the *Ze<sup>h</sup>n* Model (§ 21), the termination *e* is in O. H. G. *-i*, as: *Gä<sup>st</sup>re*, O. H. G. *gast-i*; *Ar<sup>st</sup>re*, O. H. G. *kraft-i*.

NOTE. — Not all substantives with Umlaut in the plural have this origin; a number of them (e.g., *Ze<sup>h</sup>n*), which originally belonged to declension-forms without an *-i*, having followed the analogy of the others.

- (b) In the plur. of the *Ze<sup>h</sup>n* Model (§ 36), the ending *-er* is in O. H. G. *-ir*, as: *Kä<sup>l</sup>ber*, O. H. G. *kalbir*.

- (c) In diminutives in *-chen* (orig. *-kîn*) and *-lein* (orig. *-lîn*), as: *Knä<sup>b</sup>chen*, *Knä<sup>b</sup>lein*, from *Knabe*.

- (d) In fem. appellatives in *-in*, as *Grä<sup>f</sup>in*, from *Graf*.

- (e) In subst. in *-nis*, as *Begrä<sup>b</sup>nis*, from *graben*.

- (f) In adjs. in *-ig*, as *gütig*, *thätig*, from *gut*, *That*.

- (g) In the impf. subj. of strong verbs, the final *-e* is in O. H. G. *-i*, as: *gä<sup>b</sup>e*, O. H. G. *gabi*.

3. Sometimes the Umlaut of *a* is represented by *e* instead of *ä*, as in *Engel* (angel), from *angil*, Gr. *angelos*; *Eltern*, parents, from *alt*.

4. Instances of Umlaut occur in English also, as in *mouse*, *mice*; *goose*, *geese*; *old*, *elder*; but they are comparatively rare, and the influence of Umlaut ceased in English at a very early period. In German on the contrary it is still an active principle.

## APPENDICES.

### A. SUBSTANTIVES OF **Maſer** MODEL WITH UMLAUT IN PLURAL.

(Lesson V, § 17.)

<i>Masculine.</i>		
Acker, field	Hafen, harbour	Nagel, nail
Bruder, brother	Laden, shop	Sattel, saddle
Hammer, hammer	Ofen, stove	Schnabel, beak
Schwager, brother-in-law	Schaden, damage	Vogel, bird
Vater, father		
	Apfel, apple	<i>Feminine.</i>
	Lammel, wether	Mutter, mother
Boden, bottom, loft	Handel, affair, quarrel	Tochter, daughter
Faden, thread	Mantel, cloak	
Garten, garden	Nabel, navel	<i>Neuter.</i>
Graben, ditch		Kloster, cloister

### B. MASCULINE MONOSYLLABLES OF **Sund** MODEL (WITHOUT UMLAUT).

(Less. VII, § 22, 1.)

Aal, eel	Kalk, lime	Quarz, quartz
Adler, eagle	Kork, cork	Taaf, tassel
Arm, arm	Kran, crane	Schuft, mean fellow
Bord, board, shelf	Lachs, salmon	Schuh, shoe
Born, well	Lac, lac	Spat, spar (mineral)
Docht, wick	Laut, sound	Staar, starling
Dofch, dagger	Luchs, lynx	Stahl, steel
Dom, dome, cathedral	Molch, salamander	Stoff, material
Drud, pressure, print	Mond, moon	Sund, strait, sound
Grad, degree	Mord, murder	Taft, taffeta
Gurt, girth	Ort, place	Tag, day
Hag, hedge	Park, park	Takt, tact, bar (in music)
Hall, sound	Path, path	Talt, tale
Halm, blade (of grass), etc.	Pau, peacock	Thran, train-oil
Hauk, breath	Pel, pole	Thron, throne
Horft, cyry	Puls, pulse	Torf, peat
Hort, refuge	Punt, point	Tufch, flourish of trumpets
Huf, hoof	Punfch, punch	Toll, inch
Sund, dog		

C. FEMININES OF *Sohn* MODEL.

(All with Umlaut; Less. VII, § 22, 3.)

Angst, anguish	Haut, skin	Nacht, night
Ausflucht, evasion	Kluft, cleft	Naht, seam
Axt, axe	Kraft, strength	Not, need
Bank, bench	Kuh, cow	Nuß, nut
Braut, bride	Kunst, art	Sau, sow
Brust, breast	Laus, louse	Schnur, string
Faust, fist	Luft, air	Stadt, town
Frucht, fruit	Luft, desire	Wand, wall
Gans, goose	Macht, power	Wurst, sausage
Gruft, grave	Magd, maid-servant	Zunft, guild
Hand, hand	Maus, mouse	Zusammenkunft, meeting

Also those ending in -nis and -fal.

## D. IRREGULAR FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

(Less. VII, § 22, 6.)

1. Der Kaplan, chaplain, pl. Kapläne.
2. The following foreign substs. with accent on last syll. follow the *Sund* Model: der Monolog', soliloquy; der Dialog', dialogue; also those in -or accented, as: der Humor', humour; der Major', major.
3. The following are mixed (*Schr* Model): der Alliga'tor, alligator; der Dämon, demon; der Kon'sul, consul; das Stereoskop', stereoscope; das Tele'skop', telescope; also those from the Lat. in -or unaccented, as: der Doktor, der Professor.
4. The following are weak or mixed (*Schr* Model): der Adamant', adamant; der Diamant' (or Temant), diamond; der Magnet', magnet.

E. NEUTER MONOSYLLABLES OF *Sund* MODEL.

(Less. VII, § 22, 5.)

Beet, flower-bed	Gift, poison	Moss, moss	Schilf, rush
Beil, hatchet	Gleis, rut	Netz, net	Schrot, shot
Bein, leg	Geft, handle	Öl, oil	Schwein, pig
Bier, beer	Horn, <sup>2</sup> horn	Pferd, horse	Seil, rope
Blech, tin-plate	Joch, yoke	Pfund, pound	Sieb, sieve
Blei, lead	Knie, knee	Pult, desk	Spiel, game
Boot, <sup>1</sup> boat	Kreuz, cross	Recht, right	Stück, piece
Brot, bread	Land, <sup>2</sup> land	Reh, roe-deer	Tau, cable
Ding, <sup>2</sup> thing	Licht, <sup>2</sup> light	Reich, empire	Teil, share
Erz, ore	Loos, lot	Riff, reef	Wehr, weir
Fell, hide	Ma(a)l, mole, mark; time	Roß, horse	Wert, work
Fest, festival	Maß, measure	Salz, salt	Wort, <sup>2</sup> word
Fett, fat	Moor, moor	Schaf, sheep	Zelt, tent
Floß, <sup>1</sup> raft		Schiff, ship	Zeug, stuff
			Ziel, goal

Also eight in **-r** :

Haar, hair	Jahr, year	Baar, pair	Tier, animal
Heer, army	Meer, sea	Rehr, reed	Ther, gate

<sup>1</sup> Also with Umlaut. <sup>2</sup> See also App. G.\***F. WEAK MASCULINES NOT ENDING IN -c.**

(Less. XIV, § 57, 2.)

Bär, bear	Bed, top	Majer, Caffir	Prinz, prince
Baie:, Bavarian	Gefell, fellow	Menich, man	Spag, sparrow
Bulgar', Bulgarian	Graf, count	Rehr, Moor	Steinmeg, stone-
Burich, lad	Hagestolz, old bachelor	Narr, fool	Thor, fool [masculine]
Christ, Christian	Held, hero	Nerv, nerve	Ungar, Hungarian
Fink, finch	Herr, master	Och, ox	Vorfahr, ancestor
Fürst, prince	Hirt, herdsman	Pommer, Pomeranian	

**G. SUBSTANTIVES OF MIXED DECLENSION.**

(Less. XV, §§ 61-63.)

**(a) Name Model (Masc.).**

Balke(n), beam	Glaube, faith	Schade, injury (pl. Schäden)
Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet	Haufe, heap	Schred(en), fright
Fels(en), rock	Name, name	Tropf(-en), drop
Friede, peace	Same, seed	Wille, will
Gebanke, thought		

Also one neut. : das Herz, G. des Herzens.

**(b) Nachbar Model.****1. Masculines:**

Bauer, peasant	Laurel, laurel	* Pantoffel, slipper	* Stiefel, boot
Gevatter, godfather	Nachbar, neighbour	Stachel, sting	Better, cousin
Kon'sul, consul			

**2. Neuters:**

Auge, eye	Ende, end
-----------	-----------

\* Also after Maier Model.

**(c) Ohr Model.****1. Masculines:**

On, ancestor	Mast, mast	Sporn, spur	Strauß, <sup>3</sup> ostrich
Forst, forest	Pfau, <sup>1</sup> peacock	(also Sporen)	Unterthan, <sup>2</sup> subject
Gau, <sup>1</sup> district	Schmerz, pain	Staat, state	zierat, ornament
Hufar, <sup>2</sup> hussar	See, lake	Strahl, beam	Zins, interest

**2. Neuters:**

Bett, bed	hemd, shirt	Ohr, ear
-----------	-------------	----------

<sup>1</sup> Also after Hund Model. <sup>2</sup> Also after Maier Model.

To these may be added the foreign substantives in App. D. \* See also App. G.\*

## G.\* DOUBLE PLURALS WITH DIFFERENT MEANINGS.

(Less. XV, § 64.)

daß Band :	Bänder, ribbons	Bande, ties
die Bank :	Banken, benches	Banken, commercial banks
daß Ding :	Dinge, things	Dinger, creatures
der Dorn :	Dorne or Dörner, thorns	Dörnen, thorns (collectively)
daß Gesicht :	Gesichte, faces	Gesichte, visions
daß Horn :	Hörner, horns	Hörne, kinds of horn
der Laden :	Läden, shops	Läden, shutters
daß Land :	Länder, separate countries <sup>1</sup>	Laube, provinces or districts
daß Licht :	Lichte, candles	Lichter, lights
der Mann :	Männer, men	Mannen, vassals
der Mond :	Monde, satellites	Monden, months (poetic)
der Ort :	Orter, (single) places <sup>2</sup>	Orte, places (collectively)
die Sau :	Sau, sows	Sauen, wild boars
der Strauß :	Strauße or Straußen, ostriches	Strauße, nosegays
daß Tuch :	Tücher, cloths	Tuche, kinds of cloth
daß Wort :	Wörter, single words	Worte, coherent words
der Zoll :	Zölle, inches	Zölle, tolls

<sup>1</sup> For instance — die Länder Europa's, the countries of Europe (individually considered); but die Deutschen Lande, the German districts or provinces; die Niederlande, the Netherlands. Poets use the latter form also in the sense of the former.

<sup>2</sup> For instance — in allen Örtern der Provinz, in all (inhabited) places of the province; but an allen Orten, in all places generally, everywhere.

H. NOUNS (*mostly abstract*) WHICH FORM THEIR PLURAL BY MEANS OF A DERIVATIVE OR OF A COMPOUND FORM — WHICH ITSELF IS USED BOTH IN THE SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

(Supp. Less. B., § 6. 3. Note.)

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
der Bau, building	die Bauten
(der Bau, burrow, etc.)	die Baue)
daß Bestreben, effort	die Bestrebungen
der Betrug, deceit, fraud	die Betrügereien
der Bund, alliance	die Bündnisse
der Dank, thanks	die Danksgungen
daß Erbe, inheritance	die Erbschaften
der Friede, treaty of peace	die Friedensverträge
die Gewalt, force, violence	die Gewaltthätigkeiten
die Gunst, favour	die Gunstbezeugungen
der Kummer, affliction, trouble	die Kümmernisse
daß Lob, praise	die Lobspriiche
der Mord, murder	die Mordthaten
der Rat, counsel, advice	die Rat schläge



*Singular.*

(der Rat, counsellor  
 der Raub, robbery  
 der Segen, blessing  
 der Streit, quarrel, dispute  
 der Tod, death, decease  
 das Unglück, misfortune  
 der Verbruß, vexation  
 der Zant, quarrel

*Plural.*

die Räte)  
 die Raubereien  
 die Segnungen  
 die Streitigkeiten  
 die Todesfälle  
 die Unglücksfälle  
 die Verdrüßlichkeiten  
 die Zänkereien

## I. EXCEPTIONS TO THE RULES ON GENDER.

(Less. XVII, XVIII, §§ 80, 89, 90.)

80. 1. (a) *Fem.*: die Mannsperſon, male-person. *Neut.*: all diminutives in *-chen* and *-lein*.

2. (a) *Neut.*: das Weib, woman; das Menſch, wench; das Frauenzimmer, woman; and all diminutives in *-chen* and *-lein*.

(b) Trees, etc.:

der Ahorn, maple	der Kohl, cabbage	das Moos, moss
der Apfel, apple	der Mohlrabi, Brussels-spouts	der Roggen, rye
das Ephen, ivy	das Korn, grain	der Zurgel, asparagus
das Geranium, geranium	der Lauch, leek	der Spinat, spinach
der Hafer, oats	der Lorbeer, laurel	der Tabak, tobacco
der Hanf, hemp	der Mais, maize	der Weizen, wheat
der Klee, clover		

Also Compounds, as: der Schwarzdorn, blackthorn; das Heißblatt, honey-suckle; das Vergißmeinnicht, forget-me-not; das Taufendſchön, daisy; and diminutives, as: das Veilchen, violet.

3. (a) Metals — *Masc.*: der Kobalt, cobalt; der Stahl, steel; der Zinnbad, pinch-beck; der Wißmut, bismuth; der Zinn, zinc. *Fem.*: die Platina, platina.

(b) Countries, etc. — *Masc.*: der Peloponneß, Peloponnesus; der Haag, the Hague; also those in *-gau*, as: Margau. *Fem.*: die Krim, Crimea; die Levante, the Levant; die Ukraine, the Ukraine; and those in *-ei*, *-au*, *-j*.

89. 1. (a) *Neut.*: das Meßing, brass.

(b) *Feminines* in *-el*:

Aſchel, shoulder	Diſtel, thistle	Gurgel, throat	Mangel, mangle
Ampel, lamp	Droſſel, thrush	Gummel, humble- bee	Niſtel, mistletoe
Amsel, black-bird	Eiſel, acorn		Muſchel, shell
Angel, fish-hook	Faſel, fable	Infel, island	Nadel, needle
Bibel, bible	Faſel, torch	Kanzel, pulpit	Reißel, nettle
Budel, boss (of a shield)	Feiſel, fetter	Kartoffel, potato	Orgel, organ
	Fibel, spelling-book	Korvel, leash; brace (of dogs)	Pappel, poplar
Cymbel, cymbal	Formel, formula		Parabel, parable
Dattel, date	Gabel, fork	Kugel, ball	Primel, primrose
Deiſchel, carriage- pole	Geißel, scourge	Kuppel, cupola	Raſſel, rasp
	Gondel, gondola	Mandel, almond	Regel, rule

Munzel, wrinkle	Semmel, roll of bread	Tafel, table	Waffel, waffle
Schachtel, band-box	Sichel, sickle	Troddel, tassel	Windel, swaddling-
Schaufel, shovel	Spindel, spindle	Trommel, drum	cloth
Schautel, swing	Stajfel, step of a	Trüffel, truffle	Wurzel, root
Schindel, shingle	ladder	Wachtel, quail	Zwiebel, onion
Schüffel, dish	Stoppel, stubble		

## In -er :

Ader, vein	Folter, rack	Marter, torture	Steuer, tax
Aster, aster	Halfter, halter	Mauer, wall	Tochter, daughter
Müſter, oyster	Kammer, chamber	Mutter, mother	Trauer, mourning
Blatter, blister	Kelter, wine-press	Natter, adder	Veſper, even-tide,
Butter, butter	Kiefer, pine	Nummer, number	vespers
Ceder, cedar	Klammer, cramp-iron	Oper, opera	Wimper, eyelash
Dauer, duration	Klapper, rattle	Otter, otter	Ziffer, cipher
Elſter, magpie	Lauer, lurking-place	Rüſter, elm	Zither, guitar
Faſer, fibre	Leber, liver	Scheuer, barn	
Feder, feather, pen	Leier, lyre	Schleuder, sling	
Feier, celebration	Leiter, ladder	Schulter, shoulder	

NOTE. — The names of rivers ending in **-er** or **-el** are also feminine, e. g. : die Oder, die Weſer, die Moſel.

## Neuters in -el :

Bündel, bundle	Kapitel, chapter	Rudel, herd, flock	Siegel, seal
Dunkel, darkness	Mittel, means	Scharmügel, skirmish	Übel, evil
Exempel, example	Orakel, oracle	Segel, sail	Wiesel, weasel

## In -en :

Almoſen, alms	Füllen, colt	Laken, sheet (bed-	Wappen, coat-of-
Beſen, basin	Küſſen, cushion	clothes)	arms
Eiſen, iron		Leben, ſief	Zeichen, token

And all infinitives when used as substantives.

## In -er :

Abenteuer, adventure	Gatter, grate, railing	Meſſer, knife	Reepter or Zepter, sceptre
Alter, age	Gitter, trellis	Nieder, bodice	Silber, silver
Bauer, bird-cage	Kloſter, cloister	Opfer, sacrifice	Steuer, helm
Eiter, pus	Kupfer, copper	Pflaſter, plaster	Theater, theatre
Euter, udder	Lager, couch	Polſter, cushion	Ufer, shore
Fenſter, window	Laſter, vice	Pulver, powder	Waſſer, water
Feuer, fire	Leder, leather	Regiſter, register,	Wetter, weather
Fieber, fever	Luder, carrion	index	Wunder, wonder
Luder, load	Maſter, a grain mea-	Ruder, oar	Zimmer, apartment
Nutter, fodder	ſure	Schauer, shower	

NOTE. — Münſter, 'minster,' occurs both as *masculine* — from its present form — and as *neuter* — from its derivation from the Latin *monasterium*.

(c) *Feminines* :

Macht, proscription	Bank, bench	Brunſt, conflagration	Burg, castle
Mart, manner, kind	Bai, bay	Brut, brood	Fahrt, expedition
Paſſen, path	Braut, bride	Bucht, bay	Fucht, flight

Flur, field	Rraft, strength	Œham, shame	That, deed
Flut, flood	Ruh, cow	Œhar, host, troop	Thür, door
Form, form	Rur, (obsolete), elec- tion	Œbau, show	Tracht, load, cos- tume
Fracht, freight		Œheu, dread	
Frau, woman	Raft, load	Œicht, layer, stratum	Trift, pasturage
Frift, time	Rift, cunning	Œlacht, battle	Uhr, watch
Furcht, fear	Rart, boundary	Œlucht, ravine	Wacht, guard
Furt, ford	Rarich, marsh, fen	Œmach, disgrace	Wahl, choice
Geiß, goat	Rauth, excise	Œrift, writing	Wehr, defence
Gicht, gout	Rilch, milk	Œuld, guilt, debt	Welt, world
Gier, eagerness	Raht, seam	Œwulst, swelling	Wucht, bulk, heavy weight
Glut, glow	Rull, zero	Œee, sea	
Gunft, favour	Pein, torment	Œicht, sight	Wulst, pad
Gaſt, custody	Pſicht, duty	Œyren, chaff	Wut, rage
Gaſt, haste	Poſt, post	Œur, trace	Zahl, number
Guld, grace	Pracht, splendour	Œatt, stead, place	Zeit, time
Gut, guard	Qual, torment	Œirn, brow	Zier, ornament
Jagd, chase	Raſt, rest	Œren, litter [sion	Zucht, discipline
Roft, food	Œaat, seed	Œucht, longing, pas-	Zunft, guild

Also those in App. C.

*Neuters :*

Maß, carrion	Glück, luck	Leid, suffering	Œchild, sign-board
Amt, office	Gold, gold	Lied, song	Œloß, lock ; cas- tle
Bad, bath	Grab, grave	Lob, praise	
Band, ribbon	Gras, grass	Loch, hole	Œmalz, grease, lard
Bett, bed	Gut, property, estate	Lohn, wages	
Bild, picture	Harz, resin	Lot, plumb-line	Œwert, sword
Blatt, leaf	Haupt, head	Mahl, meal, repast	Œift, foundation
Blut, blood	Haus, house	Mals, malt	Œrob, straw
Buch, book	Heil, prosperity	Mart, marrow	Thal, valley
Bund, bundle	Hemd, shirt	Maul, mouth (of beasts)	Tuch, cloth
Dach, roof	Herz, heart	Mehl, flour	Vieh, cattle
Ding, thing	Heu, hay	Meiſch, wench	Volk, nation
Dorf, village	Hirn, brain	Mus, pap, jam	Wachs, wax
Ei, egg	Holz, wood	Neſt, nest	Wammſ, jacket, vest
Eis, ice	Huhn, fowl	Obſt, fruit	Weh, woe
Fach, compartment	Kalb, calf	Ohr, ear	Weib, woman
Faß, cask	Kind, child	Pech, pitch	Werg, tow
Feld, field	Kinn, chin	Pfand, pledge	Wild, game
Fleiſch, flesh	Kleid, garment	Rad, wheel	Wohl, wellbeing
Garn, yarn	Korn, corn	Reis, twig	Wort, word
Geld, money	Kraut, herb	Reiß, ream	Wrad, wreck
Glaß, glass	Lamm, lamb	Rind, head of cattle	Zelt, tent
Gleis, groove, rut	Land, land	Œweit, log of wood	Zinn, tin
Glieb, limb	Laub, foliage		

Also those in App. E.

2. (a) **Der Hornung**, February; **das Fettdaſt**, seal.(b) **Der Abend**, evening; **das Duſend**, dozen.

(c) *Masculines*:

Buchstabe, letter of the alphabet	Glaube, faith	Wille, will	Löwe, lion
Friede, peace	Haufe, heap	Affe, monkey	Rabe, raven
Funke, spark	Name, name	Tracht, dragon	Käse, cheese
Gedante, thought	Same, seed	Falke, falcon	
	Schade, injury	Hase, hare	

And names of males, as: *der Bote*, messenger; *der Knabe*, boy, etc.

*Neuters*: Auge, eye; Ende, end; Erbe, inheritance.

(e) *Der Katholik*, Catholic.

3. (b) *Masculines*: Irrtum, error; Reichthum, wealth.

(c) *Feminines in -niß*:

*Bedrängniß, distress	Erlaubniß, permission	*Verdamniß, damnation
*Befugniß, authority	Ersparniß, savings	Verberbniß, corruption (is also used as neuter)
Bestimmerniß, sorrow	Fäulniß, putrefaction	Verfäumniß, neglect,
Beforgniß, apprehension	*Förderniß, furtherance	omission
Betrübniß, affliction	Finsterniß, darkness	Wildniß, wilderness
Bewandtniß, conjuncture	Kenntniß, knowledge	
Empfängniß, conception	*Schreckniß, terror	
Erkenntniß, cognition	Trockniß, drought	

\* Also neuter.

*Feminines in -jal*: Drangsal, tribulation; Mühsal, trouble; Trübsal, affliction.

*Masculine in -jel*: Stöpsel, stopper, etc.

**90.** 4. *Feminine* compounds of *Mut*: Anmut, grace; Demut, humility; Großmut, generosity; Langmut, long-suffering; Sanftmut, meekness; Schwermut, melancholy Wehmut, sorrowfulness.

## J. NOUNS WHICH HAVE A DOUBLE GENDER.

(Less. XVIII, § 91.)

der Band (pl. Bände), volumes	das Band (pl. Bänder), ribbon
der Bund (pl. Bünde), confederacy	das Bund (pl. Bünde), bundle
der Bauer (pl. Bauern), peasant	das Bauer, cage
der Chor (pl. Chöre), chorus	das Chor (pl. Chöre), choir
der Erbe (pl. Erben), heir	das Erbe, inheritance
die Erkenntniß, intuition	das Erkenntniß, verdict
der Geißel, hostage	die Geißel, scourge
die Gift (Mitgift), dowry	das Gift, poison
der Harz, Hartz mountains	das Harz, resin
der Heide (pl. Heiden), heathen	die Heide, heath
der Hut (pl. Hüte), hat	die Hut, heed, guard
der Kiefer, jaw	die Kiefer (pl. Kiefern), pine-tree
der Kunde, customer	die Kunde, knowledge, tidings
der Leiter, guide	die Leiter, ladder
der Mangel, want	die Mangel, mangle
das Mark, marrow	die Mark (pl. Marten), border-land
der Messer, measurer, surveyor	das Messer, knife
der Reis, rice	das Reis (pl. Reiser), twig

der Schild (pl. Schilde), shield	das Schild (pl. Schilder), sign-board
der See (pl. Seen), lake	die See, sea, ocean
der Sprosse, offspring	die Sprosse, step (in a ladder)
die Steuer, tax, duty	das Steuer, helm
der Stift, pencil, tack	das Stift, pious foundation
der Teil, part	das Teil, share, portion
der Thor (pl. Thoren), fool	das Thor (pl. Thore), gate
der Verdienst, gain	das Verdienst, merit

## K. MONOSYLLABIC ADJECTIVES WITHOUT UMLAUT.

(Less. XXV, § 125.)

barsch, harsh	hohl, hollow	platt, flat	schroff, rugged
brav, good	hold, favourable	plump, clumsy	starr, stiff
bunt, variegated	tahl, bald	rasch, quick	stolz, proud
bumpf, dull (said of sound)	starr, stinging	roh, raw	straff, tight, stretched
fahl, fallow	starr, tight	rund, round	stumpf, blunt
falsch, false	lahm, lame	sacht, gentle, low	toll, mad
flach, flat	lah, tired	sanft, soft	voll, full
fröh, joyful	matt, wearied	satt, satiated	wahr, true
glatt, smooth	morisch, rotten	schlaff, slack	zäh, tame
	nackt, naked	schlank, slender	

The practice varies with bang or bange, afraid; blaß, pale; fromm, pious; gesund, sound; klar, clear; naß, wet; zart, tender.

## L. STRONG VERBS NOT GIVEN IN THE LISTS.

(Less. XXXII, § 192. — Rare forms in [ ].)

1. bingen (W.), hire	—	gebungen
2. gähren (W.), ferment	gor	gegoren
3. gebären, <sup>1</sup> bear, bring forth	gebar	geboren
4. tseihen (W.), chide, scold	tiff	getiffen
5. flieben (W.), split, cleave	flab	gefloben
6. tneipen <sup>2</sup> (W.), pinch	tnipp	geknippen
7. pflegen, <sup>3</sup> practise	{ pflog }	gepflogen
	{ pflag }	
8. saugen <sup>4</sup> (W.), suck	sog	gesogen
9. schinden (W.), flay	{ schand }	geschunden
	{ schund }	
10. schleifen (W.), fray	schliß	geschliffen
11. schnauben (W.), snort	schnob	geschnoben
12. schrauben (W.), screw	schrob	geschroben
13. schwären, <sup>5</sup> fester	{ schwor }	geschworen
	{ schwur }	
14. spleißen (W.), split	spieß	gespiffen
15. stecken <sup>6</sup> (W. N.), stick, be stuck	stak	[gestochen]
16. streuen (W. N.), scatter	stob	gestoben
17. stinken, stink	stank	gestunken

<sup>1</sup> gebierst, etc. <sup>2</sup> Rarely strong. <sup>3</sup> Weak in other meanings. <sup>4</sup> säugst, säugt, or faugst, faugt. <sup>5</sup> schwiert. <sup>6</sup> stidst, etc.; generally weak.

## EXERCISES IN COMPOSITION.

EXPLANATIONS.—1. References are to the §.

2. Words in *Italics* are not to be translated.

3. Words connected by  $\frown$ , if followed by a note, are included in that note; otherwise such connected words are to be rendered by a single word in German.

4. The gender is not given, where it is according to rule.

I. One may<sup>1</sup> say of the metaphysicians<sup>2</sup> what Scaliger said of the natives<sup>3</sup> of the Basque<sup>4</sup> Provinces<sup>5</sup>: “I am told<sup>6</sup> that they understand each $\frown$ other, but I do not believe it.”

<sup>1</sup> ‘can.’ <sup>2</sup> Metaphysiker. <sup>3</sup> der Eingeborene. <sup>4</sup> baskisch. <sup>5</sup> Provinz, *f.*  
<sup>6</sup> 113, 2.

II. “A friend of mine,”<sup>1</sup> says Lord Erskine, “suffered from<sup>2</sup> continual<sup>3</sup> sleeplessness.<sup>4</sup> Various<sup>5</sup> means<sup>6</sup> were tried<sup>7</sup> to $\frown$ send $\frown$ him $\frown$ to $\frown$ sleep—but in $\frown$ vain.<sup>9</sup> At $\frown$ last his physicians resorted<sup>10</sup> to an experiment<sup>11</sup> which succeeded perfectly.<sup>12</sup> They dressed<sup>13</sup> him *in* a watchman’s $\frown$ coat,<sup>14</sup> put<sup>15</sup> a lantern into his<sup>16</sup> hand, placed<sup>17</sup> him in a sentry-box,<sup>18</sup> and—he was asleep<sup>19</sup> in ten minutes.”

<sup>1</sup> 119, 3 (c). <sup>2</sup> an + dat. <sup>3</sup> fortwährend. <sup>4</sup> Schlaflosigkeit. <sup>5</sup> verschieden. <sup>6</sup> Mittel, *n.* <sup>7</sup> versuchen. <sup>8</sup> ihn einzuschläfern. <sup>9</sup> vergebens. <sup>10</sup> verfallen auf + acc. <sup>11</sup> Versuch, *m.* <sup>12</sup> vollständig. <sup>13</sup> anziehen + dat. of pers. and acc. of thing. <sup>14</sup> Nachtwächterfittel, *m.* <sup>15</sup> stecken. <sup>16</sup> 44, 6 (b). <sup>17</sup> stellen. <sup>18</sup> Wächthäuschen. <sup>19</sup> eingeschlafen.

III. The great Goethe was not particularly<sup>1</sup> fond<sup>2</sup> of music. When a pianist<sup>3</sup> once, at a Court<sup>4</sup> concert in Weimar, was in $\frown$ the $\frown$ middle<sup>5</sup> of a very long sonata,<sup>6</sup> the poet suddenly<sup>7</sup> rose<sup>8</sup> up and, to the horror<sup>9</sup> of the assembled<sup>10</sup> ladies and gentlemen, exclaimed<sup>11</sup>: “If it lasts<sup>12</sup> three minutes longer, I shall confess<sup>13</sup> everything.”

<sup>1</sup> besondrer, *adj.* <sup>2</sup> Freund. <sup>3</sup> Klavierpieler. <sup>4</sup> Hof, *m.*; use compound word. <sup>5</sup> mitten in. <sup>6</sup> Sonate, *f.* <sup>7</sup> plötzlich. <sup>8</sup> stehen. <sup>9</sup> Schrecken, *m.* <sup>10</sup> versammeln. <sup>11</sup> rufen. <sup>12</sup> dauern. <sup>13</sup> gestehen.

IV. In the first piece<sup>1</sup> Theodore Hook wrote for the stage,<sup>2</sup> a traveller<sup>3</sup> comes up to<sup>4</sup> the door of an inn,<sup>5</sup> and says: "Excuse *me*, my friend, are you the master of this house?" — "Yes, sir," is<sup>6</sup> the reply; "my wife has been<sup>7</sup> dead these three weeks."

<sup>1</sup> Stück, *n.* <sup>2</sup> Bühne. <sup>3</sup> der Reisende. <sup>4</sup> auf. . zu, 224, 4. <sup>5</sup> Gasthaus. <sup>6</sup> lautet. <sup>7</sup> 257, 4, Note. <sup>8</sup> 'for the last three weeks'; 46.

V. "Ven you're a married *man*, Samivel," said old<sup>1</sup> Weller, "you'll understand a good many things<sup>2</sup> as<sup>3</sup> you don't understand now; but vether it's worth while<sup>4</sup> going through<sup>5</sup> so much to learn so little, as the charity boy<sup>6</sup> said ven he got to the end of<sup>7</sup> the alphabet, is a matter o' taste.<sup>8</sup> I rayther think it isn't.<sup>9</sup>"

<sup>1</sup> a proper name preceded by an adj. takes the art. <sup>2</sup> Vieles. <sup>3</sup> 'that,' 96, 5. <sup>4</sup> der Mühe wert. <sup>5</sup> durchmachen. <sup>6</sup> Armenhülfer. <sup>7</sup> fertig sein mit. <sup>8</sup> Geschmacksache. <sup>9</sup> 'I scarcely think (glauben) it.'

VI. George Selwyn's morbid<sup>1</sup> passion<sup>2</sup> for public executions<sup>3</sup> and similar<sup>4</sup> horrors<sup>5</sup> was notorious.<sup>6</sup> He paid a visit to Lord Holland while the latter lay on his<sup>7</sup> deathbed.<sup>8</sup> When his lordship<sup>9</sup> was told<sup>10</sup> that Mr. Selwyn had called,<sup>11</sup> he said: "Should he come again, please bring him up.<sup>12</sup> If I am still alive<sup>13</sup> I shall be happy<sup>14</sup> to see him. If I am dead he will be happy to see me."

<sup>1</sup> fränkhaft. <sup>2</sup> Leidenschaft. <sup>3</sup> Hinrichtung. <sup>4</sup> ähnlich. <sup>5</sup> Gräuel, *m.* <sup>6</sup> allgemein bekannt. <sup>7</sup> 44, 6 (*a*). <sup>8</sup> Sterbebett. <sup>9</sup> Se. Gnaden. <sup>10</sup> benachrichtigen. <sup>11</sup> 'been there.' <sup>12</sup> 210, 3, (*b*). <sup>13</sup> am Leben. <sup>14</sup> sich freuen.

VII. At<sup>1</sup> the time when Napoleon the Third lived as an exile<sup>2</sup> in London, he was always a welcome guest at<sup>3</sup> Lady Blessington's, at<sup>4</sup> Gore House. Very soon after his return<sup>5</sup>

to Paris, while his political<sup>6</sup> prospects<sup>7</sup> were still rather<sup>8</sup> doubtful,<sup>9</sup> her ladyship<sup>10</sup> paid a visit to<sup>11</sup> that capital, and met<sup>12</sup> the Prince driving<sup>13</sup> in the Bois de Boulogne. It was an embarrassing<sup>14</sup> encounter,<sup>15</sup> for the future<sup>16</sup> Emperor of the French had shown<sup>17</sup> himself anything but<sup>18</sup> grateful for her ladyship's<sup>10</sup> courtesy.<sup>19</sup> He saluted<sup>20</sup> her, however,<sup>21</sup> with forced politeness,<sup>22</sup> and asked: "Countess,<sup>23</sup> shall you stay long in Paris?" — "I really<sup>24</sup> cannot say," answered Lady Blessington, with a bewitching<sup>25</sup> smile; "and you?"

<sup>1</sup> 227, (b), 2. <sup>2</sup> der Verbannte. <sup>3</sup> bei. <sup>4</sup> in. <sup>5</sup> Rückkehr, f. <sup>6</sup> politisch. <sup>7</sup> Aussicht, f. <sup>8</sup> ziemlich. <sup>9</sup> zweifelhaft. <sup>10</sup> 'the lady.' <sup>11</sup> besuchen. <sup>12</sup> treffen (trans.). <sup>13</sup> auf einer Spazierfahrt. <sup>14</sup> verlegen. <sup>15</sup> Zusammentreffen. <sup>16</sup> zukünftig. <sup>17</sup> erweisen. <sup>18</sup> nichts weniger als. <sup>19</sup> Freundlichkeit. <sup>20</sup> grüßen. <sup>21</sup> indessen. <sup>22</sup> Höflichkeit. <sup>23</sup> gnädige Gräfin. <sup>24</sup> wirklich. <sup>25</sup> bezaubernd.

VIII. Talleyrand was bored<sup>1</sup> for<sup>2</sup> his<sup>3</sup> autograph<sup>4</sup> by a dull<sup>5</sup> English nobleman.<sup>6</sup> At last<sup>7</sup> he sent him the following invitation<sup>8</sup>: "Dear Lord, — *Will you* honour<sup>9</sup> me with your company<sup>10</sup> next Wednesday evening, at eight o'clock. I have invited a number<sup>11</sup> of exceedingly clever<sup>12</sup> people, and I do not like<sup>13</sup> to be the only fool<sup>14</sup> among them."

<sup>1</sup> zum Überdruß bestürmen. <sup>2</sup> um. <sup>3</sup> 'an.' <sup>4</sup> Autograph, n. <sup>5</sup> einfältig. <sup>6</sup> Edelmann. <sup>7</sup> endlich. <sup>8</sup> Einladung. <sup>9</sup> beehren, imper. <sup>10</sup> Gegenwart (presence). <sup>11</sup> Anzahl, f. <sup>12</sup> geistreich. <sup>13</sup> gerne mögen. <sup>14</sup> Dummkopf.

XI. At a dinner-party<sup>1</sup> in Paris, a dull<sup>2</sup> and ugly<sup>3</sup> baron<sup>4</sup> sat between Madame de Staël and Madame Récamier (the acknowledged belle<sup>5</sup> of the day), and whispered<sup>6</sup> to the former: "Am I not fortunate to be<sup>7</sup> sitting between beauty and genius<sup>8</sup>?" — "Not so very fortunate," replied the offended authoress,<sup>9</sup> "for you possess<sup>10</sup> neither the one nor the other!"

<sup>1</sup> Diner (Fr.), n. <sup>2</sup> dumm. <sup>3</sup> häßlich. <sup>4</sup> Baron'. <sup>5</sup> Schönheit. <sup>6</sup> ins Ohr flüstern. <sup>7</sup> sich befinden. <sup>8</sup> Genie, n. <sup>9</sup> Schriftstellerin. <sup>10</sup> besitzen.



**X.** When the dramatist Gilbert was one day descending<sup>1</sup> in the greatest hurry<sup>2</sup> the steps<sup>3</sup> fronting<sup>4</sup> the Savage Club,<sup>5</sup> a stranger, in a state<sup>6</sup> of excitement<sup>7</sup> which defied<sup>8</sup> regular<sup>9</sup> construction,<sup>10</sup> addressed him thus: "Excuse *me*, have you seen a gentleman with one eye of the name of<sup>11</sup> X. —?" Gilbert answered<sup>12</sup> this question with another: "Stop<sup>13</sup> a moment. What's the name of his other eye?"

<sup>1</sup> heruntersteigen. <sup>2</sup> Eile, *f.* <sup>3</sup> Treppe, *sing.* <sup>4</sup> vor. <sup>5</sup> use the Engl. words. <sup>6</sup> Zustand, *m.* <sup>7</sup> Aufrregung. <sup>8</sup> spotten + *gen.* <sup>9</sup> regelrecht. <sup>10</sup> Wortfolge. <sup>11</sup> Namens. <sup>12</sup> beantworten. <sup>13</sup> erlauben.

**XI.** When Charles Lamb was still a clerk<sup>1</sup> in the India-House,<sup>2</sup> he was one day rebuked<sup>3</sup> as follows<sup>4</sup> by a superior<sup>5</sup>: "I have remarked, Mr. Lamb, that you always come to<sup>6</sup> the office<sup>7</sup> very late." — "That's true, to be sure," answered Elia; "but you must not forget that I always go away very early." Of course<sup>9</sup> such an explanation<sup>10</sup> was more than enough.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Schreiber; 44, 5. <sup>2</sup> use the Engl. words. <sup>3</sup> zur Rede stellen. <sup>4</sup> folgendermaßen. <sup>5</sup> der Vorgelesene. <sup>6</sup> auf. <sup>7</sup> Bureau, *n.* <sup>8</sup> wohl (after the verb 'is'). <sup>9</sup> natürlich. <sup>10</sup> Erklärung. <sup>11</sup> hinreichend.

**XII.** I never in my life committed<sup>1</sup> more than one *act of folly*,<sup>2</sup> said Rulhière one day in the presence of Talleyrand. "But when will it end<sup>3</sup>?" inquired the latter.

<sup>1</sup> begehen, *trans.* <sup>2</sup> Torheit. <sup>3</sup> enden.

**XIII.** While Sheridan was staying<sup>1</sup> at the country-house<sup>2</sup> of a friend, he was one morning asked<sup>3</sup> by a lady to accompany her on a walk. The lady was neither witty nor beautiful, and the author of the 'School for Scandal'<sup>4</sup> was at a loss<sup>5</sup> for an excuse, until he luckily<sup>6</sup> discovered and announced<sup>7</sup> to her that it was raining. His disappointed<sup>8</sup> persecutress<sup>9</sup>

retired,<sup>10</sup> but shortly<sup>11</sup> came back to announce<sup>12</sup> that the weather had cleared up.<sup>13</sup> "So it has,<sup>14</sup> madam,<sup>15</sup>" said Sheridan, driven<sup>16</sup> to despair<sup>17</sup>; "but it has only<sup>18</sup> cleared up enough for one — not yet for two."

<sup>1</sup> auf Besuch sein. <sup>2</sup> Landhaus. <sup>3</sup> bitten. <sup>4</sup> Pflerschule. <sup>5</sup> verlegen um. <sup>6</sup> glücklicherweise. <sup>7</sup> mittheilen + dat. <sup>8</sup> in ihren Erwartungen (expectations) getäuscht; 283, 4. <sup>9</sup> Verfolgerin. <sup>10</sup> sich zurückziehen. <sup>11</sup> bald. <sup>12</sup> mit der Nachricht. <sup>13</sup> sich auflären. <sup>14</sup> allerdings. <sup>15</sup> gnädige Frau. <sup>16</sup> 299. <sup>17</sup> Verzweiflung; use def. art. <sup>18</sup> höchstens.

XIV. Foote, being annoyed<sup>1</sup> one day by an itinerant<sup>2</sup> fiddler,<sup>3</sup> who produced<sup>4</sup> harsh<sup>5</sup> discords<sup>6</sup> under his window, threw him down a coin<sup>7</sup> and bade him be gone,<sup>8</sup> as one scraper<sup>9</sup> at<sup>10</sup> a door was quite sufficient.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> belästigen; 284. I, (a). <sup>2</sup> herumziehend. <sup>3</sup> Geigenspieler. <sup>4</sup> hervorbringen. <sup>5</sup> schrill. <sup>6</sup> Mißton, m. <sup>7</sup> Geldstück, n. <sup>8</sup> sich aus dem Staube machen. <sup>9</sup> Kratzer. <sup>10</sup> an. <sup>11</sup> genug.

XV. A certain nobleman was detected<sup>1</sup> trying<sup>2</sup> to cheat<sup>3</sup> at<sup>4</sup> cards,<sup>5</sup> and turned<sup>6</sup> out of the house with the threat<sup>7</sup> that he should be thrown out of the window if he came again. He related his misfortune<sup>8</sup> to Talleyrand, protested<sup>9</sup> his innocence,<sup>10</sup> and asked<sup>11</sup> him at the same time<sup>12</sup> for<sup>13</sup> advice.<sup>14</sup> "Well, my dear friend, I advise you to play in future<sup>15</sup> only on the ground floor.<sup>16</sup>"

<sup>1</sup> entdecken. <sup>2</sup> "in the attempt." <sup>3</sup> betrügen. <sup>4</sup> im. <sup>5</sup> Kartenspiel, n. <sup>6</sup> weisen. <sup>7</sup> Drohung. <sup>8</sup> Mißgeschick, n. <sup>9</sup> beteuern. <sup>10</sup> Unschuld, f. <sup>11</sup> bitten. <sup>12</sup> zugleich. <sup>13</sup> um. <sup>14</sup> Rat, m. <sup>15</sup> künftig. <sup>16</sup> zu ebener Erde.

XVI. A barrister<sup>1</sup> entered<sup>2</sup> the court<sup>3</sup> one morning with his wig<sup>4</sup> stuck quite on one side. Not being aware<sup>5</sup> how ridiculous<sup>6</sup> he looked,<sup>7</sup> he was surprised<sup>8</sup> at<sup>9</sup> the observations<sup>10</sup> made<sup>11</sup> upon it,<sup>12</sup> and at length<sup>13</sup> he asked Curran: "Do

you see anything ridiculous<sup>14</sup> in this wig, Mr. Curran?" —  
 "Nothing except the head," was the consolatory<sup>15</sup> answer.

<sup>1</sup> Advokat'. <sup>2</sup> treten in + acc. <sup>3</sup> Gerichtssaal, *m.* <sup>4</sup> Ferkide, *f.* <sup>5</sup> wissen. 284, 1 (*b*). <sup>6</sup> lächerlich. <sup>7</sup> aussehen. <sup>8</sup> sich wundern. <sup>9</sup> über + acc. <sup>10</sup> Bemerkung. <sup>11</sup> 290, 2 (*b*). <sup>12</sup> darüber. <sup>13</sup> endlich. <sup>14</sup> 122, 11. <sup>15</sup> tröstlich.

**XVII.** After a duel<sup>1</sup> with young O'Connell, Lord Alvanley gave a guinea<sup>2</sup> to the coachman<sup>3</sup> who had driven him to and from the *scene of* the encounter.<sup>4</sup> Surprised at<sup>5</sup> the largeness of the sum,<sup>6</sup> the man said: "My lord,<sup>7</sup> I only took you to<sup>8</sup> ——" Alvanley interrupted him with the words: "My friend, the guinea is for bringing<sup>9</sup> me back, not for taking<sup>10</sup> me."

<sup>1</sup> Duell', *n.* <sup>2</sup> Guinee', *f.* <sup>3</sup> Kutscher; 45, Rule 2. <sup>4</sup> "to the *scene of* the encounter (*Stellidchein, n*) and from there back." <sup>5</sup> durch. <sup>6</sup> "large sum (*Summe*)." <sup>7</sup> gnädiger Herr. <sup>8</sup> ich habe Sie ja nur hin—. <sup>9</sup> 277. <sup>10</sup> hinnehmen, use the perf.

**XVIII.** A gentleman, who had been worsted<sup>1</sup> in a dispute<sup>2</sup> with Porson, lost his temper.<sup>3</sup> "Professor,<sup>4</sup>" said he, "my opinion<sup>5</sup> of you is most<sup>6</sup> contemptible."<sup>7</sup> — "Sir," returned the great Grecian,<sup>8</sup> "I never yet met<sup>9</sup> with any<sup>10</sup> of your opinions that was<sup>11</sup> not contemptible."

<sup>1</sup> den Kürzern ziehen. <sup>2</sup> Disputation. <sup>3</sup> die Geduld. <sup>4</sup> Herr Professor. <sup>5</sup> Meinung. <sup>6</sup> 127, 2. <sup>7</sup> verächtlich. <sup>8</sup> Grieche. <sup>9</sup> vorkommen (impers. + dat. of pers.). <sup>10</sup> ein (nom.). <sup>11</sup> plupf. subj.; 268, 4.

**XIX.** The English,<sup>1</sup> says Sydney Smith, are a calm,<sup>2</sup> reflecting<sup>3</sup> people; they are ready to give time and money as soon as they are convinced<sup>4</sup> of a thing; but they love dates,<sup>5</sup> names, and certificates.<sup>6</sup> In the midst of the most heartrending<sup>7</sup> narratives,<sup>8</sup> John Bull requires<sup>9</sup> the day<sup>10</sup> of the month, the year<sup>11</sup> of our Lord, the name of the parish,<sup>12</sup>

and the countersign<sup>13</sup> of three or four respectable<sup>14</sup> householders.<sup>15</sup> As soon as these affecting<sup>16</sup> circumstances<sup>17</sup> have been stated,<sup>18</sup> he can no longer hold out,<sup>19</sup> but<sup>20</sup> gives way<sup>21</sup> to his natural kindness — puffs,<sup>22</sup> blubbers,<sup>23</sup> and subscribes.

<sup>1</sup> Engländer. <sup>2</sup> ruhig. <sup>3</sup> überse'gend. <sup>4</sup> überzeu'gen. <sup>5</sup> Zahl, *f.*  
<sup>6</sup> Beglaubigungsschein, *m.* <sup>7</sup> herzerreißend. <sup>8</sup> Erzählung. <sup>9</sup> verlangen.  
<sup>10</sup> Datum. <sup>11</sup> Jahreszahl. <sup>12</sup> Kirchspiel, *n.* <sup>13</sup> Unterschrift, *f.* <sup>14</sup> angesehen.  
<sup>15</sup> Hausherr. <sup>16</sup> rührend. <sup>17</sup> Umstand, *m.* <sup>18</sup> angeben. <sup>19</sup> es aushalten.  
<sup>20</sup> 236. 1, Rem. 1. <sup>21</sup> freien Lauf lassen. <sup>22</sup> schmauchen. <sup>23</sup> schluchzen.

XX. A young poet once came to Piron to read<sup>1</sup> him a couple of new sonnets<sup>2</sup> written<sup>3</sup> by him, and ask him which he preferred.<sup>4</sup> The moment<sup>5</sup> he had finished the first, Piron said hastily<sup>6</sup>: "I prefer the other," and positively<sup>7</sup> refused<sup>8</sup> to listen even<sup>9</sup> to a line<sup>10</sup> of it.

<sup>1</sup> vorlesen. <sup>2</sup> Sonnett', *n.* <sup>3</sup> verfaßt; 290, 2 (*b*). <sup>4</sup> vorziehen. <sup>5</sup> Sobald . . . nur. <sup>6</sup> haßig. <sup>7</sup> durchaus. <sup>8</sup> sich weigern. <sup>9</sup> auch nur. <sup>10</sup> Zeile.

XXI. Wewitzer, the well-known actor<sup>1</sup> and wag,<sup>2</sup> was joking<sup>3</sup> and laughing at<sup>4</sup> rehearsal<sup>5</sup> one day, instead of minding<sup>6</sup> his part.<sup>7</sup> Raymond, the stage-manager,<sup>8</sup> took<sup>9</sup> him to task,<sup>10</sup> saying: "Mr. Wewitzer, I wish<sup>11</sup> you would pay<sup>12</sup> a little attention.<sup>13</sup>" — "Well,<sup>14</sup> sir,<sup>15</sup>" answered Wewitzer, "so I am<sup>16</sup>: I'm paying as little attention as possible."

<sup>1</sup> Schauspieler. <sup>2</sup> Witzebold, *m.* <sup>3</sup> scherzen. <sup>4</sup> auf. <sup>5</sup> Probe, use def. art.  
<sup>6</sup> paßen + auf, with acc.; 224, 2, (*b*). <sup>7</sup> Rolle. <sup>8</sup> Regisseur. <sup>9</sup> stellen.  
<sup>10</sup> zur Rede. <sup>11</sup> wollte. <sup>12</sup> geben. <sup>13</sup> Acht. <sup>14</sup> Nun. <sup>15</sup> Herr Regisseur.  
<sup>16</sup> daß thue ich ja auch.

XXII. The younger Dumas once perpetrated<sup>1</sup> a cruel<sup>2</sup> joke<sup>3</sup> at the expense<sup>4</sup> of the Manzanares,<sup>5</sup> the rivulet<sup>6</sup> that

runs through<sup>7</sup> Madrid and is called a river by the grandiloquent<sup>8</sup> inhabitants of this city. When the famous dramatist<sup>9</sup> was<sup>10</sup> one day present<sup>10</sup> at a bullfight,<sup>11</sup> either the heat, or some<sup>12</sup> revolting<sup>13</sup> incident<sup>14</sup> in the show,<sup>15</sup> overcame<sup>16</sup> him to such an extent<sup>17</sup> that he fainted.<sup>18</sup> On<sup>19</sup> somebody bringing him a glass of water, as he was recovering,<sup>20</sup> Dumas declined<sup>21</sup> it, saying<sup>22</sup> in<sup>23</sup> a faint<sup>24</sup> voice: "Go and pour it into the Manzanares; the river needs<sup>25</sup> it much more than I!"

<sup>1</sup> machen. <sup>2</sup> bitter. <sup>3</sup> Witz. <sup>4</sup> auf Kosten. <sup>5</sup> masc. <sup>6</sup> Nach. <sup>7</sup> durchlaufen. <sup>8</sup> großsprecherisch. <sup>9</sup> Drama'tiker. <sup>10</sup> bewohnen + dat. <sup>11</sup> Ziergefecht. <sup>12</sup> 157. <sup>13</sup> empörend. <sup>14</sup> Vorfall, m. <sup>15</sup> Schauspiel, n. <sup>16</sup> überwältigen. <sup>17</sup> dermaßen. <sup>18</sup> ohnmächtig werden. <sup>19</sup> 277, Rem. 6. <sup>20</sup> sich erholen. <sup>21</sup> ablehnen. <sup>22</sup> 284, 1 (a). <sup>23</sup> mit. <sup>24</sup> schwach. <sup>25</sup> nötig haben + acc.

**XXIII.** Frank Talfourd, who rejoiced in<sup>1</sup> a stature<sup>2</sup> of six feet and several inches, was playfully<sup>3</sup> challenged<sup>4</sup> at the Savage Club one evening to raise his foot as high as<sup>5</sup> the chandelier<sup>6</sup> that hung in the middle of the room. Lifting<sup>7</sup> his foot with rather too much vigour,<sup>8</sup> he knocked down one of the glass globes,<sup>9</sup> which fell to the ground and was smashed<sup>10</sup> to atoms.<sup>11</sup> Frank rang the bell instantly, and asked the responding<sup>12</sup> waiter for<sup>13</sup> the amount<sup>14</sup> of his bill.<sup>15</sup> "Pray, sir, what have you had?" — "Oh!" said Talfourd, pointing<sup>16</sup> up to<sup>17</sup> the chandelier, "only a glass of that."

<sup>1</sup> sich erfreuen + gen. <sup>2</sup> Höhe. <sup>3</sup> im Zuerge. <sup>4</sup> anfordern. <sup>5</sup> bis zu. <sup>6</sup> Kronleuchter. <sup>7</sup> in die Höhe werfen, 284, 1 (b). <sup>8</sup> etwas zu kräftig. <sup>9</sup> Glaskuppel, f. <sup>10</sup> zerbrechen, neut. <sup>11</sup> "into a thousand pieces." <sup>12</sup> erscheinen. <sup>13</sup> nach. <sup>14</sup> Betrag, m. <sup>15</sup> Rechnung. <sup>16</sup> hinzeigen, 284, 1 (a). <sup>17</sup> auf.

**XXIV.** Douglas Jerrold once said to a young gentleman who burned with<sup>1</sup> an ardent desire<sup>2</sup> to see himself in print<sup>3</sup>:

"Be advised<sup>4</sup> by me, young man; don't take down<sup>4</sup> the shutters until you have something in the window worth looking-at.<sup>6</sup>"

<sup>1</sup> vor + dat. <sup>2</sup> Begierde. <sup>3</sup> gedruckt. <sup>4</sup> use lassen, with refl. form, 114. (b). <sup>5</sup> ab. <sup>6</sup> sehenſwert, 122. 11.

---

XXV. Alexandre Dumas had a well-won<sup>1</sup> reputation in Paris<sup>2</sup> society as a teller-of-anecdotes. At a large evening-party, he was<sup>3</sup> rather<sup>4</sup> annoyed<sup>3</sup> at the persistent<sup>5</sup> efforts of his hostess to induce-him<sup>6</sup> to exhibit<sup>7</sup> his power<sup>8</sup> in this accomplishment.<sup>9</sup> At last, tired of refusing,<sup>10</sup> he said: "Every one has his trade,<sup>11</sup> madam.<sup>12</sup> The gentleman who entered<sup>13</sup> the room just before me is a distinguished<sup>14</sup> artillery-officer. Let him bring a cannon here and fire<sup>15</sup> it; then I will tell one of my little stories."

<sup>1</sup> wohlverdient. <sup>2</sup> Pariſer, 122, 9. <sup>3</sup> ſich ärgern + über with acc. <sup>4</sup> nicht wenig. <sup>5</sup> unabläſſig. <sup>6</sup> ihn dahin zu bringen. <sup>7</sup> zeigen. <sup>8</sup> Fertigkeit. <sup>9</sup> Nach, n. <sup>10</sup> subst. inf. <sup>11</sup> Handwerk. <sup>12</sup> gnädige Frau. <sup>13</sup> eintreten in. <sup>14</sup> auszeichnen. <sup>15</sup> abfeuern.

---

XXVI. Some brainless<sup>1</sup> acquaintance<sup>2</sup> of Rivarol's was boasting<sup>3</sup> of<sup>4</sup> his having<sup>6</sup> mastered<sup>6</sup> four languages. "I congratulate<sup>7</sup> you," said Rivarol; "you'll have in-future<sup>8</sup> four words for one idea.<sup>9</sup>"

<sup>1</sup> gedankenarm. <sup>2</sup> der Bekannte, 122, 1, 2. <sup>3</sup> prahlen. <sup>4</sup> 277, Rem. 1. <sup>5</sup> daß clause. <sup>6</sup> ſich völlig aneignen. <sup>7</sup> gratulieren + dat. <sup>8</sup> künftig. <sup>9</sup> Gedanke.

---

XXVII. On the day after the first representation<sup>1</sup> of 'L'Ami des Femmes,<sup>2</sup>' a comedy<sup>3</sup> by Alexandre Dumas (the second), the author's father sent him a letter, congratulating<sup>4</sup> him on<sup>6</sup> the success<sup>6</sup> of his piece,<sup>7</sup> and volunteering<sup>8</sup> his own collaboration<sup>9</sup> on<sup>10</sup> some future<sup>11</sup> one.<sup>12</sup> The letter

closed with a somewhat grandiloquent phrase<sup>1</sup>: "If a guarantee<sup>2</sup> is desired<sup>3</sup> for my ability,<sup>4</sup> I *beg to* refer<sup>5</sup> you to<sup>6</sup> 'Monte Christo' and 'The Three Musketeers.'<sup>7</sup>" The son replied: "Even if I did not know the great works you<sup>8</sup> mention,<sup>9</sup> I should gladly<sup>10</sup> accept your offer,<sup>11</sup> on account of the high opinion<sup>12</sup> my father evidently<sup>13</sup> entertains<sup>14</sup> of you."

<sup>1</sup> Anführung. <sup>2</sup> der Frauenfreund. <sup>3</sup> Entzwei, *n.* <sup>4</sup> "in which he congratulated." <sup>5</sup> zu. <sup>6</sup> Erfolg, *m.* <sup>7</sup> Stück, *n.* <sup>8</sup> sich erbieten. <sup>9</sup> "to collaborate (mitarbeiten)." <sup>10</sup> an. <sup>11</sup> später. <sup>12</sup> 122, 4, Note. <sup>13</sup> Phraie. <sup>14</sup> Bürgschaft. <sup>15</sup> verlangen. <sup>16</sup> Fähigkeit. <sup>17</sup> hinweisen auf + acc. <sup>18</sup> Musketier. <sup>19</sup> 96, 7. Obs. <sup>20</sup> erwähnen. <sup>21</sup> mit Freuden. <sup>22</sup> Anerbieten, *n.* <sup>23</sup> Meinung. <sup>24</sup> augenscheinlich. <sup>25</sup> "has."

XXVIII. Curran happened to tell<sup>1</sup> Sir<sup>2</sup> Thomas Turton that he could never speak in public<sup>3</sup> a quarter of an hour without moistening<sup>4</sup> his lips.<sup>5</sup> Sir Thomas declared that he had spoken *for* five hours in the House of Commons<sup>6</sup> on<sup>7</sup> the Nabob of Oude without feeling<sup>8</sup> the least<sup>9</sup> thirst. "That is very remarkable indeed,<sup>10</sup>" observed<sup>11</sup> Curran, "for everybody<sup>12</sup> agrees<sup>13</sup> that it<sup>14</sup> was the driest<sup>15</sup> speech of the session.<sup>16</sup>"

<sup>1</sup> erzählte gelegentlich. <sup>2</sup> dem Sir. <sup>3</sup> öffentlich. <sup>4</sup> aufweichen: 224, 2, (*b*). <sup>5</sup> Lippe, *f.* <sup>6</sup> Unterhaus. <sup>7</sup> über + acc. <sup>8</sup> verführen. <sup>9</sup> gering. <sup>10</sup> ja (immediately after the verb). <sup>11</sup> bemerken. <sup>12</sup> Alle (pl.). <sup>13</sup> darin übereinstimmen. <sup>14</sup> das. <sup>15</sup> trocken. <sup>16</sup> Session.

XXIX. A gentleman praising<sup>1</sup> the personal<sup>2</sup> charms<sup>3</sup> of a very plain<sup>4</sup> lady in Foote's presence, the latter<sup>5</sup> said: "Why don't you lay<sup>6</sup> claim<sup>7</sup> to<sup>8</sup> such a beauty?" — "What right have I to<sup>9</sup> *do so*?" was<sup>10</sup> the counter-question.<sup>11</sup> "Every right," replied Foote, "by<sup>12</sup> the universal<sup>13</sup> law of nations<sup>14</sup> — as the first discoverer.<sup>15</sup>"

<sup>1</sup> 284, 1 (*a*). <sup>2</sup> persönlich. <sup>3</sup> Reiz, *m.* <sup>4</sup> "anything but (241, 10, Note)

beautiful." <sup>5</sup> 134. <sup>6</sup> machen. <sup>7</sup> Anspruch, *m.* <sup>8</sup> auf + acc. <sup>9</sup> dazu. <sup>10</sup> laus-  
tete. <sup>11</sup> Gegenfrage. <sup>12</sup> nach. <sup>13</sup> allgemein. <sup>14</sup> Völkerrrecht. <sup>15</sup> Entdecker.

XXX. One day the poet and banker<sup>1</sup> Rogers took<sup>2</sup> Thomas Moore and Sydney Smith home in his carriage from a breakfast, and insisted<sup>3</sup> on showing them by the way<sup>4</sup> Dryden's house in some obscure<sup>5</sup> street. It was very wet weather; the house looked<sup>6</sup> *very much* like<sup>6</sup> other old houses, and, having<sup>7</sup> thin shoes on, they both strongly<sup>8</sup> remonstrated<sup>9</sup>; but in vain. Rogers got out<sup>10</sup> himself,<sup>11</sup> expecting<sup>12</sup> them<sup>13</sup> to do likewise<sup>14</sup>; but Sydney Smith leaned<sup>15</sup> laughing out of the window, and exclaimed: "Oh,<sup>16</sup> now you see why Rogers doesn't mind<sup>17</sup> getting<sup>18</sup> out: he has goloshes<sup>19</sup> on. But, my dear Rogers, lend each of us a golosh; we will then each stand upon one leg and admire the house as long as you please."<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Banquier (pron. as in French). <sup>2</sup> bringen. <sup>3</sup> befehlen auf + acc., 277. <sup>4</sup> unterwegs. <sup>5</sup> obscur. <sup>6</sup> aussehen wie. <sup>7</sup> 284, 1 (*b*). <sup>8</sup> energisch. <sup>9</sup> protestieren. <sup>10</sup> aussteigen. <sup>11</sup> 42, 3, Rem. <sup>12</sup> "and expected." <sup>13</sup> 275. <sup>14</sup> das Gleiche. <sup>15</sup> lehnte. <sup>16</sup> So. <sup>17</sup> sich scheuen vor + dat. <sup>18</sup> 277, Rem. 3. <sup>19</sup> Gалоше, *f.* <sup>20</sup> gefallen, impers., + dat.

XXXI. "When I was going from my house at Enfield to the India House one morning," says Charles Lamb, "I met Coleridge on his way to pay me a visit. He was brimful<sup>1</sup> of some<sup>2</sup> new idea, and—in spite of<sup>3</sup> my telling him that my time was precious<sup>4</sup>—he drew me into the door of an unoccupied<sup>5</sup> garden by the roadside,<sup>6</sup> and<sup>7</sup> there—sheltered<sup>8</sup> by<sup>9</sup> an evergreen<sup>10</sup> hedge<sup>11</sup> from observation<sup>12</sup>—*he* took<sup>13</sup> me by<sup>14</sup> the button of my coat,<sup>15</sup> closed<sup>16</sup> his<sup>17</sup> eyes, and commenced an enthusiastic<sup>18</sup> discourse,<sup>19</sup> waving<sup>20</sup> at the same time<sup>21</sup> his right hand gently,<sup>22</sup> as<sup>23</sup> the musical<sup>24</sup> words flowed in an unbroken<sup>25</sup> stream<sup>26</sup> from his<sup>27</sup> lips. I listened<sup>28</sup> entranced<sup>29</sup>; but the striking<sup>30</sup> of a church clock re-



called <sup>31</sup> me to *a sense of* my duty.<sup>32</sup> I saw it was of no use to attempt to break away<sup>33</sup>; so <sup>34</sup> I took advantage of <sup>35</sup> his absorption<sup>36</sup> in his subject,<sup>37</sup> quietly<sup>38</sup> cut off the button from my coat with my pen-knife<sup>39</sup> and decamped.<sup>40</sup> As I was passing<sup>41</sup> the same garden five hours afterwards on my way home,<sup>42</sup> I heard Coleridge's voice, looked in,<sup>43</sup> and — there he stood, with closed eyes, the button<sup>44</sup> in his fingers, gracefully waving his right hand, just as *when* I had left<sup>45</sup> him. He had never<sup>46</sup> missed<sup>47</sup> me."

<sup>1</sup> übertoll' von. <sup>2</sup> irgend ein. <sup>3</sup> trotzdem daß. <sup>4</sup> kostbar. <sup>5</sup> unbenutzt. <sup>6</sup> Landstraße. <sup>7</sup> Insert verb and object here. <sup>8</sup> schützen, 291. 5; 299. <sup>9</sup> durch. <sup>10</sup> immergrün. <sup>11</sup> Hecke. <sup>12</sup> Beobachtung. <sup>13</sup> lassen. <sup>14</sup> 228 (b). <sup>15</sup> Hockknopf. <sup>16</sup> schließen, 123. <sup>17</sup> 44, 6 (a). <sup>18</sup> begeistert. <sup>19</sup> Rede. <sup>20</sup> hin und her bewegen, 131, B., Rem. <sup>21</sup> wobei. <sup>22</sup> anmutig ('gracefully'). <sup>23</sup> während. <sup>24</sup> wohltönend. <sup>25</sup> unaushalt'jam. <sup>26</sup> Strom. <sup>27</sup> 44, 6 (b). <sup>28</sup> zuhören. <sup>29</sup> entzückt. <sup>30</sup> Schlagen, inf. subst. <sup>31</sup> erinnern an + acc. <sup>32</sup> Pflicht, f. <sup>33</sup> "I saw (erkennen) the uselessness (Nutzlosigkeit) of an attempt to break away (sich losreißen)." <sup>34</sup> deshalb. <sup>35</sup> benutzen (trans.). <sup>36</sup> "it that he was absorbed (völlig versunken in + acc.)." <sup>37</sup> Gegenstand, m. <sup>38</sup> ruhig. <sup>39</sup> Federmesser, n. <sup>40</sup> Reißaus nehmen. <sup>41</sup> vorbeikommen an + dat. <sup>42</sup> Heimweg. <sup>43</sup> hineingucken. <sup>44</sup> 255, 2. <sup>45</sup> verlassen. <sup>46</sup> gar nicht. <sup>47</sup> vermissen.

### Sir Thomas More.

XXXII. Erasmus describes<sup>1</sup> this great man thus<sup>2</sup>:—"More seems to be made<sup>3</sup> and born for Friendship<sup>4</sup>; of this virtue he is a sincere<sup>5</sup> follower<sup>6</sup> and very strict observer.<sup>7</sup> He is not afraid<sup>8</sup> to be accused<sup>9</sup> of<sup>10</sup> having many friends, which,<sup>11</sup> according to Hesiod, is said<sup>12</sup> to be no great praise.<sup>13</sup> Every one may<sup>14</sup> become More's friend; he is not slow<sup>15</sup> in choosing,<sup>16</sup> he is kind<sup>17</sup> in cherishing,<sup>18</sup> and constant<sup>19</sup> in keeping<sup>20</sup> them.<sup>21</sup> If by accident<sup>22</sup> he become the friend of one<sup>23</sup> whose vices<sup>24</sup> he cannot correct,<sup>25</sup> he slackens<sup>26</sup> the reins<sup>27</sup> of friendship towards<sup>28</sup> him, diverting<sup>29</sup> it rather<sup>30</sup> by little and little,<sup>31</sup> than entirely<sup>32</sup> dissol-

ving<sup>33</sup> it. Those<sup>34</sup> persons whom he finds<sup>35</sup> *to be* sincere<sup>36</sup> and consonant<sup>37</sup> to his own<sup>38</sup> virtuous<sup>39</sup> disposition,<sup>40</sup> he is so charmed<sup>41</sup> with,<sup>42</sup> that he appears to place<sup>43</sup> his chief<sup>44</sup> worldly<sup>45</sup> pleasure in their conversation<sup>46</sup> and company. And although More is negligent<sup>47</sup> in<sup>48</sup> his own temporal<sup>49</sup> concerns,<sup>50</sup> yet<sup>51</sup> no one is more assiduous<sup>52</sup> in assisting<sup>53</sup> the suits<sup>54</sup> of his friends than he. What shall I say more? If any person is desirous<sup>55</sup> to have a perfect<sup>56</sup> model<sup>57</sup> of friendship, no one can afford<sup>58</sup> him a better than More. In his conversation<sup>59</sup> he shows so much affability<sup>60</sup> and sweetness of manner,<sup>61</sup> that no man can be of so austere a disposition,<sup>62</sup> but that<sup>63</sup> More's conversation must<sup>64</sup> make<sup>65</sup> him cheerful<sup>66</sup>; and no matter<sup>67</sup> so unpleasing,<sup>67</sup> but that *with* his wit<sup>68</sup> *he* can take away<sup>69</sup> from it all disgust.<sup>70</sup>

<sup>1</sup> beidreiben. <sup>2</sup> folgendermaßen. <sup>3</sup> schaffen, 186; 299. <sup>4</sup> 44, 1 (b). <sup>5</sup> aufrechtig (adv.). <sup>6</sup> "to be a follower of" = nachfolgen + dat. <sup>7</sup> "and very strictly observes (beobachten) it." <sup>8</sup> 277; 291, 11. <sup>9</sup> "of the reproach (Vorwurf) of having." <sup>10</sup> 277, Rem, 1. <sup>11</sup> 96, 5. <sup>12</sup> 200, 5 (c). <sup>13</sup> Ruhm, m. <sup>14</sup> "can." <sup>15</sup> langsam. <sup>16</sup> Wählen, 270; use def. art. <sup>17</sup> freundlich. <sup>18</sup> pflegen. <sup>19</sup> unerschütterlich. <sup>20</sup> festhalten. <sup>21</sup> "of his friends." <sup>22</sup> zufällig, 239, Rem. 2. <sup>23</sup> "a man (Mensch)." <sup>24</sup> Laiter, n. <sup>25</sup> verbessern. <sup>26</sup> lofern. <sup>27</sup> Band; 64. <sup>28</sup> mit. <sup>29</sup> ablenken; 284, 1 (a). <sup>30</sup> lieber. <sup>31</sup> allmählig. <sup>32</sup> ganz. <sup>33</sup> lösen. <sup>34</sup> solch. <sup>35</sup> erfinden. <sup>36</sup> aufrichtig. <sup>37</sup> entsprechend + dat. <sup>38</sup> eigen. <sup>39</sup> tugendhaft. <sup>40</sup> Zinnesart. <sup>41</sup> bezaubern. <sup>42</sup> Use as prep. before "those persons." <sup>43</sup> stellen in + acc. <sup>44</sup> "greatest." <sup>45</sup> weltlich. <sup>46</sup> Unterhaltung. <sup>47</sup> gleichgültig. <sup>48</sup> gegen. <sup>49</sup> weltlich. <sup>50</sup> Gelegenheit. <sup>51</sup> doch. <sup>52</sup> strebsam. <sup>53</sup> "in the support (Unterstützung) of." <sup>54</sup> Angelegenheit. <sup>55</sup> wünschen. <sup>56</sup> vollkommen. <sup>57</sup> Ideal, n.; use compound word. <sup>58</sup> liefern. <sup>59</sup> Umgang, m. <sup>60</sup> Geselligkeit. <sup>61</sup> Liebenswürdigkeit. <sup>62</sup> so herbe gemitt. <sup>63</sup> daß nicht. <sup>64</sup> sollte. <sup>65</sup> aufheitern. <sup>66</sup> Gegenstand, m. <sup>67</sup> widrig. <sup>68</sup> Wit, m. <sup>69</sup> entfernen von. <sup>70</sup> Alles Widerwärtige.

VOCABULARY.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

### I. German :

Anm. = Anmerkung, note.  
 A. T. = Altes Testament, Old Testament.  
 a. a. O. = am angeführten Orte, in the place referred to.  
 dgl., dergl. = dergleichen, the like.  
 d. = any case of the definite article.  
 d. h. = das heißt, } that is.  
 d. i. = das ist, }  
 d. J. = dieses Jahres, of this year.  
 d. M. = dieses Monats, of this month.  
 Dr. = Doctor, Doctor.  
 Cwr., Cwr. = Curer, Cure, Curer (in titles).  
 fl. = Gulden, florin.  
 Fr. = Frau, Mrs.  
 Frhr. = Freiherr, Baron.  
 Frä. = Fräulein, Miss.  
 geb. = geboren, born.  
 gest. = gestorben, died.  
 Gr. = Groschen (a coin).  
 h., heil. = heilig, holy, saint.  
 Hr., Hrn. = Herr, Herrn, Mr.  
 i. J. = im Jahre, in the year.  
 Kap. = Kapitel, chapter.  
 Kr. = Kreuzer (a coin).  
 l. = lies, read.  
 M., Mk., M. = Mark (money).  
 Mstr. = Manuscript, manuscript.  
 Maj. = Majestät, Majesty.

N., N. N. = Name, name.  
 n. Chr. = nach Christo, after Christ.  
 N. Z. = Nachschrift, postscript.  
 N. T. = Neues Testament, New Testament.  
 Pf., Pfd. = Pfund, pound.  
 Pf. = Pfennig, penny.  
 pp. = und so weiter, and so forth.  
 Se. Sr. = Seine, Seiner, his (in titles).  
 Z. = Seite, page.  
 Zt., Ztt. = Sanft, Saint.  
 j. = siehe, see.  
 j. o. = siehe oben, see above.  
 j. u. = siehe unten, } see below.  
 j. w. u. = siehe weiter unten, }  
 Z., Zh., Zhl. = Teil, Theil, part.  
 Zhlr. = Thaler (money).  
 u. a. m. = und andere mehr, }  
 u. dgl. m. = und dergleichen mehr, } et  
 u. f. f. = und so fort, } cæ-  
 u. f. w. = und so weiter, } tera.  
 V. = Vers, verse.  
 v. Chr. = vor Christo, before Christ.  
 vergl., vgl. = vergleiche, compare.  
 v. o. = von oben, from the top.  
 v. u. = von unten, from the bottom.  
 z. B. = zum Beispiel, for example.

### II. Latin (in addition to others which are used in English also):

A. C. = *Anno Christi*, in the year of Our Lord (Christ).  
 a. c. = *anni currentis*, of the current year.  
 S. T. = *Salvo Titulo*, without prejudice to the title (used in addresses where the proper title of the person addressed is uncertain).

# VOCABULARY.

## GERMAN — ENGLISH.

EXPLANATIONS. — 1. The numerals refer to the §.

2. All verbs are weak and regular, unless referred to a §; the conjugation of others will be found under the § indicated.

3. A — indicates that the word in question is to be supplied; under masc. and neuter substantives, the terminations of the gen. sing. and nom. plur. are given: thus: Wagen (-s; —) means that the gen. sing. of Wagen is Wagens, and the nom. plur. the same as the nom. sing. The sign " indicates Umlaut in the pl., e. g.: Garten, (-s; ") means that the gen. sing. of this word is Gartens, and the nom. pl. Gärten; Zehn (-es; "e) means: gen. sing. Zehnes, nom. pl. Zöhne; under fem. substs. the pl. only is given.

4. With adjectives, "er indicates Umlaut in the compar. and superl.

5. Proper names are not given when they are the same in German as in English.

### A.

Ab, off.

Ab'end, *m.* (-es; -e), evening; heute —, this evening.

abend's, in the evening.

aber, but; however.

abfabren (186; sein), to set off, depart, go; set sail.

abhalten (188), to hinder, deter.

abhelfen (150), to help, remedy; dem ist leicht abzuhelfen, that is easily remedied.

abholen, to call for.

abkühlen (sich), to (get) cool.

abreisen (sein), to set out, start, depart.

abschneiden (118), to cut off.

acht, eight; — Tage, a week.

Acht, *f.*, attention, care; sich in — nehmen, to be careful, take care.

addieren, to add.

Adresse, *f.* (-n), address.

Algebra, *f.*, algebra.

allein', *adj.*, alone, only; *conj.*, but, only.

all(er, e, es), all, (the) whole;

alle Tage, every day;

Alles, *n. sing.*, all, every-thing.

allerdings', *adv.*, certainly, of course.

als, than, as; as a; when;

als ob, as if.

also, thus, so; so then, accordingly.

alt ("er), old, ancient.

Alter, *n* (-s), age, old age.

Amerikaner, *m.* (-s, —), American.

an (*dat.* or *acc.*, 15), on, at (227), to, towards, in,

by, near, of; er starb an Fieber, he died of fever (231, c).

anbieten (131), to offer.

ander, other; die Andern, the others.

ändern, to alter, change; es läßt sich nicht —, it cannot be helped.

anderthalb, one and a half.

Anfang, *m.* (-es; "e), commencement, beginning.

anfangen (188), to begin, commence.

anfangs, in the beginning, at first.

angenehm (*dat.*), pleasant, agreeable.

ängstlich, frightened, timid, anxious.

anhalten (188), to continue.

Anhöhe, *f.* (-n), hill.

ansetzen (sich), to settle, lay up property.

ansehen (sich), to dress.

ankommen (107; sein), to arrive; in A. (*dat.*) —, to arrive at B.

anrichten, to cause.

anschaffen, to provide, procure.

antreffen (167), to meet with, find.

Antwort, *f.* (-en), answer, reply.

antworten (*dat.*), to answer, reply.

anziehen (131), to draw on; put on (clothes).

Apfel, *m.* (-s; <sup>u</sup>), apple.

Apfelbaum, *m.* (-s; <sup>u</sup>e), apple-tree.

April, *m.* (-s), April.

Arbeit, *f.* (-en), work; labour; task.

arbeiten, to work.

Arbeiter, *m.* (-s; —), workman.

Architekt, *m.* (-en; -en), architect.

Arie (*trissyll.*), *f.* (-n), air, song

arm (<sup>er</sup>), poor

Arm, *m.* (-es; -e), arm.

artig, well behaved; — sein, to behave one's self properly (of children).

Arzt, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), physician, doctor. [rella.

Afchenputtel, *n.* (-s), Cinderella.

Ast, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), bough, branch.

Astrolog, *m.* (-en; -en),

astrologer.

auch, also, too, even; wer —, whoever; wir sind es —, so are we.

auf, (*dat. or acc.*) on, upon (65); for, in (230); at (227, 3); to; open; — drei Wochen, for three weeks (*fut.*, 229, 6, 2); — daß, in order that; — dem Lande, in the country.

aufbleiben (120), to stay up, sit up, remain up.

Aufenthalt, *m.* (-es; -e), sojourn, stay; delay.

Aufgabe, *f.* (-n), task, lesson, exercise.

aufgeben (181), to give up.

aufhängen, to hang up.

aufheben (131), to raise up, lift up, pick up; abolish,

annul, cancel.

aufhören, to cease, stop.

aufmachen, to open.

aufmerksam, attentive; einen

auf etwas — machen, to call the attention of anyone to anything.

Aufmerksamkeit, *f.* (-en), attention; kindness.

aufschieben (131), to put off, postpone, delay.

auffügen, to put up; put on (of a hat).

aufstehen (186; sein), to rise, get up.

aufsteigen (120; sein), to rise, ascend, mount.

auftreten (181; sein), to appear.

aufziehen (131), to wind up (of a time-piece).

Auge, *n.* (-s; -n), eye.

Augenblick, *m.* (-es; -e), moment, instant.

aus (*dat.*, 46), out of; from, of; out.

Ausdruck, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), expression.

Ausflug, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), excursion, pleasure-trip; einen

— machen, to take a pleasure-trip.

Ausgabe, *f.* (-n), edition.

ausgezeichnet, excellent.

ausgleiten (118; sein), to slide, slip.

auslassen (188), to omit, leave out.

auslösen, to put out, extinguish. [uach).

aussehen (181), to look (like).

Aussicht, *f.* (-en), view, prospect.

aussprechen (167), to pronounce.

Ausstellung, *f.* (-en), exhibition.

außer (46), outside of; *conj.* except, besides.

außerhalb (*gen.*), outside of.

auswendig, by heart.

auszeichnen, to distinguish.

ausziehen (131; sein), to remove (*intr.*).

Axt, *f.* (<sup>u</sup>e) axe.

## B.

backen (186), to bake.

Backstein, *m.* (-es; -e), brick.

Bahnhof, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), railway-station.

balb (eher, am ehesten), soon, shortly.

Band, *n.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>er), ribbon; *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), volume.

Bank, *f.* (-en), bank; (<sup>u</sup>e), bench.

bar, (paid in) cash, ready (of money).

Bär, *m.* (-en; -en), bear.

Barbier, *m.* (-es; -e), barber.

bauen, to build.

Bauer, *m.* (-n or -s; -n), peasant, countryman.

Baum, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), tree.

Bauplatz, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), site.

bedauern, to pity; regret; (ich) bedaure, I am sorry.

bedenken (99, 2), to consider.

bedienen, to serve, wait upon; sich —, to help one's self.

Bedingung, *f.* (-en), condition.

beeilen (sich), to hasten, hurry.

Beere, *f.* (-en), berry.

Befehl, *m.* (-es; -e), command, order; zu —, at (your) service, what is (your) pleasure?

befehlen (167), to command.

befleissen (sich, 118), to apply one's self

- befriedigen, to satisfy, content.  
 begegnen, (*dat.*; *sein*), to meet.  
 begießen (123), to water (flowers, etc.).  
 beginnen (158), to begin.  
 begleiten, to accompany.  
 Begleitung, *f.* (-en), accompaniment.  
 begnügen (*sich* — mit), to be satisfied, be contented (with).  
 Begriff, *m.* (-es; -e), idea, notion; im — sein, to be upon the point of, be about (to).  
 behaupten, to assert, affirm; to maintain.  
 bei (46), by, at, about; with: — Tische, at table; — meinem Onkel, at my uncle's; — mir, with me, at my house, about me; — schönem Wetter, in fine weather.  
 beide, both, two.  
 beides, *n. sing.*, both.  
 Beifall, *m.* (-es), applause.  
 beinahe, almost, nearly.  
 beißen (118), to bite.  
 beistehen (186; *dat.*), to assist, aid.  
 Bekanntschaft, *f.* (-en), acquaintance.  
 bekennen (99), to acknowledge; confess.  
 bekommen (167), to obtain, get, receive, have.  
 bemerken, to perceive, observe.  
 bemühen (*sich*), to take pains, try.  
 bequem', convenient, comfortable, commodious.  
 Berg, *m.* (-es; -e), mountain, hill.  
 bergen (159), to hide.  
 bersten (159), to burst.  
 berühmt, famous, celebrated.  
 besaßtigen, to occupy, employ; beschäftigt, busy, employed.  
 bestimmen (*sich*; 158), to deliberate, reflect.  
 besonders, particularly, especially.  
 besorgen, to attend to.  
 besprechen (167), to discuss.  
 besser (*see gut*), better.  
 best, (*superl. of gut, which see*), best; zum Besten, for the benefit of; am besten, best (of all).  
 bestehen (186), to undergo, pass (an examination); — (aus), to consist (of); — (auf + *acc.*), to insist (upon).  
 besteigen (120), to ascend.  
 bestellen, to order.  
 bestrafen, to punish.  
 bestreiten (118), to defray.  
 Besuch, *m.* (-es; -e), visit, visitors; — haben, to have visitors; — e machen, make calls; bei Jemand auf — sein, to be on a visit at any one's.  
 besuchen, to visit: die Universität —, to study at the university.  
 beten, to pray, say prayers.  
 betragen (186), to amount to.  
 Betragen, *n.* (-s), behaviour, conduct.  
 betreffen (167), to concern: was mich betrifft, as for me.  
 betrügen (131), to cheat, deceive.  
 Bettler, *m.* (-s; —), beggar.  
 bewegen (131), to induce; to move.  
 beweisen (120), to prove, demonstrate.  
 bewundern, to admire.  
 bejahlen, to pay (*acc. of thing; dat. of person and acc. of thing when both are present, otherwise acc. of person*).  
 Bezahlung, *f.* (-en), payment.  
 Bibliothek', *f.* (-en), library.  
 biegen (131), to bend.  
 Bier, *n.* (-es; -e), beer, ale.  
 bieten (131), to offer.  
 Bild, *n.* (-es; -er), picture, portrait.  
 Bildung, *f.* (-en), education.  
 Billet' (*pron. bill-yett*), *n.* (-tes; -te), ticket.  
 billig, cheap.  
 binden (144), to bind, tie, fasten.  
 binnen (*dat.*), within.  
 bis (34), till, until, up to, as far as; zwei — drei, two or three; — zu (*dat.*), — nach (*dat.*), as far as.  
 Bischof, *m.* (-es, -e), bishop.  
 bitten (181; for, um), to ask, beg; (*ich*) bitte, if you please, please (*lit.*, I beg, pray); wenn ich — darf, if you please (*lit.*, if I may ask).  
 blasen (188), to blow.  
 Blatt, *n.* (-es; -er), leaf.  
 blau, blue.  
 bleiben (120; *sein*), to remain.  
 Bleistift, *n.* (-es; -e), lead-pencil.  
 blind, blind.  
 Licht, *m.* (-es; -e), lighting.  
 blitzen, (*impers.*), to lighten.  
 Blume, *f.* (-en), flower.  
 Blumenfehl, *m.* (-s), cauliflower.  
 bombardieren, to bombard.  
 Boot, *n.* (-es; Boote, or -e), boat.  
 böse, bad, evil; cross, angry.  
 Boswicht, *m.* (-es; -er), villain.

Botte, *m.* (-n; -n), messenger.

braten (188), to roast.

brauchen (*gen. or acc.*), to require, want, need, use, make use of.

braun, brown.

brechen (167), to break.

breit, broad, wide.

brennen (99), to burn, be burning.

Brief, *m.* (-es; -e), letter, epistle.

bringen (99, 2), to bring, take.

Brot, *n.* (-es; -e), bread; loaf.

Brücke, *f.* (-n), bridge.

Bruder, *m.* (-s; -), brother.

Buch, *n.* (-es; -er), book.

Bücherfreund, *m.* (-es; -e), lover of books.

Buchhändler, *m.* (-s; -), book-seller.

Buchhandlung, *f.* (-en), book-shop.

Bureau (*pron.* bü-ro'), *n.* (-s; -s), (business) office.

Bürgermeister, *m.* (-s; -), mayor.

Butter, *f.*, butter.

## C.

Chokolade, *f.*, chocolate.

Christ, *m.* (-en; -en), Christian.

Cousine, *f.* (-n), cousin.

## D.

da, there, in that place; here; *conj.*, as, when, because, since.

Dach, *n.* (-s; -er), roof.

dafür, for that, for it, for them (*of things*).

daher, thence, hence, therefore.

damit, therewith, with it, with that.

Dampferlinie, *f.* (-n), steam-ship-line.

Dampfschiff, *n.* (-es; -e), steam-boat, steamer.

dankebar, thankful, grateful.

Dankbarkeit, *f.*, thankfulness.

danke (*dat.*), to thank: ich danke (Sbnen), (no) thank you.

dann, then.

daran, thereon.

darauf, thereon, on it, on them (*of things*), etc.

darin, therein, in that, in it.

darüber, over that, over it: about it, at it.

darum, therefore.

das, *n.* *of der*, *which see*.

daselbst, there, in that place.

daß, that: (auf) —, in order that.

davon, thereof, of it.

dein, deine, dein, thy.

denken (117; *gen. or general-ly an + acc.*), to think: sich —, to imagine.

denn, for, *conj.*

der, die, daß, *def. art.*, the (4: 44): *rel. fr.*, who, which, that (92, 93, 95): *dem. fr.*, the one, he, she, it, that (133: 140-143).

derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige (135: 140), that, this, the one; he, she, it.

derselbe, dieselbe, dasieselbe (136: 143), *adj. and pr.*, the same; he, she, it, etc.

des'halb, for this or that reason, therefore, on that account.

desto (all) the, so much the; — besser, so much the better: je mehr — besser, the more, the better.

deswegen, on that account.

deutlich, clear, distinct;

clearly, distinctly.

deutsch, German; auf Deutsch, in Deutsch, in German.

Deutschland, *n.* (-s), Germany.

Diamant, *m.* (-s or -en; -en), diamond.

die, *f. of der*, *which see*.

Dieb, *m.* (-es; -e), thief.

Diener, *m.* (-s; -), servant.

Dienstag, *m.* (-es; -e), Tuesday.

dieser, diese, dieses (die's), (6: 134, 140, 143), this, that: the latter.

die's'heits, *adv.*, on this side.

dingen (App. L.), to hire.

dividieren, to divide.

doch, yet, however, but, after

all, pray, well, just.

Doktor, *m.* (-s; Doktor'en), doctor.

Donner, *m.* (-s; -), thunder.

donnern, to thunder.

Donnerstag, *m.* (-es; -e), Thursday.

Dorf, (-es; -er), village.

dort, there, yonder, in that place.

drei, three.

dreifach, three-fold, triple, treble.

dreimal, three times, thrice.

dreißig, thirty.

dreschen (159), to thresh, thrash.

dringen (144), to press.

drittehalb, two and a half.

drüben, over there, over the way.

Druck, *m.* (-es), printing, print.

du, thou, you.

dünn, thin.

durch (34), through; by.

durchaus, absolutely, entirely: — nicht, by no means, not at all.



burſch'ſuch'en, to search through.

bür'en (196-202; *permiſſion*), to dare; be permitted, allowed; darf'ſt? may I?

Dürſt, *m.* (-eē), thirſt; — haben, to be thirſty.

Duſ'end, *n.* (-eē; -e), dozen.

## E.

eben, *adv.*, even, juſt; exactly; ſo—, juſt now.

Ecke, *f.* (-n), corner.

E'delſtein, *m.* (-eē; -e), precious ſtone, jewel.

ere, *adv. and conj.*, ere, before.

e'ren, to honour, eſteem.

ehrlich, honeſt; — währ't am längſten, honeſty is the beſt policy.

Ei, *n.* (-eē; -er), egg.

Eigentum, (-eē; -er), property, poſſeſſion, eſtate.

Eile, *f.* haſte, hurry; waſ' haſt du ſür —? what is your hurry?

iſen, to haſten, hurry.

eilig, haſty, ſpeedy; eē — haben, to be in a hurry, be in haſte.

ein, eine, ein (9), a, an; one; die Einen, ſome.

einander, one another, each other.

Einband, *m.* (-eē; -e), binding.

einbinden (144), to bind (a book).

einbringen (144; ſein), to enter by force; ruſh in; preſs in, penetrate.

einer, eine, ein(e)s (150), *pron.*, one (*equivalent of man*).

einfältig, ſimple, ſilly.

Einfluß, *m.* (-eē, -e), influence.

einige, ſome, ſeveral, a few.

einladen (186), to invite.

einmal, once.

Einmaleins, *n.* (*indecl.*), multiplication-table.

einpacken, to pack up.

einrechnen, to reckon in; comprise in account.

einſchlagen (186), to ſtrike (of lightning).

einſchreiben (120), to book, inſcribe, check (luggage).

einſehen (181), to perceive, comprehend.

einſeitig, one-sided.

einſteigen (120; ſein), to mount into, get into (carriage, etc.).

Eintrittsexamen, *n.* (-eē; —), entrance-examination, matriculation-examination.

Einwohner, *m.* (-eē; —), inhabitant.

Eis, *n.* (-eē), ice; ice-cream.

Eiſen, *n.* (-eē), iron.

Eiſenbahn, *f.* (-en), railway.

elegant', elegant.

Elle, *f.* (-e), yard.

Eltern (*no ſing.*), parents.

empfehlen (16; *dat. of pers.*), to recommend.

empfinden (144), to feel, experience.

endlich, at laſt, finally, at length.

englisch, *adj.*, English; auf Engliſch, in English.

Ente, *f.* (-e), duck; Entenbraten, *m.* (-eē; —), roast duck.

entgegengehen (188; ſein; *dat.*), to go to meet.

entgegenkommen (107; ſein; *dat.*), to come to meet.

entſchieden (ſich; 123), to reſolve, decide.

entſchuldigen, to excuſe.

entweder, either; entweder . . . oder, either . . . or.

entwerfen (157), to draw (a plan, etc.); design.

entzückt, delighted, charmed.

er, he.

Erbe, *f.* (-e), pea.

Erdbeben, *n.* (-eē; —), earthquake.

Erbeere, *f.* (-e), ſtrawberry.

Erde, *f.*, earth, ground.

erfinden (144), to invent.

Erfindung, *f.* (-en), invention.

Erfolg, *m.* (-eē; -e), ſucceſs.

erfrieren (131; ſein), to freeze, be frozen.

ergreifen (118), to ſeize.

erhalten (188), to receive, get.

erinnern (ſich; *gen. of thing remembered*), to remember.

erfalten (ſich), to catch cold.

Erfaltung, *f.* (-en), cold.

erkennen (99), to recognize.

erklären, to explain.

erkundigen (ſich), to inquire; ſich bei jemand nach etwas —, to inquire of anyone about anything.

erlauben (*dat. of pers.*), to permit, allow.

erleben, to experience.

ernennen (11), to nominate, appoint; zum Gouverneur —, to appoint as governor.

erobieren, to conquer, overcome.

erschrecken (107; ſein), to be frightened.

erſt, firſt; firſt erſte, for the preſent; der erſte beſte, the firſt which comes to hand; *adv.*, firſt, only, not before, not till.

erſtenſt, firſt, in the firſt place.

ertrinken (144), to drown, be drowned.

erwählen (in), to elect (aſ).

erwarten, to expect, wait for.

erwünschen, to wish for, desire.

erzählen, to relate, narrate, tell.

e8 (38, 39), it; they; there: er ist —, it is he; e8 sind Männer, they are men.

essen (181), to eat; zu Mittag —, to dine.

etwas, nearly, about.

Etwas, something, anything.

euer, eure, euer, your.

Europa, *n.* (-8), Europe.

Examen, *m.* (-8; —), examination.

Exemplar, *n.* (-8; -e), copy (of a work, etc.).

### 8.

Fabri', *f.* (-en), factory.

Faden, *m.* (-8; —), thread.

fahren (186; fein), to go, drive, ride (in a conveyance); travel; sail.

Fahrt, *f.* (-en), journey, voyage; ride, drive.

Fall, *m.* (-e8; -e), fall; case, event; in dem Falle, in that case.

fallen (188; fein), to fall.

fall8, in case

Famili', *f.* (-n), family.

fangen (188), to catch.

fast, almost, nearly; — nie, hardly ever.

Februar, *m.* (-8), February.

fechten (124), to fight, fence.

Feder, *f.* (-n), feather; pen; spring.

feiern, to celebrate.

Feiertag, *m.* (-e8; -e), holiday.

Feind, *m.* (-e8; -e), enemy.

Feld, *n.* (-e8; -er), field.

Fels(en), *m.* (-en8; -en), rock.

Fenster, *n.* (-8; —), window.

Ferien, *pl.* (no sing.), vacation, holidays.

ferne, *f.* (-n), distance; in der —, at a distance.

fertig, ready, done; — sein (mit), to have finished (with).

Festlichkeit, *f.* (-en), festivity.

Feuer, *n.* (-8; —), fire.

Fieber, *n.* (-8; —), fever.

finden (144), to find; meet with; think, be of opinion; man findet sich nicht leicht, people do not find each other easily.

Fisch, *m.* (-e8; -e), fish.

Flasche, *f.* (-n), bottle.

flechten (124), to weave.

Fleisch, *n.* (-e8), meat.

fleißig, diligent; industrious; diligently, etc.

fliegen (131; fein), to fly.

fliehen (131), flee.

fließen (123), flow.

Flöte, *f.* (-n), flute.

Flügel, *m.* (-8; —), wing.

fluß, *m.* (-e8; -e), river.

folgen (fein; dat.), to follow.

forelle, *f.* (-n), trout.

Format, *n.* (-e8; -e), size (of a book).

fort, forth; away, gone; wir müssen —, we must be off.

fortgehen (188; fein), to go away.

fortwährend, perpetual, continual, incessant.

fragen (186), to ask questions; Fragen, *n.* (-8), questioning, asking questions (action of).

Frankreich, *n.* (-8), France.

französisch, French.

Fräulein, *f.* (-en), woman, wife, lady, madam, mistress, Mrs.

Fräulein, *n.* (-8; —), young lady, Miss: mein —, Miss.

freigebig, liberal, generous.

freilassen (188), to set free, liberate.

freilich, to be sure, indeed, of course.

Freitag, *m.* (-e8; -e), Friday.

fremd, strange, foreign.

Fremde, (*adj. subst.*) *m. or f.*, stranger, foreigner.

Fremdling, *m.* (-e8; -e), stranger.

freßen (181), to eat (said of beasts).

Freude, *f.* (-n), joy, delight.

freuen (sich; at, über + acc.), to rejoice, be glad; e8 freut mich, I am glad.

Freund, *m.* (-e8; -e), friend; ich bin ein — von, I like.

Freundin, *f.* (-nen), friend (female).

freundlich, friendly, kind.

Freundschaft, *f.* (-en), friendship.

Friede(n), *m.* (-n8), peace.

Friedrich, *m.* (-8), Frederick;

Friedrichstraße, Frederick-street.

frieren (131), to freeze; feel cold; e8 friert mich, I feel cold; mich friert, I am cold.

frisch, fresh.

Fritz, *m.* (-en8), Fred, Freddy.

fröh, joyful, glad; frohen Mute8, cheerfully.

fröhlich, joyous, merry.

Frucht, *f.* (ze), fruit.

früh, early; früher, earlier; formerly.

Frühling, *m.* (-e8; -e), spring.

früh/suchen, to breakfast.

Fuchs, *m.* (-e8; ze), fox.

führen, to lead; go, lie.

füllen, to fill.

fünf, five.

fünftehalb, four and a half.

fünzig, fünfzig, fifty.

Funke(n), *m.* (-n8; -n), spark.

für (34), for.

Fürcht (vor), *f.* fear (of).fürchten, to fear; sich — vor (+ *dat.*), to fear, be afraid of.Fuß, *m.* (-es; #e), foot.

## G.

gä(h)ren (App. L.), ferment.

ganz, *adj.*, whole, entire; the whole of; *adv.*, quite, wholly, altogether, entirely.

gar, even; — nicht, not at all; — nichts, nothing at all.

Garten, *m.* (-s; #), garden.Gärtner, *m.* (-s; —), gardener.Gast, *m.* (-es; #e), guest.Gasthaus, *n.* (-es; #er), inn, hotel.

gebären (167), to bear, bring forth.

geben (181), to give; *v. impers.*, es giebt, there is, there are.Gebot, *n.* (-es; -e), commandment.Geburts'tag, *m.* (-es; -e), birthday; zum —, as a birthday-present.Gedanke, *m.* (-ns; -n), thought.

gedeihen (120), to thrive.

gedenken (99), to intend.

Gedicht, *n.* (-es; -e), poem.

gedrängt, packed, compressed, crowded.

Geduld, *f.*, patience.

gefährlich, dangerous; dangerously.

gefallen (188), to please, suit; wie gefällt es Ihnen in Boston? how do you like Boston?

gefällig, pleasing, complaisant, kind; ist dem Herrn etwas —? will the gentleman be helped to anything?

gefälligst, if you please.

Gefühl, *n.* (-es; -e), feeling; emotion.

gegen (34), towards, against, about; for.

gehen (188; sein), to go; walk; wie geht es Ihnen? how do you do? how are you?

gehören (*dat.*), to belong (to).Geige, *f.* (-n), violin; Gei-genpiel, *n.* (-s), violin-playing.

gelb, yellow.

Geld, *n.* (-es; -er), money.Geldbeutel, *m.* (-s; —), purse.

gelegen, convenient; opportunity; nichts könnte mir gelegener sein, nothing could suit me better.

gelingen (144; sein), to succeed; es gelingt mir, I succeed.

gelten (153), to be worth.

Gemälde, *n.* (-s; —), painting, picture.Gemüse, *n.* (-s; —), vegetables.

genau, precise, exact; precisely, exactly, carefully, minutely.

General, *m.* (-es; -e), general.

genesen (181; sein), to get well, recover (from an illness).

genießen (123; sein), to enjoy; eat or drink.

genug, enough.

Geometrie, *f.*, geometry.Gepäck, *n.* (-es), luggage, baggage.gerade, *adj.*, straight; *adv.*, exactly, just.Geräusch, *n.* (-es; -e), noise.

gering, small, trifling, mean; nicht im —sten, not in the least.

gern (lieber, am liebsten), with pleasure, willingly, gladly; etwas — haben, to like a thing; — lernen, to like to learn, study; das ist — möglich, that is very probable.

Gerste, *f.* barley.

! gesalzen, salted, salt.

Gesang, *m.* (-es), singing.Geschäft, *n.* (-es; -e), business; mercantile establishment; shop, store.Geschäftsangelegenheit, *f.* (-en), business matter, business engagement.

geschehen (181; sein), to happen.

Geschenk, *n.* (-es; -e), gift, present.Geschichte, *f.* (-n), history, story.Geschmack, *m.* (-es), taste.geschult, *f. f.*, schulen, trained, cultivated.Geschwister, *pl.*, brothers and sisters.Gesellschaft, *f.* (-en), company, party.Gesicht, *n.* (-es; -er and -e), face, countenance; Gesichter, faces; Gesichte, visions.Geiviele, *m.* (-n; -n), playmate.

gestern, yesterday.

Gesundheit, *f.* health.

gewinnen (115), to win, gain.

gewiß (*gen.*), certain (et; certainly, surely).

gewissenhaft, conscientious.

Gewitter, *n.* (-s; —), thunder-storm, storm.Gewohnheit, *f.* (-en), custom, habit; die — haben, to be accustomed to.

gewöhnlich, usual, customary; generally, usually.

gießen (123), to pour

glänzen, to shine, glitter.  
 glänzend, brilliant.  
 Glas, *n.* (-es; "er), glass.  
 glatt, smooth, slippery.  
 glauben (*dat. of pers.*), to believe; think.  
 gleich, at once, at the same time, immediately, directly; so—, immediately, etc.  
 gleichen (118), to be like, resemble.  
 gleiten (118), to glide, slip.  
 glimmen (123), to glimmer.  
 Glück, *n.* (-es), (good) fortune, good luck; success; — wünschen, to congratulate, wish success to.  
 glücklich, happy, fortunate; successfully.  
 Gold, *n.* (-es), gold.  
 golden, of gold, golden.  
 Gouverneur', *m.* (-es; -e), governor.  
 graben (186), to dig.  
 Grad, *m.* (-es; -e), degree.  
 Graf, *m.* (-en; -en), count, earl.  
 Gräfin, *f.* (-nen), countess.  
 Gramma'tisch, *f.* (-en), grammar.  
 Gras, *n.* (-es; "er), grass.  
 gratulieren (*dat.*), to congratulate.  
 greifen (118), to grasp.  
 Griechenland, *n.* (-s), Greece.  
 groß ("er, *sup.* größt), great, large, big, tall.  
 grün, green.  
 gründlich, thoroughly.  
 grüßen, to greet, salute, bow to; Ihr Freund läßt Sie —, your friend wishes to be remembered to you.  
 Gitarre, *f.* (-n), guitar.  
 gut, *adj.*, good; kind; *adv.*, well; so — sein und, to be so kind as to.  
 Gutes, *n.*, good (thing).

## H.

Haar, *n.* (-es; -e), hair.  
 haben (24), to have; Recht —, to be (in the) right; Illrecht —, to be (in the) wrong; was — Sie? what is the matter with you? vor—, to intend, propose, purpose.  
 Hafen, *m.* (-s; "t), port, harbour, haven.  
 Hafer, *m.* (-s), oats.  
 Hagelstein, *n.* (-es; "er), hail-stone.  
 hageln, to hail.  
 halb, half; — drei, half past two.  
 Hälfte, *f.* (-n), half.  
 halten (188), to hold, think; — für, consider; ich halte viel von ihm, I think highly of him (esteem, value him highly).  
 Hand, *f.* ("e), hand.  
 Händler, *m.* (-s; —), dealer, shop-keeper.  
 Handschuh, *m.* (-es; -e), glove.  
 hangen (188), to hang, be suspended; das Bild hängt, the picture is hanging.  
 hängen, to hang, suspend.  
 Harfe, *f.* (-n), harp; HarfensBegleitung, accompaniment on the harp.  
 hart ("er), hard.  
 Hase, *m.* (-n; -n), hare.  
 hassen, to hate.  
 hauen (188), to hew.  
 Hauptstadt, *f.* ("e), capital.  
 Hauss, *n.* (-es; "er), louse; zu Hause, at home; nach Hause, home.  
 heben (131), to raise, lift.  
 Heer, *n.* (-es; -e), army.  
 heftig, violent, heavy; heftig (of rain).  
 Heide, *m.* (-n; -n), heathen.  
 Heinrich, *m.* (-s), Henry.

heiser, hoarse.  
 heiß, hot.  
 heißen (188), to be called, be named; mean, signify; wie heißt das auf Deutsch? how do you say that in German? wie heißt? what is the name of? ich heiße M., my name is A.  
 Held, *m.* (-en; -en), hero.  
 helfen (159; *dat.*), to help.  
 hell, bright; brightly.  
 herabsteigen (120; sein), to descend.  
 herauskommen (167; sein), to come out.  
 Herbst, *m.* (-es; -e), autumn.  
 Herde, *f.* (-n), flock, herd.  
 hereinkommen (167; sein), to come in.  
 Herr, *m.* (-n; -en), master; gentleman; Lord; Mr.; Ihr — Vater, your father.  
 Herz, *n.* (-ens; -en), heart.  
 herzlich, heartily, exceedingly.  
 Heu, *n.* (-es), hay.  
 heute, to-day; — Abend, this evening; — Morgen, this morning; — über vierzehn Tage, this day fortnight; heutzutage, now-a-days.  
 hier, here; — u. Lande, in this country.  
 hiermit, herewith, with this.  
 Himmel, *m.* (-s; —), heaven, sky.  
 hinaufgehen (188; sein), to go up.  
 hinaussehen (181), to look out (at the window, zum Fenster).  
 hineingehen (188; sein), to go in.  
 hingehen (188; sein), to go (hence); go anywhere.  
 hinter (65), behind.  
 Hitze, *f.* heat.

**hoch** *closes c in inflection;*  
*compar. höher, sup. höchst*,  
high.

**hoffen**, to hope.

**hoffentlich**, *adv.*, (it is) to be  
hoped, I hope.

**Hoffnung**, *f.* (-en), hope.

**höher**, *compar.* of **hoch**,  
*which see*.

**holen**, (to go and) bring,  
fetch; get; ~r lassen, to  
send for.

**Holz**, *n.* (-es), wood.

**hören**, to hear; listen; sagen  
—, to hear say, hear.

**hübsch**, pretty.

**Huhn**, *n.* (-es; "er), fowl;  
chicken.

**Hund**, *m.* (-es; -e), dog.

**hundert**, hundred.

**Hundert**, *n.* (-s; -e), hun-  
dred.

**Hunger**, *m.* (-s), hunger; ich  
habe —, I am hungry.

**hungrig**, hungry.

**Hut**, *m.* (-es; "e), hat.

**hüten**, to guard, keep.

### 3.

**ich**, I.

**ihr**, *pers. pron.*, to her, her  
(*dat. sing.*); you (*nom.*  
*pl.*).

**ihr**, *ihre*, *ihr*, *poss. adj.*, her;  
its; their.

**Ihr**, *Ihre*, *Ihr*, *poss. adj.*,  
your.

<b>ihrer</b> , <i>ihre</i> ,	} <i>poss. pron.</i> , hers; its; theirs.
<b>ihrer</b> , <i>ihrer</i> ,	
<b>ihrer</b> ( <i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>daß</i> ),	
<b>ihrer</b> ( <i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>daß</i> ),	

<b>Ihrer</b> , <i>Ihre</i> ,	} <i>poss.</i> <i>pron.</i> , yours.
<b>Ihrer</b> , <i>Ihrer</i> ,	
<b>Ihre</b> ( <i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>daß</i> ),	
<b>Ihrige</b> ( <i>der</i> , <i>die</i> , <i>daß</i> ),	

**Shretwillen**, for your sake.  
*im*, *contr. for in dem*.

**immer**, always: at all times;  
**noch** —, still.

**in** (*65*; *dat. or acc.*), in, at;  
into, to.

**indem**', while, whilst.

**innerhalb** (*gen.*), on the in-  
side, within.

**Instrument'**, *n.* (-es; -e),  
(musical) instrument.

**interessant'**, interesting.

**irgend einer**, — jemand, any  
one.

**Irland**, *n.* (-s), Ireland.

**Italien**, *n.* (-s), Italy.

### 3.

**Ja**, yes, indeed, certainly, you  
know; did I (etc.) not; ja-  
wohl, yes indeed, yes to be  
sure, yes certainly.

**jagen**, to hunt, chase, pursue.  
**Jagen**, *n.* (-s), hunting (act  
of).

**Jäger**, *m.* (-s; —), hunter,  
huntsman.

**Jahr**, *n.* (-es; -e), year.

**Ja'tob**, *m.* (-s), James.

**jawohl**, *see ja*.

**je**, ever (at any time); the (*be-  
fore comparative degree*,  
126, 4); — **zwei**, two at a  
time.

**jedenfalls**, certainly, at all  
events.

**jeder**, **jede**, **jedes**, every,  
each, every one, any.

**jedermann**, everyone, every-  
body.

**jemals**, ever, at any time.

**jemand**, somebody, some one,  
any body, any one.

**jener**, **jene**, **jenen**, that, that  
one, that person; yonder;  
the former.

**jenen**, on the other side,  
beyond.

**jetzt**, now, at present.

**Johann'**, *m.* (-s), John.

**Ju'gend**, *f.*, youth.

**Ju'li**, *m.* (-s), July.

**jung** ("er), young.

**Junge**, *m.* (-n; -n), boy,  
lad.

**Jüngling**, *m.* (-es; -e),

young man, youth.

**Ju'ni**, *m.* (-s), June.

### 8.

**Kaffee**, *m.* (-s), coffee.

**Kaiser**, *m.* (-s; —), emperor.

**Kalbskotelette**, *f.* (-n), veal-  
cutlet.

**kalt** ("er), cold.

**Kamin'**, *n.* (-es; -e), fire-  
place.

**Kardinal'**, *m.* (-s; -e), car-  
dinal.

**Karl**, *m.* (-s), Charles.

**Karte**, *f.* (-n), card.

**Kartoffel**, *f.* (-n), potato.

**Käse**, *m.* (-s; —), cheese.

**käufen**, to buy.

**kaum**, hardly, scarcely.

**keinen** (*App. L.*), to chide.

**kein**, **keine**, **kein**, no, not a,  
not any.

**keiner**, **keine**, **keine**, *pron.*,  
nobody, not anybody, no  
one, none.

**Kellner**, *m.* (-s; —), waiter

**kennen** (*v.*), to know, be ac-  
quainted with.

**Kenntnis**, *f.* (-e), know-  
ledge; *pl.* acquirements,  
attainments.

**Kind**, *n.* (-es; -er), child.

**Kirche**, *f.* (-n), church.

**klar**, clear.

**Klasse**, *f.* (-n), class.

**Klassiker**, *m.* (-s; —), classic  
writer, classic.

**Klavier'**, *n.* (-s; -e), piano.

**Kleid**, *n.* (-es; -er), dress;  
*pl.* clothes

**klein**, small, little.

**kleben** (*App. L.*), to cleave.

klimmen (123), to climb.  
 klingeln, to ring (said of small bells): es klingelt, there is a ring (at the door, etc.).

klingen (144), to sound.  
 Knabe, *m.* (-n; -n), boy.  
 Knall, *m.* (-es; -e), loud quick sound; clap, thunder-clap.

Knecht, *m.* (-es; -e), (farm) servant, man-of-all-work.  
 kneten (118), to pinch.  
 kneipen (App. L.), to pinch.  
 Knochen, *m.* (-s; —), bone.  
 Koch, *m.* (-es; "e), cook.  
 Komet', *m.* (-en; -en), comet.

kommen (167; sein), to come; arrive; — lassen, to send for; wie kommt das? how is that?

König, *m.* (-es; -e), king.  
 Königin, *f.* (-nen), queen.  
 Königstraße, *f.* King-street.  
 können (196-202; ability, etc.), to be able, can; know, be versed in, know how.

Konzert', *n.* (-es; -e), concert

Kopf, *m.* (-es; "e), head.  
 Korb, *m.* (-es; "e), basket.  
 Kosten, *pl.*, expenses.  
 kosten (*acc. of pers. and of thing*), to cost.

kran! ("er), ill; sick; Kranke, (*adj. subst.*), sick person, patient.

Krankheit, *f.* (-en), disease, illness.

Krieg, *m.* (-es; -e), war.  
 kriechen (123), to creep.

Kritiker, *m.* (-s; —), critic.  
 Küche, *f.* (-n), kitchen.

Kuh, *f.* ("e), cow.  
 Kunst, *f.* ("e), art.

Künstler, *m.* (-s; —), artist.  
 kurz ("er), short.

fürzlich, not long ago, lately, recently.

Autofahrer, *m.* (-s; —), coachman, driver.

## 2.

laden (*gen. or über + acc.*), to laugh (at).

Lachs, *m.* (-es; -e), salmon.  
 laden (186), to load; invite.

Laden, *m.* (-s; — and "n), window-shutter (*pl.* —); shop, store (*pl.* "n).

Land, *n.* (-es; "er and -e), land, country; country (opposed to town); auf dem —, in the country; auf's — gehen, to go into the country; zu —, by land; hier zu —, in this country.

Landchaft, *f.* (-en), landscape.

lang ("er), long.

lange, *adv.* long, a long time or while, for a long time; so —, so long as; er ist nicht hier gewesen, he has not been here for a long time; er ist nicht — hier gewesen, he has not been here long.

langsam, slow; slowly.

langst, long ago, long since.

Lärm, *m.* (-es), noise.

lassen (188; 200, 7), to let, allow; have (a thing done); fagen —, to send word; kommen —, to send for; ich lasse das Buch einbinden, I am having the book bound; es läßt sich nicht leugnen, it cannot be denied.

Laster, *n.* (-s; —), vice.

Latein, *n.* (-s), Latin.

Lauf, *m.* (-es; "e), course.

laufen (188; sein), to run.

läuten, to ring (of large bells).  
 toll.

leben, to live; be alive.

Leben, *n.* (-s; —), life.

Lebewohl, *n.* (-s), farewell, adieu.

leder, *n.* (-s; —), leather.

legen, to lay, put, place, set.

Lehrer, *m.* (-s; —), teacher, master.

leicht, light, easy; easily, readily.

leid (*only used as pred. with sein and thun*), sorry, grieved; es ist, es thut mir —, I am sorry.

leiden (118), to suffer; an etwas —, to suffer from anything.

leider, alas! unfortunately!

leihen (120), to lend.

Leisten, *m.* (-s; —), (shoemaker's) last.

leisten, to accomplish.

Lektion', *f.* (-en), lesson

lernen, to learn, study.

lesen (181), to read.

lesen, *n.* (-s), (act of) reading.

lest, last, final.

Leute, *pl.* (*no sing.*), people, persons.

Licht, *n.* (-es; -er and -e), light.

lieb, dear.

Liebe, *f.* love, affection; — zu, love of.

lieben, to love.

lieber (*comp. of gern*); *conj.*, rather; ich gehe —, I prefer to walk.

Lied, *n.* (-es; -er), song.

liegen (181; sein, haben), to lie; be; be situated.

link, left.

links, to (or on) the left.

loben, to praise.

Loch, *n.* (-es; "er), hole.

Löffel, *m.* (-s; —), spoon.

Lohengrin, *m.* (-s), name of an opera by Wagner

loß, loose, slack; was ist —? what is the matter?

lösen, to free, redeem; ein Billet —, buy a ticket.

lospringen (144; sein; auf + acc.), to spring upon, leap upon.

Louise, *f.* (-n), Louisa.

Löwe, *m.* (-n; -n), lion.

Ludwig, *m.* (-s), Louis.

Luft, *f.* ("c), air, atmosphere.

lügen (131), to lie, utter a falsehood.

Lügner, *m.* (-s; —), liar.

lustig, merry; merrily; sich über einen — machen, to make sport of one.

## M.

machen, to make; arrange; cause, give; be (in arithm. calculations); ich mache mir nichts daraus, I care nothing for it; eine Zeereise —, to take a voyage; einen Spaziergang —, to take a walk.

Mädchen, *n.* (-s; —), girl.

Magd, *f.* ("c), maid, maid-servant.

Mai, *m.* (-es or -en), May.

Mal, *n.* (-es; -e), time (occasions); zum letzten —, for the last time.

malen, to paint.

Maler, *m.* (-s; —), painter.

Malerei, *f.* (art of) painting.

man, *pron.*, one, we, you, they, people; — sagt, they say, people say; it is said.

mancher, manche manches, *adj. and pron.*, many a.

Mangel, *m.* (-s), want.

Mann, *m.* (-es; "er), man.

Mantel, *m.* (-e; "s), cloak, mantle.

Margarete, *f.* (-s), Margaret.

Marie, *f.* (-n), Mary.

Mark, *f.* (—), mark (a coin = 100 Pfennig or about 25 cents).

Markt, *m.* (-es; "c), market, mart; marchieren (sein or haben), to march.

Mars, *m.* (-es), March.

Masern, *pl.*, measles.

Mathematik, *f.*, mathematics.

Matrose, *m.* (-n; -n), sailor.

Maus, *f.* ("c), mouse.

Mehl, *n.* (-es), flour.

mehr, more; nicht —, no longer, not now.

mehrere, several; mehrere, several things, a good deal.

mehrmals, several times.

meiden (120), to avoid.

Meile, *f.* (-n), mile (German), league.

mein, meine, mein, my.

meine (der, die, das), mine.

meinen, to think, be of opinion, suppose, mean; das sollte ich —, I should think so (*emphatic*).

meinetwegen, (um) meiner: willen, for my sake; for all I care.

meine (der, die, das), mine.

Meinung, *f.* (-en), opinion.

meist (*superl.* of viel), most; am —en, most, most of all.

Meister, *m.* (-s; —), master.

messen (124), to milk.

Melodie, *f.* (-n), melody, tune; air.

Menge, *f.* (-n), great quantity or number.

Mensch, *m.* (-en; -en), a human being, man; person; *pl.*, mankind, people; messen (131), to measure.

Messer, *n.* (-s; —), knife.

Metall, *n.* (-es; -e), metal.

mieten, to rent.

Milch, *f.*, milk.

Million, *f.* (-en), million.

Minute, *f.* (-n), minute.

Minutenzeiger, *m.* (-s; —), minute-hand.

mir (*dat.* of ich) to me.

mit (40), with; by (in multiplication).

Mittag, *m.* (-es; -e), mid-day, noon; zu — essen, to dine.

Mittagsessen, *n.* (-s; —), dinner.

mitten, in the middle or midst of; — im Winter, in the middle or winter.

Mittwoch, *m.* (-es), Wednesday.

mögen (116-202; 1 reference, liking), to be able; may; like; ich mag das nicht, I do not like that; ich möchte, I should like.

möglich, possible; das ist gern —, that is very probable.

Monarch, *m.* (-en; -en), monarch.

Monat, *m.* (-es; -e), month.

Montag, *m.* (-s; -e), Monday.

Morgen, *m.* (-s; —), morning; guten —, good morning; des —s (or morgens), in the morning.

morgen, to-morrow; — früh, to-morrow morning.

müde, tired, weary.

Mühe, *f.*, trouble; nicht der — wert, not worth while.

Mühle, *f.* (-n), mill.

multiplizieren, to multiply.

Musik, *f.*, music.

musikalisch, musical.

musen (106-202; necessity), to be obliged or forced, must.

Mut, *m.* (-es), mood, courage, spirit; mir ist schlecht zu —, I feel ill; frohen —es, cheerful.

Mutter, *f.* ("c), mother.

## N.

nach (46), after; according to; by (of time-piece); past (of hour of day); to (before proper names of places); — Hause, home.  
 Nachbar, *m.* (-s and -n; -n), neighbour.  
 nachdem', *conj.*, after.  
 nachgehen (188; sein), to go after; to go or be too slow (of a time-piece).  
 Nachmittag, *m.* (-es; -e), afternoon; des —s, in the afternoon.  
 Nachrichten', *f.* (-en), news.  
 nächst (*superl.* of nah), next.  
 Nächste, *m.* (*adj. subst.*), fellow-creature, neighbour.  
 nächstens', shortly, soon, very soon.  
 Nacht, *f.* ("e), night.  
 nah, (näher, nächst), near.  
 Nähe, *f.*, nearness; neighbourhood; in meiner —, near me; in my neighbourhood.  
 Name, *m.* (-n; -n), name, title.  
 natürlich, naturally, of course, I suppose.  
 neben (65), beside, besides; near, alongside of, by.  
 nebst (51), together with, including.  
 Nefje, *m.* (-n; -n), nephew.  
 nehmen (167), to take; sich in Acht —, to take care, beware.  
 nein, no.  
 nennen (90), to call, name.  
 netto, net (*commercial term*).  
 neu, new.  
 neulich, lately, the other day, not long ago.  
 neunzehn, eight and a half.  
 nicht, not; — mehr, no longer; — wahr? is (it, etc.) not (so)?

nicht (indecl.), nothing.  
 nie, never.  
 Niederlande (die), *pl.*, The Netherlands.  
 niemand, nobody, no one, no person, not anybody, etc.  
 noch, still, yet, even; — ein, one more, another; — etw., something (anything) more; — einmal, over again; — heute, before the end of the day, before the day is over; — immer, up to the present time, still; — vor vierzehn Tagen, only a fortnight ago.  
 Nord'eisenbahn, *f.* (-en), Northern-Railway.  
 nötig, necessary.  
 November, *m.* (-s), November.  
 Numero, *n.* (-s), number.  
 nur, only, just.  
 nutz, *f.* ("e), nut.  
 nützlich, useful.

## O.

ob, whether, if.  
 oben, above, up-stairs; nach —, upward.  
 obgleich', although.  
 oder, or.  
 Ofen, *m.* (-s; "e), stove.  
 offen, open.  
 Offizier', *m.* (-es; -e), officer.  
 öffnen (sich), to open.  
 oft ("er), often, frequently.  
 Oheim, *m.* (-es; -e), uncle.  
 ohne (34), without; but for.  
 Onkel, *m.* (-s; —), uncle.

## P.

Palast, *m.* (-es; "e), palace.  
 Pantoffel, *m.* (-s; -n), slipper.  
 Papier', *n.* (-es; -e), paper.  
 Papst, *m.* (-es; "e), pope.  
 Parir', *n.* (von —), Paris.  
 passend, fit, suitable.

pfeifen (118), to whistle.  
 Pfennig, *m.* (-es; -e), the one hundredth part of a mark), penny.  
 Pferd, *n.* (-es; -e), horse.  
 Pferdebahn, *f.* (-en), tramway, tram; street-cars, horse-cars.  
 Pflaume, *f.* (-n), plum.  
 pflegen (*weak*), to attend to; to be accustomed, wont; — (*strong*, App. L.), to practise, exercise.  
 Pfund, *n.* (-es; -e), pound.  
 Philosophie', *f.* (-n), philosophy.  
 Plan, *m.* (-s; -e or "e), plan, design.  
 Planet', *m.* (-en; -en), planet.  
 Platz, *m.* (-es; "e), place; — nehmen, to sit down, be seated.  
 Platzregen, *m.* (-s; —), shower, down-pour.  
 plaudern, to chat, talk.  
 Portion', *f.* (-en), portion, plate (of meat, etc.).  
 Post, *f.* (-en), post, post-office.  
 Postbote, *m.* (-n; -n), postman.  
 prächtig, magnificent.  
 Preis, (-es; -e), price; prize.  
 preisen (120), to praise.  
 Prozent, *n.* (-es; -e), per cent.  
 Professor, *m.* (-s; -en), professor.  
 promovieren, to take a degree, graduate.  
 Publikum, *n.* (-s), public; audience.  
 Punkt, *m.* (-es; -e), point; — zehn Uhr, at ten o'clock precisely.  
 Pünktlichkeit, punctuality



## Q.

Qua'berstein, *m.* (-eß; -e), cut-stone, freestone.  
quellen (124; fein), to gush.

## R.

Rabatt, *m.* (-eß; -e), discount, abatement.  
Rand, *m.* (-es; "er), edge, rim, brim.  
Rat, *m.* (-eß), counsel, advice.  
raten (188), to counsel, advise.  
Rauch, *m.* (-eß), smoke.  
Raup, *f.* (-n), caterpillar.  
Rechnen, *n.* (-s), arithmetic.  
Rechnung, *f.* (-en), account, bill, reckoning; calculation; ein Strich durch die —, disappointment; schreib' Sie das auf meine —, charge that to me.  
recht, right.  
Recht, *n.* (*indecl.*), right; — haben, to be right, be in the right.  
rechts, to (on) the right.  
rechtzeitig, at the right time, punctually.  
Rede, *f.* (-n), speech; oration.  
reden, to speak, talk.  
Reformation', *f.* (-en), reformation.  
Regen, *m.* (-s), rain.  
Regentropfen, *m.* (-s; —), drop of rain.  
regieren, to reign, rule, govern.  
Regierung, *f.* (-en), government, reign; unter der —, in the reign (of).  
Regiment', *n.* (-es; -er), regiment.  
regnen, to rain.  
reiben (120), to rub.  
reich, rich, wealthy.  
reichen, to reach, hand

reif, ripe.

Reise, *f.* (-n), journey, voyage; eine — machen, to take a journey.  
Reisefasten, *pl.*, travelling-expenses.  
reisen (sein and haben), to travel, journey, go.  
Reisende (*adj. subst.*), traveller.  
reißen (118), to tear, pull.  
reiten (118; fein), to ride.  
rennen (99; fein), to run, race.  
Restauration', *f.* (-en), eating-house, restaurant.  
retten, to save, rescue; ich rettete ihm das Leben, I saved his life.  
reuen (*impers.*), to repent; es reut mich (*gen.*), I repent (of).  
Rheumatismus, *m.* (*gen.* —), rheumatism.  
richtig, right, correct; correctly; — gehen, to be correct (of a time-piece); auf die — e Weise, in the right way.  
Richtung, *f.* (-en), direction.  
riechen (123), to smell.  
Riese, *m.* (-n; -n), giant.  
Rintfleisch, *n.* (-es), beef.  
Ring, *m.* (-es; -e), ring.  
ringen (144), to wring.  
rinnen (158), to run, flow.  
Reid, *m.* (-es; "e), coat.  
Roman', *m.* (-s; -e), romance, novel.  
Römer, *m.* (-s; —), Roman (*subst.*).  
rot, *adj.* ("er), red.  
Rotfärbchen, *n.* (-s; —), I Intl. Red (Riding) Hood.  
Rotwein, *m.* (-es), red-wine.  
Rübe, *f.* (-n), turnip; gelbe —, carrot.  
Rubin', *m.* (-es; -e), ruby

rubern, to row.

rufen (188), to call.  
ruhig, quiet.  
Rubin, *m.* (-es), praise.  
rund, round.  
Ruße, *m.* (-n; -n), Russian.

## Z.

Zaal, *m.* (-es; Zäle), hall.  
Zack, *f.* (-n), thing, matter, affair, business; bist du deiner — gewiß, are you certain of your information, etc.  
zagen, to say, tell; — hören, to hear say, hear.  
Zahne, *f.*, cream.  
zammeln, complete (of literary works).  
Zant Lorenz, *m.*, St. Lawrence.  
Zängerin, *f.* (-nen), (female) singer.  
Zara, *f.* (-s), Sarah.  
Zag, *m.* (-es; "e), sentence.  
zauen (123), to drink (of beasts).  
zaugen (App. I.), to suck.  
Zehade(n), *m.* (-ns; "n), damage, injury, harm, mischief; es ist zehade, it is a pity.  
Zehaler, *m.* (-s; —), shepherd.  
zeshen (186), to create.  
zeshen (123), to sound, resound.  
Zehalter, *m.* (-s; —), wicket, ticket-office.  
zeshen (ich; *gen.* or über + acc.), to be ashamed.  
zeshen ("er), sharp.  
zeshen (123), to separate.  
zeshen (120; *acc.*), to shine; appear, seem.  
zeshen (153), to scold.  
zeshen (*dat.* of person and *acc.* of thing), to give, make a present of, present,

jsheren (131, B.), to shear.  
 jshiden, to send.  
 jshieben (131), to shove, push.  
 jshießen (123), to shoot.  
 Schiff, *n.* (-es; -e), ship, vessel.  
 Schild, *n.* (-es; -er), sign-board.  
 Schildkröte, *f.* (-n), tortoise.  
 schinden (App. L.), to flay.  
 Schlacht, *f.* (-en), battle.  
 schlafen (188), to sleep; sich — legen, to retire to rest, go to bed.  
 Schlaftrock, *m.* (-es; "e), dressing-gown.  
 Schlafzimmer, *n.* (-s; —), bedroom.  
 schlagen (186), to beat, strike.  
 schlecht, bad; badly.  
 schleichen (118; fein), to slink, sneak.  
 schleifen (118), to sharpen, grind.  
 schleifen (App. L.), to slit.  
 schließen (123), to lock, shut, close; conclude, finish.  
 schlimm, bad.  
 schlingen (144), to sling.  
 Schlitten, *m.* (-s; —), sleigh.  
 Schlittschuhlaufen, *n.* (-s), (act of) skating.  
 Schloss, *n.* (-es; "er), castle, palace.  
 schmecken, to taste, relish; wie schmeckt Ihnen dieses? how do you like (the taste of) this?  
 Schmeichelei, *f.*, flattery.  
 schmeicheln (*dat.*), to flatter.  
 schmeißen (118), to throw, fling.  
 schmelzen (124), to melt, smelt.  
 Schmerz, *m.* (-es or -ein; -en), pain.  
 schnauben (App. L.), to snort.  
 Schnee, *m.* (-s), snow.  
 schneiden (118), to cut; reap;

sich in die Hand —, to cut one's hand.  
 Schneider, *m.* (-s; —), tailor.  
 schneien, to snow.  
 schnell, quick; quickly.  
 Schnellzug, *m.* (-es; "e), express-train.  
 schon, already, as early as, readily, easily, indeed; — lange, for a long time (past).  
 schön, fine, beautiful, handsome.  
 Schönheit, *f.* (-en), beauty.  
 Schotte, *m.* (-n; -n), Scotchman.  
 schrauben (App. L.), to screw.  
 erschrecken (167), to be startled.  
 schreiben (120), to write (to, *dat. or an + acc. of pers.*).  
 schreien (120), to cry, scream, shout.  
 schreiten (118; fein), to stride, step, stalk.  
 Schriftsteller, *m.* (-s; —), writer, author.  
 Schritt, *m.* (-es; -e), stride, step, pace.  
 Schubert, *m.* (-s), Schubert (German musician).  
 Schuh, *m.* (-es; -e), shoe.  
 Schuld, *f.*, guilt; (-en), debt; ichuld an etwas sein, to be to blame for anything.  
 Schule, *f.* (-n), school.  
 Schüler, *m.* (-s; —), pupil, scholar, school-boy.  
 Schuster, *m.* (-s; —), shoemaker, cobbler.  
 schütteln, to shake.  
 schwach ("er), weak, infirm.  
 Schwäche, *f.* (-n), weakness, infirmity.  
 Schwager, *m.* (-s; "e), brother-in-law.  
 Schwalbe, *f.* (-n), swallow.  
 schwären (App. L.), to fester.  
 schwarz ("er), black.

schweigen (120), to be silent, keep silence.  
 Schweigen, *n.* (-s), keeping silence, (act of) silence.  
 Schweiz (die, *gen.* der Schweiz), Switzerland.  
 schwellen (124; fein), to swell.  
 schwer, heavy, hard, difficult.  
 schwerlich, hardly, scarcely.  
 Schwester, *f.* (-n), sister.  
 schwimmen (158), to swim.  
 Schwimmen, *n.* (-s), swimming (act of).  
 schwinden (144), to vanish.  
 schwingen (144), to swing; sich —, to leap, bound.  
 schwören (131), to swear.  
 schwür, sultry, close.  
 See, *m.* (-s; -en), lake.  
 Seereise, *f.* (-n), voyage.  
 Segelschiff, *n.* (-es; -e), sailing-vessel, ship.  
 sehen (181), to see, perceive; look, behold.  
 sehr, very, very much, exceedingly.  
 sein, seine, fein, his, its, one's.  
 sein (52; fein), to be; (*as aux.*), to be, have.  
 seit (46), since; — wann, since when, how long; — acht Tagen, for a week past.  
 seitdem', *conj.*, since.  
 selbst, self; even.  
 senden (99), to send.  
 Serviette, *f.* (-n), table-napkin.  
 setzen, to set, put, place; sich —, to seat one's self, sit down.  
 sich, *pron. refl. acc. and dat.*, one's self, himself, herself, itself, themselves; to himself, themselves, etc.; *re-cipr.*, one another.  
 sie, she, it; her, it; they; them.  
 Sie (*for du and ihr*), you.

sieden, seven.

Seib'entel, *n.* (-s; —), seven<sup>th</sup> part.

sieden (123), to boil.

Silber, *n.* (-s), silver.

singen (144), to sing.

sinken (144; sein), to sink.

sinnen (158), to reflect.

sitzen (181), to sit.

Slave, *m.* (-n; -n), slave.

Smaragd, *m.* (-es; -e), emerald.

so, so, thus, in such a manner, indeed (*not translated in the apodosis to a conditional clause*); —eben, just, just now; —ein, eine, ein, such a.

sobald, as soon as.

sofort, immediately, directly.

sogar, even.

Sohn, *m.* (-es; "e), son.

old(er), *adj. and pron.*, such.

Soldat', *m.* (-en; -en), soldier.

sollen (196-202; duty or obligation), to be in duty bound, be to; shall; be said.

Sommer, *m.* (-s; —), summer.

sondern (*after negatives only*), but.

Sonnabend, *m.* (-es; -e), Saturday.

Sonne, *f.* (-n), sun.

Sonntag, *m.* (-es; -e), Sunday.

sonst, else, otherwise; —noch, any more, any other, any besides.

sonstig, other, different.

Sophie, *f.* (-ns), Sophia.

sorgfältig, careful; carefully.

spät, late.

spazieren (*also* —gehen, 188), to take a walk, go for a

walk, go walking; —fahren (189), to go for a drive.

Spaziergang, *m.* (-es; "e), walk; einen —machen, to take a walk.

Speck, *m.* (-es), bacon.

speien (120), to spit.

Preisfahrt, *f.* (-n), bill of fare.

essen, to eat, dine.

Sperling, *m.* (-es; -e), sparrow.

spielen, to play.

spinnen (158), to spin.

spalten (App. L.), to split.

Sprache, *f.* (-n), language.

Sprachtalent', *n.* (-es; -e), talent for (learning) languages.

Sprachstudium, *n.* (-s; -ten), linguistic study.

sprechen (167), to speak, say, tell; to speak or talk to or with.

Sprechen, *n.* (-s), speaking (act of), speech.

Spruchwort, *n.* (-es; "er), proverb.

sprossen (123), to sprout.

springen (144; sein), to spring, leap, jump.

St. Lorenz, *m.*, St. Lawrence.

Staat, *m.* (-es; -en), state.

Stadt, *f.* ("e), town, city.

Stadt'thor, *n.* (-es; -e), town-gate, city-gate.

Stadt'uhr, *f.* (-en), town-clock.

Stahl, *m.* (-es), steel.

stand, *m.* (-es; "e), stand; condition; in —e sein, to be completed, be done; im —e sein, to be able, be in a position to.

stark (er), strong, powerful; severe.

statt'happen (144), to take place, happen.

stechen (167), to sting.

stecken (App. L.), to stick.

stehen (186; sein or haben), to stand, be; be situated.

stehlen (167), to steal.

steigen (120; sein; auf + acc.), to climb, mount, ascend, descend, get down or off, alight.

Stelle, *f.* (-n), place, spot.

stellen, to put, place, set upright.

sterben (159; sein), to die.

streuen (App. L.), to scatter.

still, still; quiet.

Stimme, *f.* (-n), voice.

stinken (App. L.), to stink.

Stock, *m.* (-es; "e), stick, cane.

storen, to interrupt, disturb, trouble.

stoßen (188), to push, kick, strike, bump, knock.

Straße, *f.* (-n), street, road.

streichen (118), to stroke.

streiten (118), to quarrel.

streng, severe; severely.

Streich, *m.* (-es; -e), stroke, dash; ein — durch die Rechnung, disappointment.

Strom, *m.* (-es; "e), stream, current.

Strumpf, *m.* (-es; "e), stocking.

Stück, *m.* (-es; -e), piece.

stückchen, *n.* (-s; —), little piece, morsel, bit.

Student', *m.* (-en; -en), student.

Studium, *n.* (-s; Studior), study.

studieren, to study.

studieren, *n.* (-s), studying (act of).

Stuhl, *m.* (-es; "e), chair.

Stunde, *f.* (-n), hour, lesson.

Stundenteiger, *m.* (-s; —), hour-hand.

Sturm, *m.* (-eš; "e), storm, tempest.

subtrahieren. to subtract.

suchen, to seek, search, look for.

Suppe, *f.* (-n), soup, broth.

### Š.

ta'beln, to blame, find fault with.

Tag, *m.* (-eš; -e), day; acht —e, a week; seit acht —en, for a week past; ein — um den andern, every other (alternate) day; alle drei —e, every third day.

Ta'geſan'bruch, *m.* (-eš), day-break.

Tante, *f.* (-n), aunt.

tapfer, brave, valiant; bravely, valiantly.

Tarſertheit, *f.*, courage, valour.

Taſche, *f.* (-n), pocket.

Taſſe, *f.* (-n), cup.

Tauſer, *m.* (-š; —), diver. tauen, to thaw.

Teil, *m.* (-eš; -e), part, portion.

teilen, to divide, share.

teils, partly, in part; teils ... teils, partly ... partly.

Telegraph', *m.* (-en; -en), telegraph.

Telephon', *n.* (-š; -e), telephone.

Teller, *m.* (-š; —), plate.

Teppich, *m.* (-eš; -e), carpet.

Testament', *n.* (-eš; -e), testament, (last) will.

teuer, dear, costly.

Thal, *n.* (-eš; "er), valley.

Thaler, *m.* (-š; —), dollar.

That, *f.* (-en), deed; exploit, achievement.

thauen, to thaw.

Thée, *m.* (-š), tea.

Themſe, *f.*, Thames.

Ther, *n.* (-eš; -e), gate, gateway.

Thor, *m.* (-en; -en), fool.

Thron, *m.* (-eš; -e), throne. thun (196), to do.

Thür(e), *f.* (-n), door.

Tier, *n.* (-eš; -e), beast, animal.

Tiſch, *m.* (-eš; -e), table.

Titel, *m.* (-š; —), title; mit —, with title (printed on the back).

Tochter, *f.* ("), daughter.

Töchterchen, *n.* (-š; —), little daughter.

Torontoer, *adj.*, (of) Toronto.

tot, dead.

töten, to kill.

träge, idle, lazy, indolent.

tragen (186), to carry.

traurig, sad, sorrowful, melancholy.

Traunng, *f.* (-en), marriage (-ceremony).

treffen (167), to hit, happen upon, meet with; hit upon, fall in with.

treiben (120), to drive.

Treppe, *f.* (-n), stairs, staircase.

treten (181), to tread, step.

tren, faithful, true.

triefen (123), to drop, drip.

trinken (144), to drink.

Trinken, *n.* (-š), (act or habit of) drinking.

Trink'geld, *n.* (-eš; -er), drinking-money, gratuity, tip.

troš (223), in spite of.

trošdem' waš, in spite of what.

Trun'kenbold, *m.* (-eš; -e), drunkard.

Tuch, *n.* (-eš; "er and -e), cloth.

Tu'gend, *f.* (-en), virtue.

### U.

übel, *n.* (-š; —), evil.

über (65), over, above, a. through, by way of; heute — drei Wochen, this day three weeks.

überhaupt', in general, generally; as a matter of fact, at any rate.

ü'bermorgen, the day after tomorrow.

überre'den, to persuade.

überſe'ten, to translate; inš Deutsche —, to translate into German.

ü'berzieher, *m.* (-š; —), overcoat.

übrig, remaining, left over; daš übrige, the remainder, what is left; — bleiben, to be remaining or left.

übung, *f.* (-en), exercise; practice.

Ufer, *n.* (-š; —), bank, shore.

Uhr, *f.* (-en), clock, watch; um vier —, at four o'clock; wie viel — išt eš? what o'clock is it?

unnöš'lich, impossible; ich fann —, I cannot possibly.

Un'recht, *n.* (-eš), wrong; — haben, to be (in the) wrong.

unſer, unſere, unſer, our.

unten, below, down-stairs.

unter (65), under, beneath, below; among; — der Reſierung Eliſabethš, in the reign of Elizabeth.

unterneh'men (167), to undertake.

Unterneh'men, *n.* (-š), enterprise, undertaking.

Unt'erſchied, *m.* (-eš; -e), difference.

Un'wahrheit, *f.* (-en), untruth, falsehood.

un'wahrſcheinlich, improbable.

un'weít (*gen.*), not far from.  
 un'zufrieden, discontented,  
 dissatisfied.  
 ur'teilen, to judge.  
 u. f. w., *abbrev. for* und fo  
 weiter, and so forth, etc.

## B.

Bater, *m.* (-s; "), father.  
 verbergen (159), to conceal,  
 hide.  
 verbrennen (97), to burn, con-  
 sume with fire.  
 verderben (159), to spoil  
 (*intr.*); — (*weak*), to spoil  
 (*tr.*), injure.  
 verbrießen (123), to vex.  
 Vereinigten Staaten (*die*),  
*pl.*, The United States.  
 vergeben's, in vain.  
 vergelten (159), to requite,  
 reward.  
 vergessen (181), to forget.  
 Vergnügen, *n.* (-s), pleasure,  
 delight, amusement.  
 Verhältnis, *n.* (-je's; -je), cir-  
 cumstance.  
 verheiraten (*sich mit*), to  
 marry.  
 verkaufen, to sell; dieses  
 Haus ist zu —, this house is  
 for sale.  
 verlassen (188), to leave, de-  
 sert, quit; sich — auf (+  
*acc.*), to rely upon, depend  
 upon.  
 verfeiden, to render disagree-  
 able, spoil.  
 verletzen, to hurt, wound.  
 verlieren (131), to lose.  
 Verlust, *m.* (-es; -e), loss.  
 vermieten, to let, rent.  
 vermittelst (*gen.*), by means  
 of.  
 verreisen, to go on a jour-  
 ney.  
 verreist, absent on a journey.  
 versammeln, to collect, as-  
 semble.

verschreiben (120), to pre-  
 scribe.  
 verschwenden, to squander,  
 waste.  
 verschwinden (144; *fein*), to  
 disappear, vanish.  
 versprechen (167), to promise.  
 verstehen (186), to under-  
 stand; sich — auf (+ *acc.*),  
 to be a judge (of).  
 verstorben, deceased.  
 versuchen, to try.  
 Verwandte, *m. and f. (adj.*  
*subst.)*, relative.  
 verzeihen (120; *dat.*), to par-  
 don, excuse.  
 Verzeihung, *f.* (-en), pardon,  
 forgiveness; um — bitten,  
 to beg pardon.  
 verzweifeln, to despair.  
 Vetter, *m.* (-s; -n), cousin.  
 viel (*mehr, meist*), much,  
 many, a great deal of; wie  
 — Uhr, what o'clock.  
 vielleicht, perhaps, possibly.  
 vielmal, vielmal's, many  
 times, frequently, often.  
 vier, four.  
 Viertel, *n.* (-s; —), fourth  
 part, quarter.  
 Viertelstun'de, *f.* (-n), quar-  
 ter of an hour.  
 vierzehn, fourteen; — Tage,  
 a fortnight.  
 Violoncell', *n.* (-es; -e), vio-  
 loncello.  
 Vogel, *m.* (-s; "), bird.  
 voll (*gen. or von*), full.  
 voll'en, to finish, complete.  
 von (46), of, from, by, about,  
 concerning.  
 vor (65), before, of, in front  
 of, ago; — acht Tagen, a  
 week ago.  
 vorbei, over, past.  
 vorbeigehen (188), to go by,  
 pass by.  
 vorbereiten (*sich*), to prepare  
 (for, auf + *acc.*).

vorfahren (186; *fein*),  
 drive up to the door, etc.  
 vorgehen (188; *fein*), to go  
 (or be) fast (of a time-  
 piece).  
 vor'gestern, the day before  
 yesterday.  
 vorhaben, to contemplate, in-  
 tend.  
 Vorhang, *m.* (-es; "e), cur-  
 tain.  
 vorig, preceding, last.  
 vorläufig (*adv.*), temporarily,  
 for the present.  
 vorlesen (181; + *dat. of per-*  
*son*), to read to.  
 Vormund, *m.* (-es; "er),  
 guardian.  
 Vorrat, *m.* (-es; "e), stock,  
 provision.  
 vorsichtig, cautious, prudent.  
 Vorstadt, *f.* (-e), suburb.  
 vorstellen, to present, intro-  
 duce.  
 vorteilhaft, advantageous.  
 vorüber, past.  
 vorüberfließen (131; *fein*), to  
 flow past.  
 vorübergehen (188; *fein*), to  
 go past, pass by; am Quai'e  
 —, to go by, go past, the  
 house.  
 vorziehen (131), to prefer

## W.

wachsen (186), to grow.  
 Wagen, *m.* (-s; —), waggon,  
 carriage.  
 wägen (131, B.), to weigh.  
 wählen, to choose, select.  
 wahr, true, real; nicht —?  
 am (I, etc.) not? is it not  
 so?  
 wahren, to last, continue.  
 während (*gen.*: 223), during;  
 while.  
 Wahrheit, *f.* (-en), truth.  
 wahrscheinlich (*adv.*), pro-  
 bably.

Waisenhaus, *n.* (-es; "er), orphan-asylum.

Wald, *m.* (-es; "er), forest, wood.

Wand, *f.* (-e), wall.

Wand(er)er, *m.* (-s; —), traveller.

wann? when?

warm ("er), warm.

warten (auf + acc.), to wait for.

warum, why, wherefore.

was, what, that which, which, that; — für ein, eine, ein, what kind of a, what.

waschen (186), to wash.

Wasser, *n.* (-s; —), water; zu —, by water.

weben (131), to weave.

wechselhaft, changeable.

weden, to wake, awake, waken.

Wek'uhr, *f.* (-en), alarm-clock.

weder, neither; — . . . noch, neither . . . nor.

Weg, *m.* (-es; -e), way, road; sich auf den — machen, to set out, be off.

wegen (*gen.*; 223), on account of, because of, for the sake of, for.

Weib, *n.* (-es; -er), woman; wife.

weiden (118), to yield.

Weide, *f.* (-n), pasturage, pasture.

Weihnachten, *n.*, Christmas.

weil, because.

Wein, *m.* (-es; -e), wine.

weinen, to weep, cry.

Weinfarbe, *f.* (-n), wine-card.

weise, *adj.*, wise.

Weise, *f.* (-n), manner, mode, way; auf diese —, in this way.

weisen (120), to point out, show.

weiß, white.

weit, far.

weiter, farther, further.

Weizen, *m.* (-s; —), wheat.

welcher, welche, welches, *rel.*

*pron.*, who, which, that;

*interrogative adj.*, which?

what?; —, *adj.* (*in exclamations*), what a! what!

Welt, *f.* (-en), world; auf der —, in the world.

wem, *dat.* of wer, to whom?

wenden (99), to turn; sich —, to apply (to, an + acc.).

wenig, little, few.

wenn, when, whenever, as soon as; if; — auch, even if.

wer, who; he who, whoever; who?

werben (150), to sue.

werden (159), to become, grow; (*as aux. of the passive voice*, 112-114), to be; — auch, to become of.

werfen (159), to throw.

Wert, *n.* (-es; -e), work.

wessen, whose; whose?

weshalb, wherefore? why?

Wetter, *n.* (-s), weather; bei diesem —, in this weather.

wider (*acc.*; 34), against, contrary to.

wie, how; how?; — sehr auch, however much.

wieder, again, once more.

wie'dersehen (111), to see again, meet again.

Wie'dersehen, *n.* (-s), meeting again; auf —, good-bye till we meet again.

wiegen (131), to weigh.

Wilhelm, *m.* (-s), William.

Wille, *m.* (-ns), will; wish; um . . . willen (*gen.*), for the sake of.

Wind, *m.* (-es; -e), wind.

winden (144), to wind.

windig, windy.

Winter, *m.* (-s; —), winter.

wir, we.

wirklich, *adv.*, really, truly.

Wirtin, *f.* (-nen), hostess; landlady.

wissen (196), to know (*said of knowledge*); nicht daß ich wüßte, not that I know of

Wissenschaft, *f.* (-en), science.

wissentlich, knowingly.

wo? where; where?

Woche, *f.* (-n), week.

wohl, *pred. adj.*, well (*of health*); mir ist nicht — zu Mut, I do not feel well; —, *adv.*, well, then, indeed, I suppose; ja —, yes, to be sure.

wohnen, to dwell, live, reside.

Wohnung, *f.* (-en), dwelling, house, residence.

wollen (196-202), to will, desire, wish, want, intend, mean, like; — Sie ein Glas Wasser? will you have a glass of water?

woran, whereon, on which, on what, of what.

worauf, whereon, on which, for which, on what.

woher, wherefrom, from what, of what.

worin, wherein, in which, in what.

Wort, *n.* (-es; "er and -e), word.

worüber? about what? at what? over what?

wundern (sich), to wonder, be astonished (at, über + acc.); es wundert mich (*impers.*), I wonder.

Wunsch, *m.* (-es; "e), wish.

wünschen, to wish, desire, want; Glück —, to congratulate, wish success.

Wurm, *m.* (-es; "er), worm.

Wurzel, *f.* (-n), root.

Wut, *f.*, rage, fury.

wütend, furious.

## 3.

zahlen, to pay.

Zahn, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), tooth.

Zahnweh, *n.* (-es), tooth-ache.

zehn, ten.

Zeichen, *n.* (-s; —), sign.

zeigen, to show.

zeihen (120), to convict.

Zeit, *f.* (-en), time; zu allen —en, in all ages.

Zeitung, *f.* (-en), newspaper.

zerreißen (118), to tear (to pieces).

zerrennen (158), to vanish, run away (of liquids).

ziehen (131), to draw; pull, take.

Zimmer, *n.* (-s; —), room.

zu (46), to, at; — meinem Onkel, to my uncle's; — derselben Zeit, at the same time; *adv.*, too; closed, shut.

zubringen (99), to pass, spend (*said of time*).

Zucker, *m.* (-s), sugar.

zuerst, first, first of all.

zufolge (*gen. or dat.*; 223), in consequence of, according to. [*sied.*]

zufrieden, contented, satisfied.

Zug, *m.* (-es; <sup>u</sup>e), train.

zumachen, to shut, close.

zurückbringen (99), to bring back.

zurückbleiben (120; *sein*), to remain behind; remain at home.

zurückkommen (167), to return, come back.

zurücklegen, to put by, lay up.

zusammen, together.

zusammensteigen (188), to collide.

zusenden, to send (*to dat.*).

zuschließen (123), to lock up, fasten, shut.

Zweck, *m.* (-es; -e), aim, object.

zwei, two.

zweitenß, secondly.

zwingen (144), to force.

zwischen (65), between.

zwölf, twelve.

## ENGLISH — GERMAN.

NOTE. — The government of verbs is given only where it differs from English usage.

## A.

able, fähig, geſchickt; to be —, können, 196; im Stande ſein.

about, *prep.* (around), um, 34, 226, (a); (the person), bei, 46, 226, (d); *adv.*, (nearly), ungeſähr; etwa, 226, (b), (c); to be — to, im Begriffe ſein.

above, *prep.*, über, 65.

absent, abweſend; —-mindedly, geſtreut.

abuse, *v.*, mißhan'deln.

accept, annehmen, 167.

accompany, begleiten (*tr.*).

account; on — of, wegen, 223; halb(en), halber, 223;

on that —, deßwegen, deßhalb.

accusation, Anklage, *f.* (-n).  
accuse (of), anſagen (*gen. of thing*), beſchuldigen (*gen. of thing*).

accustomed, gewohnt; to be —, die Gewohnheit haben.

acknowledge, anerkennen, (99).

acquaintance, Bekanntschaft, *f.* (-en); to make the — of, kennen lernen.

acquit (of), loſſprechen (107; *gen. of thing*).

act; to — amiss, miß'haudeln.

add, addieren.

address, *subst.*, Adreſſe, *f.* (-n).

address, *v.*, aureden.

admire, bewundern.

advance, vorrücken (*intr.*).

advantage, Vorteil, *m.* (-es; -e).

advantageous, vor'teilhaft.

advice, Rat, *m.* (-es).

advise, raten (188; *dat.*).

affair, Sache, *f.* (-n).

afraid; to be — (of); ſich fürchten (vor + *dat.*).

after, nach, 46.

afternoon, Nachmittag, *m.* (-es; -e).

afterwards, nachher, hernach, darauf.

again, wieder, nochmals.

against, wider, gegen, 34.

ago, vor (*prep.* + *dat.*), 65;

many years —, vor vielen Jahren; a week — to-day, heute vor acht Tagen.  
agreeable, angenehm.  
ail, fehlen; what —s you? was fehlt Ihnen?  
alas! ach!  
all (the), all, Alles; aller, alle, alles; — the same, einerlei.  
allow, erlauben (*dat.*); lassen, 188; to be —ed, dürfen, 196.  
Alma (river), Alma, *f.*  
almost, fast, beinahe.  
alone, allein.  
along, langſ, entlang (223, 18, 19).  
alphabet, Alphabet, *n.* (—e; —e).  
already, ſchon.  
also, auch.  
always, immer.  
America, Amerika, *n.* (—s).  
amiss; to act —, miß'handeln, 209.  
among, amongst, unter, 65.  
a, an, ein, eine, ein.  
ancient, alt; the —s, die Alten, *pl.*  
and, und.  
anecdote, Anekdote, *f.* (—n).  
angry, böſe; be — at, böſe ſein auf (+ *acc.*).  
animal, Tier, *n.* (—e; —e).  
another (a different one), ein anderer; (one more), noch ein, eine, ein.  
answer, *subst.*, Antwort, *f.* (—en).  
answer, *v.*, antworten (*dat.*); beantworten (*acc. of thing, dat. of pers.*).  
answering (act of), Antwort = ten, *n.* (—s).  
ant, Amerie, *f.* (—n).  
any (*partitive*, 2, 2); irgend, ein, eine, ein; — thing, irgend etwas, etwas; — thing but, nichts weniger als; *pl.*, welche, einige;

not —body, not —one, niemand; not —, kein, keine, kein.  
apartment, Gemach, *n.* (—e; —er).  
appear, ſcheinen, erſcheinen, 120.  
apple, Apfel, *m.* (—s; —); — tree, Apfelbaum, *m.* (—e; —e).  
apply to anyone, ſich an jemanden (*acc.*) wenden, 99.  
appoint (as), ernennen (99; zum, zur).  
approval, Beifall, *m.* (—e).  
April, April', *m.* (—s).  
architect, Architekt', *m.* (—en; —en).  
arm, Arm, *m.* (—e; —e); —s, *pl.*, Waffen.  
army, Armee, *f.* (—n).  
arrival, Anſtuit, *f.* (—e).  
arrive, ankommen (167; ſein).  
art, Kunst, *f.* (—e).  
article, Artikel, *m.* (—s; —).  
artillery, Artillerie, *f.*; Geſchütz, *n.* (—e).  
artist, Künstler, *m.* (—s; —).  
as (241, 8-11, alſ; wie; ſo; da; — soon —, ſobald (wie); — a, alſ; — . . . —, (eben)ſo . . . wie *or* alſ.  
ascend, aufſteigen, ſteigen, 120.  
ashamed; to be — of, ſich ſchämen (*gen. or über + acc.*).  
ask, fragen (186); — for, bitten (181, um); verlangen (nach).  
asking questions (act of), Fragen, *n.* (—s).  
assert, behaupten.  
assist, beistehen (186; ſein; *dat.*).  
astonish; to be —ed (at), ſich wundern (über + *acc.*).  
astonishing, erſtaunend.  
at (*of locality*), in, an, auf,

zu, 227 (a); (*of time*) um, zu, bei, 227, (b); (*of price*) um, 227, (c); not — all, gar nicht; — my brother's, bei meinem Bruder; — last, — length, endlich.  
attack, *v.*, angreifen, 118.  
*subst.*, Angriff, *m.* (—e; —e).  
attempt, *subst.*, Verſuch, *m.* (—e; —e).  
attendant, Begleiter, *m.* (—s; —).  
attention, Aufmerkſamkeit; to pay —, Acht geben (181; auf + *acc.*).  
attentive, aufmerkſam.  
August, Auguſt', *m.* (—s).  
aunt, Tante, *f.* (—n).  
author (of a particular work), Verfaſſer, *m.* (—s; —).  
autumn, Herſt, *m.* (—e; —e).  
avoid, meiden, vermeiden, 120.  
away, fort, abweſend; — from home, von Hauſe.

## B.

back, *adv.*, zurück.  
bad, badly, ſchlecht.  
bag, Saek, *m.* (—e; —e).  
bank, Bank, *f.* (—en).  
bark (of trees, etc.), Baumrinde, *f.*  
basket, Korb, *m.* (—e; —e).  
battery, Batterie, *f.* (—n).  
battle, Schlacht, *f.* (—en).  
be, ſein (52); werden (159; as *aux. of passive*, 112, R. 5); ſtehen (186); there is, there are, eſ giebt, eſ iſt, etc., 220; (*of health*) ſich befinden (144); how are you? wie geht eſ Ihnen? I am to, iſſ ſoll.  
bear, *subst.*, Bär, *m.* (—en; —en).  
bear (bring forth), *v.*, ge = bären (167).  
beat, *v.*, ſchlagen (186).



- beautiful, schön; the —, das Schöne.  
 beauty, Schönheit, *f.* (-en).  
 because, weil; da.  
 become, werden (150), stehen (186; *dat.*).  
 bed, Bett, *n.* (-es; -en); to go to —, zu Bette gehen, sich schlafen legen; in —, zu Bette.  
 bee, Biene, *f.* (-n).  
 beef, Rindfleisch, *n.* (-es).  
 beer, Bier, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 before, *prep.*, vor (65; *dat.* or *acc.*); *conj.*, bevor; ehe (daß).  
 beg (ask), bitten (181; for, um); to — pardon, um Verzeihung bitten; — (for alms), Betteln.  
 beggar (-man), Bettler, *m.* (-s; —); —woman, Bettlerin, *f.* (-nen).  
 begin, anfangen (183); beginnen (158).  
 behave, sich betragen (186).  
 behind, hinter (65; *dat.* or *acc.*).  
 believe, glauben (*dat.* of person).  
 belong (to), gehören (*dat.*).  
 beloved, geliebt, wert.  
 below, *prep.*, unter (*dat.* or *acc.*; 65); unterhalb (*gen.*; 223); *adv.*, unten.  
 besides, *adv.*, außerdem.  
 between, zwischen (*dat.* or *acc.*; 65).  
 beverage, Getränk, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 bid, *v.* (order), heißen (188).  
 big, groß.  
 bill, Rechnung, *f.* (-en).  
 bird, Vogel, *m.* (-s; ").  
 bird-cage, Vogelbauer, *n.* (-s; —).  
 birth-day, Geburtstags, *m.* (-es; -e); as a — present, zum Geburtstags.  
 bishop, Bischof, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 bite, *v.*, beißen (118).  
 bitter, bitter.  
 black, *adj.*, schwarz ("er).  
 black, *v.* (of boots), wischen.  
 blame, *v.*, tadeln.  
 blindly, blindlings.  
 blow, *v.*, blasen (188).  
 blue, blau.  
 board; on — (of a ship), am Bord.  
 boat, Boot, *n.* (-es; -e or Böte).  
 bodily, körperlich.  
 bombard, bombardieren.  
 bone, Knochen, *m.* (-s; —).  
 book, Buch, *n.* (-es; -er).  
 bookseller, Buchhändler, *m.* (-s; —).  
 born, *part.*, geboren (167).  
 borne; having been — down by the stream, vom Strom hinweggerissen.  
 botanist, Bota'nist, *m.* (-s; —).  
 both, beide; alle beide, beides.  
 bough, Ast, *m.* (es; "e).  
 Boston, Boston, *n.* (-s; the — train, der Zug von (nach) Boston).  
 boy, Knabe, *m.* (-n; -en).  
 brave, tapfer.  
 bread, Brot, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 break, brechen (167); — through, einbrechen.  
 breakfast, *v.*, frühstücken; *subst.*, Frühstück, *n.* (-es).  
 bridge, Brücke, *f.* (-n).  
 bring, bringen (17); holen; to — with one, — along, mitbringen; to — in, herzubringen; to — up, heraufbringen.  
 broad, breit.  
 brother, Bruder, *m.* (-s; ").  
 brother-in-law, Schwager, *m.* (-s; ").  
 build, bauen.
- building, Gebäude, *n.* (-s; —); (act of, Bauen, *n.* (-s)).  
 bullet, Kugel, *f.* (-n).  
 burn, brennen (97; *intr.*); verbrennen (97; *tr.* and *intr.*).  
 business, Geschäft, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 business-matter, Geschäftesangelegenheit, *f.* (-en).  
 but, aber; allein (211, 1); sondern (only after a negat.ve, 2-6, R. 1).  
 butter, Butter, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 buy, kaufen.  
 buying (action of), Kaufen, *n.* (-e).  
 by, 228; (near by), bei (*dat.*); (of agent with pass. voice) von (*dat.*); (of means or instrument) durch (*acc.*), mit (*dat.*); — rail(way), mit der Eisenbahn.

## C.

- call (out), rufen 188; (name), nennen, 99; be — ed, heißen, 188.  
 call, *subst.* (visit), Besuch, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 can, können, 195-202.  
 cannon, Kanone, *f.* (-n).  
 capable, fähig (*gen.*, or + and).  
 capital, *subst.*, Hauptstadt, *f.* (-e).  
 cardinal-point (see point).  
 care, Acht, *f.*; to take —, sich um Acht nehmen (17); do you — to? haben Sie Acht für all I —, merktweilen.  
 carpet, Teppich, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 carriage, Wagen, *m.* (-s; —).  
 carry, tragen, 180; to — up, hinauftragen.  
 case, Fall, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 castle, Schloß, *n.* (-es; "er)

cat, Katze, *f.* (-n).  
 catch, fangen, 188; — cold, sich erkälten.  
 cause; to — to, lassen (188; + *inf.*).  
 celebrate, feiern; —d, be-  
 rühmt.  
 century, Jahrhundert, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 certain, —ly, gewiß, jeden-  
 falls.  
 chair, Stuhl, *m.* (-es; \*e).  
 chancellor, Kanzler, *m.* (-s; —).  
 change, *v. tr.*, ändern; *v. intr.*, sich ändern.  
 Charles, Karl, *m.* (-s); little —, Karlchen, *n.* (-s).  
 charming, *adj.*, reizend  
 cheap, billig.  
 chess, Schach, *m.* (-s; —).  
 cherry, Kirche, *f.* (-n).  
 chicken, Huhn, *n.* (-es; \*er).  
 child, Kind, *n.* (-es; -er).  
 Christmas, Weihnachten, *pl.*  
 church, Kirche, *f.* (-n).  
 Cinderella, Aschenputtel, *n.*,  
 (-:).  
 city, Stadt, *f.* (\*e).  
 claim to be, wollen, 196.  
 clear, klar.  
 clever, geschickt.  
 climate, Klima, *n.* (-s).  
 climb up, hinaufklettern.  
 cloak, Mantel, *m.* (-s; \*u).  
 clock, Uhr, *f.* (-en).  
 close, zumachen; sich schließen, zu-  
 schließen, 123.  
 cloth, Tuch, *n.* (-es; -e or \*er).  
 clothes, Kleider, *n. pl.* (see Kleid).  
 cloud, Wolke, *f.* (-n).  
 coachman, Kutscher, *m.* (-s; —).  
 coal, Kohle, *f.* (-n).  
 coat, Rock, *m.* (-es; \*e).  
 coffee, Kaffee, *m.* (-s).  
 cold, kalt (\*er); to catch —, sich erkälten.

colour Farbe, *f.* (-n).  
 combat, Kampf, *m.* (-es; \*e).  
 come, kommen (167; sein);  
 — in, hereinkommen; —  
 here, hierherkommen; —  
 down, herunterkommen;  
 — out, heraustrücken; —  
 back, zurückkommen; —  
 again, wiederkommen; what  
 is to —, das Bevorstehende.  
 coming (act of), Kommen, *n.* (-:).  
 command, *v.*, befehlen (167; *dat.*).  
 commandment, Gebot, *n.*,  
 (-es; -e).  
 company, Gesellschaft, *f.*,  
 (-en).  
 complain, klagen (über +  
*acc.*).  
 complete, vollständig.  
 concert, Konzert, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 condition, Bedingung, *f.* (-en).  
 confusion, Verwirrung, *f.* (-en); Ver-  
 störung, *f.* (-en).  
 congratulate, Glückwünschen,  
 gratulieren (*dat.*).  
 conscious, bewußt (+ *gen.*).  
 consequence; in — of, zu-  
 folge (223).  
 consider, betrachten; halten  
 für, 188.  
 consist (of), bestehen (aus),  
 186.  
 contented, zufrieden.  
 contradistinction, Gegensatz,  
*m.* (-es; \*e).  
 contrary; on the —, im Ge-  
 gentheil.  
 convent, Kloster, *n.* (-s; \*n).  
 convince (of), überzeugen  
 (*gen. of thing*).  
 cool, *adj.*, kühl.  
 copy, *subst.*, Exemplar, *n.* (-es; -e); *v.*, abschreiben,  
 120.  
 corner, Ecke, *f.* (-n).

correct, *adj.*, richtig.  
 cost, *v.*, kosten (+ *acc.* or *dat. of person*).  
 counsellor, Ratgeber, *m.* (-s; —).  
 Count, *subst.*, Graf, *m.* (-en; -en).  
 Countess, Gräfin, *f.* (-nen).  
 country, Land, *n.* (-es; \*er);  
 in the —, auf dem Lande;  
 — man, Bauer, *m.* (-n or -s; -n).  
 couple, Paar, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 courtier, Höfling, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 cousin, Vetter, *m.* (-s; -n).  
 cover, *v.*, bedecken.  
 create, schaffen, 186.  
 creditor, Gläubiger, *m.* (-s; —).  
 creep, kriechen, 123.  
 crime, Verbrechen, *n.* (-s; —).  
 crop, crops, Ernte, *f.*  
 cry (call), rufen, 188; (weep), weinen.  
 cup, Tasse, *f.* (-n).  
 curtain, Vorhang, *m.* (-es; \*e).  
 cut, schneiden, 118; — off, ab-  
 schneiden; to — one's  
 hand, sich in die Hand  
 schneiden.

## D.

danger, Gefahr, *f.* (-en).  
 dangerous, gefährlich.  
 dare, sich unterstehen, 186;  
 dürfen, 196.  
 daughter, Tochter, *f.* (\*n).  
 day, Tag, *m.* (-es; -e); in  
 broad —light, bei hellem  
 Tage.  
 dead, tot.  
 deal; a great — of, viel.  
 dealer, Händler, *m.* (-s; —).  
 dear, lieb, teuer.  
 dearly-bought, teuer.

decide, *intr.*, sich entschließen, 123; — *d. adj.*, entschieden.

defence, Verteidigung, *f.* (-en).

definition, Definition, *f.* (-en).

deserve, verdienen.

desire, Verlangen, *n.* (-s; —); Lust, *f.* (<sup>2e</sup>).

desperate, verzweifelt.

devote, widmen.

diamond, Diamant', *m.* (-s or -en; -en).

dictionary, Wörterbuch, *n.* (-es; <sup>2er</sup>).

die, sterben (159; sein).

difference, Unterschied, *m.* (-es; -e).

difficult, schwer.

dig, graben, 186.

diligence, Fleiß, *m.* (-es).

diligently, fleißig.

dinner, Mittagessen, *n.* (-s; —).

disagreeable, unangenehm.

disappoint, enttäuschen.

discover, entdecken.

discoverer, Entdecker, *m.* (-s; —).

discovery, Entdeckung, *f.* (-en).

disgrace, Schande, *f.* (-n).

displeased, unzufrieden.

dissatisfied, unzufrieden.

distant, entfernt.

disturb, stören.

diver, Taucher, *m.* (-s; —).

divide, teilen.

divine, göttlich.

do, thun (196); (make), machen; (*as aux. is not translated by a separate form; see 31, R. 3*); how — you —? wie geht es Ihnen?

doctor, Dok'tor, *m.* (-s; Dok'to'ren); (physician), Arzt, *m.* (-es; <sup>2e</sup>); that is Dr. B., daß ist der Doktor B.

dog, Hund, *m.* (-es; -e).

dollar, Thaler, *m.* (-s; —).

door, Thür(e), *f.* (-en); at the —, an der Thür(e).

doubt, *subst.*, Zweifel, *m.* (-s; —).

doubt, *v.*, zweifeln (an + *dat.*); I have no — of it, ich habe keinen Zweifel daran.

down, herunter; — stairs, unten.

dozen, Duzend, *n.* (-es; -e).

draw, ziehen, 131; zeichnen.

dress, Kleid, *n.* (-es; -er).

dress, *v. tr.*, ankleiden; *v. intr.*, sich ankleiden.

drink, trinken, 144; — (*of beasts*), saufen, 123.

drive, *v. tr.*, treiben, 120; *intr.*, (go in a conveyance), fahren (186; sein); go for a —, spazieren fahren.

driving (act of), Fahren, *n.* (-s).

drop, Tropfen, *m.* (-s; —).

drown, *intr.*; be —ed, ertrinken, 144.

duke, Herzog, *m.* (-es; -e or <sup>2e</sup>).

during, während (*gen.*; 223).

duty, Pflicht, *f.* (-en).

dwelling-house, Wohnhaus, *n.* (-es; <sup>2er</sup>).

## E.

each, jeder, jede, jedes; — other, einander.

eagle, Adler, *m.* (-s; —).

ear, Ohr, *n.* (-es; -en).

early, früh.

earn, verdienen.

earth, Erde, *f.*; — -quake, Erdbeben, *n.* (-s; —).

east, Ost(en), *m.*

easy, —ily, leicht.

eat, essen, 181; fressen, 181, (*said of beasts*).

effort, Anstrengung, *f.* (-en),

Bemühung, *f.* (-en); Versuch, *m.* (-s; -e).

either, entweder; — . . . or, entweder . . . oder.

elect (as), erwählen (zum).

elm, Ulme, *f.* (-n).

else, or —, sonst.

embarrassment, Verlegenheit, *f.* (-en).

emperor, Kaiser, *m.* (-s; —).

endure, aushalten, 186.

enemy, Feind, *m.* (-es; -e).

engaged, verheiratet; I have another engagement, I am —

elsewhere, ich bin anderswo verheiratet.

English, englisch; — (language), Englisch (des Englischen); into —, ins Englische.

Englishman, Engländer, *m.* (-s; —).

enjoy, genießen (123; *gen. or more generally acc.*).

enough, genug; be —, suffice, genügen.

err, irren.

escape, entfliehen (131; *dat.*).

esteem, achten.

etc., u. s. w. (*abbreviation for: und so weiter*).

Europe, Europa, *n.* (-s).

even, *adv.* sogar, selbst; not —, nicht einmal; — if, wenn auch.

evening, Abend, *m.* (-es; -e).

ever, je, jemals.

every, jeder, jede, jedes; —body, —one, jedermann, jeder, jedweder, jeglicher;

— week, alle acht Tage.

everywhere, überall.

evil, *subst.*, Böses, *n.*

exactly, gerade, eben.

examination, Examen, *n.* (-s; —).

examine, untersuchen, beobachten.

exceeding, —ly, höchst, sehr.  
äußerst.

except, außer (*dat.*; 46).

excuse, *v.*, entschuldigen (*tr.*),  
verzeihen (*dat.*); *subst.*,  
Entschuldigung, *f.* (-en).

exercise, *subst.*, Aufgabe, *f.*  
(-n).

expect, erwarten.

expense, Kosten, *pl.*; at the  
— of, auf Kosten.

eye, Auge, *n.* (-s; -n).

## F.

fail (in business), fallieren.

fall, fallen (188; sein).

family, Familie, *f.* (-n).

famine, Hun'ger'snot, *f.*

far, weit; as — as, bis nach  
(*dat.*); not — from, unsern,  
unweit (*gen.*; 223, 23, 24).

farewell, Lebewohl, *n.* (-s).

fast (quick), geschwind,  
schnell.

father, Vater, *m.* (-s; ").

favour, Gefallen, *m.* (-s; —).

fear, Furcht, *f.*; for —, aus  
Furcht.

feather, Feder, *f.* (-n).

February, Februar, *m.* (-s).

feel, fühlen; (perceive), emp-  
finden, 144; *v. intr.* (*of*  
*health*), sich befinden; zu  
Mute sein; I — ill, mir ist  
schlecht zu Mute.

few, wenig, wenige; a —,  
einige, ein paar.

field, Feld, *n.* (-es; -er).

fight, fechten, 124; streiten,  
118.

fill, füllen.

find, finden, 144; — out, aus-  
finden; — again, wieder-  
finden.

fine, schön.

finger, Finger, *m.* (-s; —).

finish, voll'en'den; to have  
— ed (with), fertig sein  
(mit); — ed, fertig.

fire, Feuer, *n.* (-s; —).

first, *adj.*, der, die, das erste;  
*adv.*, zuerst, erstens; — of  
all, zuerst.

fish, Fisch, *m.* (-es; -e).

fishing, Fischen, *n.* (-s).

fit for, — to, gut zu.

five, fünf.

flatter, schmeicheln (*dat.*).

flatterer, Schmeichler, *m.* (-s;  
—).

fleet, *subst.*, Flotte, *f.* (-n).

floor, Fußboden, *m.* (-s; ").

flour, Mehl, *n.* (-es).

flow, *v.*, fließen, 123, sein.

flower, Blume, *f.* (-n).

fly, fliegen 131, sein; — away,  
wegfliegen.

follow, folgen (sein; *dat.*).

foot, Fuß, *m.* (-es; "e).

for, 229, *prep.* (*in behalf of*),

für, *acc.*, 34; (*of purpose*)

zu, *dat.*, 46; — reading,

zum Lesen; (*of past time*)

seit, *dat.*, 45; — three days

(past), seit drei Tagen; (*of*

*fut. time*) aus, *acc.*, 229,

(*th*), 2; — three days (to

come), auf drei Tage.

forbid, verbieten (131; *dat.*).

force, zwingen, 144; to be  
— d, obliged (to), müssen,  
196-202.

ford, Furt, *f.* (-en).

forest, Wald, *m.* (-es; "er).

forgery, Verfälschung, *f.*

(-en).

forget, vergessen, 181.

forgive, vergeben (181; *dat.*).

former, jener, jene, jenes.

fort, Feste, *f.* (-n).

fortieth (part), Vierzigstel, *n.*

(-s; —).

fortnight, vierzehn Tage.

fortunately, glücklicherweise;  
glücklicher Weise.

fortune, good- —, Glück, *n.*

(-es).

four, vier.

fox, Fuchs, *m.* (-es; "e).

France, Frankreich, *n.* (-s).

Francis, Franz, *m.* (-en-s).

Fred(dy), Friß, *m.* (-en-s).

Frederick, Friedrich, *m.*  
(-s); Frederick-street, die  
Friedrichstraße.

free, frei.

freeze, 131, frieren.

French, französisch; — (lan-  
guage), Französisch, *n.*  
(des Französischen).

fresh, frisch.

Friday, Freitag, *m.* (-es;  
-e).

friend, Freund, *m.* (-es;  
-e).

friendless, freundslos.

friendly, freundslich.

friendship, Freundschaft, *f.*  
(-en).

frighten (terrify), erschrecken;

to be — ed, erschrecken, 167.

frog, Frosch, *m.* (-es; "e).

from (*direction*), von, aus  
(*dat.*; 46); (*cause*) aus;  
(*time*) über + *acc.*, 65;  
a week — to-day, heute  
über acht Tage; (*disease*)  
an, *dat.*, 65; er ist an  
dieser Krankheit gestor-  
ben, he died of that dis-  
ease.

front; in — of; vor (*dat.*  
or *acc.*; 65).

fully, ganz.

funeral, Begräbnis, *n.* (-es;  
-e).

furious, —ly, wütend.

future, Zukunft, *f.*

## G.

gallop, galoppieren.

garden, Garten, *m.* (-s; ").

gardener, Gärtner, *m.* (-s;  
—).

gather, sammeln.

general, General', *m.* (-es;  
-e).

generally, gewöhnlich.  
 generous, freigebig.  
 gentleman, Herr *m.* (-n; -en).  
 George, Georg, *m.* (-s).  
 German, *adj.*, deutsch; — (language), Deutsch, *n.* (des Deutschen); in —, auf Deutsch; into —, ins Deutsche.  
 Germany, Deutschland, *n.* (-s).  
 get (become), werden, 159.  
 girl, Mädchen, *n.* (-s; —).  
 give, geben, 181; — up, aufgeben.  
 glad, froh (*gen.*); be —, sich freuen; I am —, es freut mich; I should be — to, should like to, ich möchte gern.  
 glass, Glas *n.* (-es; "er).  
 glove, Handschuh, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 go, gehen (188; sein); reisen; — away, weggehen, fortgehen; — back, zurückgehen; — out, (hin)ausgehen; — down, hinuntergehen; — up, hinaufgehen; — past the place, an einem Orte vorbeigehen; — for, fetch, holen.  
 goal, Ziel, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 God, god, Gott, *m.* (-es; "er).  
 Goethe, Goethe, *m.* (-s).  
 gold, *subst.*, Gold, *n.* (-es).  
 gold, *adj.*, golden, golden.  
 good, gut; be — enough, haben Sie die Güte; — morning, guten Morgen.  
 goodness, Güte, *f.*  
 graceful, -ly, anmutig.  
 grand-parents, Großeltern, *pl.*  
 grapes, Trauben, *pl.*  
 grass, Gras, *n.* (-es; "er).

grateful, dankbar.  
 great, groß ("er, größt).  
 green, grün; *subst.*, Grün, *n.* (-s).  
 grind, schleifen, 118.  
 ground, Boden, *m.* (-s); Erde, *f.*  
 grow, wachsen, 186; werden, 159.  
 guess, erraten, 188.  
 guest, Gast, *m.* (-es; "e).

## H.

habit, Gewohnheit, *f.* (-en); to be in the — of, die Gewohnheit haben zu, etc.; pflegen.  
 half, *adj.*, halb; — an hour, eine halbe Stunde.  
 half, *subst.*, Hälfte, *f.* (-n).  
 hand, Hand, *f.* ("e).  
 handsome, schön.  
 handwriting, Handschrift, *f.* (-en).  
 hang, *v. tr.*, hängen; *v. intr.*, hangen, 188.  
 happy, glücklich.  
 harbour, Hafen, *m.* (-s; "e).  
 hard, schwer.  
 hardly, kaum.  
 hare, Hase, *m.* (-n; -n).  
 harvest, *subst.*, Ernte, *f.*; *v.*, ernten.  
 haste, Eile, *f.*; to make —, eilen.  
 hat, Hut, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 have, haben, 24; sein, 52, 53; lassen, 188, 200, 7; to — to, be obliged to, müssen, 196-202; will you — a cup of tea? wollen Sie eine Tasse Thee?  
 hay, Heu, *n.* (-es).  
 he, er; der, — who, derjenige welcher, etc., wer.  
 head, Kopf, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 health, Gesundheit, *f.*  
 hear, hören; to — say, sagen hören.

hearing, Gehör, *n.* (-es).  
 heart, Herz, *n.* (-es; -en; by —, auswendig).  
 heat, Hitze, *f.*  
 heath, Heide, *f.* (-n).  
 heaven, Himmel, *m.* (-s; —).  
 heavy, schwer; — ily, schwer; (of rain) stark; heaviest of all, am aller schwersten.  
 help, *subst.*, Hilfe.  
 help, *v.*, helfen (159; *dat.*); it cannot be — ed, es läßt sich nicht ändern.  
 Henry, Heinrich, *m.* (-s).  
 her, *pers. pron.*, sie (*acc.*); ihr (*dat.*).  
 her, *poss. adj.*, ihr, ihre, ihr.  
 here, hier.  
 hide, *v.*, verbergen, 159.  
 high, hoch, höher, höchst (*loses e in inflexion*); to think —ly of, viel halten von, 188.  
 him, ihn (*acc.*), ihm (*dat.*).  
 himself (he), er selbst; (to) —, sich (*acc. or dat.*).  
 his, *poss. adj.*, sein, seine, fein.  
 his, *poss. pron.*, seiner, seines, feines; der, die, das seine; der, die, das seinige.  
 hoarse, heiser.  
 hold, halten, 188; — together, zusammenhalten.  
 holiday, Feiertag, *m.* (-es; -e; —s, Ferien, *pl.*).  
 home, Heimat, *f.*; *adv.*, nach Hause; at —, zu Hause; to go —, nach Hause gehen, 188.  
 honest, ehrlich, redlich, aufrichtig.  
 honey, Honig, *m.* (-es).  
 hope, *subst.*, Hoffnung, *f.* (-en); *v.*, hoffen.  
 horse, Pferd, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 hospital, Hospital, Spital, *n.* (-es; "er).

hostess, Wirtin, *f.* (-nen).  
 hot, heiß.  
 hour, Stunde, *f.* (-n); —  
 -hand, Stundenseiger, *m.*  
 (-s; —).  
 house, Haus, *n.* (-es; \*er);  
 at your —, bei Ihnen.  
 how, wie; — do you do?  
 wie geht es Ihnen? wie  
 befinden Sie sich?  
 however, aber; jedoch.  
 howl, heulen.  
 human, menschlich; — being,  
 Mensch, *m.* (-en; -en).  
 hundred, hundert; *subst.*,  
 Hundert, *n.* (-es; -c).  
 hunger, Hunger, *m.* (-s).  
 hungry, hungrig; be —,  
 Hunger haben.  
 hunter, Jäger, *m.* (-s; —).  
 hunting (act of), Jagen, *n.*  
 (-s); (chase) Jagd, *f.*; go  
 —, auf die Jagd gehen.  
 huntsman, Jäger, *m.* (-s;  
 —).  
 hurry, Eile, *f.*; I am in a —,  
 ich bin in der Eile, ich habe  
 es eilig.  
 hurt, v., verletzen.  
 husband, Mann, *m.* (-es;  
 \*er).  
 hussar, Husar, *m.* (-en or -s;  
 -en).

## I.

I, ich.  
 ice, Eis, *n.* (-es).  
 idea, Idee, *f.*, Gedanke, *m.*  
 (-n; -n).  
 idle, faul, träge.  
 idleness, idling, Müßiggang,  
*m.* (-es).  
 if, wenn; (whether), ob.  
 ignorant, unwissend.  
 ill, krank; — health, schlechte  
 Gesundheit, *f.*  
 illness, Krankheit, *f.* (-en).  
 imagine, sich (*dat.*) denken (99,  
 2).

immediately, (so) gleich.  
 importance, Wichtigkeit.  
 important, wichtig, bedeutsam.  
 impossible, unmöglich.  
 in, in, *dat.*, 65; auf, *dat.*, 65,  
 230, (2); — the country,  
 auf dem Lande.  
 inch, Zoll, *m.* (-es).  
 induce, bewegen, 131, B.  
 industrious, —ly, fleißig.  
 industry, Fleiß, *m.* (-es).  
 inform, mitteilen.  
 inhabitant, Einwohner, *m.*  
 (-s; —).  
 ink, Tinte or Dinte, *f.*  
 innocence, Unschuld, *f.*  
 inquire, sich erkundigen, fragen, 186.  
 inside of, innerhalb (*gen.*;  
 223).  
 insist on, bestehen (auf +  
*acc.*).  
 instead of, statt, anstatt  
 (*gen.*; 223).  
 intend, beabsichtigen, vorhaben,  
 gedenken (99, 2).  
 intention, Absicht, *f.* (-en).  
 interrupt, unterbrechen, 167.  
 into, in (*acc.*; 65).  
 invent, erfinden, 144.  
 invitation, Einladung, *f.*  
 (-en).  
 invite, einladen, 186.  
 iron, Eisen, *n.* (-s); *adj.*,  
 eisern.  
 it (38, 39), es; er; sie; der,  
 die, dasselbe; in —, darin;  
 for —, dafür; of —, das  
 von; with —, damit; to  
 —, dazu.  
 its, *foss. adj.*, fein, ihr.  
 itself, es selbst.

## J.

James, Jakob, *m.* (-s).  
 January, Januar, *m.* (-s).  
 John, Johann' *m.* (-s).  
 journey, Reise, *f.* (-n).

joyous, fröhlich.  
 July, Juli, *m.* (-s).  
 jump, springen, 144; —  
 down, herunterspringen,  
 hinunterpringen.  
 June, Juni, *m.* (-s).  
 just, gerade, eben; — now,  
 soeben, — as, ebenso.  
 justify, rechtfertigen.

## K.

kick, stoßen, 188.  
 kind; what — of, was für  
 (ein, eine, ein); of many  
 —s, vielerlei; *adj.*, gut,  
 freundlich; to be so — as  
 to, so gut sein und.  
 kindness, Güte, Güteigkeit,  
 Freundlichkeit, *f.*  
 king, König, *m.* (-es; -c);  
 King-street, die Königs-  
 straße.  
 kingdom, Königreich, *n.* (-es;  
 -c).  
 knife, Messer, *n.* (-s; —).  
 knock down, herunterschla-  
 gen, 186.  
 know (*of acquaintance*), ken-  
 nen, 99; (*of knowledge*  
*acquired by mental effort*)  
 wissen, 196; — how, kön-  
 nen, 196.  
 knowledge, Kenntniß, *f.*  
 (-se), Wissenschaft, *f.* (-en).  
 known, bekannt.

## L.

lady, Dame, *f.* (-n); young  
 — (Miss), Fräulein, *n.*  
 (-s; —).  
 lake, See, *m.* (-s; -en).  
 landscape, Landschaft, *f.*  
 (-en).  
 language, Sprache, *f.* (-n).  
 lantern, Laterne, *f.* (-n).  
 large, groß (\*er, größt).  
 last, lezt, vorig; at —, end-  
 lich; v., dauern.  
 late, spät.

\*ately, neulich, kürzlich.

Latin, *subst.*, Latein', *n.* (-s).

latter, the —, jener.

laugh, lachen; — (at), lachen

(*gen. or über + acc.*); he

—s at (makes sport of) you,

er macht sich über Sie

lustig.

lawyer, Advokat', *m.* (-en;

-en).

lay, legen.

lazy, faul, träge.

lead, Blei, *n.* (-es).

lead, *v.*, führen.

lead-pencil, Bleistift, *m.*

(-es; -e).

leaf, Blatt, *n.* (-es; "er).

learn, lernen.

learned, *adj.*, gelehrt.

learning (action of), Lernen,

*n.* (-s).

least; at —, wenigstens.

leave, lassen, 188; — behind,

desert, abandon, verlassen;

— out, auslassen.

left, links; be —, übrig blei-

ben.

leg, Bein, *n.* (-es; -e).

lemonade, Limonade, *f.* (-n).

lend, leihen, 120.

lesson, Aufgabe, *f.* (-n); Lek-

tion, *f.* (-en).

let, lassen, 188.

letter (*of alphabet*), Buch-

stabe, *m.* (-ns; -n); (epis-

tle), Brief, *m.* (-es; -e).

liar, Lügner, *m.* (-s; —).

library, Bibliothek', *f.* (-en).

lie (be recumbent), liegen

181; — down, sich hinlegen.

life, Leben, *n.* (-s; —).

lighten (flash), blitzen.

lightning, Blitz, *m.* (-es; -e).

like, mögen, 196-202; gern

haben, 24; I should —, ich

würde (gern); to — to

learn, gern lernen; I —

music, ich bin ein Freund

von Musik; how do you —

London? wie gefällt Ihnen

London?

lily, Lilie, *f.* (-n).

Limburg, *adj.*, Limburger.

lion, Löwe, (-n; -n).

listen to, anhören (*tr.*).

literature, Literatur', *f.*

little (*of size*), klein; (*of*

quantity) wenig.

live, leben; (dwell), wohnen.

living, lebend, lebendig.

locality, Gegend, *f.* (-en).

London, London, *n.* (-s);

*adj.*, Londoner.

long, *adj.*, lang ("er); *adv.*,

lange ("r); have you been

here —? sind Sie schon

lange hier? He has not

been here for a — time, er

ist lange nicht hier gewe-

sen; three months —er,

noch drei Monate; no —er

(*lit.*, not more), nicht mehr.

long for, *v.*, sich sehnen nach.

look for, finden, suchen nach;

— like, aussehen (wie *or*

nach), 181; it —s (appears,

seems) like rain, es sieht

nach Regen aus; — up,

hinaufsehen, 181.

lose, verlieren, 131.

lost, verloren.

loud, —ly, laut.

Louisa, Louise *f.* (-ns).

love, *v.*, lieben.

lower, unter, nieder (*adjs.*).

## M.

magnificent, prächtig.

majesty, Majestät', *f.* (-en).

make, machen.

man, Mann, *m.* (-es; "er);

— (human being), Mensch,

*m.* (-en; -en); —kind,

Mensch, *m.*; men (soldiers),

Soldaten; little —, Mann-

lein, *n.* (-s; —).

manikin, Puppenlein, *n.* (-s;

—).

manner, Weise; in that —,

auf die Weise.

many, viele; — a, — a one,

mancher, manche, mancheß.

March, März, *m.* (-es).

Margaret, Margarete, *f.*

(-ns).

market, Markt, *m.* (-es;

"e).

marriage (ceremony), Trau-

ung, *f.* (-en).

married, verheiratet.

marry, heiraten, verheiraten

(sich mit).

marsh, Sumpf, *m.* (-es; "e).

Mary, Marie, *f.* (-ns).

matter, Sache, *f.* (-n); what

is the —? was giebt's? was

ist los? what is the — with

you? was fehlt Ihnen?

May (month of), Mai, *m.*

(-es *or* -en).

may, *v.*, dürfen; können;

mögen, 196-202.

mayor, Bürgermeister, *m.*

(-s; —).

me, mich (*acc.*), mir (*dat.*).

mean; in the — time, unter-

dessen; by —s of, vermit-

telt; vermöge, *gen.*, 223.

mean, *v.*, meinen; to — to,

intend to, wollen, 196-202.

meat, Fleisch, *n.* (-es).

meet, *v.*, begegnen (*dat.*;

sein); to go to —, entge-

gen gehen (188; *dat.*).

meeting, Versammlung, *f.*

(-en).

mental, geistig.

merchant, Kaufmann, *m.*

(-es; -leute).

mere, —ly, bloß.

merry, merrily, lustig.

messenger, Bote, *m.* (-n;

-n).

metal, Metall', *n.* (-es; -e).

microscope, Mikroskop', *n.*

(-es; -e).

middle, Mitte, *f.*; in the —

of summer, mitten im Sommer.  
 mile, Meile, *f.* (-n).  
 milk, Milch, *f.*  
 mine, meiner, meine, meines;  
 der, die, daß meine; der,  
 die, daß meine.  
 minute, Minute, *f.* (-n); —  
 -hand, Minutenzeiger, *m.*  
 (-s; —).  
 misfortune, Unglück, *n.*  
 (-es).  
 Miss (young lady), Fräulein,  
*m.* (-s; —).  
 mistake, Fehler, *m.* (-s;  
 —).  
 mock, spotten (*gen. or über*  
*+ acc.*).  
 moisten, benetzen.  
 moment, Augenblick, *m.*  
 (-es; -e).  
 monarch, Monarch', *m.* (-en;  
 -en).  
 Monday, Montag, *m.* (-s;  
 -e).  
 money, Geld, *n.* (-es; -er).  
 month, Monat, *m.* (-es; -e);  
 a — ago, vor einem Mo-  
 nat.  
 more, mehr; noch; one —,  
 noch einer.  
 morning, Morgen, *m.* (-es;  
 —); in the —, des Mor-  
 gens; good —, guten Mor-  
 gen.  
 mostly, meistens.  
 mother, Mutter, *f.* (").  
 mountain, Berg, *m.* (-es;  
 -e).  
 mourning, Trauer, *f.*  
 Mr., Herr, *m.* (-n; -en).  
 much, viel; very —, sehr;  
 as —, eben so viel.  
 music, Musik', *f.*  
 musician, Musiker, *m.* (-s;  
 —).  
 must, müssen, 196–202.  
 my, *poss. adj.*, mein, meine,  
 mein (*also expressed by*

*dat. of pers. pron. + def.*  
*art.*).  
 myself (I), (ich) selbst.

## N.

name, *subst.*, Name, *m.* (-ns;  
 -n); nennen, *v.*, 99; what  
 is the — of? wie heißt?  
 what is your —? wie heißen  
 Sie?  
 nation, Nation, *f.* (-en).  
 native town, Geburtsstadt, *f.*  
 (").  
 natural, natürlich.  
 naughty, unartig.  
 near, *prep.*, neben (*dat. or*  
*acc.*; 65).  
 necessity, Not, *f.*  
 need, *v.*, brauchen; be in  
 — of, bedürfen (196; *gen.*  
*or acc.*); in — of, bedürf-  
 tig (*gen.*).  
 neglect, *v.*, vernachlässigen.  
 neighbour, Nachbar, *m.* (-s,  
 -n); — (*fem.*), Nachbarin  
 (-nen).  
 neither, weder; — . . . nor,  
 weder . . . noch.  
 nest, Nest, *n.* (-es; -er).  
 never, nie; niemals; — yet,  
 noch nie.  
 new, neu.  
 news, Nachricht, *f.* (-en).  
 newspaper, Zeitung, *f.* (-en).  
 next, nächst (*see* *nabe*).  
 Niagara Falls, die Niagara-  
 Fälle.  
 niece, Nichte, *f.* (-n).  
 night, Nacht, *f.* (").; at —,  
 nachts, des Nachts.  
 no, *adj.*, kein, keine, kein;  
*adv.*, nein; —body, —  
 person, niemand, keiner,  
 keine, keines; — more, —  
 longer, nicht mehr; —,  
 thank you, ich danke (39=  
 nen).  
 noble, edel.  
 noise, Lärm, *m.* (-es).

noon, Mittag, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 north, Nord, *m.* (-es); Nor-  
 den, *m.* (-s).  
 not, nicht; — a, kein, keine,  
 fein; — yet, noch nicht; —  
 at all, gar nicht; are (you,  
 etc.) —? nicht wahr?  
 nothing, nichts.  
 notwithstanding, ungeachtet,  
*gen.*, 223.  
 novel, *subst.*, Roman', *m.*  
 (-es; -e).  
 November, November, *m.*  
 (-s).  
 now, jetzt.  
 nowhere, nirgendw.  
 nut, Nuß, *f.* (").

## O.

oak, Eiche, *f.* (-n).  
 obey, gehorchen (*dat.*).  
 oblige, verbinden, 144; be  
 —d or compelled (to),  
 müssen.  
 occasion, *subst.*, Gelegenheit,  
*f.* (-en); *v.*, verursachen.  
 o'clock, Uhr (*invariable*);  
 what — is it? wie viel Uhr  
 ist es.  
 of (231), von, *dat.*, 46, 231;  
 (*material*) aus, *dat.*, 46;  
 (*cause*) an, *dat.*; 231, (*id*)  
 the treaty — Paris, der  
 Vertrag zu Paris; the bat-  
 tle — Waterloo, die Schlacht  
 bei Waterloo; — the Alma,  
 an der Alma.  
 off, ab.  
 offer, bieten, 131, *dat. of*  
*pers.*; anbieten, 131, *dat.*  
*of pers.*  
 officer, Disizier, *m.* (-es;  
 -e).  
 often, oft (2er), oftmals,  
 manchmal.  
 oh! O! oh!  
 old, alt (2er).  
 on, 232, auf, an, *dat. or acc.*,  
 65; (*of time*) an, *dat.*



232, (a); (about) über, *acc.*, 65.  
 once, einmal.  
 one, eins; ein, eine, ein;  
 the small —, der, die, das  
 kleine; — and the same,  
 ein; — and a half, an-  
 derthalb.  
 only, nur; (of time) erst;  
 not — . . . but also, nicht  
 nur . . . sondern auch.  
 open, *adj.*, offen; *v.*, auf-  
 machen.  
 opinion, Meinung, *f.* (-en).  
 opportunity, Gelegenheit, *f.*  
 (-en).  
 oppressive, drückend.  
 or, oder; three — four, drei  
 bis vier; either . . . —,  
 entweder . . . oder; —  
 else, sonst.  
 orator, Redner, *m.* (-s; —).  
 order, *v.* (command), be-  
 fehlen, 167, *dat. of pers.*;  
 (prescribe), verordnen; be-  
 stellen.  
 other, ander; every — day,  
 einen Tag um den andern.  
 otherwise, sonst; anderä.  
 our, *adj.*, unser, unsere,  
 unser.  
 ours, *pron.*, unser, unsere,  
 unseres; der, die, das  
 unsere; der, die, das  
 unfriige.  
 out of, aus (*dat.*; 46); — —  
 (or at) the window, zum  
 Fenster hinaus.  
 over, über (*dat. or acc.*; 65);  
 — there, — the way, drüs-  
 ben.  
 overcoat, U'berrock, *m.* (-es;  
 "e); U'berzieher, *m.* (-s;  
 —).  
 own, *adj.*, eigen. [—].

P.

paint, malen; to — (other  
 than pictures), aufstreichen,  
 118.

painter, Maler, *m.* (-s; —).  
 painting (art of), Malerei, *f.*  
 palace, Palast, *m.* (-es;  
 "e); Schloss, *n.* (-es; "er).  
 pale, bleich.  
 paper, Papier, *n.* (-es; -e);  
 news—, Zeitung, *f.* (-en).  
 paradise, Paradies, *n.* (-es).  
 pardon, Verzeihung, *f.*  
 parents, Eltern, *pl. only*.  
 Paris, Paris, *n.* (von Paris).  
 Paris, *adj.* (= Parisian,  
 Pariser.  
 part, Teil, *m.* (-es, -e); for  
 the most —, meistens,  
 meistens.  
 party, Gesellschaft, *f.* (-en).  
 pass, *v.*, *tr.*, (of time, to  
 spend, etc.), zubringen  
 (99, 2); — (an examina-  
 tion), bestehen, 180; *intr.*,  
 vergehen (188, 2, sein);  
 verfließen (123; sein); —  
 through, durchkommen  
 (167; sein).  
 passing, *adj.*, vorübergehen.  
 past, vergangen, vorüber,  
 vorbei; to go — the house,  
 am Hause vorübergehen,  
 vorbeigehen.  
 patient, Kranke, *adj. subst.*,  
*m. f.*  
 pay, bezahlen (*acc. of thing*,  
*dat. of pers.*; *acc. of pers.*  
*when pers. only is men-*  
*tioned*); — attention, Acht  
 geben; — a visit, einen  
 Besuch machen (*dat. of*  
*pers.*); besuchen (*acc. of*  
*pers.*).  
 paying (action of), Bezahlen,  
*n.* (-s).  
 perce, Frieden, *na.* (-ns).  
 pear, Birne, *f.* (-n).  
 peasant, Bauer, *m.* (-n or  
 -s; -n).  
 pen, Feder, *f.* (-n).  
 people (*pl.*), Leute, *pl. (no*  
*sing.)*; — (*indef.*), man;

— say, man sagt; —, na-  
 tion, Volk, (-es; "er).  
 pepper, Pfeffer, *m.* (-s).  
 perfect, —ly, ganz, voll-  
 kommen.  
 perhaps, vielleicht.  
 permission, Erlaubnis, *f.*  
 permit, erlauben (*dat. of*  
*pers.*).  
 person, Person, *f.* (-en).  
 personal, persönlich.  
 philosopher, Philosoph, *m.*  
 (-en; -en).  
 physician, Arzt, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 pick up, aufheben, 131.  
 picture, Bild, *n.* (-es; -en);  
 Gemälde, *n.* (-s; —).  
 piece, Stück, (-es; -e).  
 pigeon, Taube, *f.* (-n).  
 pinch, kneifen, 118.  
 pity, *v.*, bedauern; it is a —,  
 es ist schade.  
 place, *subst.*, Platz, *m.* (-es;  
 "e); Ort, *m.* (-es; -e or  
 "er); to take —, stattfin-  
 den, 144; in that —, da,  
 dafelbst, dorten).  
 place, *v.*, stellen, setzen.  
 plant, Pflanze, *f.* (-n).  
 plate, Teller, *m.* (-s; —).  
 play, *v.*, spielen.  
 pleasant, angenehm.  
 please, gefallen (188; *dat.*);  
 (if you) please, (ich) bitte,  
 wenn ich bitten darf, ge-  
 fallig.  
 pleasure, Vergnügen, *n.*  
 (-s); — trip, (short) ex-  
 cursion, Ausflug, *m.* (-es;  
 "e); to take a (short —  
 trip, einen Ausflug ma-  
 chen.  
 plum, Pflaume, *f.* (-n).  
 poem, Gedicht, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 poet, Dichter, *m.* (-s; —).  
 point, cardinal — (of the  
 compass), Himmelsrichtend.  
*f.* (-en), to be upon the —  
 of, im Begriffe sein.

poison, *subst.*, Gift, *n.* (-es; -e); *v.*, vergiften.  
 policeman, Polizeidiener, *m.* (-s; -); Schutzmann, *m.* (-es; -leute).  
 poor, arm ('er).  
 position, Stelle, *f.* (-n); Stellung, *f.* (-en).  
 possess, besitzen, 181.  
 possible, möglich.  
 post, — office, Post, *f.* — man, Postbote, *m.* (-n; -n); by return —, mit umgehender Post.  
 postage-stamp, Briefmarke, *f.* (-n).  
 postpone, aufschieben, 131.  
 pound, Pfund, *n.* (-es).  
 power, Kraft, *f.* ("e).  
 praise, *v.*, loben; preisen, 120.  
 pray, *v.*, beten; *interj.*, bitte!  
 precise, —ly, genau.  
 prefer, vorziehen, 131; I — to walk, ich gehe lieber.  
 prepare; to — for, sich vorbereiten auf (*acc.*).  
 presence, Gegenwart, *f.*  
 present, *adj.*, gegenwärtig; for the —, für's Erste.  
 present, *subst.*, Geschenk, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 president, Präsident', *m.* (-en; -en).  
 press, *v.*, bringen, 144.  
 pretty, hübsch, schön; *adv.* (tolerably), ziemlich.  
 prevent, verhindern.  
 price, Preis, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 prince, Fürst, *m.* (-en; -en); Prinz, *m.* (-en; -en).  
 prison, Gefängnis, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 probable, probably, wahrscheinlich; probably, wohl.  
 professor, Professor, *m.* (-s; -en).  
 promise, *v.*, versprechen, 167.

propose, vorschlagen, 186.  
 proud (of), stolz (auf + *acc.*).  
 proverb, Sprichwort, *m.* (-es; "er).  
 province, Provinz', *f.* (-en).  
 prudent, vorsichtig.  
 Prussia, Preußen, *n.* (-s).  
 Prussian, *subst.*, Preuße, *m.* (-n; -n).  
 public, öffentlich.  
 punish, bestrafen, strafen.  
 punishment, Strafe, *f.* (-n).  
 pupil, Schüler, *m.* (-s; -).  
 pure, rein.  
 put on (coat, etc.), anziehen, 131; — — (hat), aufsetzen.

## Q.

quality, Eigenschaft, *f.* (-en).  
 quarrel, *v.*, streiten, 118; sich streiten (mit).  
 quarter, Viertel, *n.* (-s; -); — of an hour, Viertelstunde, *f.* (-n).  
 queen, Königin, *f.* (-nen).  
 quick, —ly, schnell; quickly, flugs.  
 quit, *v.*, verlassen, 188.  
 quite, ganz.

## R.

railway-station, Bahnhof, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 rain, *subst.*, Regen, *m.* (-s); *v.*, regnen.  
 raise, heben, 131.  
 rather, eher, lieber.  
 raven, Rabe, *m.* (-n; -n).  
 read, lesen, 181; to — to, vorlesen (*dat.*).  
 reading (act of), Lesen, *n.* (-s).  
 ready, fertig, bereit; readily, leicht.  
 reason, Grund, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 receive (get), erhalten, 183; bekommen, 167; — (as a

host), aufnehmen, 167; by receiving, durch Nehmen.  
 recover (from illness), genesen (181; sein).  
 red, *adj.*, rot ("er); *subst.*, Rot, *n.*  
 Reformation, Reformation, *f.* (-en).  
 refuse, *intr.*, sich weigern.  
 regard, ansehen (181; für + *acc.*); betrachten (als).  
 regret; I regret, es thut mir leid.  
 reign, Regierung, *f.* (-en).  
 relate, erzählen.  
 related, verwandt (*dat.* or mit).  
 rely upon, sich verlassen (188; auf + *acc.*).  
 remain, bleiben (120; sein); — at home, — behind, zurückbleiben; — over, übrig bleiben; — standing, stehen (186) bleiben.  
 remarkable, merkwürdig.  
 remember, sich erinnern (*gen.*); I wish to be —ed to him, ich lasse ihn grüßen.  
 remind of, erinnern an (+ *rent*, *v.*, vermieten. [*acc.*]).  
 repeat, wiederholen.  
 reply, *subst.*, Antwort, *f.* (-en).  
 reply, *v.*, antworten, erwidern, versetzen.  
 report, *v.*, berichten.  
 representation, Vorstellung, *f.* (-en).  
 resemble, ähnlich sein (*dat.*); gleichen (118; *dat.*).  
 reside, wohnen.  
 resist, widerstehen (186; *dat.*).  
 resolve, *v.*, sich entschließen, 123.  
 rest; all the —, alle andern; retire to —, sich schlafen (188) legen.

return, vergelten (159); — good for evil, vergelte Böseß mit Gutem; by — of post, mit umgehender Post, umgehend.  
 reward, *subst.*, Lohn, *m.* (-es).  
 rheumatism, Rheumatismus, *m.* (des —).  
 ribbon, Band, *n.* (-es; "er).  
 rich (in), reich (an + *dat.*).  
 rid, löß; to get — of, löß werden (+ *gen. or acc.*).  
 ride, reiten (118); (in a conveyance), fahren (186).  
 riding (act of; not in a conveyance), Reiten, *n.* (-s).  
 right (*adj.*), recht; (correct), richtig; in the — way, auf die richtige Weise; *subst.*, Recht, *n.* (-es; -e); to be (in the) —, Recht haben.  
 righteous, gerecht; the — (man), der Gerechte.  
 ring, *subst.*, Ring, *m.* (-es; -e); —, *v.*, läuten (of a large bell), klingeln (of a small bell); there is a — at the door, es klingelt.  
 ripe, reif.  
 rise (get up), aufstehen. (186; sein); (ascend), aufsteigen (120; sein).  
 river, Fluß, *m.* (-es; "e).  
 road, Weg, *m.* (-es; -e); Straße, *f.* (-n).  
 Roman, Römer, *m.* (-s; —).  
 room (apartment), Stube, *f.* (-n); Zimmer, *n.* (-s; —).  
 rose, Rose, *f.* (-n).  
 row, *v.*, rudern.  
 run, laufen (188; sein); — after, nachlaufen (188; sein; *dat.*); — away, davonlaufen.  
 Russia, Rußland, *n.* (-s).  
 Russian, *subst.*, Russe, *m.* (-n' -u).

## S.

sad, traurig.  
 safe, sicher.  
 sailing-ship, Segelschiff, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 sale; for —, zu verkaufen.  
 same, *adj. and pron.*, der, die, dasselbe; der, die, dasselbige; der, die, das nämliche; at the — time, zu gleicher Zeit; all the —, one and the —, einerlei.  
 Sarah, Sara, *f.* (-s).  
 satisfied, zufrieden.  
 Saturday, Sonnabend, *m.* (-es; -e); Samstag, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 save, retten; I —d his life, ich rettete ihm das Leben.  
 say, sagen; to hear —, sagen hören; (assert, claim to be), wollen (196-202); to be said, sollen (196-202).  
 scholar (pupil), Schüler, *m.* (-s; —).  
 school, Schule, *f.* (-n); —boy, Schüler, *m.* (-s; —).  
 scold, schelten, 159.  
 Scotland, Schottland, *n.* (-s).  
 scream, schreien, 120.  
 search (for), suchen.  
 sent one's self, sit down, sich setzen.  
 second, *num. adj.*, zweite.  
 second (of time), *subst.*, Zeitsunde, *f.* (-n).  
 secret, —ly, geheim, heimlich.  
 see, sehen, 181.  
 seek, suchen.  
 seem, scheinen, 120.  
 self, selbst.  
 sell, verkaufen.  
 send, schicken; — to, zuschicken; — word to, benachrichtigen (*acc. of pers.*); — for, holen lassen (188), schicken nach.

September, September, *m.* (-s).  
 servant, Diener, *m.* (-s; —); Diensthote, *m.* (-n; -n); Magd, *f.* ("e).  
 serve, dienen (*dat.*); — (of a meal), servieren.  
 set, *tr.* (of a time-piece), stellen; *intr.* (of the sun), untergehen (188; sein); — free, befreien.  
 settler, Ansiedler, *m.* (-s; —).  
 seven, sieben.  
 several, einige; etliche; mehrere.  
 shake, schütteln.  
 shall, sollen (196-202).  
 she, sie.  
 shield, Schild, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 ship, Schiff, *n.* (-es; -e).  
 shoe, Schuh, *m.* (-es; -e).  
 shoemaker, Schuster, *m.* (-s; —); Schuhmacher, *m.* (-s; —).  
 shoot, schießen, 123.  
 shop, Laden, *m.* (-s; "n).  
 shore, Ufer, *n.* (-s; —).  
 short, kurz; —ly, nachlässig.  
 shout, schreien, 120.  
 show, zeigen.  
 shutter, Laden, *m.* (-s; —).  
 shy, *intr.* (of horses), scheu werden, 159.  
 sick, krank; the — (man), der Kranke.  
 side, Seite, *f.* (-n); on this — of, *prepos.*, diesseits (*gen.*; 223); on that — of, *prepos.*, jenseit (*gen.*; 223); on this —, *adv.*, diesseits; on that —, *adv.*, jenseits.  
 sign, *subst.*, Zeichen, *n.* (-s; —); *v.*, unterzeichnen.  
 silence, Schweigen, *n.* (-s).  
 silent, stumm.  
 silly, einfältig.  
 silver, Silber, *n.* (-s).  
 since (241, 12), *prepos.*, seit,

- dat.*, 46; *adv.*, seitdem;  
*conj.*, da.
- sing, singen, 144.
- singer, Sängerin, *f.* (-nen).
- single, einzig.
- sink, sinken, 144.
- sister, Schwester, *f.* (-n).
- sit, sitzen (181; fein); —  
down, sich setzen; — up,  
remain up, aufbleiben, 120.
- six, sechs.
- skate, *v.*, Schlittschuh lau-  
fen, 188.
- skill, Geschicklichkeit, *f.*
- slave, Sklave, *m.* (-n; -n).
- slay, töten.
- sleep, *v.*, schlafen, 188;  
*subst.*, Schlaf, *m.* (-es).
- sleighting, Schlittenbahn, *f.*  
(-en).
- slipper, Pantoffel, *m.* (-s;  
-n).
- slow, —ly, langsam.
- small, klein.
- smelt, schmelzen, 124.
- smile, *v.*, lächeln; *subst.*,  
Lächeln, *n.* (-s).
- sneak, schleichen (118; jem).
- snow, *subst.*, Schnee, *m.* (-s);  
*v.*, schneien.
- so, so; — are we, wir sind  
es auch.
- soldier, Soldat', *m.* (-en;  
-en).
- some, einige, etliche, welche,  
manche; etwas; irgend ein,  
eine, ein; — one, —body,  
jemand, —thing, —what,  
etwas; —where, irgend-  
wo; — of it, davon; for —  
time (*past*), seit einiger  
Zeit.
- son, Sohn, *m.* (-es; "e);  
little —, Söhnchen, *n.* (-s;  
—).
- song, Lied, *n.* (-es; -er).
- soon, bald (*comp.* eher,  
*superl.* am ehesten); as —  
as, sobald.
- Sophia, Sophie, *f.* (-ns).
- sorry; I am —, es ist mir  
leid, es thut mir leid.
- sound, —ly, fest.
- sour, sauer.
- South, Süd(en), *m.* (-s).
- Spain, Spanien, *n.* (-s).
- speak, sprechen, 167, reden;  
— with or to, sprechen (*acc.*  
*of pers.*).
- speaking (act of), Sprechen,  
*n.* (-s).
- spectacles (pair of), Brille, *f.*  
(-n).
- speech, Rede, *f.* (-n).
- spite; in — of, trotz (*gen.*;  
223, 16).
- spoil, *v. tr.*, verleihen.
- sport: to make — of anyone,  
sich über jemand(en) (*acc.*)  
lustig machen.
- spread out, sich verbreiten.
- spring, *v.*, springen (144;  
fein); *subst.*, Frühling, *m.*  
(-es; -e).
- square (in a town), Platz, *m.*  
(-es; "e).
- St. Lawrence, Sanct Lorenz,  
*m.*
- stand, stehen, 186.
- start (for), abreisen (nach).
- state (condition), Zustand, *m.*  
(-es; "e).
- statesman, Staatsmann, *m.*  
(-es; -männer).
- stay, bleiben (120; fein); —  
up, aufbleiben; — away,  
fortbleiben.
- steal, stehlen, 167.
- steam-engine, Dampfmaschi-  
ne, *f.* (-n).
- steamer, Dampfschiff, *n.* (-es;  
-e).
- steel, Stahl, *m.* (-es).
- stick, *subst.*, Stod, *m.* (-es;  
"e).
- still, *adv.*, noch, doch; noch  
immer.
- sting, stechen, 167.
- stocking, Strumpf, *m.* (-es;  
"e).
- stop, *v. intr.*, aufhören.
- storm, Sturm, *m.* (-es; "e).
- story, Geschichte, *f.* (-n).
- stove, Ofen, *m.* (-s; "n).
- stranger, Fremdling, *m.* (-es;  
-e); Fremde (*adj. subst.*).
- stream, Strom, *m.* (-es; "e).
- street, Straße, *f.* (-n).
- strong, stark ("er).
- student, Student', *m.* (-en;  
-en).
- study, *subst.*, Studium, *n.*  
(-s; Studien); (room),  
Studierzimmer, *n.* (-s; —);  
*v.*, studieren; — (pre-  
pare) for, sich vorbereiten  
auf (+ *acc.*).
- studying (act of), *subst.*, Stu-  
dieren, *n.* (-s).
- submit, sich unterwerfen, 159.
- subscribe, unterschreiben,  
120.
- succeed, gelingen, *impers.*,  
144; I —, es gelingt mir.
- such, such, solcher, solches; so.
- sudden, —ly, plötzlich.
- suffer, leiden, 118.
- suffice, genügen (*dat.*).
- sufficient, hinreichend.
- summer, Sommer, *m.* (-s;  
—).
- sun, Sonne, *f.* (-n); — dial,  
Sonnenuhr, *f.* (-en); —  
-set, Sonnenuntergang, *m.*  
(-es).
- Sunday, Sonntag, *m.* (-es;  
-e).
- support, unterstütz'en.
- sure, sicher; to be —, freis-  
ich; zwar.
- Switzerland, die Schweiz (ber  
Schweiz).

## T.

- table, Tisch, *m.* (-es; -e).
- tailor, Schneider, *m.* (-s; —).
- take, nehmen, 167; — a walk,

einen Spaziergang machen; spazieren gehen, 188;  
— a voyage, eine Seereise machen; — up, (hin)aufnehmen; — care, sich in Acht nehmen; — place, stattfinden, 144; — cold, sich erkälten.

talk, sprechen (167; mit).

tall, groß ("er, *superl.* größte).

tea, Thee, *m.* (-s).

teacher, Lehrer, *m.* (-s; —).

tear (to pieces), zerreißen, 118.

telegram, *subst.*, Depesche, *f.* (-n).

tell, sagen (*dat. of pers. or zu*); erzählen (*dat. of pers.*).

teller, Erzähler, *m.* (-s; —).

tempest, Sturm, *m.* (-es; "e).

ten, zehn.

terrible, —ly, fürchterlich.

than, als; als daß.

thank, danken (*dat.*); no — you, ich danke (Ihnen).

that, *demonstr. adj.*, dieser, diese, dieses; jener, jene, jenes; *rel. pron.*, der, die, das; welcher, welche, welches; *demonstr. pron.*, der, die, das; *conj.*, daß.

the, der, die, das; *adv.*, je, desto; um so.

their, ihr, ihre, ihr.

them (*acc.*), sie; (*dat.*) ihnen.

then, dann; since —, seitdem.

there, da; — is, — are, es ist, es sind; es giebt, 220.

therefore, darum.

thereupon, darauf.

they, sie, es; (*indef.*), man.

thief, Dieb, *m.* (-es; -e).

thin, dünn.

think, denken, 99, 2; — of, denken, *gen. or an + acc.*; (believe), glauben; I should

— so, ich sollte es meinen; — highly of, esteem, etc., viel halten (188) von.

third, dritte.

thirst, Durst, *m.* (-es).

thirsty, durstig; to be —, Durst haben.

thirty, dreißig.

this, *adj. and pron.*, dieser, diese, dieses.

those, diejenigen; die; jene.

though, obgleich.

thousand, tausend; *subst.*, Tausend, *n.* (-es; -e).

three, drei.

through, durch, *acc.*; 34.

throw, werfen, 159; schmeißen, 118; — away, wegschmeißen.

thunder-storm, Gewitter, *n.* (-s; —).

Thursday, Donnerstag, *m.* (-es; -e).

tie, binden, 144.

till, bis, 34.

time, Zeit, *f.* (-en); (occasion), Mal, *n.* (-es; -e); what — is it? wie viel Uhr ist es? for the third —, zum dritten Male; at the right —, rechtzeitig; at the same —, zu gleicher Zeit.

tired, müde.

title, Titel, *m.* (-s; —).

to, 233, zu (*dat.*; 4<sup>o</sup>); (*with names of places*) nach (*dat.*; 4<sup>o</sup>); an, auf, in (*acc.*; 65, 233, 2); — the concert, ins Konzert; (*before inf.*) zu, 272-274; (*of purpose*) um zu, 273.

to-day, heute.

to-morrow, morgen; — morning, morgen früh.

too, zu; (also), auch.

top, Gipfel, *m.* (-s; —).

tortoise, Schildkröte, *f.* (-n).

towards, gegen (*acc.*; 34).

town, Stadt, *f.* ("e).

— hall, Rathhaus, *n.* (-es; "er).

tragedy, Trauerspiel, *n.* (-es; -e); Tragödie, *f.* (-n).

train (on a railway), Zug, *m.* (-es; "e); Boston —, der Zug von (nach) Boston.

translate, übersetzen.

transparent, durchsichtig.

travel, reisen (haben, sein).

traveller, Reisende, *adj.*

*subst.*

treasure, Schatz, *m.* (-es; "e).

treaty, Vertrag, *m.* (-es; "e).

tree, Baum, *m.* (-es; "e); little —, Bäumchen, *n.* (-s; —).

triumph, Triumph, *m.* (-es; -e).

true, wahr; (faithful), treu (*dat.*).

trunk (of a tree), Baumstamm, *m.* (-es; "e).

trust, *v.*, trauen (*dat.*).

truth, Wahrheit, *f.* (-en).

try, versuchen.

Tuesday, Dienstag, *m.* (-es; -e).

two, zwei; beide; — at a time, je zwei; — and a half, drittehalb.

## U.

umbrella, Regenschirm, *m.* (-es; -e).

uncle, Onkel, *m.* (-es; -e); Onkel, *m.* (-s; —).

under, unter (*dat. or acc.*; 65).

understand, begreifen, 118; verstehen, 180; to make one's self understood, sich verständlich machen.

undertaking, Unternehmung, *n.* (-s).

unfortunate, unglücklich; —ly, leider.

unhindered, ungehindert.

United States (The), die Vereinigten Staaten.

university, Universität, *f.* (-en).

until, *conj.*, bis (daß).

untruth, Unwahrheit, *f.* (-en).

upon, auf (*dat. or acc.*; 65);

upper, ober.

up-stairs, oben, nach oben, hinauf.

use; of no —, unnütz.

useful, nützlich; the —, das Nützliche.

utmost, möglichst.

## V.

vainly, in vain, vergeblich; vergebens.

valley, Thal, *n.* (-es; "er).

venture, *v.*, wagen.

verse, Vers, *m.* (-es; -e).

very, sehr; recht; — much, sehr.

vex, ärgern; be —ed (at), sich ärgern (über + *acc.*).

victory, Sieg, *m.* (-es; -e).

village, Dorf, *n.* (-es; "er).

vinegar, Essig, *m.* (-s; -e).

violet, Veilchen, *n.* (-s; —).

virtue, Tugend, *f.* (-en).

visit, Besuch, *m.* (-es; -e);

to be on a — at any one's, bei jemand auf Besuch sein; *v.*, besuchen; einen Besuch abstatten, machen (*dat. of pers.*).

visitor; to have —s, Besuch haben.

voice, Stimme, *f.* (-n).

voyage, Reise, *f.* (-n), See- reise, *f.* (-n).

## W.

wait for, warten auf (*acc. f.*).

waiter, Kellner, *m.* (-s; —).

walk, *subst.*, Spaziergang, *m.* (-es; "e); take a —, einen Spaziergang machen; spazieren gehen, 188.

walk, *v.*, gehen, 188; spazieren gehen.

walking (act of), Gehen, *n.* (-s); Spazierengehen, *n.* (-s).

want, wünschen; wollen (196).

wanting; to be —, fehlen (*dat.*), mangeln (*dat.*).

war, Krieg, *m.* (-es; -e).

warm, —ly, warm ("er).

warning, Warnung, *f.* (-en).

waste, verschwenden.

watch, *subst.*, Uhr, *f.* (-en); Taschenuhr, *f.* (-en); *v.*, bewachen.

watchful, wachsam.

watch-key, Uhrschlüssel, *m.* (-s; —).

water, Wasser, *n.* (-s; —).

waver, schwanken.

way, Weg, *m.* (-es; -e); (manner), Weise, *f.* (-n);

in this —, auf diese Weise.

we, wir.

weak (in), schwach (an + *dat.*).

wear, *v. intr.* (of clothes), sich tragen, 186.

weather, Wetter, *n.* (-s); in fine —, bei schönem Wetter.

Wednesday, Mittwoch, *m.* (-s).

week, Woche, *f.* (-n); acht Tage; for a — past, seit acht Tagen.

weigh, *intr.*, wiegen, 131.

welcome, willkommen.

well, *pred. adj.*, wohl, gesund; *adv.*, gut; as — as, sowohl als; — known, bekannt.

West, West(en), *m.* (-s).

wet, naß ("er).

what, *interrog. pron.*, was? *interrog. adj.*, welcher, welche, welches; — kind of, was für (ein, eine, ein); *rel. pron.* (= that which),

was; — a! welch! — is that in German? wie heißt das auf Deutsch?

when, *interrog.*, wann? zu welcher Zeit? *conj.*, wenn;

als, 58.

where, wo.

whether, ob.

which, *interrog. adj.*, welcher, welche, welches; *rel. pron.*, welcher, welche, welches; der, die, das; that

—, was.

while, whilst, während (daß), indessen.

whistle, pfeifen, 118.

white, weiß.

who, *interrog.*, wer? *rel. pron.*, welcher, welche, welches; der, die, das; he —, the one —, wer.

whole, ganz; the — of, ganz.

whom, wen (*acc.*), wem (*dat.*).

whose, *interrog.*, wessen? *rel.*, dessen, *m. n. sing.*; deren, *f. sing.*; *pl.*

why, warum? weshalb?

wide, breit.

will, wollen, 196-202.

William, Wilhelm, *m.* (-s).

willing; to be —, wollen, 196.

wind, Wind, *m.* (-es; -e).

wind up, aufziehen, 131.

window, Fenster, *n.* (-s; —).

windy, windig.

wine, Wein, *m.* (-es; -e).

wing, Flügel, *m.* (-s; —).

winter, Winter, *m.* (-s; —).

wise, weise; klug ("er).

wish (for), wünschen.

with, 234, mit (*dat.*; 46); bei (*dat.*; 46).

without, ohne (*acc.*; 34).

witty, witzig.

wolf, Wolf, *m.* (-es; "e).

woman, Frau, *f.* (-en).

wonder, Wunder, *n.* (-s; —);

I —, es wundert mich, ich wundere mich; — of the world, Weltwunder, *n.* (-s; —).

wood, Wald, *m.* (-es; "er).

word, Wort, *n.* (-es; -e or "er); to send —, benachrichtigen.

work (labour), Arbeit, *f.* (-en); (thing done), Werk, *n.* (-es; -e); *v.*, arbeiten.

world, Welt, *f.* (-en); in the —, auf der Welt.

worth, *adj.*, wert; — while, der Mühe wert.

wound, *v.*, verwunden.

wring, ringen, 144.

write (to), schreiben (120; *dat. or an + acc. of pers.*).

writing (act of), Schreiben, *n.* (-s).

wrong; to be (in the) —, Unrecht haben.

# Y.

yard (measure), Elle, *f.* (-n).

year, Jahr, *n.* (-es; -e).

yellow, gelb.

yes, ja.

yesterday, gestern; —'s, von gestern, gestrig.

yet, noch; not —, noch nicht.

yonder, dort.

you, 38, 40, ihr; Sie; du; euch; Sie; dich.

young, jung; — man, Jungling, *m.* (-es; -e).

your, 40, 43, euer, eure, euer; dein, deine, dein; Ihr, Ihre, Ihr.

yours, der, die, das eure, euzrige; der, die, das Ihre, Ihrige; der, die, das deine, deine; eurer; deiner; Ihrer.

youth (time of), Jugend, *f.*; (young man), Jungling, *m.* (-es; -e).

# INDEX.

\*. \* The references are to the sections and subsections, unless otherwise specified;  
N. = Note; R. = Remark; O. = Observation; p. = page.

- Abbreviations, p. 404.  
aber, conj., 236.  
Ablaut, 105, R., 110.  
'About,' how rendered in Germ., 226.  
Absolute accusative, 255; absolute superlative, of adjs., 127, 2; of advs., 190, 4-6.  
Abstract substs., take article, 44, 1 (b); plural of, 66, 3; App. H.  
Accentuation, p. 10; in compound verbs, 117, 3, 204, 205, 3, 208, 209, 212; of compound adv. prefixes, 206, 2, N. 1.  
Accusative, use of, 3, 252-255; place of, 296, 4; after preps., 34, 50, 65, 223, 19, R. 2; expresses time, 184, 1; measure, 185, 4; after reflexive verbs, 216; after impers. verbs, 217, 2, (x), 219, 220; after adjs., replacing gen., 244, R. 1, 2; double acc., 253; after intrans. verbs, 254; cognate acc., 254, 1; adverbial acc., 255; absolute acc., 255, 2; before advs. of direction, 224, 1.  
Address, modes of, 40, 43, 47.  
Adjects, place of, 296, 1, 297, R. 1.  
Adjectives, when spelt with a capital, pp. 11, 12; predicative, not declined, 14, 100; place of, 18, 20, O 3, 295, 296, 8; at ributive, decl. of, 101; strong, 102, weak, 115, mixed, 116, table, 121, general remarks, 122; place of, 250, (b), N. 2, 298, 1, 299; indeclinable in *ser*, 122, 9; as advs., 122, 8; of colour, 122, 3; in *sel*, *sent*, *ser*, 122, 6; a succession of, 122, 5; after pers. prons., 122, 10; after indef. prons. and numerals, 122, 11, 12; after *welche*, 122, 13; used as substs., 122, 2; comparison of, 125-127; without Umlaut, App. L; incapable of comparison, 161, N.; adjs. used as attributes only, 160; as predicates only, 161; as prefixes to verbs, 206, 4, 212; governing gen. and acc., 244; dative, 251; preps., 291; possessive adjs., 43, 44, 6, (x); interrogative, 84-86; appositive adj., 290; concord, 288; derivation, by suffixes, 313; by prefixes, 316; composition, 320.  
Adverbial clauses, 306.  
Adverbial conjunctions, coordinating, 237; throw the subject after the verb, R. 1, Adverbial expressions, place of, 45, 297.  
Adverbs, 187; place of, 45, 297; formation, 182, (a), 183, (x), 189; comparison, 128, 120; numeral adverbs, 182, 183; idiomatic uses of certain adverbs, 155; advs. with an accusative, 224, 1; with preps., 224, 3, 4.  
*age*, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).  
Agent, with passive, 112, R. 3.  
*al*, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.  
'all' expressed by *gan3*, 170, 1; 'at all,' 157.  
*allein*, conj., 236, 241, 1.  
*aller*, -e, -es, 169; *aller* before superlatives, 127, 1, N.; *alles* of a number of persons or things, 162, 2; before adjs., 122, 12.  
Alphabet, German, pp. 1, 5, 13.  
*al3*, conj., 239, 3 (b); after a comparative, 126, 1; distinguished from *wenn* and *wann*, 58, 241, 6, 8; 'but,' 241, 19; *al3* clause replaces Engl. part. of time, 284, 1, (a); introducing an apposition, 259, 6; with comparative clauses, 306, R. 4.



- als daß, after adjs. with *ju*, 273, N.
- als ob, als wenn, 239, 3, (b), and R. 4.
- am, before a superl., 127, 1, (b), 128, 190, 3.
- an, prep., 65; expresses date, 184, 2, (a); of locality, 227, (a), 2, 232, (c), 2, 233, (c), 2; of cause, with diseases, 231, (c); with names of battles, 231, (d), 2; after verbs and adjs., 244, 245, 1, 291, 6, 8, 9, 12.
- an, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.
- ander, ordinal numeral, 166, 1, N.; *anderfeit*s, 238; *anderhalb*, 183, (b), R. 2.
- angeficht's, 223, 20.
- anstatt, 223, 14; governing an infn. or daß clause, 276.
- 'any,' how rendered in German, 2, 2, 157, 180.
- Apposition, appositive substantive, 289; participle, 280, (b), 281, R. 3; adjective or participle, 290; clauses, 304.
- ar, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.
- Article, not used before words in partitive sense, 2, 2; definite, declension, 4; agreement, 5, 1; repetition of, 5, 2; use, 44; contraction with preps., 34, R. 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; with proper names, 44, 2, 3, 73, 76, 2, 5, 78; for poss. adj., 44, 6.
- Article, indefinite, declension, 9; use, 44, 4, 5.
- Aryan languages, 322, 2, 3.
- 'as,' how rendered in Germ., 162, 4, 241, 8-11.
- Associatives, how formed, 315, 2, (b).
- ast, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.
- at, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 2, 6.
- 'at,' of time of day, 184, 3, (c); how rendered in Germ., 227; after verbs, etc., 291, 1.
- 'at all'; see 'all.'
- Attributive adj., see Adjective.
- auch, adv., after rel. pron., 96, 6, idiomatic use of, 195, 9; conj., 236, 237, R. 2, 238.
- auf, prep., 65; with abs. superl. of advs., 190, 6; of locality, 227, (a), 3, 230, (a), 232, (c), 233, (c), 2; of future time, 229, (b), 2; after adjs. and verbs, 245, 1, 291, 2, 7, 10; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (b).
- auf daß, 239, 3, (b), 268, 3.
- aus, prep., 46; of cause, 229, (c).
- außen, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.
- außer, 1 rep., 46.
- außerhalb, 223, 3.
- äusserst, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4.
- Auxiliary is verb in compound tenses, 26, 32.
- Auxiliary verbs of mood, see 'Modal Auxiliaries.'
- Auxiliary verbs of tense, 25, 53; place of, with Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 3; omitted in dependent clauses, 287.
- bald, comparison of, 190; bald . . . bald, 238.
- bar, suffix of adjs., 313, 1.
- 'be,' with p. part., how rendered in Germ., 112, R. 5.
- be-, inseparable prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning of, 314, 1.
- bei, prep., 46; = 'with,' 'about,' 226, (d); of time, 227, (b), 3; idioms, 228, (b), (c), 232, (d); of battles, 231, (d), 1.
- beide, beides, 165, 3.
- beißen Model, 118.
- bevor, 241, 13, 14.
- Sinnen, 51, 1.
- biß, prep., 34, 50, 4; conj., 239, 3, (b).
- bleiben Model, 120.
- Blume Model, 56.
- 'both . . . and,' 238.
- 'but,' rendered by als, 241, 19.
- 'by,' with passive, 112, R. 3; how rendered in Germ., 228.
- Capitals, use of, p. 11; 122, 2, 9, N., 11, O.
- Calling, verbs of, 242, 3, 253; with p. part., 281, 6.
- Cardinal numerals, 163, 165; gender as substs., 80, 2, (c), 165, 10.
- Cases, use of, 3; syntax of, 242-255; place of, 296.
- Cause, adverbial expressions of, 284, 1, (b), 306, R. 2; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.
- den, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; gender, 89, 3, (a); sub-st. suffix, 312, 2; produces Umlaut, 326, R. 2, (c).
- Choosing, verbs of, 242, 3, N., 253.
- Clauses, conditional, 59, 267, 293, (a), 3; proportional, see 'Comparative clauses,' below; dependent, preceding principal, 293, (b), R. 4, 294, (b), R. 2, 306; with *deun*, 241, 18, 293, (c), R. 1; incomplete or elliptical, 299; order of clauses, 302-306; apposi-

- tive, 804; relative, 805; subjective, objective, adverbial, 306.
- Cognate accusative, 254, 1.
- Collectives, declension of those with prefix *Ge-*, 16, 17, 2; gender, 89, 3, (*z*); concord of with verb, 285, R. 4; formation, 315, 2, (*a*).
- Colour, adjs. of, used as substs., 122, 3.
- Comma, before dependent sentences, 98, 3, N., 301, N. 5; before infin. clauses, 273, R. 2.
- Comparative degree, 125, 126; declension of, 126, 5.
- Comparative clauses, with *beſto*, etc., 126, 4, 293, (*b*), R. 4, N. 3; 306, R. 4 and N.
- Comparison, of adjs., 125-130; of equality, 126, 3, 241, 8; irregular, 129; defective, 130; of advs., 128, 190; adjs. incapable of, 161, N.
- Compass, points of, p. 104, top; gender, 80, 1, (*c*).
- Complex sentences, 302-306.
- Composition of words, 318-321; of numerals, 165, 5-7, 182, 183; of Verbs, 203-213; of substs., 319; of adjs., 320; of advs., 321.
- Compounds, accentuation of, p. 11; how formed, 318-321; primary and secondary, 319, 1, N. 1, 2; spurious, 319, 2, N.
- Compound substantives, of irregular declension, 68; of irregular gender, 90, 4, App. I., p. 388; how formed, 319.
- Compound tenses, formation, 25, 108; construction, 26, 33.
- Compound sentences, 302.
- Compound verbs, 203-213, separable, 109, 117, 205-207; inseparable, 35, R. 6, 109, 204; compounded with substs., 206, 3; with adjs., 206, 4, 212; separable and inseparable, 208; with double prefixes, 207, 213; with *miß-*, 209; with *her-* and *hin-*, 210; from compound substs., 211.
- Concord, of Subject and Verb, 285; other concords, 288.
- Conditional clauses, 59, 239, R. 1, 2, 4, 267, 293, (*a*), 3, (*b*), R. 4, N. 1, 2; elliptical, 268, 2, N., 293, (*c*), R. 2; use of *ſo* in, 59, N.; 293, (*b*), R. 4, N. 2.
- Conditional conjunctions, 59, 239, R. 1, 2, 4.
- Conditional mood, formation of tenses of, 25, 2, 3; shorter forms, 111, 112, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 4; use, 263, 267.
- Conjugation of verbs; see "Verbs," "Modal Auxiliaries."
- Conjunctions, 235-241; co-ordinating, proper, 236; not counted, 293, (*b*), R. 2; adverbial, 237, 238, (*b*), R. 2; correlative, 238; place of, 298, 3.
- Conjunctive Mood, see "Subjunctive."
- Considering, verbs of, 242, 3, 253.
- Consonants, pronunciation, p. 9, top; digraphs and trigraphs, pp. 5, 8, 14; doubling of, in verbs, 118, R. 1, 123, R. 1, 167, A., R. 2, 181, O. 6.
- Construction of Sentences, 292-306; principal, 20, 26, 293, (*b*), 294, (*b*), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 2; dependent, 32, 33, 293, (*c*), 294, (*c*), 295, 2, 297, R. 2, 306; direct interrog., 23, 293, (*a*), 1, 294, (*a*), 295, 2, 300; indirect statements, 87, 293, (*c*), R. 1; indirect questions, 88; relative sentences, 98, 305; imperative, 293, (*a*), 2; of clauses with *dennt*, 293, (*c*), R. 4; of incomplete clauses, 299; general remarks, 301; compound and complex, 302, 303; see also "Clauses," "Conditional clauses."
- Contracted form of strong declension, 70, R. 3.
- Contraction of def. art. and preps., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.
- Coördinating Conjunctions, proper, 236, adverbial, 237, correlative, 238.
- Copula, 292; place of, 293, 301, 1.
- Correlative pron., 43, R. 3, 4; conjunctions, 238; clauses, 241, 9, 293, (*c*), R. 4, N. 3.
- Countries, names of, gender, 80, 3, (*c*); see also "Places, names of."
- b*, suffix of substs., 312, 1.
- da*, adv., with prep. annexed, 38, R. 5, 142; conj., 239, 3, (*b*); various uses of, 241, 12, (*d*), 20; with preps., representing an infin. or *baß* clause, 277; replaces Engl. part. of time and cause, 284.
- bamit*, conj., expresses purpose, 239, 3, (*b*), 268, 3.

- daß** before the verb *sein*, 141;  
of a number of persons or things, 162, 2.
- daß**, conj., omitted, 87, 3, 241, 3, 13, 266, R. 2; use, 239, (b), 241, 3; expressing purpose, 268, 3.
- daß** clauses governed by preps., 224, 2, (a); for infin., 272, R. 1, 275, 276, R. 2, 277.
- Date**, how expressed, 184, 2, (a).
- Dative**, use of, 3, 248; place of, 296, 4; ethical dat., 249; dat. after verbs, 250; after adjs., 251; after preps., 46, 51, 65, 223; after reflexive verbs, 216, 2; after impersonal verbs, 217, 2, (b), 219, 1; after *sein* and *werden*, 217, 2, (c); after interjections, 240, 4, (b).
- dauchten**, see *deuchten*, *dün-*  
*ten*.
- de**, subst. suffix, 312, 1.
- Declension**; see "Substantives," "Adjectives," "Pronouns," "Numerals."
- Definite Article**; see "Article."
- Degrees of comparison**; see "Comparison."
- dem** after *sein*, 250, (c), 268, 6.
- Demonstrative pronouns**; see "Pronouns."
- den**, conj., 236; adv. conj., 237, 239, 241, 7, 18, 293, (c), R. 4.
- dennoch**, adv. conj., 237.
- Dependent sentences**; see "Construction," "Sentences."
- Dependent questions**; see "Construction," "Sentences," "Indirect questions."
- ber**, die, *daß*; see "Article, definite"; demonstr. pron., 132, 133, 135, 2, 140, 1, (a), (b), 142, 143, 1, 2; after *wer*, 162; relative pron., declension, 93; use, 95, 140, 2; replaced by *wo* before preps., 95, 2; used for *wer*, 306, R. 3, N.
- bergleichen**, rel. pron., 97; demonstr. pron., 132, 139, 2.
- beren**, gen. pl. of demonstr. pron., when used, 133, 2, N.
- Derivation**, 307-317; of numerals, 182, 183; of advs., 189; see also "Adjective," etc.
- derjenige**, 132, 135, 140, 1, (b).
- dero**, 49.
- derselb(ig)e**, 132, 136; replaces poss. adjs. and pers. prons., 143, 2-4.
- desgleichen**, rel. pron., 97; demonstr. pron., 139, 1; adv., 139, 1, N.
- deß**, used for gen. of *wel-*  
*cher*, 95, 1, (a); precedes its case, 95, 3; of neut. pers. pron., 143, 1; for poss. adj., 113, 2.
- deßemungeachtet**, adv. conj., 237, 241, 21.
- desio**, 126, 4, 237, 241, 2, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3.
- deuchten**, 99, 2.
- dießer** Model, 6.
- dießer**, declension, 6; use, 132, 134, 140, 1, (a), 141; replaces pers. prons., 143, 3.
- dießseit(e)**, 223, 12, R.
- Digraphs**, consonantal, pp. 4, 8, 14.
- Diminutives**, gender, 89, 3, (a); formation, 312, 2; origin, 326, R. 2, (i).
- Diphthongs**, pp. 4, 6, 14.
- Direct objects**, clause or neut. pron. as, 250, R. 2; infin. as, 272, R. 2; see also "Accusative," "Cases," "Object."
- Direct questions**; see also "Questions," "Interrogative Sentences."
- Direction**, expressed by *hin-* and *her-* before verb., 210; with an accusative, 224, 1.
- Distance**, measure of, 185, 4.
- doß**, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 8; adv. conj., throws subj. after verb, 237, R. 3, 293, (b), R. 3; in questions, 300, 2, N. 1.
- Dorj** Model, 36, 37; origin of Umlaut in, 326, R. 2, (b).
- Double Accusative**, 253.
- "Gender, 91; App. J.
- "Plurals, 64; App. G.\*
- "Prefixes, 207, 210, 213.
- "Vowels, pp. 4, 6, 14; do not take Umlaut, p. 12.
- drei**, declension, 165, 2.
- dünfen**, 99, 2.
- durch**, prep., 34; prefix, 208.
- dürren**, conjugation of, 196-199; use, 200, 1.
- e**, in conjugation of verbs, 31, R. 1, 35, R. 2-4, 107, R. 1; in imperative, etc., 167, B., R. 3, 181, O. 4; in subjunctive, 31, R. 2, 107, O. 3; in dat. of substs., 21, (a), O. 4, 46, R. 2; in adjs., 102, R. 2, 122, 6, 125, R. 5, 6, 126, 5; in poss. adjs., 44, R. 2; in poss. prons., 119, (a) Obs., (i), N. 1; represents Umlaut of *a*, 326, R. 3.
- æ**, adjs. in, declension, 102,

- R. 2; comparison, 125, R. 6.  
 e, substs. in, declension, 54, 57, 1, 61; gender, 89, 2, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 4.  
 eben, 195, 2.  
 ebenſo, 237, 241, 8.  
 ebe, conj., 241, 13, 14; comparison, 130.  
 ei, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 5.  
 ein, see "Article, Indefinite."  
 ein, numeral, 163, 165, 1; with def. art., 165, 1, (c).  
 einander, 42, 2. [and N.  
 einer, indef. pron., 145, 150; cardinal numeral, 163, 165, 1, (b).  
 einerlei, 182, (c), N.  
 einerſeits, 238.  
 einige, einigeſ, etliche, etlicheſ, indef. pron., 145, 152; numeral, 168, 173, 180; before adjs., 122, 12.  
 einmal, 182, (a), N. 2, 3.  
 einſ in counting, 165, 1, (d).  
 einſt, 182, (a), N. 2; 187, 1, (c).  
 ei, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; fems. in, 57, R. 2; gender, 89, 1, (a), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125, R. 6; subst. suffix, 312, 6.  
 ei, verb-stems in, drop e, 35, R. 4.  
 eiſden, diminutive suffix, 312, 2, N. 2.  
 Elliptical constructions, 59, 239, R. 2, 4, 266, N. 4, 267, 6, N., 268, 2, N., 269, R. 6, 278, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 2, 299.  
 elu, verbs in, conjugation, 35, R. 4; formation, 311, 1.  
 em, substs. in, declension, 16, 17, 69, 1; gender, 89, 1, (a).  
 emp, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 2.  
 en, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; gender, 89, 1, (a), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125, R. 6; not used as predicates, 160; advs. in, 189, 3; subst. suffix, 312, 7; adj. suffix, 313, 2.  
 en for eſ in gen. sing. of adjs., 102, R. 1.  
 end, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (b); subst. suffix, 312, 18.  
 Endings of weak verbs in simple tenses, 35; of strong do., 107; of substs., 70; of adjs., 121.  
 English, its relations to German, 322.  
 Enlarged form of strong declension, 70, 4.  
 enſ, termination of advs., 183, (c), 189, 1, (d), 190, 7.  
 ent, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 2.  
 entgegen, 51, 2.  
 entlang, 223, 19, R. 2.  
 entweder... oder, 238, 285, R. 6, N. 1.  
 enj, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (e).  
 er, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 3.  
 er, substs. in, declension; 16, 17; fems. in, 57, R. 2; gender, 89, 1, (a), App. I.; adjs. in, declension, 122, 6; comparison, 125, R. 6, 126, N.; subst. suffix, 312, 8.  
 er, verb-stems in, drop e, 35, R. 4.  
 er, Plural ending, 36; origin, 326, R. 2, (b).  
 erei, subst. suffix, 312, 5, N. 2.  
 ern, Adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; adj. suffix, 313, 2.  
 ern, Verbs in, conjugation, 35, R. 4; formation, 311, 2.  
 erſt, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 4.  
 erſtenſ, adv., distinguished from juerſt, 195, 5, N.  
 Erz, subst. prefix, 315, 1.  
 eſ, neut. pron., uses of, 39; omission of, 113, 2, N.; for a number of persons or things, 162, 2; as subject of impersonal verbs, 217, 220, 2, R. 2, N.; after adjs. governing gen., 244, R. 1; representing a following infin., 272, R. 2.  
 eſ giebt, eſ iſt, etc., 220.  
 eſſen Model, 181.  
 Ethical dative, 249.  
 etliche; -eſ, see einige.  
 etwa, 187, III., 226, (c).  
 etwaſ, indef. pron., 145, 149; indef. numeral, 168, 177; before adjs., 122, 11.  
 'even,' rendered by ſelbſt, 42, 3, R.  
 'ever,' after rel. prons., 96, 6.  
 Exclamatory clauses, 269, R. 6, 293, (b), R. 3, 300, N. 2.  
 ſach, ſältig, form multiplicative numerals, 182, (b).  
 fallen Model, 188.  
 fallſ, subordin. conj., 239, 3, (b).  
 ſältig; see ſach.  
 Factitive accusative, 253.  
 Factitive predicate, 253, 254, 3.  
 Family names, 74, 76, 4, 6.  
 fedten Model, 124.  
 'few,' how rendered in Ger., 145, 152, 168, 173, 175.  
 'for,' how rendered in Ger., 229; after verbs, substs. and adjs., 291, 2-4.

Foreign substs., accentuation, p. 10, bottom; declension, 22, 6, 37, 4, App. D., 57, 5, 63, 3, 77; gender, 89, 2, (c).

Fractional numbers, 183, (a), (b).

freilich, 187, IV.; does not count as a member of a sentence, 293, (b), R. 2, N.

Frequentatives, how formed, 315, 2, (c).

frieren Model, 131.

'from,' after verbs, 291, 5.

für, prep., 34; not used of purpose, 229, (a); after verbs of considering, 253.

Future Tense, how formed, 25, 2; use, 261; replaced by present, 257, 5.

Future-perfect Tense, how formed, 25, 3; use, 262; replaced by perfect, 259, 4.

ganz, indef. numeral, 168, 170.

gez, prefix of p. part., 30; when omitted, 35, R. 5, 6, 109, 112, R. 2, 204; of verbs, 35, R. 6, 201, 314, 4; with sep. verbs, 117, 2, 205, 2; with muß, 209; of substs., 315, 2; of adjs., 316; declension of substs. beginning with gez, 16, 17, 2, 36, 37, 3; gender, 89, 3, (d).

gegen, prep., 34.

gegenüber, 51, 4.

gehen with infin., 271, (c).

gemäß, 51, 5.

gen, 50, 2.

Gender of substs., according to meaning, 80, and form, 89; of compound substs., 90, 4, App. I, p. 388; double gender, 91, App. J.; general remarks on,

90; exceptional gender, App. I.

Genitive, use of, 3, 243; after adjs., 244; after verbs, 245; adverbial, of time and manner, 184, 2, (b), 189, 2, 246; of place, 246; after reflexive verbs, 215, 216; after imper. verbs, 219, 2, (a); after interjections, 240, 4, (a); after preps., 222, 223; uninflected appositive genitive, 289, 3, N. 2; position of in a sentence, 296, 4-7.

genug, indef. num. and adv., 168, 178; followed by inf., 273, 3.

German language, its relations to English, 322; historical sketch, 322-326.

Germanic languages, 322, 323; diagram of, p. 322.

gern, comparison of, 190, 1; idiomatic use of, 195, 3.

Gerunds, or infin. in -ing, not to be confounded with pres. part., 277, R. 3, 4, 6.

Gerundive, 282.

gläulich, infin. after, 275.

gleich, prep., 51, 6. [R. 3.

sgleichen, 48, 97, 139.

Graf Model, 55.

Grimm's Law, 325.

groß, comparison, 125, 5.

Grundsprache, 322.

gut, comparison, 129; as adv., 195, 10, N., 293, (b), R. 2, N.

h, mute before consonants, after vowels and after t, p. 9; when rejected after t, p. 12.

haben, conjugation, 24; use, 25; with infin., 271, (b), and R. 1, 272, R. 2; omission of in dependent sentences, 257, 293, (c), R. 5.

haft, suffix of adjs., 313, 3. halb, numeral, 183, (a), N. 2, (b).

halb(en), halber, prep., 222, 223, 1.

'half,' how rendered in Ger., 183, (a), N. 2; (b).

half-hours, 181, 3, (a).

heißen with infin., 271, (d).

heit, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 9.

helfen Model, 159.

her, prefix, 210.

hier, 187, 11., (a); before

preps., 112.

High German, history of, 324.

hin, prefix, 210.

hinnen, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

hinter, prep., 65; sep. and insep. prefix, 208.

hoch, declension, 122, 7; comparison, 129.

höchst, with absolute superl., 127, 2, 190, 4.

'however,' adv. conj., how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.

Hours of the day, 181, 3.

Hund Model, 21, 4.

hundert, 165, 8, 10, (c).

Hyphen, its use in compounds, 318, 3, N., and 4.

i, produces Umlaut, 326.

ich, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a).

icht, subst. suffix, 312, 18; adj. suffix, 313, 4.

ie, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (c).

ier, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6.

ieren, foreign verbs in, take no gez in p. part., 35, R. 5; verb suffix, 311, 3.

'if,' when rendered by ob, 241, 4.

- ig, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a);  
 adjs. in, not used as predi-  
 cates, 160; advs. in, superl.  
 of, 190, 5; suffix of poss.  
 prons., 119, (c); subst. suf-  
 fix, 312, 18; adj. suffix,  
 313, 5; before *-heit*, 312,  
 10, N.; after *-heit*, 313,  
 3, N.; produces Umlaut,  
 326, (f).  
*-bro*, 49.  
 -st, foreign substs. in, gen-  
 der, 89, 2, (e).  
 immer, adv., 187, 1, (e);  
 after rel. prons., 96, 6.  
 Imperative Mood, true forms  
 of, 31, R. 4; endings, in  
 weak verbs, 35; in strong,  
 107; expressed by *lassen*,  
 200, 7, (a); replaced by  
 subjunctive, 268, 1; use  
 of, 269. [196].  
 Imperfect-Present Verbs.  
 Imperfect Tense, formation,  
 in weak verbs, 30; in  
 strong, 104; endings, in  
 weak verbs, 35; in strong,  
 107.  
 Imperfect Indicative, use,  
 258; distinguished from  
 Perfect, 259, 2, 3; replaced  
 by present, 257, 3.  
 Imperfect Subjunctive, for  
 conditional, 111, 263, 2,  
 N.; in hypothetical peri-  
 ods, 267, 2; to express  
 wish, 268, 2; to express  
 possibility, 268, 5; origin  
 of Umlaut in, 326, (g).  
 Impersonal Verbs, 217; con-  
 jugation, 218; govern-  
 ment, 219; 'there is,'  
 etc., 220; impersonal use  
 of passive voice, 113, 2.  
 'in,' how rendered in Germ.,  
 230, 291, 6, 7.  
 in, prep., 65; rendered by  
 'at,' 227, (a), 1, and 4.  
 -in, substs. in, declension,  
 57, R. 3; gender, 89, 2,  
 (a); subst. suffix, 312, 11;  
 produces Umlaut, 326,  
 (d).  
 Indefinite article, see "Arti-  
 cle, Indef." [180].  
 Indefinite numerals, 168.  
 Indefinite pronouns, 145-  
 157.  
 indem, subord. conj., 239,  
 241, 16; replaces Engl.  
 participle, 284, 1, (a), (b).  
 indeffen, conj., 237, 239,  
 241, 15.  
 Indicative mood, use, 256;  
 tenses of, 257-262; in in-  
 direct statements, 266, R.  
 3; in hypothetical periods,  
 267, R. 5.  
 Indirect statement, 87, 265;  
 tense of, 266; construction  
 of, 293, (c), R. 1.  
 Indirect or dependent ques-  
 tions, 88, 293, (c); objec-  
 tive, with *infin.*, 275, R. 4;  
 use of *ob* in, 277, R. 5.  
 Indo-European or Indo-Ger-  
 manic languages, 322.  
 Infinitive, place of, 53, 33,  
 295, 3, 299; endings, 35;  
 for p. part. in Modal Auxi-  
 liaries, etc., 199, 2; with  
 passive sense after *lassen*,  
 200, 7, (c), N.; for im-  
 perative, 269, R. 5; as  
 subst., 270; without *zu*,  
 271; with *zu*, 272; of  
 purpose, 273; after substs.,  
 274; accusative with *infin.*,  
 not used in Germ., 275; in  
 objective indirect questions,  
 275, R. 4; governed by  
 preps., 276, 277; *infin.* in  
 -ing, or gerund, 277, R.  
 3-6; in elliptical construc-  
 tions, 278; replaced by p.  
 part., 281, R. 6, 7; as  
 part of predicate, 295.  
 'ing,' infinitive in, or gerund,  
 277, R. 3-6.  
 -ing, substs. in, declension,  
 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a);  
 subst. suffix, 312, 18.  
 inmitten, 223, 21.  
 innen, adv., 189, 3; compa-  
 rison, 130.  
 innerhalb, 223, 4, and R.  
 Inseparable prefixes, 35, R.  
 6, 109, 203, 204, 207,  
 209, 212, 213; meaning  
 of, 314.  
 Interjections, 240.  
 Inversion, inverted sentence,  
 301, 2, N. 1, 2.  
 Interrogative pronouns and  
 adjs., 81-86.  
 Interrogative sentences, con-  
 struction, direct, 23; 293,  
 (a), 1, 294, (a), 295, 2,  
 300, 301, N. 2; indirect  
 or dependent, 88, 275, R.  
 4, 277, R. 5, 293, (c).  
 Intransitive verbs, used only  
 impersonally in the passive,  
 113, 2; accusative after,  
 254.  
 -ion, foreign substs. in, gen-  
 der, 89, 2, (e).  
 -iren, verbs in; see *-ieren*.  
 irgend, 157.  
 -ist, adjs. in, not used as  
 predicates, 160; adj. suf-  
 fix, 313, 6.  
 Italics, not used in Germ.,  
 p. 12.  
 'it,' when rendered by *er*, *sie*,  
 13.  
 j, produces Umlaut, 326.  
 ja, idiomatic use, 195, 11.  
 ja, jawohl, not counted as  
 member of sent., 293, (b),  
 R. 2, N.  
 je, before cardinal numerals,  
 165, 9.  
 je . . . desto, 126, 4, 239,  
 3, (b), 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3.

- jeber**, declension, 6; indef. pron., 145, 153; indef. numeral, 168, 171; *jebeß*, of a number of persons or things, 182, 2.
- jebermann**, 145, 147.
- jeboch**, 237.
- jebrweber**; see *jeber*.
- jeglicher**; see *jeber*.
- jemand**, 145, 148.
- jener**, declension, 6; use, 132, 134, 110, 1, (c), 141, 142.
- jenfeit(s)**, 223, 13, and R.
- jetzt**, 187, 1, (b).
- fein**, declension, 8; indef. numeral, 168, 172.
- feiner**, indef. pron., 145; used for *niemand*, 151.
- feit**, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 10.
- fennen**, 196, R. 4, N. 1.
- fnabe Model**, 54.
- fommen**, with p. part., 281, R. 5.
- fönnen**, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 2, 202.
- fräit**, prep., 223, 7.
- 1**, forms fractions, 183, (a).
- langß**, 223, 18, and R. 1.
- Language**, German, historical sketch of, 322-326.
- Language-names** from adjs., 122, R. 2.
- Languages**, Indo-Germanic, etc., 322, 2, 3; Germanic, 823.
- laßfen**, its use, for passive voice, 114, (b); as Modal Auxiliary, 200, 7.
- laut**, 223, 8.
- Lautverschiebung**, 325.
- lei**, forms variative numerals, 182, (c).
- lein**, substs. in, declension, 16, 17; gender, 89, 3, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 3; produces Umlaut, 326, R. 2, (c).
- Letters**, German, shape and pronunciation of, see Introduction, pp. 1-12.
- leßt**, 130.
- leute**, plurals in, 68, 1.
- lich**, adjs. in, not used as predicates, 160; superl. of advs. in, 190, 5; suffix of advs., 189, 1, (b); of adjs., 313, 8.
- lieber**, compar. of *gern*, 190; use, 195, 3.
- lung**, substs. in, declension, 22, 2; gender, 89, 1, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 12.
- lingß**, suffix of advs., 189, 1, (c).
- loben**, paradigm of, active, 31; reflexive, 41; passive, 112.
- om**, substs. in, declension, 69; gender, 89, 1, (a).
- Radit**, irregular compounds of, 68, 2.
- mal**, forms numeral advs., 182, (a).
- Water Model**, 16, 17, App. A.
- man**, indef. pron., for passive voice, 111, (a); use, 145, 146; replaced by *einer*, 150; with imperative, 269, R. 2.
- mander**, indef. pron., 145, 154; indef. numeral, 168, 174; before adjs., 122, 12.
- mann**, substs. in, declension, 68, 1.
- Manner**, advs. of, 189; their place in a sentence, 45, Rule 5.
- Materials**, names of, take art., 44, 1, (b); plural of, 66, 2.
- 'may'**, when expressed by *dürfen*, 200, 3, (b), N.
- 'meanwhile'**, how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.
- Measure**, expressions of, 185; advs. of, 187, 111.
- mehr**, when used in comparison of adjs., 126, 2, 161, N.; adv. of quantity, 129, N. 1; indef. numeral, 168, 179.
- mehrere**, -eß, indef. pron., 145, 152; indef. numeral, 168, 175; before adjs., 122, 12.
- meut Model**, 8.
- Middle-High German**, 324, 2.
- Million**, declension, 165, 16, (d).
- Minutes of the hour**, 184, 3, (b).
- miß**, verb-prefix, 204, 209, 314, 5; subst. prefix, 315, 3.
- mit**, 46; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (a).
- mittel**, comparison, 130.
- nüttelt**, see *vermittelt*.
- Mixed declension**, of substs., 60-63, 70; of adjs., 116, 121, 111.
- Modal auxiliaries**, 196-202; peculiar forms, 196, R. 1-3; paradigms, 198; further peculiarities, 199; idiomatic use, 200-202.
- Modern High German**, 324, 5.
- Modification of vowels**; see Umlaut.
- mögen**, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 3, 202.
- Monesyllables**, declension, 22, 1, 3, 5, App. B, C, E, 37; gender, 89, 1, (a).
- Month**, day of, how expressed, 166, 3.
- Months**, names of, p. 104, top; gender, 80, 1, (b).
- Moods of the verb**, their use,

- 256-278; see also "Conditional," "Indicative," etc.  
 'most,' with absolute superlative, 127, 2.  
 Motion, neuter verbs of, conjugated with *sein*, 53, (b).  
 müssen, conjugation, 196-199; use, 200, 4, 202.  
 Mut, fem. compounds of, App. I, p. 388; *zu Mute sein*, werden, 250, (e).  
 Mutes, progression or shifting of, 325.  
 nach, prep., 46, 184, 3, (b), 233, (c), 1; after adjs., 244; after verbs, etc., 291, 3; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (a).  
 Nachbar Model, 62, 63.  
 nachdem, subord. conj. clause with, replaces Engl. perf. part., 284, R. 1.  
 nächst, 51, 7.  
 nahe, comparison, 129.  
 Name Model, 60, 61.  
 Names, see "Materials," "Persons," "Places," "Proper Names."  
 nämlich, der, 132, 137.  
 neben, prep., 65.  
 nebist, 51, 8.  
 nennen, infin. with, 271, (d).  
 Neuter verbs conjugated with *sein*, 53.  
 New High German, 324, 3.  
 nicht, place of, 12.  
 nicht nur . . . sondern auch, 238.  
 nicht sowohl . . . als, 238.  
 nicht, indef. pron., 145, 149; before adjs., 122, 11.  
 nichtsebstomeniger, cöord. adv. conj., 237.  
 nicht weniger als, 241, 19, N.  
 nib, obsolete adv., comparison, 130.  
 nie(mals), 187, 1, (e).  
 nieder, 130.  
 niemand, 145, 148; replaced by *keiner*, 151, 1.  
 nimmer, 187, 1, (c).  
 niß, substs. in, declension, 22, 4; gender, 89, 2, (d), 3, (c); subst. suffix, 312, 13; produces Umlaut, 326, (e).  
 noch, adv., idiomatic use, 195, 7; conj., 237, 238.  
 Nominative, use of, 3, 242.  
 Number, in Substs., 3; expressions of, 185.  
 Numerals, cardinal, 163, 165; ordinal, 164, 166; Roman, how rendered in Germ., 166, 2, N.; indefinite, 168-180; derivative, 182, 183; multiplicative, 182, (b); variative, 182, (c); fractional, 183, (a), (b).  
 nur, 195, 1.  
 nur, 195, 12.  
 ob, prep., 51, 10; conj., 241, 4; when omitted, 239, R. 4, 267, R. 6, N.; in indirect questions, 277, R. 5.  
 ob auch, 239, R. 3, 4.  
 oben, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.  
 oberhalb, 223, 5.  
 obgleich, obñon, obwohl, 239, R. 3, 4.  
 Object, direct, see "Accusative"; indirect, see "Dative"; remote, with reflexive verbs, 216.  
 Objects, place of, 45, 296, 297, R. 1, 2.  
 Objective clause before the verb, 306.  
 Objective genitive, 243, 3.  
 oder, 236, 238.  
 'of,' how rendered in Germ., 3, 46, R. 3; 231; omitted before infin. clauses, 277, R. 1; after verbs, etc., 291, 8-11.  
 ohne, prep., 34; governing infin. or daß clause, 224, 2, (b), 276.  
 ohne, 50, 3.  
 Ohr Model, 62, 63.  
 Old High German, 324, 1.  
 on, foreign masc. in, declension, 22, 6.  
 'on,' how rendered in Germ., 232; after verbs, etc., 291, 7.  
 'one,' rendered by *es*, 39, R. 3; indef. pron., 145, 146, 150; not expressed after adjs., 122, 4.  
 or, foreign substs. in, declension, 22, 6, 63, 3.  
 Ordinal numerals, 164, 166.  
 Origin, genitive of, 243, 1.  
 Orthography, p. 11; recent changes in, p. 12.  
 paar (ein), indef. numeral, 173, 3, N.  
 Participial constructions, English, how rendered in Germ., 284; English pres. part. after 'come,' 281, R. 5; not to be confounded with inf. in -ing, or gerund, 277, R. 3.  
 Participle, past, how formed, in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 105; of Modal Auxiliaries, 199, 2.  
 Participles, place of, 26, 33, 283, 4, 295, 1, 3, and N., 298, 299; endings, 30, 35; used as adjectives, 122, 1; as substs., 122, 2; comparison of, 125, 4; isolated strong, 194, N.; use of, 279-284; present part., 280; not used with 'to be,' 31, R. 3; past, 281; with



- imperative force, 269, R. 5; fut. pass. part., or gerundive, 282; general remarks, 283; no perfect part. in Germ., 284, R. 1; appositive participles, 280, (b), 281, R. 3, 283, 3, 290.
- Partitive genitive, 243, 6.
- Parative sense, words used in, take no art., 2, 2.
- Passive voice, 112-114; paradigm, 112; agent with, R. 3; limitations of, 113; substitutes for, 114; passive of transitive verbs, 113, 1; of intransitive verbs, 113, 2.
- Past participle, see "Participles."
- 'people,' indef. pron., 145, 146.
- Periphrastic forms of conjugation, English, 31, R. 3.
- Perfect participle, none in Germ., 284, R. 1.
- Perfect tense, formation, 25, 1; use, 259; replaced by present, 257, 4.
- Personal pronouns, declension, 38; use, 39-42, 44, 6, (b); place of, 45, Rules 3, 4, 294, (c), N., 296, 3, 4; replaced by demonstratives, 143; after *gleichen*, 48; after *halben*, *wegen*, 223, 1, 2, R. 3; omitted with imperative, 269, R. 1.
- Persons, before things, 45, Rule 2, 296, 5; names of, how declined, 73, 74, 76, 2-7; article with names of, 73, 1, 2, 76, 2, 5, 78.
- Place, advs. of, 187, 11; position in a sentence, 11, 45, Rule 5, 297, 3, and R. 1.
- Places, proper names of, 72, 76, 1; article with, 44, 3.
- Pluperfect tense, formation, 25, 1; plupf. indicative, use, 260; plupf. subjunctive, used for conditional, 263, 267, 2, and R. 4; to express a wish, 268, 2.
- Plural, see "Concord," "Number," "Substantives."
- Possessive adjs., 43; agreement, 43, 5; replaced by def. art., 44, 6.
- Possessive case, rendered in Germ. by the genitive, 3, 243, 4.
- Possessive dative, 44, 6, 249. " pronouns, 119.
- Possibility, advs. of, 187, VI.; expressed by impf. subj., 268, 5.
- Predicate, definition of, 292, 1, 295; place of, 295; factitive pred., 253, 254, 3.
- Predicative nominative, 242.
- Predicative adj., not declined, 14, 100; place of, 18, 20, O. 3, 295, 3, 296, 8; factitive, 254, 3.
- Prefixes, of verbs, 203-213, 314; inseparable, 35, R. 6, 109, 204, 207, 208, 209, 212; meaning of, 314; separable, 117, 205-208, 210, 295; separable and inseparable, 208; compound, 206, 2; double, 207; accent of, 204, 205, 3; place of, 117, 295, 3, and N.; subst. prefixes, 315; adj. prefixes, 316.
- Prepositions, governing accusative only, 31, 50; dative only, 46, 51; dat. or acc., 65; genitive, 222, 223; contracted with def. art., 34, R., 46, R. 1, p. 83, O., 65, R.; general remarks on, 224; joined to advs., 224; governing the infin., 224, 2, (b), 276, 277.
- English preps. and their Germ. equivalents, 225-234; place of, 46, 51, 223, 298, 2; after verbs, etc., 291.
- Present participle; see "Participial Constructions, English," and "Participles."
- Present tense, endings, in weak verbs, 35, in strong, 107; pres. indicative, 257, 267, R. 5; pres. subj., replaces imperative, 268, 1, 269, and R. 2.
- Preterite, see "Imperfect."
- Primary Form of strong declension, 70, R. 2.
- Principal assertive sentences, construction, 20, 26, 59, N., 293, (b), 294, (b), 295, 2, 297, R. 1, 2, 301, 2, 302, R., 303.
- Principal parts of a verb, 28.
- Progression of mutes, 325.
- Pronouns, agreement of, 13; place of, 45, 296, 2-4; personal, declension, 38; use of *es*, 39; use in address, 40, 47, 49; dative of, replaces poss. adj., 44, 6, (b); reflexive, 41, 42; reciprocal, 42; interrogative, 81-83; relative, 92-97, place of, 98; possessive, 119; demonstrative, 132-143; indefinite, 115-157; remarks on, 162.
- Pronunciation, Introduction, pp. 1-12.
- Probability, expressed by future, 261, 2; by future-perfect, 262.
- Proper names, declension of, 66, 1, 72-74, 76.
- Proportional Clauses; see "Comparative Clauses."
- Purpose, conjs. of, 289, 3,

- (*ð*); expressed by *ju*, **229**, (*a*); by subj. with *ðaþ*, etc., **268**, 3; by infin. with *ju* or *um* . . . *ju*, **273**, R. 1, **276**, 1.
- Quality, genitive of, **243**, 5.
- Quantity of vowels, pp. 9, 10.
- Quantity, expressions of, **185**.
- Quarters of the hour, **184**, 3, (*a*).
- Questions, direct, construction of, **23**, **293**, (*a*), 1, **294**, (*a*), **295**, 2, **300**; indirect or dependent, **88**, **293**, (*c*).
- Question-word, begins sentence, **23**, O. 2, **293**, (*a*), 1, **294**, (*a*).
- Reciprocal pronouns, **42**.
- Reflexive pronouns, **41**, **42**, **44**, 6, (*ð*), N.; used in reciprocal sense, **42**; place of, **294**, (*c*), N.
- Reflexive verbs, paradigm of, **41**; for passive, **114**, (*ð*); use, **214**–**215**; government, **216**.
- Relative clauses, replace Engl. part., **284**, 2, (*a*); place of, **305**, **306**, R. 3, and N., R. 4.
- Relative pronouns, **92**–**97**; place of, **98**, **294**, (*c*), **305**; introduce dependent clauses, **98**; not omitted in Germ., **96**, 7, O.; concord of, **95**, 1, (*ð*), **288**, 2, N.
- Relative superlative, of adjs., **127**; of advs., **190**, 3.
- Roman numerals, how read in Germ., **166**, 2, N.
- ð*3, plurals in, **77**, 5.
- ð*3, suffix of advs., **189**, 1, 2, **321**, 1, N.; suffix in subst. compounds, **319**, 1, N. 2, 3; *ð*af, substs. in, declension, **22**, 4; gender, **89**, 3, (*c*); subst. suffix, **312**, 14.
- ð*am, adj. in, superl. of, **190**, 5; adj. suffix, **313**, 9.
- ð*amt, **51**, 9.
- ð*afst, substs. in, gender, **89**, 2, (*a*); subst. suffix, **312**, 15.
- ð*äießen Model, **123**.
- ð*älagen Model, **186**.
- ð*ön, idiomatic use, **195**, 6.
- Script, German, pp. 13–16.
- ð*ehr, with absolute superl., **127**, 2, **190**, 4.
- ð*ein, 'to be,' use as auxiliary, **25**, 4; conjugation, **52**; verbs conjugated with, **53**; with past part., **112**, R. 5, (*ð*); as impersonal, **217**, **220**; with dat., **250**, (*e*); with infin., **272**, R. 2; omitted in dependent sentences, **287**.
- ð*eit, prep., **46**, **241**, 12, (*a*); conj., **239**, **241**, 12.
- ð*eiðem, adv. conj., **237**; subord. conj., **239**, **241**, 12, (*c*).
- ð*el, substs. in, gender, **89**, 3, (*c*); subst. suffix, **312**, 14.
- ð*elber, *ð*elbst, **42**, 3, and R. *ð*elbig, **136**, N.
- ð*elbst; see *ð*elber.
- Sentences, construction of, **292**–**306**; essential parts of, **292**; construction of assertive principal, **20**, **26**, **59**, N., **293**, (*ð*), **294**, (*ð*), **295**, 2, **297**, R. 1, **301**, 2, **306**; of dependent, **32**, **33**, **98**, **293**, (*c*), **294**, (*c*), **295**, 2; relative, **98**, **305**, **306**, R. 3 and N., R. 4; interrogative, **23**, **88**, **293**, (*a*), 1, **293**, (*c*), **294**, (*a*), **295**, 2, **300**; exclamatory, **293**, (*ð*), R. 3; expressing command or wish, **293**, (*a*), 2; conditional, **59**, **293**, (*a*), 3; position of verb in, **293**; of subject, **294**; of predicate, **295**; of objects, etc., **296**; of advs., etc., **297**; of other members, **298**; inverted, **301**, N. 1, 2; compound and complex, **202**–**306**.
- Separable prefixes, when separated, **117**; place of, **295**, 3 and N., **303**, 4.
- 'shall,' how rendered in Germ., **201**.
- Shifting of mutes, **325**.
- 'since,' how rendered in Germ., **241**, 12.
- ð*ingen Model, **144**.
- Singular, see "Concord," "Substantives."
- 'so,' rendered by *ð*3, **39**, 3.
- ð*o, after conditional and adverbial clauses, **59**, **239**, R. 2, **267**, R. 3, **293**, (*ð*), R. 4, N. 1, 2, **294**, (*ð*), R. 2; replaces *ð*old before *ein*, **138**, N. 2; adv. conj., **237**.
- ð*o . . . *ð*o, **241**, 9.
- ð*o ein, followed by *wie*, **162**, 4.
- ð*ogar, adv. conj., **237**, R. 2.
- ð*öhn Model, **21**; origin of Umlaut in, **326**, R. 2, (*a*).
- ð*old(er), demonstr. pron., **132**, **138**; followed by *wie*, **162**, 4; before adjs., **122**, 12.
- ð*ossen, conjugation, **196**–**199**; use, **200**, 5, **201**, **202**.
- 'some,' how rendered in Germ., 2, 2, **150**, **152**, **155**, **168**, **173**, **177**, **180**.
- ð*onder, **50**, 1.
- ð*ondern, **236**, R. 1.
- ð*owohl . . . *alß* (*auß*), **238**; **285**, R. 6.

spinnen Model, 158.

sprechen Model, 167.

ſſ, ſ, p. 5; in verbs, 118, R. 2, 123, R. 1, 181, O. 1, 188, R. 3.

ſtatt, see aufſtatt.

ſt, subst. suffix, 312, 1.

ſtehen, with infin., 272, R. 2.

Stem of verbs, 27.

Strong declension; see "Substantives, declension of."

Strong conjugation; see "Verbs, conjugation of."

Subject, definition of, 292; place of, 294; in principal sentences, 20, 59, N.; in direct questions, 23, O. 1; in dependent sentences, 33, N.; inversion of, 301, 2, N. 1, 2; expressed by nom. case, 3, 242, 1; agreement with verb, 285; repetition of, 286.

Subjective clause, 306; relative, 306, R. 3.

Subjective genitive, 243, 2.

Subjunctive Mood, use, 264-268, for conditional, 111, 263, N.; in indirect statements, 87, 265, 266; in indirect questions, 88; in hypothetical periods, 239, R. 1, 267; for imperative, 31, R. 4, 268, 1, 269; expressing a wish, 268, 2; of purpose, 268, 3; after a negative, etc., 268, 4; of possibility, 268, 5; origin of Umlaut in impf. subj., 326, (g).

Substantives, their declension, Walfer Model, 16, 17; Sohn do., 21, (a), 22, App. C.; Hund do., 21, (b), 22, App. E.; Dorf do., 86, 37; Rnabe, Gtaf, Rlume do., 54-57, App. F.; Name, Nachbar, Chr

do., 60-63, App. G.; with double plurals, 64, App. G.\*; Summary and tables, 70; essential parts, 71; anomalous, 66-69; substs. without plural, 66; without sing., 67; of measure, weight and number, 155; as verb prefixes, 206, 3, 212; irregular compound substs., 68; appositive subst., 289; derivation, by internal change, 310; by suffixes, 312; by prefixes, 315; composition, 319; see also under "Accentuation," "Compound Substantives," "Foreign Substantives," "Gender."

Suffixes, of verbs, 311; of substs., 312; of adjs., 313.

Superlative degree, of adjs., relative, 127, 1; absolute, 127, 2; of advs., 190, 3-7.

st, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (b); subst. suffix, 312, 1.

stāt, foreign substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (c).

taufend, 165, 8, and 10, (c). teil3 . . . teil3, 238.

Tense, in indirect statements, 87; in indirect questions, 88; auxiliaries of, use, 25, 53; place of with auxiliaries of mood, 199, 3.

Tenses, simple, how formed in weak verbs, 30; in strong, 104-107, 110; endings of, in weak verbs, 35; in strong, 107; compound, how formed, 25, 108; construction, 26, 33; sequence of tenses in indirect statements and questions not observed in Germ., 87, 2, 88, 2, 266,

4; of the indicative, how used, 257-262 (see also under the various tenses); of the conditional, 263, N.; the tense in indirect statements, 87, 266; in hypothetical periods, 267.

Terminations; see "Endings."

'than' after the comparative, 126, 1, 241, 7.

'that,' how rendered in Germ., 140.

'the . . . the' before comparatives, 126, 4.

'there,' rendered by es, 39, 1, R.; 'there is, there are,' 220.

'they,' indefinite, 145, 146.

sthum; see stum.

Time, expressions of, 184; place of, 11, 45, 297, 2, 306, R. 2; advs. of, 187, 1; English participial constructions of, how rendered in Germ., 284, (a); time of day, 184, 3, 285, R. 6, N. 2.

Titles of rank, 49; 76, 5, 6. 'to,' how rendered in Germ., 46, R. 4; 233.

Towns, names of, gender, 80, 3, (c); see also "Places, names of."

Transitive verbs, English, with object unexpressed, rendered by reflexive verbs in Germ., 215, 2; often intrans. in Germ., 250, R. 1, 252, R.

Trigraphs, consonantal, pp. 4, 8, 14.

trög, 223, 16, and R. 2.

stum, substs. in, declension, 37; gender, 89, 3, (b); subst. suffix, 312, 16.

über, prep., 65; after interjections, 240, 4, (a); after

verbs, etc., 291, 1; prefix, 208; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1.

um, prep., 34, 184, 3, (c), 226, (a), (b), 227, (b), 1; after verbs, 291, 4; governing an infin. of purpose, 224, 2, (b), 273, 276; prefix, 208.

um ſo, before comparatives, 126, 4, 241, 2, 293, (b), R. 4, N. 3. [12.

um . . . willen, 223, 22, R. 1, Umlaut, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; in declension of substs., 17, (a), 21, (a), 22, 36, 70, R. 6, App. A., C.; in subj. mood, 107, O 2; in comparison of adjs., 125, R. 1, in strong verbs, 186, 188, 192, R. 1; in Modal Auxiliaries, 196, R. 1; in derivation, 308, N., 309, 311, 1, 2, 312, 2-4, 8, 11-13, 313, 5; origin, 326.

un-, subst. prefix, 315, 4.

und, 236.

unfern, 223, 23.

ung, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (a); subst. suffix, 312, 17.

ungeachtet, prep., 223, 15; conj. 239, 3, (b), 241, 21.

units, before tens, 165, 7.

'unless,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 18.

unten, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

unter, prep., 65; prefix, 208.

unterbeffen, adv. conj., 237; subord. conj., 239, 3, (b), 241, 15.

unterhalb, 223, 6.

unweit, 223, 24.

ur-, subst. prefix, 315, 5.

ur, substs. in, gender, 89, 2, (c).

Urfprache, 322.

Variative numerals, 182, (c).

ver-, insep. verb prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 6.

Verb, place of, 20, 32, 33, 87, 2, 88, 2, 266, R. 2, 267, R. 2, 292, 293, 301; English periphrastic forms of, how rendered in Ger., 31, R. 3; tenses of, 256-262, 263, 266 (see also under the various tenses); moods of, 256-278 (see also under the various moods); concord of, 285; when omitted, 269, R. 6, 287.

Verbs, stem of, 27; principal parts of, 28; weak conjugation of, 30, 31; endings of simple tenses, 35; verbs conjugated with ſein, 53; neut., of motion, etc., 53; irregular weak, 99; strong, 103-108, App. L.; beißen Model, 118; bleiben do., 120; ſchießen do., 123; ſetzen do., 124; frieren do., 131; ſingen do., 144; ſpinnen do., 158; helfen do., 159; ſprechen do., 167; eſſen do., 181; ſchlagen do., 186; fallen do., 188; table of strong verbs, 192; passive voice, 112-114; reflexive verbs, paradigm of, 41; use, 214-216; impersonal verbs, 217-220; compound verbs, insep., 35, R. 6, 109, 204, 207-209, 211-213; separable, 117, 205-208, 210; auxiliaries of tense, 25, 53; irregular strong, 194, 196; auxiliaries of mood, 196-202; verbs with two nominatives, 242, 2, 3; with genitive, 245; with dative, 250; with accusative, 252, 253; verbs of choosing,

242, N.; of calling, considering, 253; verbs followed by the subjunctive, 265; by the infin. without zu, 271; with zu, 272; prepositions after, 291; derivation of, without change, 308; with internal change, 309; by suffixes, 311; by prefixes, 314.

vermittelft, 223, 9.

vermöße, 223, 10.

viel, comparison of, 129; indef. pron., 145; indef. numeral, 168, 176; before adjs., 122, 11, 12.

Vocative, 242, 1.

voll, prefix, sep. and insep., 208; adj., 244.

von, prep., 46, 228, (a), 231, (b), 234; used for genitive, 46, R. 3; with passive voice, 112, R. 3; with names of places, 72, 3, 4; with names of persons, 76, 6; replaces genitive of quality, 243, 5, N.; after partitives, 243, 6, N.; after voll, 244; after verbs, 245, 2.

vor, prep., 65, 184, 3, (b), 234; after verbs, etc., 291, 5, 11; after reflexive verbs, 215, 1, (b).

vorn, adv., 189, 3; comparison, 130.

Vowels, modified, pp. 3, 6, 12, 14; double, pp. 4, 6, 12, 14; importance of, p. 8, bottom; long and short, pp. 9, 10; see also "Umlaut."

während, prep., 75, 2, 223, 17; conj., 239, 3, (b), 241, 13; replaces Engl. participle of time, 284, 1, (a).

wann, 58, 187, 1., (d).

warum, 83, R. 3, N.

was, interrog. pron., declension and use, 83; sometimes = 'why,' 83, 6, 162, 3; used for *etwas*, 149, 1; relative pron., 92, 96; followed by *daß*, 162, 1; of a number of persons or things, 162, 2; not governed by preps., 83, 3, 96, 7; construction of sentences with, 98, 3.

was für (ein), 86.

'we,' indef., 146.

Weak conjugation, see "Verbs"; declension, see "Substantives," "Adjectives."

weder . . . noch, 238.

wegen, 75, 1, 223, 2, and R. 3.

Weight, expressions of, 185.

weil, 239, 3, (b), 241, 17.

welcher, interrog. pron. and adj., 6, 81, 82, 84, 85; in exclamations, 85, 1, 2; relative pron., 92, 94, 95; indefinite pron. and numeral, used for 'some,' 145, 155, 180; before adjs., 122, 13.

wenig, comparison of, 129; indef. pron., 145; indef. numeral, 168, 176; before adjs., 122, 12.

wenn, 58, 239, 3, (b), R. 1-4, 267; omission of, 239, R. 2-4, 267, R. 2, 3, 6, N., 293, (a), 3, R. 4, N. 2, (c), R. 2, 294, (b), R. 2.

wenn auch, wenn gleich, wenn

schon, 239, 3, (b), and R. 3, N.

wenn . . . nicht, 239, 3, (b), 241, 18.

wer, interrog. pron., 81, 83; relative pron., 92, 96, 135, (b), N.; followed by *der*, 162, 1; replaced by *der*, 306, R. 3, N.; construction of sentences with, 98, 3.

werden, pres. and impf. of, 19; conjugated with *sein*, 53, (a); use as auxiliary of tense, 25, 2; as auxiliary of passive voice, 112, 113; conjugation, 112; as impersonal verb, 217, 2, (c); with *dat.*, 250, (c).

'when,' how rendered in Germ., 58.

'whether,' expressed by *mögen*, 200, 3, (c).

'while, whilst,' how rendered in Germ., 241, 15.

'whole,' how rendered in Germ., 168, 170.

wider, prep., 34; prefix, 204.

wie, in comparisons, 126, 3, 241, 6, 8; after *so* *ein*, 162, 4; subord. conj., 239, 3, (b); in comparative clauses, 306, R. 4, N.

wieder, prefix, 208, N. 2.

wievielste, *der*, 164, 166, 3, N. 2.

'will,' how rendered in Germ., 201.

Wish, expressed by the Sub-

junctive, 268, 2; construction of sentences expressing, 293, (a), 2.

wissen, 196, and N. 1.

wo, 187, 11, (c); before preps., replacing interrog. pron., 83, 3, and relative pron., 95, 2, 96, 7.

wohl, comparison of, 190; idiomatic use, 195, 10.

wollen, its conjugation, 196-199; its use, 200, 6, 201, 202.

worden, for *geworden*, in passive voice, 112, R. 2; when omitted, 112, R. 4.

'you,' how rendered in Ger., 40; indef. pron., 146.

zehn, in compound numerals, 165, 5.

zer-, insep. prefix, 35, R. 6, 204; meaning, 314, 7.

zig, in numerals, 165, 6.

zu, prep., 46, 227, (a), 4, (b), 2, (c), 228, (c), 229, (a), 230, (c), 232, (b), 233, (b), (c), 2, (ii); with Infinitive, 272-277; place of, 109, 117, R. 2; with insep. verbs, 205, 2; followed by *als daß* or *um zu*, with verbs of choosing, 242, 3, N., 253; after adjs., 244.

zuerst, 195, 5.

zufolge, 223, 11, R.

zuletzt, 51, 7.

zuwider, 51, 3.

zwei, declension of, 165, 2.

zweiden, prep., 65.















